

---

This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google™ books

<https://books.google.com>



TX 475.2 .C525  
Chesnutt, Helen M.  
Road to Latin : a first-year Latin book

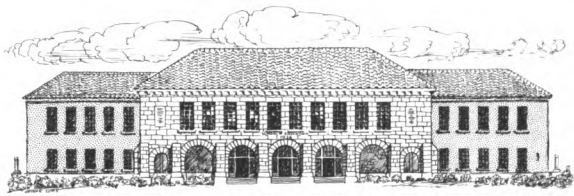
Stanford University Libraries



3 6105 04926 6351

# ROAD TO LATIN





SCHOOL OF EDUCATION  
LIBRARY

TEXTBOOK  
COLLECTION



STANFORD UNIVERSITY  
LIBRARIES

1.40 list

SCHOOL OF EDUCATION  
RECEIVED

JUL 29 1933

STANFORD UNIVERSITY







**PUELLA RŌMĀNA**

Among the treasures recovered in the excavations at Pompeii and Herculaneum were various pictures painted on the walls of the long-buried houses. One of the most famous of these pictures, now in Naples, is the portrait of a Roman girl or young woman, reproduced above in its actual colors. Notebook in hand, pencil raised to her lips, she looks at us as if considering what to write. In spite of the fact that this portrait was painted nearly nineteen hundred years ago, it still shows unusual loveliness and charm, and its naturalness and lifelikeness indicate that portrait painting among the Romans must have reached a high degree of development.

# THE ROAD TO LATIN

A FIRST-YEAR LATIN BOOK

BY

HELEN M. CHESNUTT, A.M.

MARTHA WHITTIER OLIVENBAUM, A.M.

NELLIE PRICE ROSEBAUGH, A.B.

STANFORD UNIVERSITY  
RECEIVED

JUL 29 1933

STANFORD UNIVERSITY

EDITED BY

E. B. de SAUZÉ, Ph.D.

Director of Foreign Languages

Cleveland Board of Education

THE JOHN C. WINSTON COMPANY

CHICAGO

PHILADELPHIA

TORONTO

ATLANTA

SAN FRANCISCO

DALLAS



597427  
C

Copyright, 1932, by  
THE JOHN C. WINSTON COMPANY

Copyright in Great Britain, and in the British Dominions and Possessions  
Copyright in the Philippine Islands

All rights reserved



PRINTED IN THE U. S. A.  
AT THE INTERNATIONAL PRESS

THE JOHN C. WINSTON COMPANY, PROPRIETORS, PHILADELPHIA

## PREFACE

The authors of **THE ROAD TO LATIN** have endeavored to present in this book a method of teaching Latin that is a golden mean between the old and formal method of teaching grammar, and the new and apparently haphazard method, recently developed, of teaching reading. The assumption that abundant reading with a superficial study of grammar, mainly for recognition, can ever result in a real power to read Latin has been proved to be unsound. For many teachers, in their effort to make Latin interesting to their pupils, have forgotten that the average pupil has to feel a power of achievement, a mastery of what he is doing, in order to be interested and to gain mental satisfaction.

The plan of **THE ROAD TO LATIN** is as follows:

1. Each chapter in the first half of the book presents for mastery one grammatical point. In later chapters several closely associated points are presented together. Each chapter is a unit requiring from three to five days of classroom work for mastery, according to the ability of the pupils.

2. Each chapter is headed by a picture which illustrates an accompanying piece of Latin text in story form.

3. In this story the grammatical principle or form to be mastered appears again and again in various relations, so that it is first met functionally rather than formally.

4. Following the story is a set of questions based upon it and so stated that the answers are almost automatic, and the new form or principle is used naturally and learned by repetition.

5. Discussion then follows, through which the pupil is led inductively to discover the new form and its function.

6. Following this there is a formal summary of the new principle in the chapter, which the pupil is required to memorize in the form of a rule.

7. After the summary there is a reading lesson of wider scope, containing the new forms and reviewing those previously mastered. The reading lessons treat of Roman life, or tell tales, in simple Latin, of mythology and history.

8. Then the vocabulary, which has already been used in two reading lessons and in oral drill, is presented in alphabetical order. The words which have been met in natural surroundings are assembled for a convenient review. The words in the vocabulary have been selected with two ends in view—to cover most of the words required by the College Entrance Examination Board and by the New York Syllabus, and to give the pupil a list of “atmosphere” words which are associated with the private life of the Romans and with his own daily life.

9. Following the vocabulary is an exercise in word study based upon it, called *Latin in Daily Life*.

10. Finally, sufficient drill in both vocabulary and grammatical principles is presented under various headings to enable the pupil to master the new words, forms, and principles thoroughly, by repeated use, before advancing to the next chapter.

The authors are especially indebted to Dr. E. B. deSauzé, Director of Foreign Languages, Cleveland Board of Education, under whose guidance and encouragement the book was planned and written.

Acknowledgments are due to the following for their valuable criticisms of the manuscript and the proof:

Professor George Depue Hadzits, of the University of Pennsylvania; Professor H. J. Leon, of the University of Texas; Mr. Norton S. Pinney, Principal of the High School at Norfolk, New York; Mrs. Stella E. Prosser, of the Ada Merritt Junior High School, Miami, Florida; Professor Robert S. Rogers and Professor Kenneth Scott, of Western Reserve University; and Miss Katherine I. Smart, of the Shaw Junior High School, Philadelphia.

The authors wish to express their grateful appreciation of the valuable contributions of Professor Thomas K. Brown, Jr., of the University of Pennsylvania, and Mr. John Flagg Gummere, of the William Penn Charter School, Philadelphia, who have assisted in the making of the book at every stage,

from the checking and revision of the manuscript to the reading of the final proofs.

Cordial acknowledgment is made to the following organizations and individuals for assistance in securing illustrative material, or for courteous permission to use specific pictures:

The American Academy in Rome, for the drawing by Mr. Gorham P. Stevens of Hadrian's villa, the frontispiece of the *Memoirs* of the Academy for 1927, reproduced on page 49.

The American Numismatic Society, New York, for illustrations of coins, reproduced on pages 13, 41, 42, 214, 223, 255, 312, 316.

The Barnes Art Foundation, Merion, Pennsylvania, for illustration of an Etruscan soldier, reproduced on page 299.

Mr. J. D. Beazley, Lincoln Professor of Classical Archaeology in the University of Oxford, for pictures from *Der Berliner Maler*, Berlin-Wilmersdorf, 1930, reproduced on page 143.

George P. Brown & Co., Beverly, Mass., for a picture of the three Fates, reproduced on page 226.

The Corcoran Gallery of Art, Washington, D. C., for a picture of The Trojan Horse, by Henri Paul Motte, reproduced on page 135.

Mrs. Edith Hall Dohan, Associate Curator of the classical section of the University Museum, University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, Miss Laurine Elizabeth Mack, Assistant Professor of Art in Wellesley College, Wellesley, Mass., and Miss E. Louise Lucas, Librarian, Fogg Art Museum, Cambridge, Mass., for helpful suggestions.

The Metropolitan Museum of Art, New York, for assistance and valuable suggestions; and, specifically, Mr. H. W. Kent, Secretary, and Mr. William Clifford, Librarian.

Miss Frances E. Sabin, Director, Service Bureau for Classical Teachers, The American Classical League, New York, for generous assistance and helpful suggestions.

Mr. Gorham P. Stevens, Director of the American Academy in Rome, for his drawing of Hadrian's villa, the frontispiece of the *Memoirs* of the American Academy in Rome for 1927, reproduced on page 49.

Miss Mary Hamilton Swindler, Professor of Classical Archaeology in Bryn Mawr College, for valuable assistance in obtaining pictures, and for permission to use three pictures (pages 144, 145, 244) and to use illustrations from her *Ancient Painting*, New Haven, 1929, reproduced on pages 14, 25, 26, 52, 60, 61, 121, 123, 136, 137, 234, 236, 237, 245, 274, 278, 279, 284, 294, 297, 335.

University Prints, Newton, Mass., for pictures reproduced on pages 40, 105, 427, 431.

Acknowledgment is made to the following for the use of pictures on the pages indicated:

Henry Holt and Co., New York, for an illustration from *Greece and Rome*, by Jakob von Falke, reproduced on page 126.

Yale University Press for illustrations from *Ancient Painting*, by Mary Hamilton Swindler, reproduced on pages 14, 25, 26, 52, 60, 61, 121, 123, 136, 137, 234, 236, 237, 245, 274, 278, 279, 284, 294, 297, 335.

Fratelli Alinari, Rome, Italy, pages 36, 309.

Brown Brothers, New York, pages 57, 93, 141, 149, 159, 160, 177, 199, 222, 249, 265, 321, 368, 369, 370, 375, 400, 408, 412.

Brown and Dawson, New York, page \*319.

Ewing Galloway, New York, pages 71, 366, 390, 393, 403, 432.

Gramstorff Bros., Inc., Malden, Mass., pages 75, 82, 125, 150, 154, 356.

Burton Holmes and Ewing Galloway, New York, pages 373, 402.

Keystone View Co., Inc., New York, pages 59, \*384.

Rudolf Lesch Fine Arts, Inc., New York, page 240.

Publishers' Photo Service, New York, pages 33, 76, 88, 166, 190, 212, 213, 397.

Remington Rand, Inc., New York, pages 16, 17.

Taber Prang Art Co., Springfield, Mass., pages 118, 203.

Underwood and Underwood, New York, page \*167.

The authors are grateful to the teachers in the Cleveland High Schools who have used the manuscript in their classrooms, and to Mrs. Frieda Skolnik and Miss Vera Low for their assistance in typing the manuscript.

---

\* Copyright picture.

## CONTENTS

CHAPTER	PAGE
TO THE TEACHER .....	xiii
TO THE PUPIL: THE ROAD TO LATIN.....	xv
INTRODUCTION: Alphabet and Pronunciation ..	1
I. First Declension, Nominative Case. <i>Schola Americāna I and II</i> .....	7
II. First Declension, Accusative Case. <i>Schola Rōmāna I and II</i> .....	15
III. Review of Nominative and Accusative; Latin Questions with <i>-ne, nōne, and num.</i> <i>Villa Rōmāna</i> .....	23
IV. First Declension, Genitive Case. <i>Marcella. Puellae Laetae</i> .....	31
V. First Declension, Dative Case. <i>Galbae Taberna. Diāna</i> .....	36
VI. Dative with Adjectives. <i>Domina Benigna I and II</i> .....	43
VII. Ablative with <i>ā (ab), ex (ē), in, cum.</i> <i>Laeca Poëta I. Servae Claudiae</i> .....	47
VIII. Accusative with <i>ad</i> and <i>in.</i> <i>Laeca Poëta II. Onerāriae</i> .....	55
IX. Locative Case; Place Relations with Names of Cities and Towns, and with <i>domus</i> and <i>rūs.</i> <i>Agricolae</i> .....	62
X. Summary of First Declension. <i>Tullia et Claudia</i> .....	69
XI. Present Tense of <i>sum</i> , and of Verbs of the First and Second Conjugations. <i>Tullia, Magistra Filiārum I and II. Claudia et Filiae Tulliae.</i>	77

CHAPTER	PAGE
XII. Masculine Nouns of the Second Declension, Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative. <i>Cornélius, Dominus. Cornélius et Filii</i> .....	88
XIII. Masculine Nouns of the Second Declension, Genitive, Dative, and Ablative. <i>In Hortō Cornēli. Discipuli</i> .....	96
XIV. Neuter Nouns of the Second Declension. <i>Templa Antiqua. In Britannā</i> .....	104
XV. Adjectives of the First-and-second Declension. <i>Domicilium Urbānum</i> .....	112
XVI. Review of Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs.....	122
XVII. Present Tense of Verbs of Third and Fourth Conjugations. <i>In Peristylō. Dē Equō Ligneō</i> . 130	130
XVIII. Present Passive, Four Conjugations; Ablative of Personal Agent; Ablative of Means. <i>Fābula Orbilī I and II</i> .....	139
XIX. Imperfect Tense, Active and Passive, of Four Conjugations and the Verb <i>sum</i> . <i>Dē Templīs Graecīs. Tullia et Liberī</i> .....	148
XX. Future Tense, Active and Passive, of the First and Second Conjugations and <i>sum</i> . <i>Lūcius et Aulus</i> .....	155
XXI. Future Tense, Active and Passive, of the Third and Fourth Conjugations. <i>Pūblius et Servius. Crās</i> .....	161
XXII. Present, Imperfect, and Future of Verbs of the Third Conjugation in <i>-iō</i> ; Review of the Present System. <i>Lūdus Puerōrum</i> .....	169
XXIII. Nouns of the Third Declension: Nouns in <i>x, s</i> . <i>Dux et Milītēs. Milītēs Rōmānī</i> .....	175
XXIV. Nouns of the Third Declension: Nouns in <i>r, er, l, ō, s</i> ; Ablative of Time. <i>Dē Prīncipibus Rōmānīs. Dē Caesare et Legiōnibus</i> .....	182

CHAPTER	PAGE
XXV. Neuter Nouns of the Third Declension; Ablative of Manner. <i>Dē Certāminibus Rōmānīs.</i>	191
XXVI. Summary; Consonant Stems of the Third Declension. <i>Dē Certāmine Quadrīgārum.</i> . . .	198
XXVII. Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter i-stems of the Third Declension. <i>Dē Urbe Rōmā. Dē Potestāte Rōmānā.</i> . . . . .	205
XXVIII. Perfect Active, All Conjugations and <i>sum.</i> <i>Puerī et Pater. Dē Rōmae Prīncipiūs I.</i> . . . .	215
XXIX. Accusative of Duration of Time; Pluperfect and Future Perfect Active of All Conjugations and <i>sum.</i> <i>Dē Rōmae Prīncipiūs II.</i> . . . .	224
XXX. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive of All Conjugations. <i>Dē Aenēā Piō. Aenēās in Italiām Venit.</i> . . . . .	231
XXXI. Personal and Reflexive Pronouns; Genitive of the Whole; Genitive with Adjectives; Possessive Adjectives. <i>In Lūdō.</i> . . . . .	238
XXXII. The Demonstrative <i>is</i> ; the Relative <i>quī.</i> <i>Dē Procae Filīis I and II.</i> . . . . .	247
XXXIII. The Demonstratives <i>hic, ille, iste</i> ; the Intensive <i>ipse</i> ; Ablative of Cause; Predicate Accusative. <i>Dē Urbis Novae Locō I and II.</i>	257
XXXIV. Adjectives of the Third Declension; Genitive of Description. <i>Dē Factīs Fortibus. Dē Urbe Novā.</i> . . . . .	267
XXXV. Participles of All Conjugations. <i>Dē Filīabus Sabīnōrum. Dē Tarpeiā.</i> . . . . .	275
XXXVI. Cardinal and Ordinal Numerals; Nine Irregular Pronominal Adjectives; <i>Dē Numerīs Rōmānīs. Dē Bellō Sabīnō.</i> . . . . .	285
XXXVII. Comparison of Adjectives; Declension of the Comparative; Comparison with <i>quam</i> ; Ablative of Comparison. <i>Dē Horātiō I.</i> . . . . .	296



CHAPTER	PAGE
XXXVIII. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives; Ablative of Degree of Difference; Ablative of Separation. <i>Dē Horātiō II</i> .....	305
XXXIX. Complementary Infinitive; <i>possum</i> ; <i>volō</i> , <i>nōlō</i> , <i>mālō</i> . <i>Dē Daedalō et Īcarō I and II</i> ...	314
XL. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs; Ablative of Description. <i>Dē C. Mūciō I and II</i> .	327
XLI. Fourth Declension; Dative of Purpose; Dative of Interest; Ablative of Specification. <i>Dē Exercitibus Rōmānīs I and II</i> .....	339
XLII. Fifth Declension; Accusative of Extent of Space. <i>Dē Acīē Triplicī et dē Agmine. Dē Proeliō Rōmānō</i> .....	348
XLIII. Irregular Verbs <i>eō</i> , <i>ferō</i> , <i>fiō</i> ; Subjective and Objective Infinitives; the Demonstrative <i>idem</i> . <i>Dē Galliā Omnī I and II</i> .....	359
XLIV. Indirect Discourse; All Infinitives Active and Passive. <i>Dē Orgetorige I and II</i> .....	371
XLV. Deponent Verbs; Ablative with Deponents; Ablative Absolute. <i>Dē Helvētiōrum Profectiōne</i> .....	382
XLVI. Subjunctive Mood, Present and Imperfect; Dative with Verbs of Special Meaning; Clauses of Purpose with <i>ut</i> , <i>nē</i> , <i>quō</i> , <i>quī</i> . <i>Dē Orgetorigis Cōnsiliīs I and II</i> .....	392
XLVII. Subjunctive Mood; Clauses of Result. <i>Dē Helvētiōrum Cōnsiliīs. Dē Helvētiōrum Profectiōne</i> .....	401
XLVIII. Subjunctive Mood, Perfect and Pluperfect; Indirect Questions. <i>Dē Fāmā Amicōrum Caesaris</i> .....	409
XLIX. Temporal Clauses with <i>cum</i> ; <i>cum</i> Circumstantial, Causal, Concessive. <i>Dē Caesare et Helvētiīs</i> .....	416

# CONTENTS

xi

CHAPTER	PAGE
L. Gerund and Gerundive; Active and Passive Periphrastic; Dative of Agent. <i>Dē Helvētiorum Itinere I and II</i> .....	424
APPENDIX .	
SUMMARY OF FORMS.....	433
SUMMARY OF SYNTAX.....	477
SUMMARY OF IDIOMS AND PHRASES.....	487
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.....	489
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.....	515
INDEXES	
INDEX TO TEXT.....	535
INDEX TO ILLUSTRATIONS.....	542



## TO THE TEACHER

I. The material in each chapter takes from three to five class periods for mastery. Actual classroom use has shown that it takes a first-year high-school class two semesters to cover the first forty-five chapters of the book. A junior high-school class requires three semesters.

II. The work is so planned that the story involving the new grammatical principle may be read and dramatized by the teacher while the pupils' books are closed; or it may be read by the pupils and teacher together with open books. In the latter case the picture at the beginning of the chapter will help the pupil greatly in comprehending the story.

III. The section *Respondē Latinē* should not be omitted, but should rather be expanded by the addition of questions formed by the teacher; for by the use of questions and their answers the pupil becomes familiar with the new principle by repetition, a fundamental factor in learning a language.

IV. The *Discussion* should be carried on by the teacher and pupils together, with frequent use of the blackboard when possible. The rules at the end of the *Discussion* should be memorized.

V. The *Reading Lesson* gives the pupil an opportunity to apply the knowledge that he has just gained and to review principles previously learned. This lesson should be read aloud again and again by the pupils so that they may gain skill in reading Latin with intelligence and with proper emphasis and phrasing.

VI. Not all the words in the vocabularies need be memorized. Stress should be laid upon those included in the word

list issued by the College Entrance Examination Board. Such words are marked with an asterisk in the lesson vocabularies and in the general vocabulary at the end of the book. Actual use, however, has made it evident that the entire vocabulary in each lesson can easily be learned.

VII. The drill exercises give plenty of material for maximum and minimum requirements.

## TO THE PUPIL: THE ROAD TO LATIN

When you begin the study of Latin you are starting out upon a long road over which you will travel, no doubt, for several years. Do you know why it is a very good thing for you to travel this road? When people ask you why you are taking Latin, can you give them a good answer? Can you prove to them that Latin is really a living language? Can you make them see that you are doing the best thing for yourself by studying Latin? \*

You can do this, very definitely, by telling them first that nearly two thirds of the words in our own language are either Latin or are derived from Latin. You can tell them that the languages spoken in France, Spain, and Italy have an even greater proportion of words derived from the Latin than the English language has, and that they are called *Romance* languages because they are derived directly from the language that the ancient Romans spoke when they conquered these countries many hundreds of years ago. It is very clear that the study of Latin will help you to understand these great languages of the modern world.

Someone may tell you that very few people are studying Latin today. As you travel along the road you will learn that this is a mistake, for you will find all sorts of people who are anxious to get the most out of life, and are finding that a knowledge of Latin is a great satisfaction to them, and makes a definite contribution to their happiness. Yes, millions of people today are either studying or have studied Latin.

Those who are interested in the sciences should study Latin because many of the terms of science are based on

Latin. Doctors, pharmacists, lawyers use many Latin terms in their work. Writers need Latin more than any other group because they must be able to express themselves clearly and exactly, and with a knowledge of Latin they have a clearer understanding of the meaning of each word and thus a mastery of their own language.

Then, as you continue the study of Latin, you will realize that you are gaining certain powers that will make living easier for you as you grow up. You will find that you have learned to concentrate, to judge, to decide quickly, and to persevere, to keep going until you have reached your goal, whatever that may be. These powers are very important to our complex civilization. You need every one of them when you face the ordinary situations of your daily life.

And finally, having learned to think and to judge, you will realize that you have also gained the tool that is most fundamental and important in your life, namely, a command of language by which you may express your thoughts clearly, adequately, and forcefully.

# THE ROAD TO LATIN

## INTRODUCTION

### Alphabet and Pronunciation

1. The first thing to learn in starting the study of a language is its correct pronunciation. For language is mainly a matter of sound. The only way to learn to pronounce correctly in the beginning is by listening carefully to your teacher and imitating exactly every Latin word spoken. You will not be asked to pronounce anything yourself in the early lessons until you have heard it pronounced by your teacher. By this method you are learning to speak Latin just as babies learn their native tongue, for this is the natural method of learning any language. As you advance, however, you will not wish to be dependent upon your teacher. You will want to be able to pronounce by yourself any word that you see printed or written.

### 2. Alphabet

In Cicero's time the sounds of the Latin language were represented by twenty-three letters, or, more commonly, by twenty-one letters, since *y* and *z* were used only in Greek words. These letters were the same as those of the English alphabet, except that there was no *j* or *w*. The Romans used *i* both as a vowel and to represent the *y* sound heard in English in *onion*; and *u* both as a vowel and to represent the *w* sound heard in English in *penguin*. In modern textbooks it is customary to use *i* as the Romans did, but to use *u* only as a vowel, and *v* for the *w* sound; so that the alphabet now used for Latin contains twenty-four letters.



### 3. Vowels

In the Latin alphabet, as in English, the letters **a, e, i, o, u, y** are used to represent vowel sounds. Latin vowels may be either long or short; the time needed to pronounce a long vowel is twice as long as that needed for a short vowel. Moreover, all the vowels except **a** and **y** have a different quality or kind of sound when short from that which they have when long. The letter **y** occurs only in words borrowed from the Greek.

A B C D E F G H I K L M N O P Q R S T V X

#### Litterae Rōmānae

Scratched by some schoolboy or schoolgirl on a wall at Pompeii. The letters **y** and **z** are missing. Which other letters of our alphabet are missing?

The following table will give a good idea of the sounds of the Latin vowels:

#### Long Vowels

- ā** as the second *a* of *aha*: **māter**
- ē** as the *a* of *bake*: **rēx**
- ī** as the *i* of *machine*: **dīcō**
- ō** as the *o* of *note*: **nōmen**
- ū** as the *u* of *rule*: **lūna**
- ȳ** as German long *ü*: **peristȳlum**

#### Short Vowels

- a** as the first *a* of *aha*: **pater**
- e** as the *e* of *net*: **sella**
- i** as the *i* of *pin*: **iter**
- o** as the *o* of *obey*: **omnis**
- u** as the *u* of *full*: **dux**
- y** as German short *ü* or French *u*: **adytum**

#### 4. Diphthongs

When two vowels are united to form a continuous sound, they are said to form a diphthong. The Latin diphthongs, with their pronunciations, are as follows:

**ae** as the *ai* of *aisle*: **paene**

**au** as the *ou* of *ouch*: **audiō**

**oe** as the *oi* of *boil*: **poena**

**eu** as the sound of Latin short *e* followed by the sound of Latin short *u*: **heu!**

**ui** as the sound of Latin short *u* followed by the sound of Latin short *i*: **cui**

#### 5. Consonants

The consonants are pronounced approximately as in English, with the following differences:

**b** before *s* and *t* is pronounced like *p*: **urbs, obtinet**

**c** is always hard as in *can*: **capit, Cicerō**

**g** is always hard as in *go*: **gentem**

**i** before a vowel in the same syllable is pronounced like *y* in *yes*: **iam**. When so used *i* is called a *semivowel*, or, sometimes, *i-consonant*.

**n** before *c*, *g*, or *x* is like *ng* in *hang*: **vincō, longus, phalanx**

**r** is rolled on the tip of the tongue: **Rōma**

**s** is always hissed as in *so*: **mēns, urbs**

Note that **mēns** does not rime with English *remains*, but more nearly with English *paints*. **Urbs** is pronounced as if it were spelled **urps**.

A A
B
C
D
E II
F I'
G
H
I
K
V L
W M M
N N
O
P P
Q
R
S
T
V
X

**Litterae  
Rōmānae**

**t** is always hard as in *tin*: **Titus**

**v** is like English *w*: **vīvō**

**x** stands for **c** plus **s** and is pronounced like Latin **c** plus Latin **s**: **vixit**

**z** is like *dz* in *adze*: **gaza**

The combinations **ch**, **ph**, **th**, **rh** are found almost exclusively in words borrowed from the Greek. The **h** was probably pronounced by those who consciously imitated the original Greek pronunciation: **ch** like *kh* in English *workhorse*, **ph** as in *chophouse*, **th** as in *hothead*. Often, however, the **h** was altogether silent. In practice:

**ch** may be pronounced like **k**: **Achillēs**

**ph** may be pronounced like **p** or **f**: **Philippus**

**th** may be pronounced like **t** or like English *th* in *thin*:  
**Karthāgō**

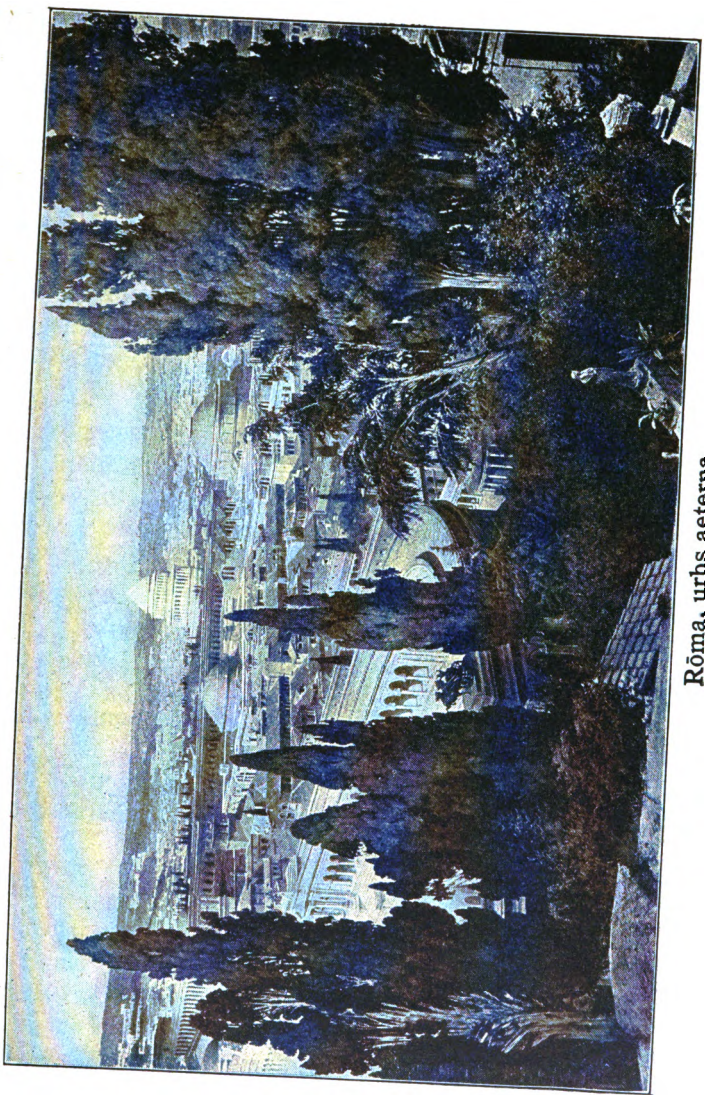
**h** in **rh** may be regarded as silent: **Rhēa**

## 6. Syllabification

A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs. There are no silent letters as in English. A syllable consists of a vowel, a diphthong, or a vowel or diphthong accompanied by one or more consonants. A single consonant between two vowels belongs with the second vowel; as, *fē-mi-na*.

Doubled consonants are always separated; as, *pu-el-la*.

In other combinations of two or more consonants the first consonant is usually placed with the first vowel and the others are joined to the second vowel; as, *mēn-sa*, *fe-nes-tra*, *por-ta*. There are, however, some exceptions to this rule. The combinations of **r** and **l** with certain other consonants, as **pl**, **bl**, **cl**, **pr**, **tr**, **cr**, **gr**, etc., are treated as single consonants, and are not separated as other combinations are. Note the following examples of syllabification: *a-gri-co-la*, *pa-tri-a*, *ā-cris*, *pro-pri-us*, *du-pli-cem*.



Róma, urbs aeterna

Observe that there is a difference between a long *vowel* and a long *syllable*. In this book, a long *vowel* can be recognized by the macron over it; vowels not so marked are short. A *syllable* is long under the following conditions:

1. If it contains a long vowel: *dī-cō*.
2. If it contains a diphthong: *cau-sae*.
3. If its vowel, whether long or short is followed by *x* or *z* (which are really double consonants): *dux*.
4. If its vowel, whether long or short, is followed by any two consonants except the combinations of *r* and *l*, referred to above, which are treated as single consonants: *om-nis*, *sel-la*.

A syllable is *short* if it contains a short final vowel, or a short vowel followed by a vowel, by a single consonant, or by a consonant group treated as a single consonant: *bo-na*, *me-us*, *ca-pit*, *a-grum*.

The last syllable of a Latin word is called the *ultima*, the next to the last is called the *penult*, and the third from the end is called the *antepenult*.

### 7. Accent

Words of two syllables are accented on the penult, that is, on the first syllable; as, *mēn'sa*, *a'mat*.

Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult if it is long; as, *pic-tū'ra*, *pu-el'la*; otherwise on the antepenult; as, *a-gri'co-la*.

CHAPTER I  
FIRST DECLENSION, NOMINATIVE CASE  
Nominative Singular



8. SCHOLA AMERICĀNA I

Schola est schola Americāna. Schola est magna. Iānuā est clausa. Fenestra nōn est clausa. Fenestra est aperta. Mēnsa est magna. Sella nōn est magna. Sella est parva.

Fēmina est Americāna. Fēmina est magistra. Magistra stat. Puella est Americāna. Puella magistra nōn est. Puella est discipula. Puella quoque stat. Puella est Iūlia. Iūlia

(7)

discipula bona est. Cornēlia est discipula. Cornēlia quoque discipula bona est.

Sella nōn est magna. Sella est parva. Mēnsa nōn est parva. Mēnsa est magna. \* Fenestra clausa nōn est. Fenestra aperta est. Iānua nōn est aperta. Iānua est clausa.

### 9. Respondē Latinē:

*What*

#### 1. Quid est?

This means *What is this?* or *What is that?* It may refer to something that has just been spoken of; or it may refer to something that the speaker points to. The teacher should point to the various objects mentioned in the first paragraph, repeating the question *Quid est?* for each one.

*Who*

2. Quis est fēmina? 3. Quis stat? 4. Quis est Iūlia?  
5. Quis est discipula bona?

*Of what kind*

#### 6. Quālis est sella?

Quālis means *Of what kind?* or *Like what?* It is used when an adjective or some kind of description is expected in the answer. This question might be translated *What is the seat like?*

7. Quālis est mēnsa? 8. Quālis est fenestra? 9. Quālis est iānua? 10. Quālis est schola?

Nōtā bene

Quid, *what?* quis, *who?* quālis, *of what kind?*

## DISCUSSION

10. Find the subject of each verb in the first paragraph of *Schola Americāna I*. In what letter does each of these subjects end?

A noun which is used as the subject of a verb is said to be in the nominative case. Observe that each of the nouns in the foregoing story, when used as the subject of a verb, ends in *-a*.

The words which describe the nouns are adjectives. What is the ending of each adjective? These adjectives, like the nouns, end in *-a* and are in the nominative case. They are said to *agree* with the nouns which they describe.

The verb *est* is often used merely to connect the subject with a noun or an adjective, as in *fēmina est magistra*, *the woman is the teacher*, or *sella est parva*, *the seat is small*. Such a noun or adjective is also in the nominative case, and is called a *predicate nominative* or *predicate adjective*.

Does each noun in the lesson refer to only one person or thing, or to more than one? Nouns that refer to one person or thing are in the singular number. We often say simply that they are singular, or in the singular. The ending of the nominative case singular is *-a*.

Nouns which end in *-a* in the nominative singular form a class called the *first declension*. There are nouns with other endings in the nominative; but for several lessons we shall study only nouns in *-a*, and the rules regarding endings are to be understood as applying to nouns of this class.

*Quid*, *what?* and *quis*, *who?* are also used as subjects. When so used they are in the nominative case.

There is no word in Latin corresponding to *a*, *an*, *the*. Thus *fēmina* means *woman*, *a woman*, or *the woman*. The articles may be freely supplied in English translation when necessary.

### Nominative Plural

#### 11.

#### SCHOLA AMERICĀNA II

*Iūlia est discipula. Cornēlia est discipula. <sup>The pupils</sup> Discipulae  
<sup>are</sup> sunt Iūlia et Cornēlia. <sup>The girls</sup> Puellae Americānae sunt discipulae.  
 Discipulae bonae sunt. Discipulae stant. Magistra quoque stat.  
 Scholae Americānae sunt magnae. Fenestrae magnae sunt  
 et iānuae parvae sunt. Iānuae sunt clausae sed fenestrae sunt  
 apertae.*



**12. Respondē Latīnē:**

1. Quis est Iūlia? 2. Quis est Cornēlia? 3. Quālēs discipulae sunt Iūlia et Cornēlia? 4. Quis stat? *What kind of*  
 5. Quālēs sunt scholae Americānae? 6. Quālēs sunt fenestrae? 7. Quālēs sunt iānuae?

**Puella Rōmāna**

An actual Roman painting discovered in Pompeii. This picture, like the one on the opposite page, was painted in colors, somewhat resembling those of the frontispiece

**Nōtā bene**

Quālēs, *of what kind? what kind of? what?* is used when referring to a plural noun.

**DISCUSSION**

**13.** In the sentence *Iūlia est discipula*, what is the subject? In the sentence *Puellae Americānae sunt discipulae*, what is the subject? If both *Iūlia* and *puellae* are used as subjects, in what case are they? Why are the endings different?

Nouns that refer to more than one person or thing are in the plural number. In the story find other words in the plural number that are used as subjects. What endings do these words have? The ending of the nominative case plural is *-ae*.



**Puella Rōmāna**

A noun used as a subject ends in *-a* in the singular, and in *-ae* in the plural. The verb ends in *-t* if the subject is singular, and in *-nt* if the subject is plural.

<p><i>Nominative singular, puella</i> <i>Nominative plural, puellae</i></p>
---

#### RULES

**14.** The subject of a verb is in the nominative case. A predicate noun or predicate adjective is in the nominative case.

## VOCABULARY I

<i>Americāna, American</i>	<i>magistra, teacher</i> (referring to a woman); <i>mistress</i>
<i>aperta, open</i>	
* <i>bona, good</i>	* <i>magna, large, big, great</i>
<i>clausa, closed</i>	<i>mēnsa, table</i>
<i>Cornēlia, Cornelia</i>	* <i>nōn, adv., not</i>
<i>discipula, pupil</i> (referring to a girl)	* <i>parva, small, little</i>
* <i>est, is; sunt, are</i> (see note below)	<i>puella, girl</i>
* <i>et, conj., and</i>	* <i>quoque, conj., also, too</i>
<i>fēmina, woman</i>	<i>schola, school</i>
<i>fenestra, window</i>	* <i>sed, conj., but</i>
<i>iānuā, door</i>	<i>sella, chair, seat, bench</i>
<i>Iūlia, Julia</i>	* <i>stat, stands, stands up; stant, stand, stand up</i>
	<i>sunt</i> (see <i>est</i> )

*Est* means *is* if the subject is expressed, or *he is* or *she is* or *it is* if no subject is expressed. Similarly *sunt* means *are*, or *they are*. In the lesson vocabularies, verbs will be defined as in this vocabulary; but the fuller definitions, in the form explained in this note, are always to be understood.

## 15. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. Pick out the Latin words in the vocabulary with which the following English words are associated:

<i>aperture</i>	<i>scholar</i>	<i>magnify</i>
<i>disciple</i>	<i>magistrate</i>	<i>station</i>
<i>feminine</i>	<i>bonanza</i>	

II. *January*. The word *iānuā* comes from the same root (meaning *going*) as the word *Iānus*, the name of the Roman god Janus. Janus was regarded as the god of doors and entrances, and also of beginnings. Since a beginning implies an ending, he was represented with two faces, one looking forward, one backward. His temple in Rome had doors facing east and west, for the beginning and ending of the day. Since Janus was the god of beginnings, the first month of

the year was dedicated to him. Our word *January* is derived from his name, and suggests that this month is like a door to the new year, facing both ways.



### Iānus

Very appropriately, the Romans pictured the god of beginnings on their earliest coinage. This coin, called an *as*, was made of bronze, and weighed about twelve ounces (the Roman pound); it was worth about twelve cents

### DRILL

*Supply the proper case endings:*

1. Mēnsa est magn.....; sellae sunt parv.....
2. Schol..... sunt magn.....
3. Iānu..... sunt apert.....
4. Fenestr..... est apert.....
5. Discipul..... bon..... stat.
6. Quid est? Sell..... parv..... est.
7. Iūlia et Cornēlia sunt puell..... parv.....
8. Quālis discipul..... Iūlia est? Iūlia bon..... discipul..... est.
9. Discipul..... est puell..... Americān.....
10. Quis stat? Magistr..... stat; discipul..... nōn stant.

## EXERCISE I

*Write in Latin:*

1. American schools are large.
2. The windows are open.
3. The doors are closed.
4. The chairs are small; the table also is small.
5. The teacher is an American woman.
6. The girls are not standing up.
7. A good pupil stands up.
8. Julia and Cornelia are good pupils.

In writing the Latin sentences, always be careful to mark the long vowels. Remember that there is as much difference between *e* and *ē* in Latin as there is between the vowel sounds of *met* and *fête* in English.

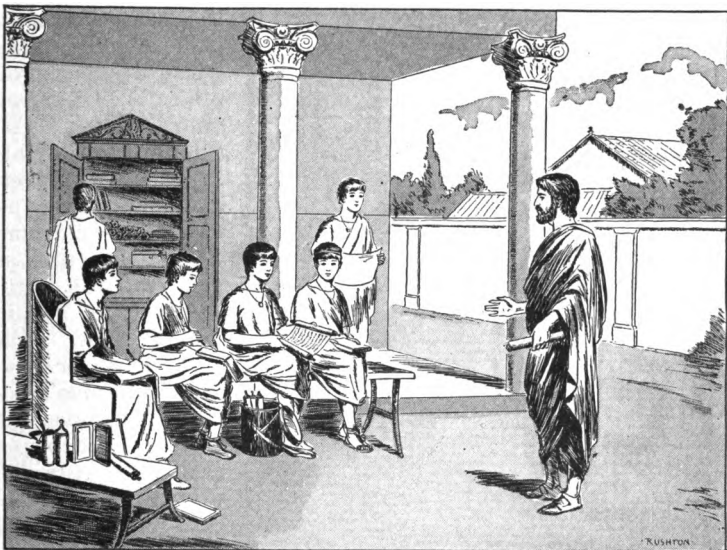
**Magister**

A humorous representation on a Greek vase, showing a school-teacher, stylus in hand

## CHAPTER II

### FIRST DECLENSION, ACCUSATIVE CASE

#### Accusative Singular



#### 16. SCHOLA RŌMĀNA I

*This school*

Schola est schola Rŏmāna. Parva est schola Rŏmāna  
sed magna est schola Americāna. Schola Rŏmāna <sup>door</sup> iānuam  
nŏn habet quod schola est aperta. Antīqua schola <sup>window</sup> fenestram  
nŏn habet quod schola nŏn est tēcta. Antīqua schola mēn-

sam nōn habet. Schola Americāna mēnsam magnam habet. Schola antiq̄ua magistrāma Americānam dēlectat. Schola Rōmāna Iūliam et Cornēliam dēlectat. Cūr schola antiq̄ua magistrāma Americānam dēlectat? Schola antiq̄ua magistrāma Americānam dēlectat quod schola est aperta.



Librī Rōmānī

Books were made in ancient Greece and Rome by writing on parchment or papyrus, with a pen made of split reed, and ink made from a solution of gum and soot. The single pages were glued together into a long, unwieldy strip and rolled about a stick. The reader unrolled with his right hand as he read and rerolled with his left

translating it. In such a case, make enough of a translation to show you what the sentence means, and then read it over again

#### Note to the pupil

17. It is important that you learn from the start to use the passages of Latin text in the way which will teach you most. In preparing your lessons, you should read the Latin selections over, aloud if possible, and each sentence more than once; and as you read the Latin words, you should try to know what they mean *without translating into English*. That is, the Latin selections should be regarded principally as exercises for reading and speaking, and not as exercises in mere translation.

Sometimes you will find that you cannot make yourself understand a sentence without

in Latin, trying to understand it without thinking of the English words. The inflection of your voice as you read will generally tell anyone who is listening whether you are merely reading mechanically, or are understanding as you read. Remember that the Romans used this language in ordinary conversation with one another.

At first it will be hard for you to read in this way. But if you persevere, it will soon become easy and natural.

### 18. Respondē Latinē:

1. Quālis est schola Rōmāna?

2. Quālis est schola

*Why*

Americāna? 3. Cūr schola Rōmāna iānuam nōn habet?

4. Cūr antiq̄ua schola fenestram nōn habet? 5. Quid schola Americāna habet?

6. Quālem mēnsam schola Americāna habet?

*Whom*

7. Quem schola antiq̄ua dēlectat?

8. Quem schola Rōmāna dēlectat?

9. Cūr schola antiq̄ua magistrā Americānam dēlectat?

10. Cūr schola antiq̄ua puellā Rōmānam dēlectat?



### Tabellae

Letters and current records and accounts were written on tablets, which were usually made of wood covered with a layer of wax. The writing was done with a stylus, which was flattened at one end so that the writer, could erase mistakes by smoothing the wax. A raised wooden border kept the wax tablets from rubbing



## Nōtā bene

Quem (accusative singular), *whom?* quid (accusative singular), *what?* quālem (accusative singular), *of what kind? what kind of?* cūr, *why?*

## DISCUSSION

19. In the sentence *Schola Rōmāna iānuam nōn habet*, what is the subject? Are the words *schola* and *iānuam* in this sentence used in the same way? How is *iānuam* used?

In the English sentence *he strikes the ball*, *ball* is said to receive the action of the verb *strikes*. In the same way in the sentences *he has the ball*, *he admires the ball*, we say that *ball* receives the action of the verbs *has*, *admires*, though you may not think there is very much action in these verbs. In all these sentences, *he* is the subject of the verb, and *ball* is the *direct object*, often called simply the *object*, of the verb.

If we see an expression like *he strikes*, *he praises*, we think at once of asking, "What does he strike?" "Whom does he praise?" Such verbs, which need a direct object to make the sentence complete, are called *transitive* verbs. But not all verbs are transitive. Sentences like *he smiles* or *I agree* do not lead us to ask, "What does he smile?" or "Whom do I agree?" These verbs are complete without a direct object. Such verbs are called *intransitive* verbs.

In the Latin sentence quoted above, *Schola Rōmāna iānuam nōn habet*, the word *iānuam* is the direct object of *habet*. Find other words in the story used as direct object. What ending has each of these words? Does each represent one person or thing, or more than one?

The word that receives the action of a transitive verb is called the *direct object* of the verb, and is in the accusative case. In English grammar this case is called the *objective* case. Observe that, in these Latin words, the ending of the accusative singular is **-am**.



### Discipulus tardus

A representation, in low relief, of a Roman school, found near Trier, Germany, an old Roman town. The boy coming late carries his tablets

### Accusative Plural

20.

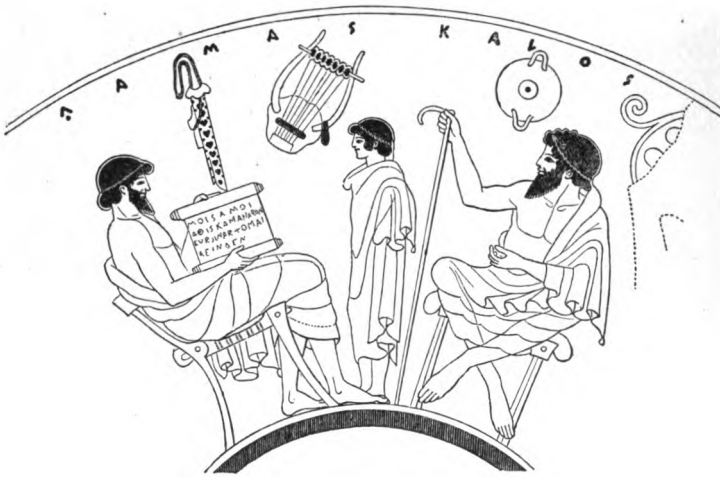
### SCHOLA RŌMĀNA II

Scholae magistram et <sup>girls</sup> *puellās* dēlectant. Antīqua schola Rōmāna est. Nova schola Americāna est. Schola antīqua longās <sup>seats</sup> *sellās* habet. Schola nova parvās sellās habet. Schola Rōmāna <sup>neither</sup> neque iānuam <sup>nor</sup> neque fenestram habet. Schola Americāna <sup>both</sup> et iānuās <sup>and</sup> et fenestrās habet. Antīquae scholae sunt apertae; sed novae scholae sunt tēctae. Schola Rōmāna puellās Americānās dēlectat quod puellae Americānae scholās apertās amant.

21. The sentence *Schola Rōmāna puellās Americānās dēlectat* means literally *the Roman school pleases American girls*; but a better translation would be *American girls like the Roman school*. Expressions with *dēlectat* can often be translated by interchanging the object and the subject and using *likes* or *like*.

### 22. Respondē Latīnē :

1. Quās scholae dēlectant? 2. Quālis est schola Rōmāna
3. Quālēs sellās schola antīqua habet? 4. Quālēs sellās



### Schola antiq̄ua

The Romans modeled much of their education on that of the Greeks. This picture and the one on the opposite page were painted on an old Greek vase, but they tell us much about Roman schools as well

- schola nova habet? 5. Quid schola Americāna habet?  
6. Quās schola Rōmāna dēlectat?

### Nōtā bene

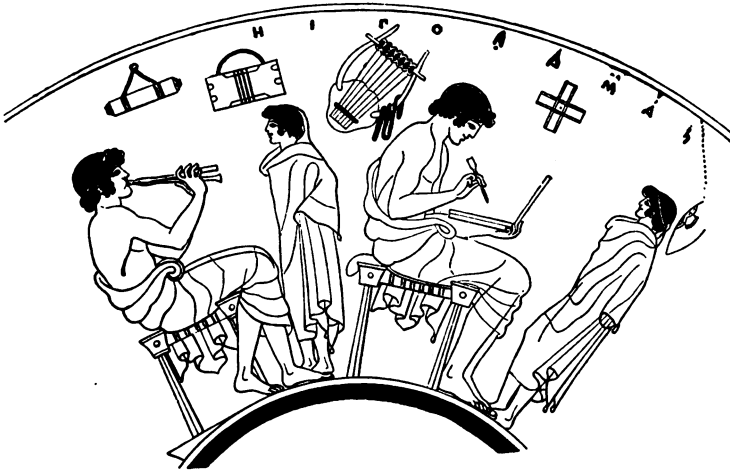
Quālēs (accusative plural), *of what kind? what kind of? quās*  
(accusative plural), *whom?*

Neque . . . neque, *neither . . . nor*

Et . . . et, *both . . . and*

### DISCUSSION

23. In the sentence *Scholae magistram et puellās dēlectant*, how is the word *magistram* used? In what case and number is it? How is the word *puellās* used? If both *magistram* and *puellās* are used as direct objects, in what case are they? Why are the endings different? Find other words in the plural number used as the direct object. What ending do they have? The ending of the accusative case plural is *-ās*.



Schola antiq̄ua

In the scene shown above, a teacher is correcting a boy's exercise tablet with a stylus. Another boy is learning to play the flute. Notice the roll and tablets hanging on the wall. In the picture on the opposite page, the boy is reciting a poem to the teacher, while his attendant listens

*Accusative singular, puellam*  
*Accusative plural, puellās*

RULE

24. The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case.

VOCABULARY II

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| amat, loves, likes; amant,<br>love, like                   | et . . . et, both . . . and  |
| *antīqua, old, ancient                                     | *habet, has; habent, have  |
| *cūr, adv., why  | *longa, long   |
| dēlectat, pleases, delights;<br>dēlectant, please, delight | *neque, conj., and not, nor,<br>neither; neque . . . neque,<br>neither . . . nor |

\**nova*, *new, fresh, recent, modern*

*Rōmāna*, *Roman*; as a noun, *a Roman (woman)*

\**quod*, conj., *because*

*tēcta*, *inclosed, covered*

## 25. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. Pick out the Latin words with which the following English words are associated: *amateur, antique, novice*.

II. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:

1. David and William are *amateur* photographers.
2. *Antique* jewelry is precious.
3. All of you are *novices* in Latin.

### DRILL

*Supply the proper case endings:*

1. Puellae Americān.... scholam Rōmān.... amant.
2. Schol... aperta magistr.... (*sing.*) dēlectat.
3. Schol.... sellās parv.... habent.
4. Magistra est bon....; puellae sunt bon....
5. Antīqua schola et magistr.... et discipul.... dēlectat.

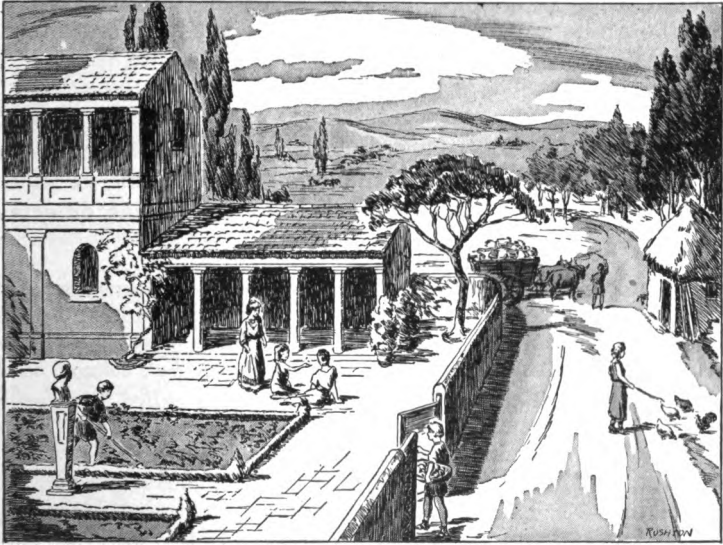
### EXERCISE II

*Write in Latin:*

1. Modern schools are large but ancient schools are small. 2. The Roman school has neither doors nor windows because the school is open. 3. The ancient school has long benches. 4. Both the teacher and the pupils like the ancient school. (*Write: The ancient school pleases . . .*) 5. The American school is new. 6. Why are the windows open? 7. Cornelia and Julia are standing up. 8. The teacher is standing, too. 9. The teacher likes the good pupils; the pupils like a good teacher. 10. Both the woman and the girls are American.

## CHAPTER III

### REVIEW OF NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE LATIN QUESTIONS WITH -NE, NŌNNE, AND NUM



26.

#### VILLA RŌMĀNA

*Is this (or Is that)*

*Estne villa Americāna?*

*Villa nōn est Americāna.*

*Villa est Rōmāna. Villa Rōmāna casās parvās et multam  
terram habet. Villa Rōmāna est villa Cornēliāna. Villa*

*Cornēliāna est longa et lāta. Nōnne villa Cornēliāna est  
magna et pulchra?*

*Isn't Cornelius's country place  
large and beautiful? Villa Cornēliāna est magna et pulchra.*

( 23 )

*The little hut doesn't have columns, does it?*  
**Villa columnās habet. Num casa parva columnās habet?**  
**Casa parva columnās nōn habet.**

**Quis est fēmina? Tullia est fēmina. Nōnne Tullia est Rōmāna? Certē Tullia est Rōmāna. Tullia domina est. Domina multās ancillās habet. Ancillae labōrant. Habetne Tullia filiās? Tullia filiās habet. Cornēlia et Secunda filiae sunt. Stantne Cornēlia et Secunda? Puellae nōn stant sed fēmina stat.**

**Labōrantne agricolae? Agricolae labōrant. Nōnne terra agricolās dēlectat? Terra agricolās dēlectat. Agricolae et terram et silvam amant. Num terram nautae amant? Terram nautae nōn amant. Nautās nōn terra sed aqua dēlectat. Nōnne villa Cornēliāna et Tulliam et filiās dēlectat? Villa Cornēliāna et Tulliam et puellās dēlectat.**

*Sailors don't like the land, do they?*

#### Nōtā bene

I. The word *villa*, which may be translated *villa*, means *farm*, or *country place* or *estate*, referring either to the house or to the whole establishment. If applied to a house it suggests more pretentiousness than *casa*, which means rather *hut*, *cottage*, *shed*.

II. The *villa Cornēliāna* in the story is so called because it belongs to Cornelius. The expression may be translated *Cornelian villa* or, more simply, *Cornelius's villa*.

#### DISCUSSION

27. The form of the English question *Is this an American villa?* does not show whether "yes" or "no" is likely to be the answer. The Latin question *Estne villa Americāna?* is like the English question, in that the speaker cannot tell whether to expect an affirmative or a negative answer.

In Latin, such a question is indicated by the syllable *-ne*. This word is an *enclitic* — that is, it is not used except when joined to the end of another word. The enclitic *-ne* is attached to some emphatic word in the question, often the verb, and this emphatic word is placed first.



Villa antiqua

An ancient mosaic from a Roman province in Africa. Notice the different varieties of fowl kept at a villa

In the English question *Isn't this an American villa?* can you tell what answer is expected? The Latin question *Nōne villa Cornēliāna est magna et pulchra?* is a question of the same kind: the form shows that the answer "yes" is expected.

In English, when we wish to indicate that the answer "no" is expected, we are obliged to change the form of the question altogether. We say, for instance, *The little hut doesn't have columns, does it?* This question is equivalent to the Latin *Num casa parva columnās habet?* That is, the word *num* at the beginning of the sentence shows that a negative answer is expected. The way of showing this in Latin is thus simpler than in English.

**28.** Questions that begin with interrogative words like *quis*, *quālis*, *cūr* cannot ordinarily be answered by "yes" or "no."

There is no word in Latin exactly equivalent to "yes" or "no." To answer "yes," one or more emphatic words





### Agricultūra

This old mosaic shows various scenes from life on a Roman farm

in the question, or the whole question, may be repeated; as, *Habetne Tullia filiās? Habet* (or, *Filiās habet*), *Has Tullia any daughters? Yes.* To answer "no," the emphatic words may be repeated with the addition of *nōn*; as, *Estne villa Americāna? Nōn est*, or *Nōn est Americāna*, or *Villa nōn est Americāna*.

The teacher when reading the questions to the class, and the pupil when reading them aloud during his study or review, should be careful to give them the special inflection which they require. Thus questions with *-ne* and *nōnne* should be spoken with a steadily rising voice, as in English "Is it time to go home?" or "Isn't it time to go home?" and questions with *num* should have the peculiar rise and fall required in the question "It isn't time to go home, is it?" One who has not heard the first word of a question should be able to tell from the rise or fall of voice in the rest of it whether it began with *num*, or with *-ne* or *nōnne*.

Observe that in questions beginning with an interrogative word like *quis*, *quid*, *quālis*, *cūr*, etc., the voice falls at the end, as in "Who is there?"

**29. Respondē Latinē :**

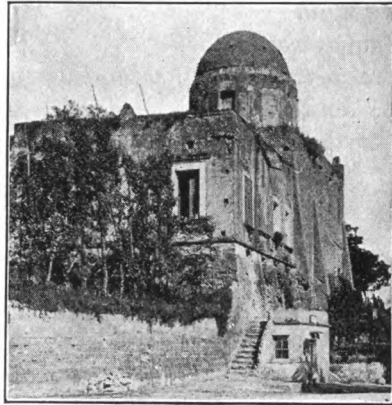
1. Estne villa Rōmāna? 2. Quālis villa Cornēliāna est?  
 3. Habetne villa Rōmāna multam terram? 4. Nōnne villa  
 Rōmāna columnās habet? 5. Num casa columnās habet?  
 6. Quid villa Cornēliāna habet? 7. Nōnne villa Cornēliāna  
 est magna? 8. Num est villa parva?

9. Habetne domina ancillās? 10. Nōnne ancillae labō-  
 rant? 11. Nōnne Tullia  
 filiās habet? 12. Num  
 puellae stant?

13. Nōnne agricolae la-  
 bōrant? 14. Quid agri-  
 colae amant? 15. Quid  
 nautae amant?

**RULES**

**30.** The enclitic *-ne* is used in questions intended to show by their form that the speaker cannot tell whether to expect "yes" or "no" as the answer.

**Villa antiqua**

This old Roman villa in Italy is still in use

The enclitic *-ne* is attached to the most important word of the question, usually the verb, and this important verb is placed first in the sentence, as in the following examples:

*Labōratne agricola? Does the farmer work? or, Is the farmer working? Habetne domina ancillās? Does the mistress have maidservants? or, Has the mistress maidservants?*

**31.** The question word *nōnne* is used to introduce questions to which the speaker expects the answer "yes."

*Nōnne agricola labōrat? Doesn't the farmer work? or, Isn't the farmer working? Nōnne villa Rōmāna columnās habet? Doesn't the Roman villa have columns? or, Hasn't the Roman villa (any) columns?*

32. The question word *num* is used to introduce questions to which the speaker expects the answer "no."

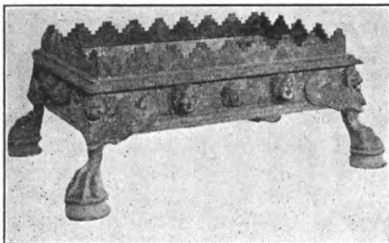
*Num agricola labōrat? The farmer isn't working, is he?*

### VOCABULARY III

<i>agricola, farmer</i>	<i>*labōrat, works; labōrant, work</i>
<i>ancilla, maidservant, servant (referring to a woman), maid</i>	<i>*lāta, wide, broad</i>
<i>*aqua, water</i>	<i>*multa, much; multae, many</i>
<i>casa, cottage, hut, shed, little house</i>	<i>nauta, sailor</i>
<i>certē, adv., certainly, surely, indeed</i>	<i>pulchra, beautiful, pretty, handsome</i>
<i>columna, column</i>	<i>Secunda, Secunda, second daughter of Cornelius</i>
<i>Cornēliāna, of or belonging to Cornelius, Cornelius's, Cornelian</i>	<i>*silva, forest, woods</i>
<i>domina, mistress, lady</i>	<i>*terra, land, earth</i>
<i>filia, daughter</i>	<i>Tullia, Tullia, wife of Cornelius</i>
	<i>villa, villa, farm, country place, country house</i>

### 33. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. Pick out the words in the vocabulary with which the following words are associated: *aquarium, dominate, multiply, nautical.*



*Courtesy of The Pennsylvania University Museum*

#### Fociulus

Roman homes were heated by small charcoal braziers which could be carried from room to room

II. What is meant by the phrase *terra firma*?

34. *Cornelia.* In ancient Rome, a free man always had at least two names, corresponding roughly to Christian name (or given name) and surname (or family name). The latter was the

second name, and was called the *nōmen*; it showed the *gēns* or tribe to which the man belonged. Frequently he had a third name showing his family, which was placed not before the *nōmen*, as in modern usage, but after it. Thus Publius Cornelius Scipio would be the name of a man whom we should call Mr. Cornelius, whose first name was Publius, and who was also called Scipio because he belonged to the Scipio family of the Cornelian tribe.

If Cornelius had a daughter, her name would be *Cornēlia*, the feminine form of the *nōmen* of her father, *Cornēlius*. If he had other daughters, they would all bear the name *Cornēlia*, just as all the daughters of John Smith would be called Miss Smith; but they would be called by their own individual names also. These names would often be in the form *Cornēlia Secunda*, *Cornelia the Second*, *Cornēlia Tertia*, *Cornelia the Third*, etc.; or, more simply, *Secunda*, *Tertia*, etc.



Foculus

### DRILL

*Supply the proper case endings:*

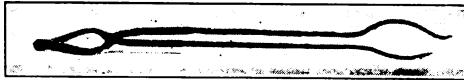
1. Tullia fili.... bon.... amat.
2. Silva pulchra domin.... Rŏmān.... dēlectat.
3. Fēmin.... vill.... et ancill.... habet.
4. Ancill.... labōrant quod domin.... amant.
5. Vill.... magn.... est pulchr....
6. Agricolae silv.... amant.
7. Terra et silva agricol.... dēlectant.
8. Dēlectatne aqua naut....?
9. Nōnne fenestra est apert....?
10. Num casae sunt pulchr....?

### EXERCISE III

*Write in Latin:*

1. Cornelius's villa has many columns.
2. The beautiful villa is both long and wide.
3. The villa pleases the mistress because it is large.
4. Why does the woman love the

girls? 5. Tullia loves the girls because the girls are (her) daughters. 6. The girls are not working, are they? 7. Do not the maidservants work? Yes, indeed, they do (Certainly, they work). 8. Does the new cottage please the farmer? 9. Land delights farmers but water delights sailors. 10. Is the forest large? No; (it) is neither long nor wide.



*Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art*

### **Forceps ignifer**

**The Romans showed considerable skill in designing iron implements like these fire tongs**

## CHAPTER IV

### FIRST DECLENSION, GENITIVE CASE



35.

#### MARCELLA

Puella est Marcella. Marcella est filia <sup>of Terentia</sup> Terentiae.

<sup>of the house</sup> Terentia est domina villae. Marcella est laeta quod novam tunicam habet. Tunica Marcellae est longa et alba. Marcella corbulam portat. Marcellae corbula est pulchra.

<sup>of the goddesses</sup> Marcella statuās deārum amat. <sup>full of statues</sup> Villa est plēna statuārum deārum. Corbula Marcellae est rosārum albārum plēna. Marcella statuās deārum ōrnat; corōnae deās dēlectant.

( 31 )

**36. Respondē Latinē:***Whose*

1. Cuius filia est Marcella? 2. Cuius tunica est longa et alba? 3. Cuius corbula est pulchra?

4. Nōne Marcella statuās deārum amat? 5. Estne villa plēna statuārum? 6. Nōne corbula Marcellae est plēna rosārum? 7. Ōrnatne Marcella statuās? 8. Quārum statuās Marcella ōrnat? 9. Quās corōnae puellae dēlectant?

**Nōtā bene**

Cuius (interrogative pronoun in the genitive singular), *whose?*

Quārum (interrogative pronoun in the genitive plural), *whose?*

**DISCUSSION**

37. In the sentence *Marcella est filia Terentiae*, whose daughter is Marcella? In the sentence *Tunica Marcellae est longa et alba*, whose tunic is long and white? In the sentence *Marcellae corbula est pulchra*, whose basket is beautiful? What do the words *Terentiae* and *Marcellae* show? Does each word refer to one person, or to more than one person? What is the ending of these words? With what ending is possession indicated in English? In Latin, possession is indicated by a case having the ending *-ae*; this case is called the *genitive case*. In English grammar, this case is called the *possessive case*.

In the sentence *Marcella statuās deārum amat*, whose statues does Marcella like? How is the word *deārum* translated? In the sentence *Villa est plēna statuārum deārum*, which word tells what the villa is full of? How is this word translated? Does each of these words refer to one person or thing, or to more than one? Find other words with the same ending and give their meanings. The ending *-ārum* is the ending of the genitive plural.

The genitive case is used to answer the question *whose?* or *of whom?* or *of what?*

*Genitive singular, puellae*  
*Genitive plural, puellārum*

### RULE

38. The genitive case is usually equivalent, in English, to a prepositional phrase introduced by "of," or to the apostrophe and *s* as used in the English possessive. It often denotes possession.

### READING LESSON

#### 39. PUELLAE LAETAE

Cornēlia et Secunda sunt filiae Tulliae. Tullia et filiae villam pulchram et ancillās multās habent. Vita filiārum Tulliae est laeta quod Tullia filiās amat. Ancillae Tulliae sunt laetae quod Tullia est benigna domina. Vita Tulliae est laeta quod et filiae et ancillae sunt bonae. Ancillae nōn semper labōrant. Saepe puellae et ancillae ambulant. Tullia est magistra filiārum et ancillārum. Puellae sunt laetae; puellae Tulliam magistrā amant.



Puella Rōmāna

### VOCABULARY IV

*alba, white*

*ambulat, walks, takes a walk;*

*ambulant, walk, take a walk*

*benigna, kind*

*corbula, little basket*

*corōna, garland, wreath*



<i>dea, goddess</i>	<i>rosa, rose</i>
<i>laeta, happy, cheerful</i>	<i>*saepe, adv., often</i>
<i>Marcella, Marcella, the</i>	<i>*semper, adv., always</i>
daughter of Terentia	<i>statua, statue</i>
<i>ornat, decorates, adorns;</i>	<i>Terentia, Terentia: the</i>
<i>ornant, decorate, adorn</i>	name of a Roman lady
<i>plēna, full</i>	<i>tunica, tunic: a kind of</i>
<i>*portat, carries, brings; por-</i>	garment
<i>tant, carry, bring</i>	<i>*vīta, life</i>

#### 40. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. Pick out the Latin words in the vocabulary with which the following are associated: *benign, vital, portable, ornate.*

II. *Ambulance.* This word comes from a French phrase *hôpital ambulat*, meaning literally *walking hospital*. The French phrase is derived from the Latin.



Courtesy of The Metropolitan  
Museum of Art

#### Pupa Rōmāna

#### DRILL

Supply the proper case endings:

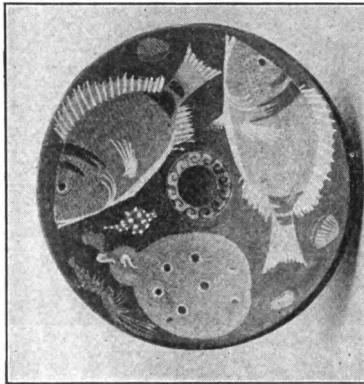
1. Fīliae agricol.... (*pl.*) sunt laetae.
2. Villa Tulli.... est pulchra.
3. Statuā fēmin.... (*sing.*) Rōmān.... est magna.
4. Casa ancill.... (*pl.*) dominam dēlectat.
5. Ancilla corbulam Marcell.... portat.
6. Corbula est plēna ros....

#### EXERCISE IV

Write in Latin:

1. Marcella's tunic is new.
2. The little girl is taking a walk.
3. Marcella is not a farmer's daughter.
4. Marcella is the daughter of Terentia.
5. Terentia's maids are happy because she is a

kind mistress. 6. The life of a maidservant is not always happy. 7. Marcella and Terentia have baskets full of white roses. 8. The maids are carrying beautiful garlands. 9. Terentia and (her) daughter often decorate the statues of the goddesses. 10. Do the garlands please the goddesses? Yes, surely.



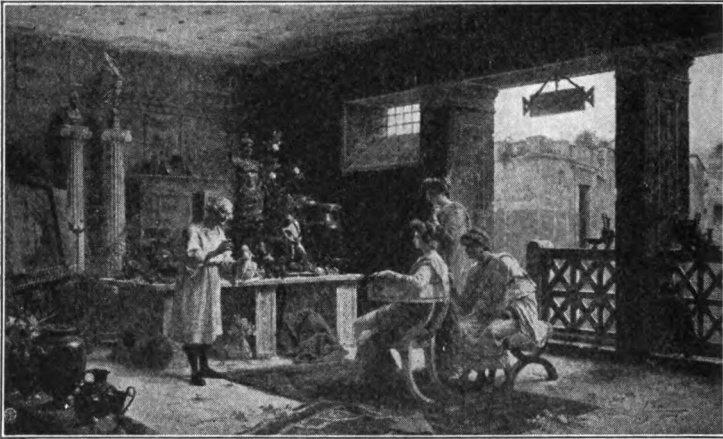
*Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art*

**Patera Rōmāna**

The hole in the center was filled  
with sauce for the fish

## CHAPTER V

### FIRST DECLENSION, DATIVE CASE



41.

#### GALBAE TABERNA

Galba magnam tabernam habet. Taberna est plēna statuārum et amphorārum. Taberna fēminās Rōmānās dēlectat. Hodiē Tullia, Claudia, Camilla tabernam Galbae intrant. Galba fēminās videt. Quid <sup>to Tullia</sup> Tulliae dēmōnstrat? Tulliae parvam statuam dēmōnstrat, sed Tullia statuam nōn dēsīderat. Galba Claudiae statuam dēmōnstrat. Claudia statuam spectat et dēsīderat. Itaque fēmina Galbae pecūniam dat. Camilla quoque statuam deae dēsīderat. Galba Camillae rubram Diānae statuam dēmōnstrat. Statua Camillam dēlectat; Camilla Galbae pecūniam dat.

( 36 )

Tum Galba <sup>to the Roman women</sup> *fēminīs Rōmānīs* amphoram dēmōnstrat; amphora pulchra fēminās dēlectat. Tullia filiās vocat. Tum Galba <sup>to the daughters</sup> *filiābus* Tulliae amphoram dēmōnstrat. Amphora puellās quoque dēlectat. Cornēlia et Secunda tabernam Galbae amant. Interdum Galba filiābus Tulliae parvam statuam dat. Galba puellīs fābulās saepe nārrat. Cornēlia et Secunda fābulās amant. Itaque fēminae et puellae tabernam Galbae saepe intrant.

#### 42. Respondē Latinē:

1. Quid Galba habet? 2. Cui Galba parvam statuam dēmōnstrat? 3. Num dēsiderat Tullia statuam? 4. Cui fēmina pecūniam dat? 5. Cui Galba statuam Diānae dēmōnstrat? 6. Nōne Camilla Galbae pecūniam dat?

7. Quid Galba fēminīs dēmōnstrat? 8. Quās Tullia vocat? 9. Dēmōnstratne Galba filiābus Tulliae amphoram? 10. Quibus Galba parvam statuam dat? 11. Quibus Galba fābulās nārrat?

Nōtā bene

Cui (sing.), *to whom? to what?* quibus (pl.), *to whom? to what?*

#### DISCUSSION

43. In the sentence Galba Tulliae parvam statuam dēmōnstrat, which word indicates to whom Galba shows the statue? In the sentence Fēmina Galbae pecūniam dat, which word indicates to whom the woman gives the money?

The word Tulliae tells to whom the statue is shown. The word Galbae tells to whom the money is given. The word in a sentence which shows to whom something is given, shown, or told is called the *indirect object* of the verb. Such a word is in the *dative* case.

How does each of these words end? Is Tulliae singular or plural? Observe that the word naming the indirect object ends in *-ae*, the ending of the dative in the singular.

Observe that the dative ending shown in *Tulliae* is the same as the genitive ending. Perhaps you wonder how the Romans knew which case was meant. Remember, however, that Latin was a spoken language as well as a written language, and that when a form could be interpreted in two ways, the hearer could usually

tell what was meant from the inflection of the voice, and from the rest of the sentence. You probably do not realize how often you use forms in English that could be interpreted in more than one way. If you hear a sentence beginning "The boys . . ." you may find that these words turn out to be:

Nominative plural, as in *The boys came home*; or

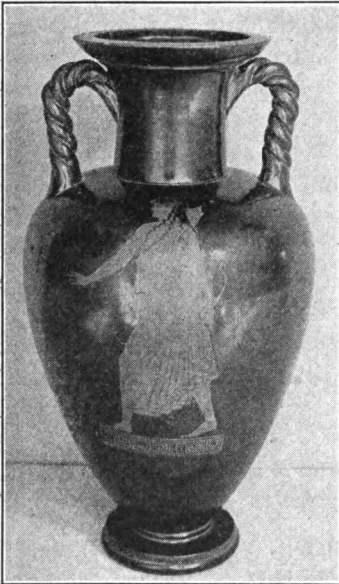
Genitive plural, as in *The boys' game was spoiled*; or

Genitive singular, as in *The boy's dog is lost*; or

A contraction for "The boy is," as in *The boy's a runner*; or

A contraction for "The boy has," as in *The boy's gone*.

Even if you see the words "The boy's" written or printed, you cannot tell which of the last three forms is meant. But you are not confused by the uncertainty: the rest of the sentence makes the meaning clear. So also in a Latin sentence.



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art

### Amphora

The decoration on this jar of glazed terra cotta is a picture of Hercules. Jars like this were sold in shops like Galba's

44. There are two ways in English of expressing the idea contained in the dative case. It may be expressed by using a phrase beginning with *to*; or *to* may not be used at all; as, *Galba shows the statue to Tullia*, or *Galba shows Tullia the statue*. In Latin the indirect object usually precedes the direct object.

In the sentence *Tum Galba fēminis Rōmānis amphoram dēmōnstrat*, to whom does Galba show the jar? How is *fēminis* used? Is this word singular or plural? What ending does it have? The dative plural of nouns in the first



### Taberna Rōmāna

In this shop of a Roman pork butcher, you may see the butcher at work with cleaver and chopping block. Various cuts of meat hang from the nails. The butcher's wife keeps the accounts

declension ends in *-is*. What other nouns in the story are in the dative plural? With what verbs are they used?

45. What is the dative plural of *fīlia*? *Fīliābus* is an exceptional form and is used to distinguish the dative plural of *fīlia* from *fīliis*, the dative plural of the word for *son*. *Dea* also has the ending *-ābus* for the dative plural.

*Dative singular, puellae*  
*Dative plural, puellis*

### RULE

46. The indirect object of a transitive verb is in the dative case.

## READING LESSON

47.

## DIANA

Camilla filiabus rubram Diānae statuam dēmōnstrat. Puellae statuam spectant; tum Camilla filiabus fābulam nārrat:

"Diāna est dea silvārum et lūnae. Et agricolae et nautae Diānam laudant. Agricolae Diānae corōnās saepe dant quod dea silvās cūrat. Diāna, dea lūnae, nautās dēlectat quod lūna nautīs viam dēmōnstrat. Itaque nautae quoque deae corōnās dant."

Filiae Camillae fābulam amant. Quod lūna et silvae filiās dēlectant, puellae deam laudant et statuam deae ōnant.

## VOCABULARY V

amphora, jar

\*cūrat, cares for

\*dat, gives, bestows

\*dēmōnstrat, points out,  
shows

\*dēsīderat, longs for, desires,  
wants

fābula, story

hodiē, today

interdum, sometimes

intrat, enters, goes into

itaque, and so, therefore

\*laudat, praises

lūna, moon

nārrat, tells



Diāna

\*pecūnia, money, wealth  
rubra, red

\*spectat, looks at, watches  
taberna, shop

\*tum, then, thereupon

\*via, street, road, way

\*videt, sees

\*vocat, calls, summons

In this lesson proper names which have the same form in English as in the Latin nominative do not appear in the vocabulary. These names, and others like them occurring in later lessons, are given in the general vocabulary at the end of the book.

#### 48. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. *Lunatic*. The word *lunatic* comes from the Latin word *lūna*, *moon*. It was formerly an adjective, accented



**Pecūnia Rōmāna**

One kind of cattle, a pig, on a piece of ancient Roman bronze money. Money shaped and stamped like this was probably not in circulation, but was used for some ceremonial purpose, such as an offering to the gods

on the second syllable, *lu-nat'ic*, like *dra-mat'ic*, and meant *moonstruck*. In ancient times continuous exposure to moonlight was supposed to cause insanity.

II. *Pecuniary*. The word *pecuniary* comes from the Latin word *pecūnia*, *money*, and means *pertaining to money*. *Pecūnia* comes from a Latin word meaning *cattle*. Cattle were used as a medium of exchange in ancient times, and also as a unit of value, very much as we use money.



## DRILL

*Supply the proper case endings:*

1. Interdum domina Rōmāna fili.... fābulās longās nārrat.
2. Puellae fēmin.... (*pl.*) amphorās dant.
3. Ancillae Cornēli.... et Secund.... rosās dēmōnstrant.
4. Ancillae ros.... (*pl.*) aquam saepe dant.
5. Claudia de.... (*pl.*) corōnās dat.
6. Hodiē Galba puell.... bon.... (*sing.*) fābulam nārrat.
7. Ancilla domin.... (*sing.*) casam dēmōnstrat.
8. Domina ancill.... (*sing.*) pecūniam dat.

## EXERCISE V

*Write in Latin:*

1. Camilla's story pleases (her) daughters. 2. The girls praise Diana and decorate the new statue. 3. Farmers praise Diana because she cares for the woods. 4. Sailors praise the goddess of the moon because the moon points out (their) way. 5. Today Tullia and (her) daughters go into Galba's shop. 6. Tullia looks at jars but the girls look at statues of Diana. 7. Cornelia and Secunda want a red statue; and so they call Tullia. 8. The girls show the statue to Tullia. 9. Then Tullia gives Galba money and Galba gives the statue to the girls. 10. Galba sometimes tells stories to Tullia's daughters.



**Pecūnia Rōmāna**

This Roman coin (shown in twice actual size) was a gold piece of sixty sesterces. It was probably issued during Rome's first war with Carthage. Hence it bears a head of Mars on one side

CHAPTER VI  
DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES



49. DOMINA BENIGNA I

Rosa, serva Secundae, nōn est Rōmāna. Patria Rosae est Graecia. Rosa est serva dominae Rōmānae quod Graecia est prōvincia Rōmāna. Graecia pulchra <sup>to Rose</sup> Rosae est cāra. Rosa patriam saepe dēsiderat; sed Rosa est laeta quod domina est servae amīca. Secunda, domina parva, servae est cāra.

Anna est serva Cornēliae. Crēta est patria Annae. Crēta est insula magna. Insula nōn est Italiae proxima.

*Īnsula est Graeciae proxima. Anna Crētam amat et Crēta Annae est cāra. Sed Cornēlia quoque Annae est cāra et cotidiē Anna Cornēliam cūrat.*

Cornēlia et Secunda servīs sunt amīcae. Saepe puellae et servae parvās tabernās intrant. Tabernās paene cotidiē intrant. Tabernae et *puellis* et *servīs* sunt grātae. Soleae et tunicae novae servīs sunt grātae. Statuae deārum puellis sunt grātae quod deae filiābus Tulliae sunt cārae.



*Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art*

**Monīle ex aurō et  
amethystīs**

#### 50. Respondē Latinē:

1. Estne Rosa domina Rōmāna?
2. Cui est Graecia cāra?
3. Cui est domina amīca?
4. Num Crēta est proxima Italiae?
5. Cui est Crēta cāra?
6. Cui est Cornēlia cāra?
7. Suntne Cornēlia et Secunda amīcae servīs?
8. Nōnne sunt tabernae puellis grātae?
9. Quibus sunt soleae novae grātae?
10. Quibus sunt statuae deārum grātae?

#### DISCUSSION

51. In the sentence *Graecia pulchra Rosae est cāra*, to whom is beautiful Greece dear? In the sentence *Domina est servae amīca*, to whom is the mistress kind? In the sentence *Īnsula est Graeciae proxima*, to what is the island nearest? In what case are *Rosae*, *servae*, and *Graeciae*?

#### RULE

52. The dative case is used with the Latin adjectives *cāra*, *amīca*, *grāta*, *proxima*.

## READING LESSON

53.

## DOMINA BENIGNA II

Hodiē Tullia et filiae novam tabernam intrant. Taberna nova est proxima tabernae Galbae. Cornēlia et Secunda tunicās et soleās maximē dēsiderant. Tunicae rubrae sunt Cornēliae grātae sed tunicae albae Secundae sunt grātae. Puellae sunt Tulliae cārae. Itaque Tullia filiābus multās et novās tunicās dat. Hodiē Tullia Cornēliae tunicam rubram et Secundae tunicam albam dat. Soleae rubrae et Cornēliae et Secundae sunt grātae. Itaque Tullia puellis novās et rubrās soleās dat.

Interdum domina benigna Rosae et Annae novās tunicās dat, quod servae filiābus sunt cārae. Tunicae novae servis sunt grātae quod servae novās tunicās rārō habent. Interdum Tullia servis soleās novās quoque dat. Soleae novae Rosae et Annae sunt grātae quod paucae servae Rōmānae soleās habent.

## VOCABULARY VI

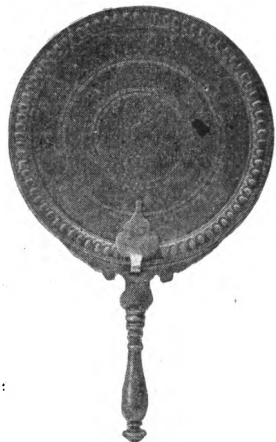
*amīca, <i>friendly, kind</i> cāra, <i>dear</i>	*paene, <i>adv. almost, nearly,</i> <i>hardly</i>
*cotīdiē, <i>adv., daily, every day</i> Crēta, <i>Crete</i>	patria, <i>native land, country</i>
Graecia, <i>Greece</i>	*paucae, <i>few</i>
*grāta, <i>pleasing</i>	*prōvincia, <i>province</i>
*īnsula, <i>island</i>	proxima, <i>next, very near,</i> <i>near by</i>
Italia, <i>Italy</i>	rārō, <i>adv., seldom</i>
*maximē, <i>adv., especially,</i> <i>very greatly</i>	serva, <i>slave girl</i>
	solea, <i>sandal</i>

54.

## LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. *Persona grata.* This phrase, often used in English; consists of the two Latin words *persōna*, *person* and *grāta*, *acceptable*, and means *one who is acceptable or pleasing to others.*

II. *Peninsula*. This word comes from two Latin words *paene*, *almost* and *insula*, *island*. It therefore means *almost an island*. The first element of this word is seen also in *penult*, from *paene*, *almost*, and *ultima*, *last*. The *penult* is therefore *almost the last (syllable)*; that is, the *next to the last (syllable)*.



*Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art*

### Speculum argenteum

The highly polished metal surface served to reflect the image, as does the silver on the glass of a modern mirror

### DRILL

*Supply the proper case endings:*

1. Tabernae pulchrae fēmin....  
Rōmān.... (*sing.*) sunt grātae.
2. Taberna vill.... Tulliae nōn est proxima.
3. Deae fēmin.... (*pl.*) semper sunt cārae.
4. Corōnae de.... (*pl.*) sunt grātae.
5. Italia Crēt.... nōn est proxima.
6. Īnsulae magnae Itali.... sunt proximae.
7. Italia fēmin... Rōmān.... (*pl.*) est cāra.
8. Fēminae fili.... (*pl.*) semper sunt cārae.

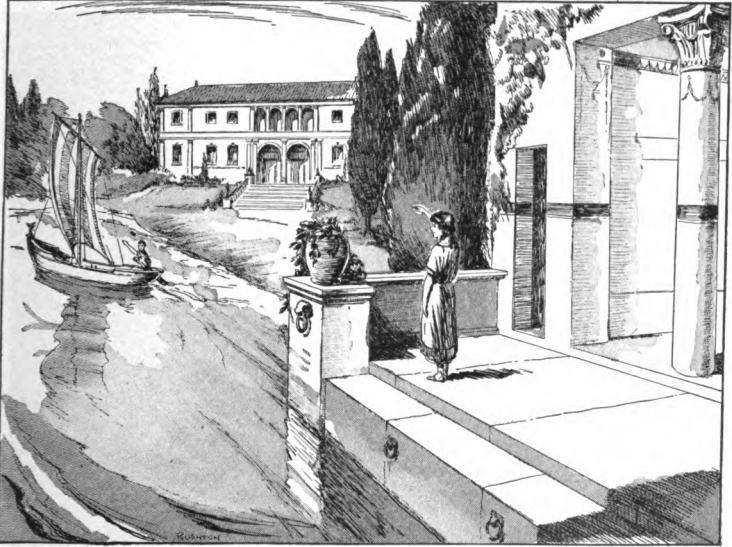
### EXERCISE VI

*Write in Latin:*

1. There are a few large islands very near to Italy.
2. Greece is a province of Italy. 3. Crete is the slave girl's native land. 4. Anna longs for Crete almost every day.
5. The little mistress is friendly to Anna; and so Anna is happy. 6. Tullia is dear to her daughters because she is kind. 7. Tullia often gives the girls tunics and sandals.
8. The girls especially want red sandals. 9. The new sandals are pleasing to Cornelia and Secunda. 10. A Roman mistress seldom gives sandals to (her) slave girls.

## CHAPTER VII

### ABLATIVE WITH *Ā* (*AB*), *EX* (*Ē*), *IN*, *CUM*



55.

#### LAECA POĒTA I

Laeca poēta villam pulchram *in Italiā* habet. In villā Laeca *cum filiā Iuliā* habitat. Aqua est proxima villae. In aquā poēta nāviculam rubram habet. Poēta *ex villā* saepe properat. Nunc in nāviculā est. Tum *ab orā* poēta nāvigat.

Silvae quoque sunt proximae villae. *In silvis* Laeca saepe ambulat. Poētae silvās et aquam maximē amant quod in silvis et in aquā multās et pulchrās pictūrās poētae vident. Poētae ā silvis et ab aquā properant et fābulās nārrant.

(47)

Iūlia in villā labōrat. Fēminae et puellae Rōmānae in villis saepe labōrant. Noctū Iūlia ex villā properat. Tum Iūlia cum Laecā in silvis ambulat. Interdum poēta et filia ex silvis properant et in ōrā stant. Laeca et Iūlia stēllās et lūnam spectant. Tandem Laeca et Iūlia ab ōrā ambulant et in villā iterum sunt.

### 56. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Ubi <sup>Where</sup> Laeca villam habet?
2. Ubi poēta cum Iūliā habitat?
3. Estne aqua proxima villae?
4. Ubi est nāvicula poētae?
5. Unde <sup>Whence</sup> poēta saepe properat?
6. Ubi poēta est?
7. Unde poēta nāvīgat?
8. Nōnne sunt silvae proximae villae?
9. Quid poētae in silvis et in aquā vident?
10. Unde poētae properant?
11. Ubi Iūlia labōrat?
12. Unde Iūlia noctū properat?
13. Ubi Iūlia cum Laecā ambulat?
14. Unde poēta et filia properant?
15. Quōcum <sup>With whom</sup> poēta ambulat?

Nōtā bene

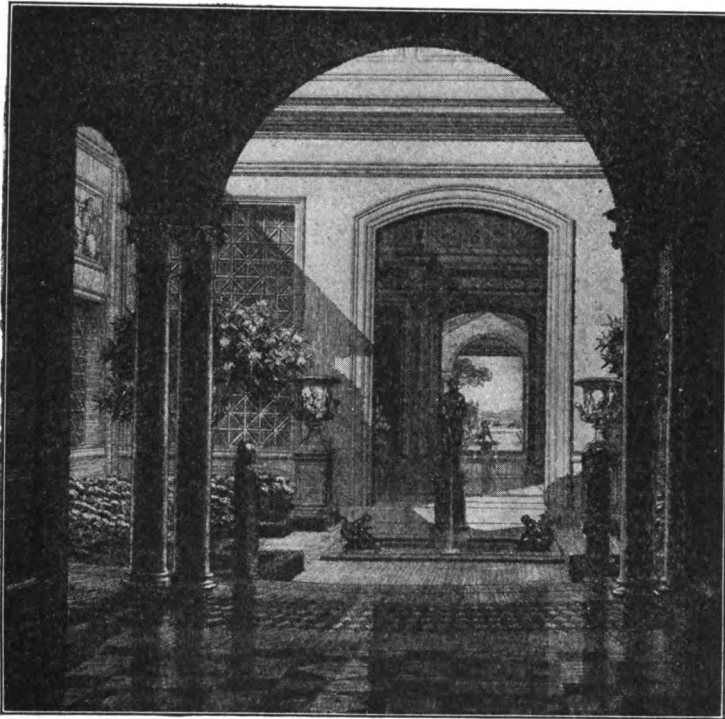
Ubi, *where? in what place?* unde, *whence? from what place?* quōcum, *with whom?*

### DISCUSSION

57. In the sentence *Laeca villam pulchram in Italiā habet*, what words tell us where the villa is? In the sentence *In villā Laeca cum Iūliā habitat*, what words tell where Laeca lives? Of what do these phrases consist? What is the ending of each noun in the phrases? Do the nouns refer to one thing or to more than one? *Place in which* may be expressed by the preposition *in* and a noun with the ending *-ā*.

In the sentence *Poēta ex villā saepe properat*, what words tell out of what place the poet hurries? Of what does this phrase consist? What is the ending of the noun in this phrase? *Place out of which* may be expressed by the preposition *ex* and a noun ending in *-ā*.

In the sentence *Tum poēta ab ōrā nāvīgat*, what words tell from what place the poet sails? What preposition is used? *Place from which* may be expressed by the preposition *ab* and a noun ending in *-ā*. The prepositions in mean-



Clāra villa Rōmāna

This picture shows an artist's reconstruction of the villa of the Emperor Hadrian at Tivoli. Roman architects often designed their buildings so that beautiful light effects, like that in the rooms shown, could be obtained

ing *in* or *on*, *ab* meaning *from*, and *ex* meaning *out of*, are used with nouns having the ending *-ā*. The *-ā* is the ending of the ablative case singular, and this case is used here to show *place in which*, *place out of which*, and *place from which*.



The phrases with **in** and the ablative case answer the question *where?* The Latin word for *where* is *ubi*. The phrases with **ex** and the ablative and **ab** and the ablative answer the question *whence?* or *where from?* or *from what place?* The Latin word for *whence* is **unde**.

In the sentence **In silvīs Laeca saepe ambulat**, what phrase shows where Laeca often walks? In the sentence **Poētae ā silvīs properant**, what phrase tells from what place the poets hasten? In the sentence **Interdum poēta et filia ex silvīs properant**, what phrase tells out of what place the poet and his daughter hasten? How do the nouns in these phrases differ in form from the nouns in the previous phrases? How do they differ in meaning? The ending of the ablative singular in the first declension is **-ā**; the ending in the plural is **-īs**.

In the sentence **Tum Iūlia cum Laecā in silvīs ambulat**, what phrase shows with whom Julia walks? The preposition **cum** governs the ablative case and shows accompaniment.

**58.** *Dea* and *fīlia*, however, have the ablative ending **-ābus** in the plural, just like the dative.

<p><i>Ablative singular, puellā</i>  <i>Ablative plural, puellis</i></p>
--

## RULES

**59.** *Place in which* is usually expressed by the ablative with the preposition **in**.

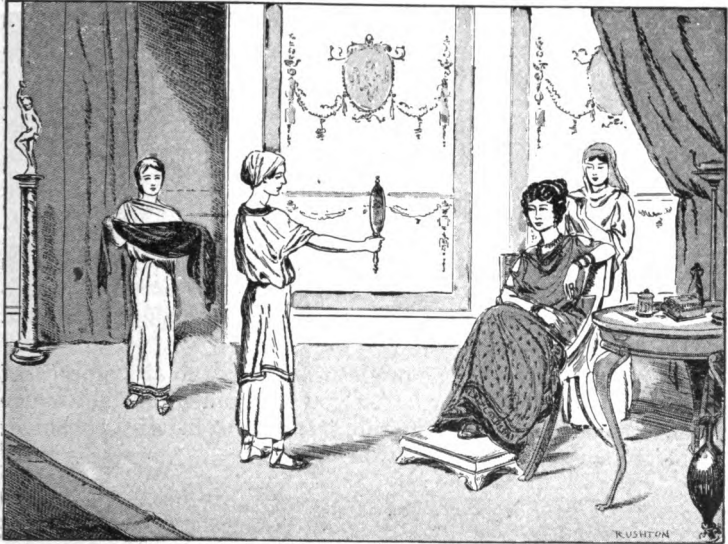
**60.** *Place from which* or *away from which* is usually expressed by the ablative with the preposition **ā (ab)**; *place out of which* by the ablative with the preposition **ex (ē)**.

61. *Accompaniment* is usually expressed by the ablative with the preposition *cum*.

Nōtā bene

For the names of cities, a slightly different rule is required for *place in which* and *place from which*, as explained in §76.

### READING LESSON



62.

### SERVAE CLAUDIAE

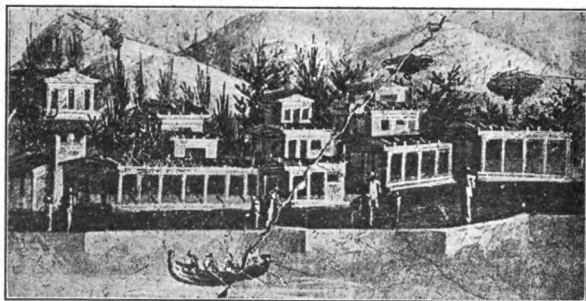
Claudia est domina multarum servarum. Servae Claudiae in terrā et in villā cotidiē labōrant. Claudia servis cāra est quod est domina benigna. Servae cēnam parant et villam ōrnant. Sed servae Claudiae nōn semper labōrant. Noctū servae ē casis properant et in ōrā et in silvis ambulant. Lūna clāra et stēllae pulchrae servis dēfessis sunt grātae. Tandem Claudia servās vocat. Tum ex silvis et ab ōrā servae properant.

## VOCABULARY VII

- \***ā** (ab), prep. (with abl.),  
*from, away from*  
**cēna**, *dinner*  
**clāra**, *bright, famous*
- \***cum**, prep. (with abl.), *with*
- \***dēfessa**, *tired, exhausted*
- \***ex** (ē), prep. (with abl.),  
*out of*  
**habitat**, *lives, dwells*
- \***in**, prep. (with abl.), *in, on*  
**iterum**, adv., *again, a second*  
*time*  
**nāvicula**, *little boat, skiff*
- \***nāvigat**, *sails, goes sailing*
- \***noctū**, adv., *at night*
- \***nunc**, adv., *now*  
**ōra**, *coast, shore*
- \***parat**, *prepares*  
**pictūra**, *picture*  
**poēta**, *poet*  
**properat**, *hastens, hurries*  
**stēlla**, *star*
- tandem**, adv., *finally, at*  
*length*
- \***ubi**, adv., *where*
- \***unde**, adv., *whence*

Note that **in silvā** means *in the forest*; **in ōrā**, *on the shore*. The expression **in aquā**, as used in § 55, means *on the water*, as you can tell from the context; but in a different context it could mean *in the water*.

You will usually find the preposition **ā** written **ab** before words beginning with a vowel or *h*; **ex** you will sometimes find written **ē** before a consonant. A safe rule is to write **ā** before a consonant, **ab** before a vowel or *h*, and **ex** always.



**Villa Rōmāna**

A villa painted on the wall of a house at Pompeii

## 63. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. Pick out the Latin words in the vocabulary with which the following words are associated: *habitat, navigable, nocturnal, picturesque, stellar*.

II. Explain the meaning of these words in the following sentences:

1. Water is the *habitat* of some birds.
2. The lake is not *navigable* in midwinter.
3. A bat is a *nocturnal* animal.
4. The lighted tower is *picturesque*.
5. John had the *stellar* role in that play.

III. *Tandem* as an English word was originally applied jokingly to a team of two horses harnessed one behind the other; that is, arranged "at length" instead of side by side. Later it was applied to a bicycle for two or more riders, one behind the other.

## DRILL

*Supply case endings, singular or plural as you think proper:*

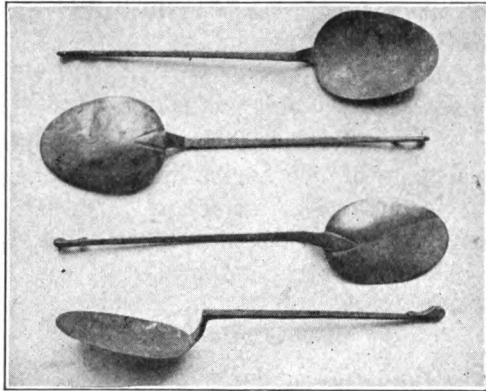
1. Iūlia, filia Laecae, in vill.... labōrat.
2. Laeca nāviculam in aqu.... videt.
3. Poēta cum fili.... ex silv.... properat.
4. Ab ōr.... servae properant.
5. Laeca et Iūlia ē vill.... saepe properant.
6. Poētae in silv.... et in aqu.... pictūrās vident.

## EXERCISE VII

*Write in Latin:*

1. Tullia's maids are now preparing dinner in the villa.
2. At night Tullia walks out of the villa with (her) daughters, and stands on the shore.
3. Laeca sees Tullia and the girls and hurries from the woods.
4. The poet lives in a white villa.
5. Laeca sees beautiful pictures in the woods

and in the water. 6. The girls and Laeca look at the moon and the bright stars. 7. Cornelia and Secunda praise Laeca's boat. 8. Then Laeca goes sailing with the girls. 9. The poet tells the girls a story. 10. Finally the tired girls hurry out of the boat because Tullia is calling (them) again.



*Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art*

**Coclearia argentea**

CHAPTER VIII  
ACCUSATIVE WITH AD AND IN



64. LAECA POËTA II

Aqua Laecam maximē dēlectat; itaque poëta saepe nāvīgat. Poëta ab Italiae orīs <sup>to</sup> ad proximam insulam libenter nāvīgat. Multae insulae sunt Italiae proximae. Nāvīcula ad terrās extrēmās nōn nāvīgat quod nāvīcula nōn est firma. Nāvīcula, igitur, ad Graeciam et ad Asiam nōn nāvīgat.

Hodiē poëta <sup>into</sup> in villam ambulat et Iūliam vocat. Tum poëta cum Iūliā ad oram properat. Poëta et filia ad insulam

II. *Peninsula*. This word comes from two Latin words *paene*, *almost* and *insula*, *island*. It therefore means *almost an island*. The first element of this word is seen also in *penult*, from *paene*, *almost*, and *ultima*, *last*. The *penult* is therefore *almost the last (syllable)*; that is, the *next to the last (syllable)*.



*Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art*

### Speculum argenteum

The highly polished metal surface served to reflect the image, as does the silver on the glass of a modern mirror

### DRILL

*Supply the proper case endings:*

1. Tabernae pulchrae fēmin....  
Rōmān.... (*sing.*) sunt grātae.
2. Taberna vill.... Tulliae nōn est proxima.
3. Deae fēmin.... (*pl.*) semper sunt cārae.
4. Corōnae de.... (*pl.*) sunt grātae.
5. Italia Crēt.... nōn est proxima.
6. Īnsulae magnaē Itali.... sunt proximaē.
7. Italia fēmin.... Rōmān.... (*pl.*) est cāra.
8. Fēminae fili.... (*pl.*) semper sunt cārae.

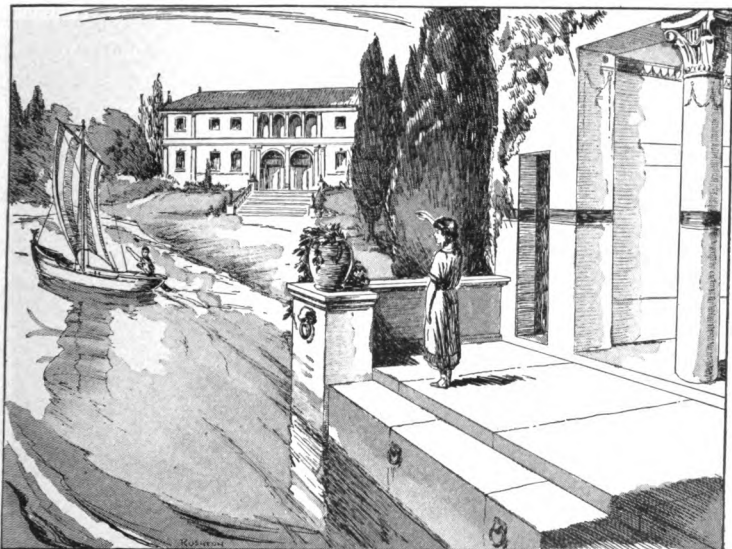
### EXERCISE VI

*Write in Latin:*

1. There are a few large islands very near to Italy.
2. Greece is a province of Italy.
3. Crete is the slave girl's native land.
4. Anna longs for Crete almost every day.
5. The little mistress is friendly to Anna; and so Anna is happy.
6. Tullia is dear to her daughters because she is kind.
7. Tullia often gives the girls tunics and sandals.
8. The girls especially want red sandals.
9. The new sandals are pleasing to Cornelia and Secunda.
10. A Roman mistress seldom gives sandals to (her) slave girls.

## CHAPTER VII

### ABLATIVE WITH *Ā* (*AB*), *EX* (*Ē*), *IN*, *CUM*



55.

#### LAECA POĒTA I

Laeca poēta villam pulchram *in Italiā* habet. In villā Laeca *cum filiā Iuliā* habitat. Aqua est proxima villae. In aquā poēta nāviculam rubram habet. Poēta *ex villā* saepe properat. Nunc in nāviculā est. Tum *ab orā* poēta nāvigat.

Silvae quoque sunt proximae villae. *In silvīs* Laeca saepe ambulat. Poētae silvās et aquam maximē amant quod in silvīs et in aquā multās et pulchrās pictūrās poētae vident. Poētae ā silvīs et ab aquā properant et fābulās nārrant.



Iūlia in villā labōrat. Fēminae et puellae Rōmānae in villis saepe labōrant. Noctū Iūlia ex villā properat. Tum Iūlia cum Laecā in silvis ambulat. Interdum poēta et filia ex silvis properant et in ōrā stant. Laeca et Iūlia stēllās et lūnam spectant. Tandem Laeca et Iūlia ab ōrā ambulant et in villā iterum sunt.

### 56. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Ubi <sup>Where</sup> Laeca villam habet? 2. Ubi poēta cum Iūliā habitat? 3. Estne aqua proxima villae? 4. Ubi est nāvicula poētae? 5. Unde <sup>Whence</sup> poēta saepe properat? 6. Ubi poēta est? 7. Unde poēta nāvīgat? 8. Nōnne sunt silvae proximae villae? 9. Quid poētae in silvis et in aquā vident? 10. Unde poētae properant? 11. Ubi Iūlia labōrat? 12. Unde Iūlia noctū properat? 13. Ubi Iūlia cum Laecā ambulat? 14. Unde poēta et filia properant? 15. Quōcum <sup>With whom</sup> poēta ambulat?

Nōtā bene

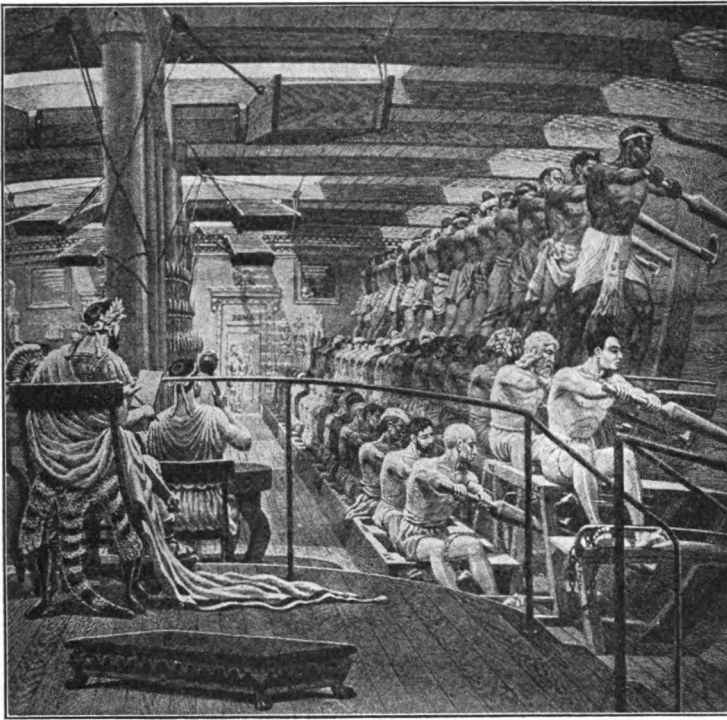
Ubi, *where? in what place?* unde, *whence? from what place?* quōcum, *with whom?*

### DISCUSSION

57. In the sentence *Laeca villam pulchram in Italiā habet*, what words tell us where the villa is? In the sentence *In villā Laeca cum Iūliā habitat*, what words tell where Laeca lives? Of what do these phrases consist? What is the ending of each noun in the phrases? Do the nouns refer to one thing or to more than one? *Place in which* may be expressed by the preposition *in* and a noun with the ending *-ā*.

In the sentence *Poēta ex villā saepe properat*, what words tell out of what place the poet hurries? Of what does this phrase consist? What is the ending of the noun in this phrase? *Place out of which* may be expressed by the preposition *ex* and a noun ending in *-ā*.

when it means *in* or *on* and the accusative when it means *into* or *upon*. The word *ad*, however, always takes the accusative.



### Rēmigēs

Roman boats depended on oars as well as sails for propelling power. In the Roman warships or galleys, the rowers were slaves chained to their benches, who rowed in time with the beating of a hammer. We do not know certainly how the tiers of rowers were arranged; the picture suggests one possibility

68. The phrases with *ad* or *in* and the accusative answer the question *to what place?* or *into what place?* They are used with verbs of motion. The Latin word *quō* is used for *where?* meaning *to what place?* or *into what place?*

The phrases with *in* and the ablative case answer the question *where?* The Latin word for *where* is *ubi*. The phrases with *ex* and the ablative and *ab* and the ablative answer the question *whence?* or *where from?* or *from what place?* The Latin word for *whence* is *unde*.

In the sentence *In silvis Laeca saepe ambulat*, what phrase shows where Laeca often walks? In the sentence *Poetae a silvis properant*, what phrase tells from what place the poets hasten? In the sentence *Interdum poeta et filia ex silvis properant*, what phrase tells out of what place the poet and his daughter hasten? How do the nouns in these phrases differ in form from the nouns in the previous phrases? How do they differ in meaning? The ending of the ablative singular in the first declension is *-ā*; the ending in the plural is *-īs*.

In the sentence *Tum Iulia cum Laecā in silvis ambulat*, what phrase shows with whom Julia walks? The preposition *cum* governs the ablative case and shows accompaniment.

58. *Dea* and *filia*, however, have the ablative ending *-abus* in the plural, just like the dative.

*Ablative singular, puellā*  
*Ablative plural, puellis*

### RULES

59. *Place in which* is usually expressed by the ablative with the preposition *in*.

60. *Place from which* or *away from which* is usually expressed by the ablative with the preposition *ā* (*ab*); *place out of which* by the ablative with the preposition *ex* (*ē*).

## READING LESSON

## 71. ONERĀRIAE

Onerāriae sunt amplae et firmae; ad terrās extrēmās nāvigant. Ab Italiā onerāriae ad Āfricam, ad Graeciam, ad Asiam nāvigant. Onerāriae ūvās et olīvās ad ōrās Asiae portant.

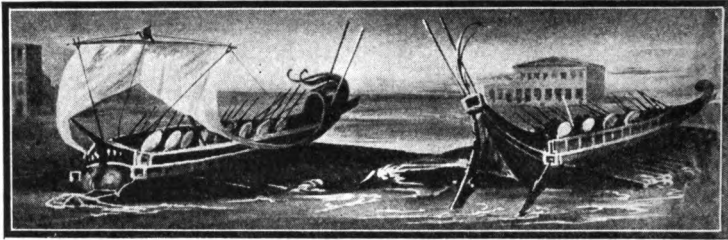
Nautae olīvās et ūvās ex onerāriis in viās portant. Incolae Asiae nautis pecūniam dant. Ab ōrīs Asiae nautae corbulās et pallās ad Italiam portant.



Onerāria et nautae

A fresco found in Ostia, the ancient port of Rome at the mouth of the Tiber. The captain of the boat (*Farnaces magister*) stands at the stern, while Arascantus, probably the owner, oversees the loading of the grain which the slaves are bringing on board.

Ā Graeciā nautae amphorās et ūrnās portant. Nautae corbulās, pallās, amphorās, ūrnās, in tabernās Italicās portant. Fēminae Italicae in tabernās libenter properant et spectant. Fēminae albās pallās et pulchrās amphorās vident; ancillās vocant. Libenter ancillae properant in tabernās; ancillis quoque pallae et amphorae grātae sunt. Postēā fēminae cum ancillis ex tabernis ambulat.



### Pugna nāvālis

A Pompeian painting of a battle in the harbor

### VOCABULARY VIII

*ad, prep. (with acc.), <i>to,</i> <i>toward</i>	libenter, <i>gladly</i> (see note)
*ampla, <i>roomy, spacious</i>	olīva, <i>olive</i>
*extrēma, <i>far distant</i>	*onerāria, <i>merchant ship,</i> <i>transport</i>
*firma, <i>firm, sturdy</i>	palla, <i>cloak, mantle</i>
igitur, adv., <i>therefore</i> (see note)	*postea, adv., <i>afterwards,</i> <i>later on</i>
*in, prep. (with acc.), <i>into,</i> <i>upon</i>	*quō, <i>whither, where</i>
incola, <i>inhabitant</i>	salūtat, <i>greet, hails</i>
Italica, <i>of Italy, Italian</i>	ūrna, <i>water jar, urn</i>
	ūva, <i>grape</i>

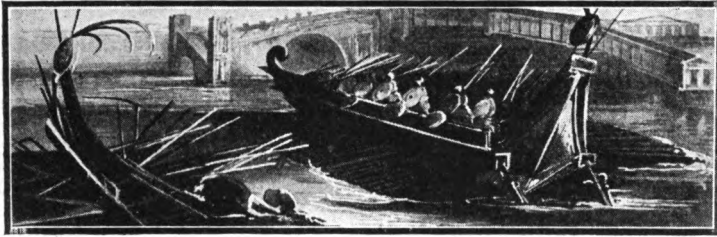
Igitur usually follows the first word of its sentence. It is therefore called *postpositive*.

Libenter means *gladly*. If one does something *gladly*, one usually *likes* to do it; and the idiomatic translation of expressions like libenter nāvīgat or fābulās libenter nārrat is often in the form *he likes to sail, he likes to tell stories*.

## 72.

### LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

*In extremis*. This phrase, frequently used in English, consists of the two Latin words *in, in*, and *extrēmīs*, an adjective in the ablative plural, used as a noun, and meaning *extreme* or *critical circumstances*. The phrase means *in*



### Pugna nāvālis

Another Pompeian painting of a naval battle

*extremity*, and is generally used of a person at the point of death or of a person or thing in extreme danger.

### DRILL

*Supply the proper case endings:*

1. Servae ē vill.... in vi.... properant.
2. Serva ex vi.... in vill.... amphoram portat.
3. Fīlia poētae ad ōr.... properat.
4. Nāvīculae ab ōr.... Italiae ad insul.... nāvīgant.
5. Iūlia nauta.n ad nāvīcul.... vocat.

### EXERCISE VIII

*Write in Latin:*

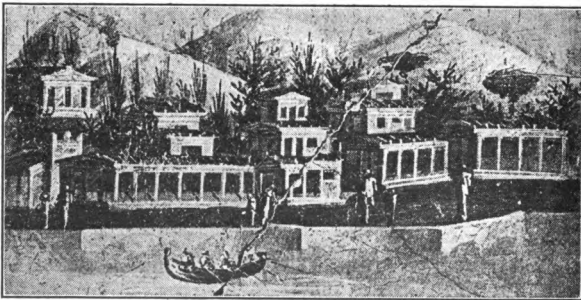
1. Sturdy merchant ships sail from the most distant lands to Italy. 2. The roomy ships bring jars, and urns, and cloaks to the inhabitants of Italy. 3. Now the sailors carry the cloaks and jars out of the ships into the shops. 4. Afterwards the Italian women enter the shops and look at the new cloaks. 5. Tullia likes to look at the jars. 6. The new jars are pleasing to Tullia. 7. There are many small shops in the streets. 8. The farmers are bringing olives and grapes to the shops. 9. The women greet the farmers. 10. The women want the grapes and therefore give the farmers money.

## VOCABULARY VII

- \***ā** (ab), prep. (with abl.), *from, away from*  
**cēna**, dinner  
**clāra**, bright, famous
- \***cum**, prep. (with abl.), *with*
- \***dēfessa**, tired, exhausted
- \***ex** (ē), prep. (with abl.),  
*out of*  
**habitat**, lives, dwells
- \***in**, prep. (with abl.), *in, on*  
**iterum**, adv., *again, a second time*  
**nāvicula**, little boat, skiff
- \***nāvigat**, sails, goes sailing
- \***noctū**, adv., *at night*
- \***nunc**, adv., *now*  
**ōra**, coast, shore
- \***parat**, prepares  
**picūra**, picture  
**poēta**, poet  
**properat**, hastens, hurries  
**stēlla**, star
- tandem**, adv., *finally, at length*
- \***ubi**, adv., *where*
- \***unde**, adv., *whence*

Note that *in silvā* means *in the forest*; *in ōrā*, *on the shore*. The expression *in aquā*, as used in § 55, means *on the water*, as you can tell from the context; but in a different context it could mean *in the water*.

You will usually find the preposition *ā* written *ab* before words beginning with a vowel or *h*; *ex* you will sometimes find written *ē* before a consonant. A safe rule is to write *ā* before a consonant, *ab* before a vowel or *h*, and *ex* always.



**Villa Rōmāna**

A villa painted on the wall of a house at Pompeii

## 63.

## LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. Pick out the Latin words in the vocabulary with which the following words are associated: *habitat*, *navigable*, *nocturnal*, *picturesque*, *stellar*.

II. Explain the meaning of these words in the following sentences:

1. Water is the *habitat* of some birds.
2. The lake is not *navigable* in midwinter.
3. A bat is a *nocturnal* animal.
4. The lighted tower is *picturesque*.
5. John had the *stellar* role in that play.

III. *Tandem* as an English word was originally applied jokingly to a team of two horses harnessed one behind the other; that is, arranged "at length" instead of side by side. Later it was applied to a bicycle for two or more riders, one behind the other.

## DRILL

*Supply case endings, singular or plural as you think proper:*

1. Iūlia, filia Laecae, in vill.... labōrat.
2. Laeca nāviculam in aqu.... videt.
3. Poēta cum fili.... ex silv.... properat.
4. Ab ōr.... servae properant.
5. Laeca et Iūlia ē vill.... saepe properant.
6. Poētae in silv.... et in aqu.... pictūrās vident.

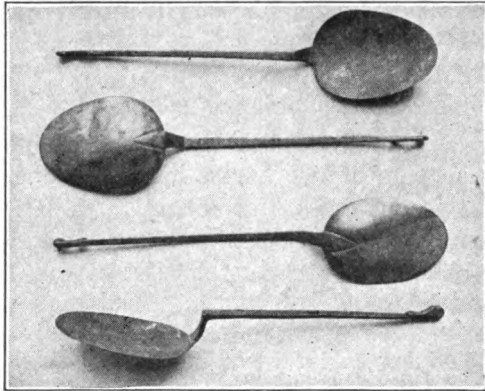
## EXERCISE VII

*Write in Latin:*

1. Tullia's maids are now preparing dinner in the villa.
2. At night Tullia walks out of the villa with (her) daughters, and stands on the shore.
3. Laeca sees Tullia and the girls and hurries from the woods.
4. The poet lives in a white villa.
5. Laeca sees beautiful pictures in the woods



and in the water. 6. The girls and Laeca look at the moon and the bright stars. 7. Cornelia and Secunda praise Laeca's boat. 8. Then Laeca goes sailing with the girls. 9. The poet tells the girls a story. 10. Finally the tired girls hurry out of the boat because Tullia is calling (them) again.



*Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art*

**Cocleãria argentea**

CHAPTER VIII  
ACCUSATIVE WITH *AD* AND *IN*



64.

LAECA POËTA II

Aqua Laecam maximē dēlectat; itaque poëta saepe nāvīgat. Poëta ab Italiae ōris <sup>to</sup> *ad proximam insulam* libenter nāvīgat. Multae insulae sunt Italiae proximae. Nāvīcula *ad terrās extrēmās* nōn nāvīgat quod nāvīcula nōn est firma. Nāvīcula, igitur, *ad Graeciam et ad Asiam* nōn nāvīgat.

Hodiē poëta <sup>into</sup> *in villam* ambulat et Iūliam vocat. Tum poëta cum Iūliā *ad ōram* properat. Poëta et filia *ad insulam*

magnam nāvīgant. In magnā insulā nauta habitat. Tandem nāvīcula ad ōram insulae nāvīgat et Iūlia ē nāvīculā in terram properat. Casa nautae est proxima aquae. Poēta et filia ad casam ambulant. Iūlia in casam properat et nautam salūtāt. Postea nauta et Iūlia in ōrā ambulant et nauta Iūliae fābulās nārrat.

### 65. Respondē Latinē:

*Where*

1. Quō nāvīcula poētae nāvīgat?
2. Cui multae insulae sunt proximae?
3. Cūr nāvīcula ad terrās extrēmās nōn nāvīgat?
4. Num nāvīcula ad Graeciam nāvīgat?
5. Quō poēta ambulat?
6. Quō poēta cum filiā properat?
7. Ubi nauta habitat?
8. Quō Iūlia properat?
9. Ubi Iūlia et nauta ambulant?

### Nōtā bene

Quō, *where?* meaning *to what place?* *into what place?* (that is, *whither?*) Ubi, *where?* meaning *in what place?*

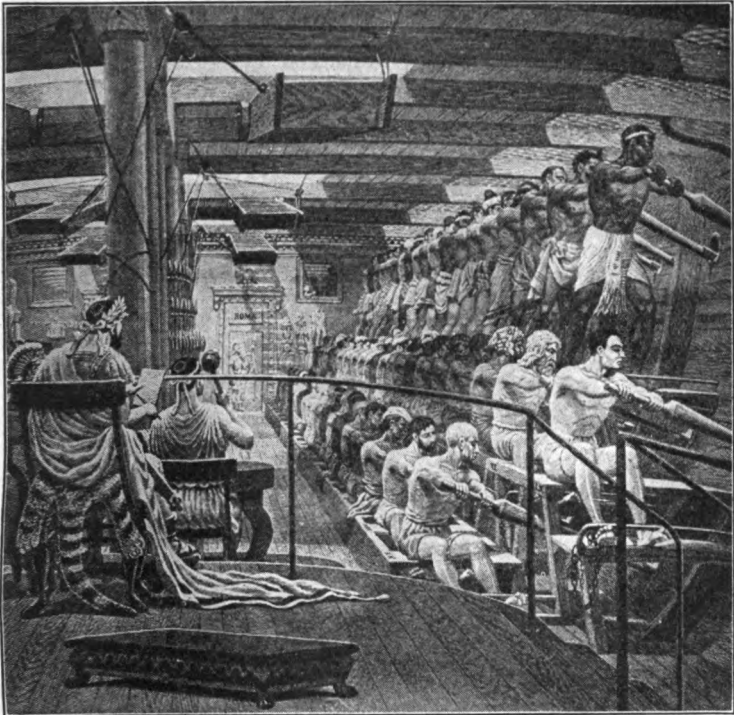
### DISCUSSION

66. In the sentence *Nāvīcula ad proximam insulam nāvīgat*, what does the phrase *ad proximam insulam* tell? What does the preposition *ad* mean in this phrase? What case is used with *ad*? Find other phrases with *ad* in the first paragraph that answer the question *to what place?*

In the sentence *Poēta in villam ambulat*, what does the phrase *in villam* tell? What does *in* mean in this phrase? What case is used with *in* when it means *into*? Find other phrases with *in* that answer the question *into what place?*

67. In English some persons distinguish carefully between "in" or "on," and "into" or "upon." They say, "The book is *in* the room, *on* the table"; but, "Take it *into* the room, place it *upon* the table." In Latin the distinction between these two pairs of meanings of *in* is made by using the ablative after it

when it means *in* or *on* and the accusative when it means *into* or *upon*. The word *ad*, however, always takes the accusative.



### Rēmigēs

Roman boats depended on oars as well as sails for propelling power. In the Roman warships or galleys, the rowers were slaves chained to their benches, who rowed in time with the beating of a hammer. We do not know certainly how the tiers of rowers were arranged; the picture suggests one possibility

68. The phrases with *ad* or *in* and the accusative answer the question *to what place?* or *into what place?* They are used with verbs of motion. The Latin word *quō* is used for *where?* meaning *to what place?* or *into what place?*

69. In English we now use "where" to mean either *in what place?* or *into what place?* We say "Where are you?" "Where are you going?" In old-fashioned language, however, we sometimes make the distinction between these two meanings by using "where" and "whither." *Ubi, where*, corresponds to *in* with the ablative; *quō, whither*, to *in* with the accusative. Thus: *Ubi est?* *In villā est, Where is he? He is in the villa;* *Quō ambulat?* *In villam ambulat, Where (Whither) is he walking? He is walking into the villa.*

### RULE

70. *Place to which* is usually expressed by *ad* and the accusative; *place into which* by *in* and the accusative.

*Nōtā bene*

For the corresponding rule for the names of cities, see §76.



**Onerāriæ**

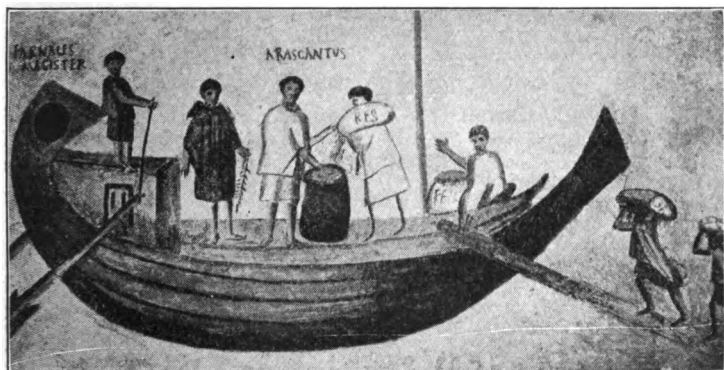
## READING LESSON

## 71.

## ONERĀRIAE

Onerāriae sunt amplae et firmae; ad terrās extrēmās nāvīgant. Ab Italiā onerāriae ad Āfricam, ad Graeciam, ad Asiam nāvīgant. Onerāriae ūvās et olīvās ad ōrās Asiae portant.

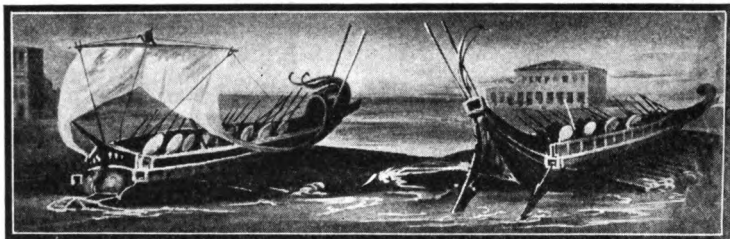
Nautae olīvās et ūvās ex onerāriis in viās portant. Incolae Asiae nautis pecūniam dant. Ab ōrīs Asiae nautae corbulās et pallās ad Italiam portant.



Onerāria et nautae

A fresco found in Ostia, the ancient port of Rome at the mouth of the Tiber. The captain of the boat (*Farnaces magister*) stands at the stern, while *Arascantus*, probably the owner, oversees the loading of the grain which the slaves are bringing on board.

Ā Graeciā nautae amphorās et ūrnās portant. Nautae corbulās, pallās, amphorās, ūrnās, in tabernās Italicās portant. Fēminae Italicae in tabernās libenter properant et spectant. Fēminae albās pallās et pulchrās amphorās vident; ancillās vocant. Libenter ancillae properant in tabernās; ancillis quoque pallae et amphorae grātae sunt. Postēā fēminae cum ancillis ex tabernis ambulant.



### Pugna nāvālis

A Pompeian painting of a battle in the harbor

### VOCABULARY VIII

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| *ad, prep. (with acc.), <i>to,</i><br><i>toward</i> | libenter, <i>gladly</i> (see note)                   |
| *ampla, <i>roomy, spacious</i>                      | olīva, <i>olive</i>                                  |
| *extrēma, <i>far distant</i>                        | *onerāria, <i>merchant ship,</i><br><i>transport</i> |
| *firma, <i>firm, sturdy</i>                         | palla, <i>cloak, mantle</i>                          |
| igitur, adv., <i>therefore</i> (see<br>note)        | *postea, adv., <i>afterwards,</i><br><i>later on</i> |
| *in, prep. (with acc.), <i>into,</i><br><i>upon</i> | *quō, <i>whither, where</i>                          |
| incola, <i>inhabitant</i>                           | salūtat, <i>greet, hails</i>                         |
| Italica, <i>of Italy, Italian</i>                   | ūrna, <i>water jar, urn</i>                          |
|   | ūva, <i>grape</i>                                    |

Igitur usually follows the first word of its sentence. It is therefore called *postpositive*.

Libenter means *gladly*. If one does something *gladly*, one usually *likes* to do it; and the idiomatic translation of expressions like *libenter nāvīgat* or *fābulās libenter nārrat* is often in the form *he likes to sail, he likes to tell stories*.

### 72.

### LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

*In extremis*. This phrase, frequently used in English, consists of the two Latin words *in, in,* and *extrēmīs*, an adjective in the ablative plural, used as a noun, and meaning *extreme* or *critical circumstances*. The phrase means *in*



### Pugna nāvālis

Another Pompeian painting of a naval battle

*extremity*, and is generally used of a person at the point of death or of a person or thing in extreme danger.

### DRILL

*Supply the proper case endings:*

1. Servae ē vill.... in vi.... properant.
2. Serva ex vi.... in vill.... amphoram portat.
3. Fīlia poētae ad ōr.... properat.
4. Nāviculae ab ōr.... Italiae ad īnsul.... nāvīgant.
5. Iūlia nauta:n ad nāvicul.... vocat.

### EXERCISE VIII

*Write in Latin:*

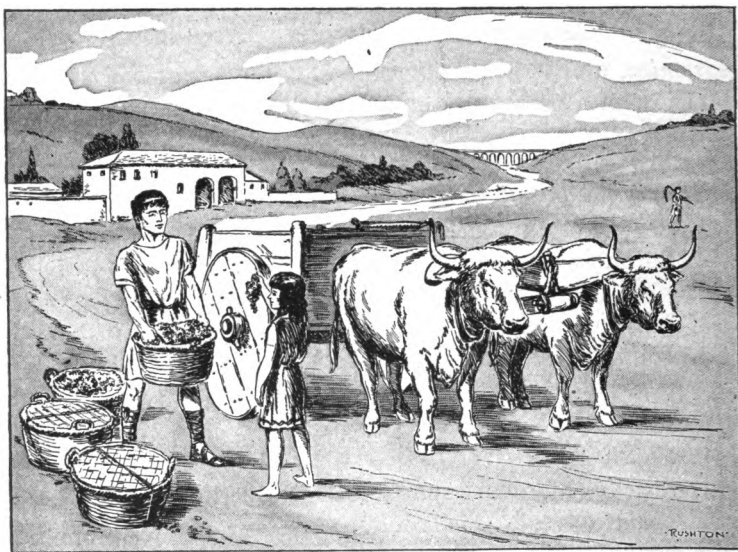
1. Sturdy merchant ships sail from the most distant lands to Italy.
2. The roomy ships bring jars, and urns, and cloaks to the inhabitants of Italy.
3. Now the sailors carry the cloaks and jars out of the ships into the shops.
4. Afterwards the Italian women enter the shops and look at the new cloaks.
5. Tullia likes to look at the jars.
6. The new jars are pleasing to Tullia.
7. There are many small shops in the streets.
8. The farmers are bringing olives and grapes to the shops.
9. The women greet the farmers.
10. The women want the grapes and therefore give the farmers money.



## CHAPTER IX

### LOCATIVE CASE

#### PLACE RELATIONS WITH NAMES OF CITIES AND TOWNS, AND WITH *DOMUS* AND *RŪS*



73.

### AGRICOLAE

Nāsica est agricola Italiae. Casa agricolae nōn est proxima Rōmae. Sed Nāsica <sup>to Rome</sup> Rōmam saepe ambulat. Nunc agricola ūvās Rōmam portat; nunc olivās Rōmam portat. Incolae Rōmae ūvās et olivās in tabernīs vident; ūvae et olivae incolās Rōmae dēlectant. Incolae Nāsicae pecūniam dant.

( 62 )

*In Roma*

**Rōmae** sunt multae tabernae. Nāsīca tabernās libenter intrat. Statuae pulchrae et columnae albae quoque sunt Rōmae. Agricola in viis ambulat et statuās et columnās

*from Rome*

libenter videt. Tandem Nāsīca Rōmā ad casam parvam properat. Saepe agricola pallam novam et soleās novās Rōmā ad filiam portat quod Nāsīca filiam maximē amat.

Agricolae Graeciae quoque olivās et ūvās habent. Quō

*To Athens*

agricolae olivās et ūvās portant? **Athēnās** olivās et ūvās portant. Interdum fēminae cum agricolīs Athēnās ambulant

*In Athens*

et corbulās plēnās rosārum portant. **Athēnīs** sunt multae statuae. Fēminae statuās libenter ōrnant. Athēnīs est magna Minervae statua. Minerva est dea sapientiae. Fēminae statuam Minervae saepe ōrnant. Noctū agricolae

*from Athens*

et fēminae **Athēnīs** ad casās properant. Fēminae Athēnīs parvās Minervae statuās ad filiās portant.

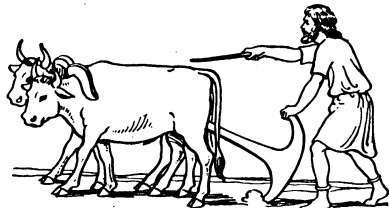
#### Nōtā bene

Athēnae, Athēnārum is used only in the plural and means *the city of Athens*.

#### 74. Respondē Latinē:

1. Ubi est casa agricolae? 2. Quō Nāsīca saepe ambulat? 3. Quō agricola ūvās et olivās portat? 4. Ubi sunt multae tabernae? 5. Ubi sunt statuae pulchrae? 6. Unde Nāsīca tandem properat? 7. Unde agricola pallam novam et soleās novās portat?

8. Quō Graeciae agricolae olivās et ūvās portant? 9. Quō fēminae corbulās rosārum portant? 10. Ubi sunt multae statuae?



Agricola et arātrum

11. Ubi est magna Minervae statua? 12. Unde agricolae et fēminae noctū properant? 13. Unde fēminae parvās Minervae statuās portant?



**Statua Minervae**

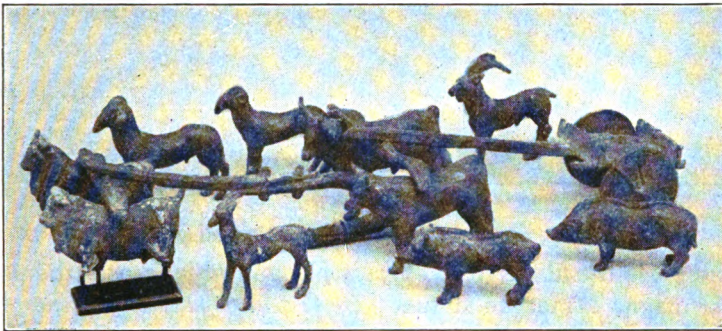
#### DISCUSSION

**75.** In the sentence *Nāsica Rōmam saepe ambulat*, which word tells to what place Nasica often goes? In the sentence *Agricolae olivās et ūvās Athēnās portant*, which word tells to what place the farmers carry their olives and grapes?

In what case are *Rōmam* and *Athēnās*? Is a preposition used with these names of cities?

With proper names of cities and towns *place to which* and *place into which* are regularly expressed by the accusative without a preposition.

In the sentence *Nāsica Rōmā ad casam parvam properat*, which word tells from what place *Nasica* hastens? In the sentence *Agricolae Athēnīs ad casās properant*, which word



*Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art*

### **Animālia**

Notice the plow, the cart, and the two yokes. These bronze figures may have been children's toys, or perhaps were used as a votive offering

tells from what place the farmers hasten? In what case are *Rōmā* and *Athēnīs*? Is a preposition used?

With proper names of cities and towns, *place from which* is regularly expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

In the sentence *Rōmae sunt multae tabernae*, which word tells where there are many shops? What is the ending of *Rōmae*? Is a preposition used?

With proper names of cities and towns *place in which* is expressed by a special case. This case is called the *locative case*. The locative ending in the first declension singular is *-ae*. There are a few names of towns which are plural;



### Tabernae

A busy shopping district in ancient Rome

these use the ablative to express place in which; as, *Athēnis est magna Minervae statua, there is a large statue of Minerva at Athens (or in Athens).*

### RULES

76. With the names of cities and towns —

*Place to which* is regularly expressed by the accusative without a preposition;

*Place from which* is regularly expressed by the ablative without a preposition;

*Place in which* is regularly expressed by the locative (or, in the plural, by the ablative).

These rules also apply to the names of small islands, and to the words *domus, home*, and *rūs, country*. For the appropriate forms of these words, see § 78.

### VOCABULARY IX

*Athēnae* (pl.), *Athens*  
*Rōma*, *Rome*

*sapientia, wisdom, prudence,*  
*intelligence*

77. Memorize the following forms of the names of cities:

Rōmā, from Rome

Rōmam, to Rome

Rōmae, at Rome

Athēnīs, from Athens

Athēnās, to Athens

Athēnīs, at Athens

78. The nouns *domus*, *home*, and *rūs*, *country*, belong to declensions which we have not yet studied. For the present learn the forms and meanings given herewith:

domō, from home

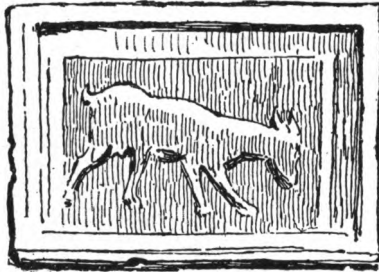
domum, (to) home

domī, at home

rūre, from the country

rūs, to the country

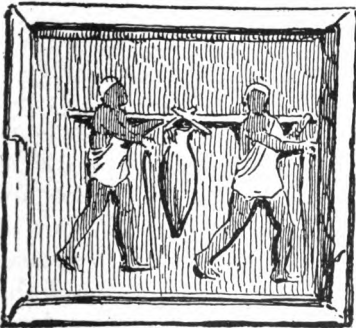
rūrī, in the country



A shopkeeper's sign

### DRILL

I. Supply the proper case endings:



A shopkeeper's sign

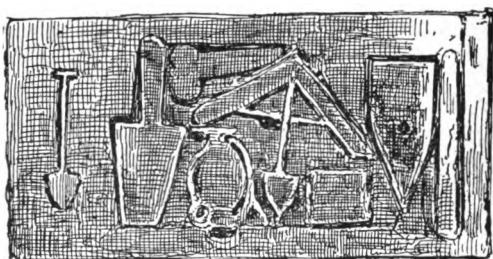
1. Taberna Galbae est Rōm....
2. Galba multās amphorās in tabern.... habet.
3. Onerāriae amphorās et ūrnās Athēn.... Rōm.... (from Athens to Rome) portant.
4. Onerāriae nāvigant Rōm.... Athēn.... (from Rome to Athens).

5. Athēn.... et Rōm.... (In Athens and Rome) nautae tabernās intrant.

6. Casa agricolae est rūr....; agricola ūvās rūr.... (from the country) portat.

II. *Write the Latin for the following phrases:*

- |                   |                      |
|-------------------|----------------------|
| 1. from Rome      | 9. to the country    |
| 2. from the shore | 10. home (homeward)  |
| 3. from Athens    | 11. in the cottage   |
| 4. at Rome        | 12. in Athens        |
| 5. in the country | 13. at home          |
| 6. to Rome        | 14. into the streets |
| 7. to Athens      | 15. from the country |
| 8. to the road    | 16. from home        |



**A shopkeeper's sign**

A milkman's sign, a wineseller's sign, and a mason's sign are shown on this page and the preceding one. Can you identify each?

**EXERCISE IX**

*Write in Latin:*

1. The little boats often sail from Rome to the islands near by. 2. Sometimes the little boats bring olives from the islands to Rome. 3. The sturdy merchant ships are sailing to Athens again. 4. Now the sailors hurry out of the merchant ships into the streets of Athens. 5. In Athens there are beautiful white columns and many statues of the goddess of wisdom. 6. At night the sailors hurry from Athens to the shore. 7. The sailors are on the merchant ships; the farmers are in the country. 8. Julia is preparing a good dinner today because the sailor is at home again. 9. The sailor walks to the door and greets the farmer. 10. The sailor likes to tell (his) little daughters stories.

CHAPTER X  
SUMMARY OF FIRST DECLENSION



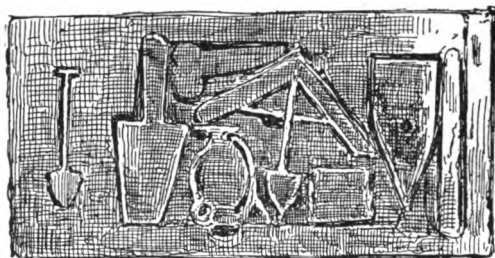
79. TULLIA ET CLAUDIA

Tullia et filiae, Cornēlia et Secunda, rūri sunt. Claudia Rōmae est. Tullia Claudiam amat; itaque Tullia cum filiābus Rōmam properat. Tullia in lecticā sedet sed filiae et servae, Rosa et Anna, ambulant. Ex villā in Viam Appiam Tullia et puellae properant. In Viā Appiā sunt nautae et agricolae. Nautae Rōmā ad ōram properant. Agricolae ā casis Rōmam properant. In viās Rōmae



II. Write the Latin for the following phrases:

- |                   |                      |
|-------------------|----------------------|
| 1. from Rome      | 9. to the country    |
| 2. from the shore | 10. home (homeward)  |
| 3. from Athens    | 11. in the cottage   |
| 4. at Rome        | 12. in Athens        |
| 5. in the country | 13. at home          |
| 6. to Rome        | 14. into the streets |
| 7. to Athens      | 15. from the country |
| 8. to the road    | 16. from home        |



**A shopkeeper's sign**

A milkman's sign, a wineseller's sign, and a mason's sign are shown on this page and the preceding one. Can you identify each?

**EXERCISE IX**

*Write in Latin:*

1. The little boats often sail from Rome to the islands near by.
2. Sometimes the little boats bring olives from the islands to Rome.
3. The sturdy merchant ships are sailing to Athens again.
4. Now the sailors hurry out of the merchant ships into the streets of Athens.
5. In Athens there are beautiful white columns and many statues of the goddess of wisdom.
6. At night the sailors hurry from Athens to the shore.
7. The sailors are on the merchant ships; the farmers are in the country.
8. Julia is preparing a good dinner today because the sailor is at home again.
9. The sailor walks to the door and greets the farmer.
10. The sailor likes to tell (his) little daughters stories.

CHAPTER X  
SUMMARY OF FIRST DECLENSION



79. TULLIA ET CLAUDIA

Tullia et filiae, Cornēlia et Secunda, rūri sunt. Claudia Rōmae est. Tullia Claudiam amat; itaque Tullia cum filiabus Rōmam properat. Tullia in lecticā sedet sed filiae et servae, Rosa et Anna, ambulant. Ex villā in Viam Appiam Tullia et puellae properant. In Viā Appiā sunt nautae et agricolae. Nautae Rōmā ad ōram properant. Agricolae ā casis Rōmam properant. In viās Rōmae

( 69 )

agricolae ūvās et olīvās portant. Tullia pulchrās ūvās videt et Annae pecūniam dat. Parvae puellae ūvās pulchrās, et corbulās plēnās rosārum rubrārum et albārum, ad Claudiam portant.

Claudia domī est et proximae Claudiae sunt ancillae.



*Courtesy of The Pennsylvania University  
Museum*

### Fēmina Rōmāna

et agricolae in Viā Appiā? 9. Unde nautae properant? 10. Quō nautae properant? 11. Unde agricolae properant? 12. Quō agricolae properant? 13. Quid portant agricolae? 14. Cui Tullia pecūniam dat? 15. Quid portant parvae puellae? 16. Ubi est Claudia? 17. Cui sunt ancillae proximae? 18. Cuius servae libenter labōrant? 19. Quibus Claudia fābulās saepe nārrat? 20. Cuius ancillās salūtant Rosa et Anna? 21. Quid puellae Claudiae dant? 22. Quō Tullia et filiae noctū properant?

Ancillae Claudiae libenter labōrant. Saepe Claudia ancillis fābulās nārrat. Tullia et filiae Claudiam salūtant. Rosa et Anna ancillās Claudiae salūtant. Puellae Claudiae rosās et ūvās dant. Noctū Tullia cum filiabus et servis Rōmā domum properat.

### 80. Respondē Latinē:

1. Ubi sunt Tullia et filiae? 2. Ubi est Claudia? 3. Quō Tullia properat? 4. Ubi sedet Tullia? 5. Quibuscum Tullia Rōmam properat? 6. Sedentne filiae et servae? 7. Unde properant Tullia et filiae? 8. Suntne nautae

## DISCUSSION

81. In the foregoing story can be found examples of all the cases of a Latin noun which we have studied. A noun is in different cases according to its use in a sentence. To *decline* a noun is to list its case forms in order, singular and plural. The locative is usually not listed, because very few nouns have a locative form. The listing of the case forms is called *declension*.

A set of inflectional forms arranged in the usual order is called a *paradigm*. A paradigm may be formed for any word that can be inflected. In speaking of a paradigm, it is often convenient to call the unchanging part, to which the endings are attached, the *base*. The base of a noun can always be ascertained by dropping the ending of the genitive singular; as, *puella*, genitive *puellae*, base *puell-*.



Fēmina Rōmāna

The paradigm of *puella* is as follows:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>puella</i>	<i>puellae</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>puellae</i>	<i>puellārum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>puellae</i>	<i>puellis</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>puellam</i>	<i>puellās</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>puellā</i>	<i>puellis</i>

82. The base is often slightly different from the *stem*, which may be thought of as the form to which the inflectional

endings were originally added, but which has sometimes undergone a change in the last syllable by weakening or by combination with the ending. Thus the *ā* of **puellā-**, the stem of **puella**, is shortened or changed in several cases, so that it is often convenient to refer to the base, **puell-**.



*Museum of Fine Arts, Boston, Mass.*

### **Īnfāns Rōmānus**

83. The word *declension* is also used of a group or class of nouns all of which are declined in approximately the same way. Nearly all the nouns studied so far belong to the first declension. There are five declensions altogether.

84. The declension to which a noun belongs is indicated by the ending of the genitive singular, which, in the first declension, is *-ae*. Hereafter, the nominative singular and the genitive singular of every noun will be given in the vocabularies. For nouns like *Athēnae*, which is used only in the plural, the nominative and genitive plural will be given.

85. There is another case in Latin, called the *vocative*. A noun is in this case when used to designate a person who is being directly addressed, as in the English sentence, "*Boys, come over here.*" The vocative is usually omitted in declining a noun, because it is always like the nominative, except in the singular of some nouns of the second declension.

A noun in the vocative is often placed after the first word in the sentence, or in a later place, but never at the beginning; as,

*Suntne, Claudia, servae in silvā? Claudia, are the slaves out in the woods?*

86. The following table will serve in a review of the uses of the five principal cases:

<i>Case</i>	<i>Use</i>
<i>Nominative:</i>	The case of the subject or the predicate nominative.
<i>Genitive:</i>	The case of the owner or possessor, like the English possessive: often expressing the same idea as an English prepositional phrase with <i>of</i> .
<i>Dative:</i>	The case of the indirect object, to whom or for whom something is done or given or said.
<i>Accusative:</i>	The case of the direct object of a verb, or of the object of certain prepositions.
<i>Ablative:</i>	A case of many uses, often showing place from which and place in which: used with prepositions meaning <i>in, on, from, out of, with, etc.</i>

**87. Gender**

The gender of a noun in English is determined entirely by sex. If a noun refers to a man or boy it is of masculine gender. If it refers to a woman or girl it is of feminine gender. If it refers to neither male nor female it is of neuter gender. The word *neuter* means *neither*.

The distinction by sex is not so marked in Latin. Nouns designating males are masculine; nouns designating females are feminine; but nouns designating objects that have no sex, or animals with no special reference to sex, may be masculine, feminine, or neuter.

**88.** Nouns of the first declension are nearly all feminine. A few, such as *poëta*, *agricola*, *nauta*, designate males, and are therefore masculine. There are no neuters in the first declension. Nouns like *sella*, *rosa*, *via* are all feminine because they are in the first declension.

## VOCABULARY X

*lectica*, *litter*, *sedan*

*sedet*, *sits*

**89.**

## LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

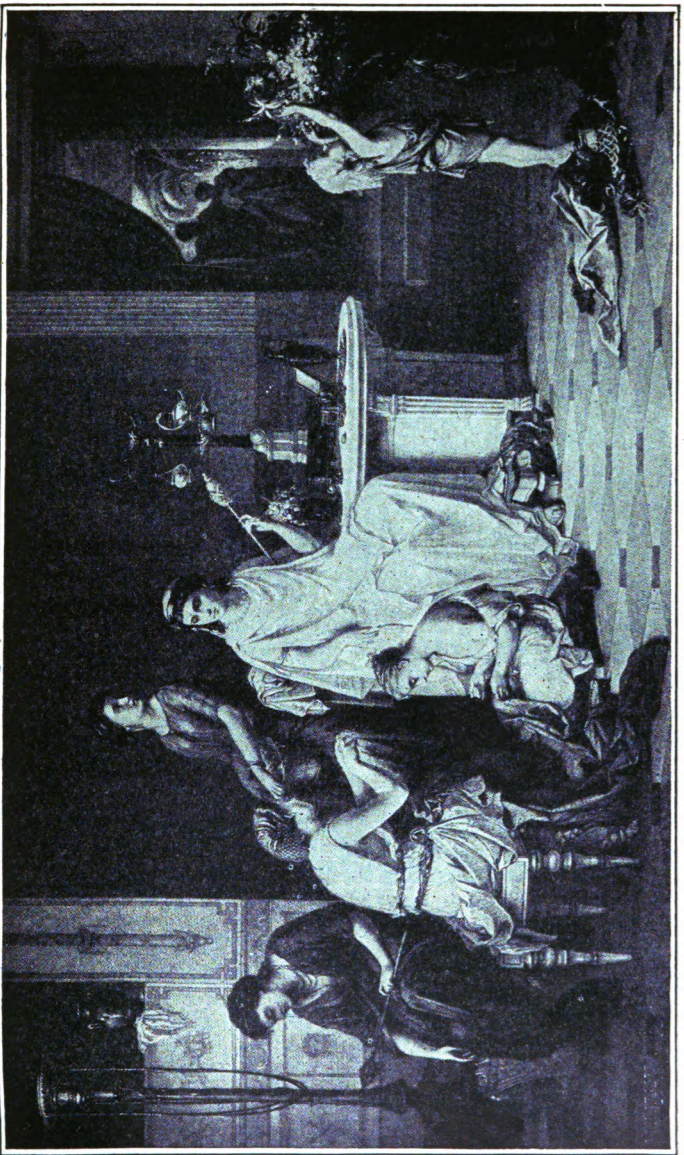
I. Explain the meaning of the word in italics in the following sentence: "Bookkeepers live a *sedentary* life."

II. *Appian Way*. In Italy today the ancient Via Appia still exists as a thoroughfare.

## EXERCISE X

*Write in Latin:*

1. Rome has many provinces in far distant lands.
2. Crete and Greece are not very near to Rome.
3. Greece is the native land of Claudia's maidservants.
4. The maids live in Rome but are always longing for (their) native land.
5. The life of the maidservants is happy because Claudia is a kind mistress.
6. Claudia is friendly to the maids;



Domina et ancillae



and so they love Claudia very greatly. 7. Claudia hurries into the street; she sits in (her) beautiful litter. 8. Later on Claudia goes into Tullia's villa with (her) maids. 9. Tullia seldom sees Claudia because Claudia lives in Rome and Tullia is in the country. 10. Finally Claudia calls (her) maids and the women hurry out of the villa.



### Via Appia

The Appian Way is still a busy Roman street. It enters Rome at the gate of San Sebastian, shown in the picture

## CHAPTER XI

### PRESENT TENSE OF *SUM*, AND OF VERBS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS



#### 90. TULLIA, MAGISTRA FĪLIĀRUM I

Tullia Cornēliam et Secundam linguam Latīnam docet. Tullia sevēra magistra est; itaque puellae diligenter student.

*I am* "Ego sum fēmina. Ego sum mātrōna Rōmāna. *You* Tū, Cornēlia, es puella. Tū es filia mea. Secunda quoque est puella Rōmāna. Secunda est parva filia mea. Sum mātrōna Rōmāna; es filia mea; Secunda est parva filia mea."

## 91. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quis sum? 2. Quis es, Cornēlia? 3. Quis est Secunda?  
4. Quis es, Secunda? 5. Quis est Cornēlia? 6. Quis est  
Tullia?

92. "Sum incola Rōmae. Tū, Cornēlia, quoque es incola  
Rōmae. Ego et tū <sup>are</sup>sumus incolae Rōmae. <sup>We</sup>Nōs sumus  
laetae. Tū, Cornēlia, es filia mea. Tū quoque, Secunda,  
es filia mea. <sup>You</sup>Vōs, puellae, <sup>are</sup>estis filiae meae. Estis puellae  
cārae. Lūcia est filia Camillae. Tertia est parva filia  
Camillae. Lūcia et Tertia sunt filiae Camillae."

## 93. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quis sum? 2. Quis es? 3. Estisne incolae Rōmae?  
4. Nōnne sumus laetae, Tullia? 5. Cuius filiae sunt Lūcia  
et Tertia?

## DISCUSSION

94. When ego is the subject, what verb form is used?  
When tū is the subject, what verb form is used? When nōs  
is the subject, what is the verb form? When vōs is the sub-  
ject, what is the verb form?

A verb in Latin has different forms to indicate whether  
the subject is speaking, is spoken to, or is spoken of. The  
listing of these forms in order is called *conjugation*. Con-  
jugation exists to some extent in English, as we say I *am*,  
you *are*, he *is*. In the plural, however, there is only one  
form in English, *are*; whereas you have seen in **Tullia**,  
**Magistra Filiārum I** that in Latin there are three different  
endings in the plural, just as there are in the singular.

95. Memorize the following forms of the present tense of  
**sum**, and the translations. Remember that the form **est**  
can mean *she is* or *it is* in addition to the meanings given.  
(See note following Vocabulary I.)



Domina et dominus

*Present tense of sum*

sum, <i>I am</i>	sumus, <i>we are</i>
es, <i>you are</i>	estis, <i>you are</i>
est, <i>he is, there is</i>	sunt, <i>they are, there are</i>

## 96. TULLIA, MAGISTRA FĪLIĀRUM II

“Nōnne rosae sunt pulchrae, filiae meae? Māne ego in villam rosās *portō*. Tū, Cornēlia, aquam *portās*. Secunda quoque aquam *portat*. Tum nōs rosās ad statuās deārum *portāmus* et statuās ōrnāmus. Vōs puellae rubrās rosās amātis et vestrās rosās rubrās ad Diānae statuam *portātis*. Cotidiē agricolae corbulās plēnās rosārum ad villam nostram *portant*. Ego rosās libenter cūrō.

“Nōnne corōnae rosārum pulchrae sunt, puellae? *Vidēsne* corōnam rosārum albārum, Cornēlia?” “Corōnam *videō*,



### Liberi et paedagōgus

In the wealthier families, the children were often taught at home by a special tutor, usually a slave, instead of being sent to a public school

Tullia. Nōne est pulchra?" "Videtne dea Diāna corōnās,  
Tullia?" "Certē, mea filia parva! Deae omnia <sup>everything</sup> vident."  
"Sed nōs deās nōn vidēmus." "Vōs, puellae, deās nōn  
vidētis quod deae in terrā nōn habitant."

Nōtā bene

Omnia, *everything*; literally, *all (things)*.

### 97. Respondē Latinē:

1. Quō māne rosās portō? 2. Quid portās, Cornēlia?
3. Quid Secunda quoque portat? 4. Quid ad statuās deārum portāmus?
5. Quālēs rosās ad Diānae statuum portātis?
6. Quid agricolae ad villam nostram portant?

7. Quid vidēs, Cornēlia? 8. Num corōnam rosārum rubrārum videō?

9. Nōne dea Diāna corōnās videt?

10. Videntne deae omnia? 11. Num deās vidēmus?  
 12. Cūr vōs puellae deās nōn vidētis?

## DISCUSSION

98. In the sentence *Māne ego rosās in villam portō*, what is the subject? What is the ending of the verb when *ego* is the subject? Find a sentence in the story in which *tū* is the subject. What is the ending of the verb in this sentence? When *nōs* is the subject, what is the ending of the verb? What is the ending of the verb when *vōs* is the subject? These endings show in what person the verb is, and they are called the *personal* endings. They should be memorized, as in the following paradigm of *portō*, *I carry*.

*Singular*

<i>1st person</i>	<i>portō, I carry, I am carrying, I do carry</i>
<i>2d person</i>	<i>portās, you carry, etc.</i>
<i>3d person</i>	<i>portat, he carries, etc.</i>

*Plural*

<i>1st person</i>	<i>portāmus, we carry, etc.</i>
<i>2d person</i>	<i>portātis, you carry, etc.</i>
<i>3d person</i>	<i>portant, they carry, etc.</i>

99. The subject of a verb is often not expressed by a separate word. When this occurs, the ending of the verb indicates the subject. Pronoun subjects are expressed only when they are needed for special emphasis.

100. Make a list of all verbs in the first paragraph of the story *Tullia, Magistra Fīliārum II*, and observe the various forms. All the verbs in this list, except *sunt*, belong to the same conjugation as *portō*. The base of the present tense of *portō* is *port-*; but the stem is *portā-*. Observe that the *ā* of the stem is changed in some of the forms, as *portō*, *portat*, *portant*.



**Domina et filia**

101. The word *conjugation* is used here to mean a group or class of verbs that are inflected alike. There are four such conjugations. The verb **portō** belongs to the *first conjugation*. The verb **sum** does not belong to any of the four: it is irregular.

102. The infinitive is made by adding *-re* to the present stem: *portāre*. Hence, if you know the infinitive you can determine the present stem by dropping the *-re*. It is customary to name a verb by giving the first person present, as *portō*; and to show its present stem (thus showing to which conjugation it belongs) by giving the present infinitive. These two forms are the first and second principal parts of a Latin verb: *portō, portāre*. In the vocabularies hereafter, these two forms will be given.

103. Now make a list of the verb forms in the second paragraph of *Tullia, Magistra Fīliārum II*. Most of the verbs in this list belong to the *second* conjugation; their stem ends in *-ē*. In three of these forms, also, the stem is changed to *-e* before the personal endings: *videō, videt, vident*. The infinitive form is *vidēre*; hereafter verbs of this kind will be given in the form *videō, vidēre*.

The infinitive of *sum* is *esse*.

104. The personal endings added to the present stem of a verb in any of the four conjugations form the present tense of the verb. Notice, however, that *sum* is irregular.

105. The present tense of *videō*, a verb of the second conjugation, is as follows. Compare this paradigm with that of *portō*, noting that the endings are the same, though the stem vowel is different.

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>videō</i>	<i>vidēmus</i>
<i>vidēs</i>	<i>vidētis</i>
<i>videt</i>	<i>vident</i>

Observe carefully the long vowels in these verbs, and remember the three possible translations of this tense.

#### RULE

106. A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.





In Viā Appiā antiqūā

READING LESSON

107. CLAUDIA ET FĪLIAE TULLIAE

*Claudia.* Cuius lectīcam, ancillae, in viā vidētis?

*Ancilla.* Tulliae lectīcam videō, domina.

*Claudia.* Sum laeta, quod Tullia est cāra amīca mea.  
Suntne puellae cum Tulliā?

*Ancilla secunda.* Puellās videō, domina. Puellae ambulānt.

*Claudia.* Salvē, Tullia cāra. Salvēte, Cornēlia et Secunda.  
Estisne dēfessae?

*Tullia.* Ego nōn sum dēfessa. Fortasse puellae sunt  
dēfessae.

*Cornēlia.* Nōn sum dēfessa, Claudia. Libenter ambulō.

*Claudia.* Quid portātis, puellae?

*Cornēlia.* Ego rosās albās habeō, Claudia. Rosās ad  
Claudiam cāram portō.

*Claudia.* Rosās tuās amō, Cornēlia. Sunt pulchrae rosae.  
Quid tū habēs, Secunda?

*Secunda.* Ego ūvās rubrās habeō, Claudia. Ūvās ad Claudiam cāram portō.

*Claudia.* Ūvās quoque amō. Estis puellae bonae. Fortasse ancillae meae fābulās dē patriīs narrant. Amātisne fābulās dē Graeciā?

*Cornēlia.* Es bona, Claudia. Fābulās dē Graeciā maximē amāmus. Ubi sunt ancillae?

Nōtā bene

108. Salvē, the singular form of greeting, and salvēte, the plural form, are really the present imperative forms, singular and plural, of a verb meaning literally *be well, be in good health*. Translate "hail" or "how do you do?" The present imperative singular is the same as the present stem in verbs of the first and second conjugations; the plural is formed by adding -te to the singular form. Thus of salvēre, the form of the present stem and singular imperative is salvē, that of the plural imperative, salvēte. The first person singular form, salveō, is not used. Observe that although salvē, salvēte are used as greetings, the verb does not mean *greet*. The verb that has this meaning is salūtō, salūtāre.

### VOCABULARY XI

amīca, -ae, f., <i>friend</i>	nōs, <i>we</i>
*dē, prep. (with abl.), <i>about, concerning; down from</i>	*nostra, <i>our</i>
dīligenter, adv., <i>diligently, carefully</i>	(salveō), salvēre, <i>be well, be in good health</i>
*doceō, docēre, <i>teach</i>	sevēra, <i>severe, stern</i>
*ego, <i>I</i>	*studeō, studēre, <i>be eager; study</i>
fortāsse, adv., <i>perhaps</i>	*tū, <i>you</i> (sing.)
Latīna, <i>Latin</i> (adj.)	*tua, <i>your</i> (used when addressing one person)
lingua, -ae, f., <i>tongue, language</i>	*vestra, <i>your</i> (used when addressing two or more persons)
māne, adv., <i>in the morning</i>	vōs, <i>you</i> (pl.)
mātrōna, -ae, f., <i>matron</i>	
*mea, <i>my</i>	

### 109. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. Pick out the Latin words in the vocabulary with which the following are associated: *amicable, docile, severity, study.*

II. *Egotism* comes from the Latin word *ego*. *Egotism* is a strong confidence in oneself, a feeling of self-importance.

#### DRILL

I. *The following review list gives all the verbs which you have had. The forms given here are the first person singular present and the present infinitive. Give the meaning of each.*

ambulō, ambulāre	nāvigō, nāvigāre
amō, amāre	ōrnō, ōrnāre
cūrō, cūrāre	parō, parāre
dēlectō, dēlectāre	portō, portāre
dēmōnstrō, dēmōnstrāre	properō, properāre
dēsīderō, dēsīderāre	salūtō, salūtāre
dō, dare	(salveō), salvēre
doceō, docēre	sedeō, sedēre
habeō, habēre	spectō, spectāre
habitō, habitāre	stō, stāre
intrō, intrāre	studeō, studēre
labōrō, labōrāre	sum, esse
laudō, laudāre	videō, vidēre
nārrō, nārrāre	vocō, vocāre

II. *Conjugate the present tense of the Latin verbs with the following meanings:*

have	greet	see	call
teach	praise	study	walk
carry	sit	please	be

III. *Express in Latin:*

- |  |                                  |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 1. I show.                             | 6. You ( <i>pl.</i> ) call.      |
| 2. They are walking.                   | 7. I am decorating.              |
| 3. You ( <i>sing.</i> ) are preparing. | 8. We give.                      |
| 4. We do praise.                       | 9. You ( <i>sing.</i> ) do sail. |
| 5. He sees.                            | 10. They have.                   |

## EXERCISE XI

*Write in Latin:*

1. Tullia, a Roman matron, likes to teach the Latin language.
2. We sit on our benches and work every day.
3. We always study diligently because our teacher is severe.
4. Do you sometimes praise your daughters, Tullia, and



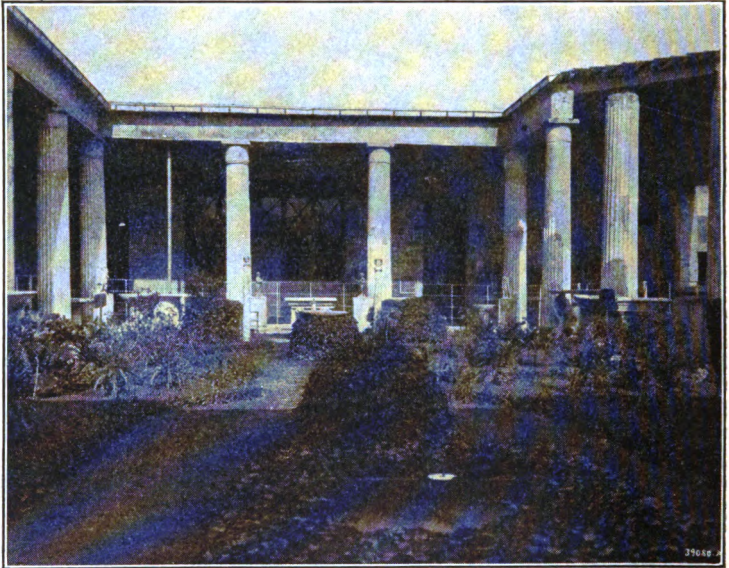
## Tāli

A popular game among the Roman girls was played much like our jackstones. Five knucklebones (tāli) were thrown into the air at once, and as many as possible caught on the back of the hand

tell the girls stories about goddesses? 5. Why are you hurrying into the villa, Secunda? 6. I see Claudia's litter. Perhaps our friend is in the villa. 7. How do you do, girls! Are you studying diligently today? 8. We study in the morning; we are tired now. 9. Your roses are beautiful, girls. 10. Do you see my new jar, Claudia? It is full of white roses.

## CHAPTER XII

### MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION NOMINATIVE, ACCUSATIVE, AND VOCATIVE



Hortus

#### 110. CORNĒLIUS, DOMINUS

*Cornēlius est dominus villae; dominus Cornēlius est vir bonus. Dominus bonus servum laetum habet. Puer laetus dominum bonum amat. Dominus magnum hortum habet; dominus et domina in hortō ambulant. Hortus est longus et lātus. Servus laetus in hortum properat. Ferē*

cotidiē in hortō labōrat. Esne dēfessus, *serve bone*? Esne tū dēfessus, *puer*?

Cornēlius multōs filiōs habet. Filii sunt boni. Filii sunt Mārcus, Lūcius, Aulus, Pūblius, Servius. Filii parvi sunt Pūblius et Servius. Filius adultus est Mārcus. Estisne discipulī boni, pueri? Lūcius est discipulus bonus et diligenter labōrat. Aulus quoque est bonus discipulus. Filii parvi nōndum sunt discipulī. Cornēlius filiōs bonōs amat et saepe laudat. Nōnne Cornēlium amātis, filii?

### 111. Respondē Latinē:

1. Quis est Cornēlius?
2. Quālis dominus est Cornēlius?
3. Quālem servum bonus dominus habet?
4. Quem puer laetus amat?
5. Quid habet Cornēlius?
6. Quī ambulant in hortō? <sup>Who</sup>
7. Estne hortus longus et lātus?
8. Quō servus laetus properat?
9. Esne dēfessus, *serve bone*?
10. Quālēs sunt filii?
11. Quālēs sunt Pūblius et Servius?
12. Quis est discipulus bonus?
13. Suntne filii parvi discipulī?
14. Quōs Cornēlius laudat?
15. Amātisne Cornēlium, filii?

### Nōtā bene

Quī, *who*? (nominative plural masculine); quōs, *whom*? (accusative plural masculine).

### DISCUSSION

112. Make a list of the nouns in the first paragraph that are used in the nominative. What endings do these words appear to have? Are they singular or plural?

The nouns which we have studied in the preceding lessons end in *-a*, and are in the first declension. The nouns used in this paragraph end in *-us* or *-r*, and are in the second declension. The nouns in *-r* formerly had the same ending as nouns in *-us*, but the ending has been dropped in the nominative.

Note that the ending *-us* should not be pronounced so as to rime with *loose*, but with *puss*.

Make a list of the nouns used in the first paragraph in the accusative. What ending do these words have? The accusative singular in the second declension ends in *-um*.

What nouns in the first paragraph are in the vocative? What endings do they have? Nouns of the second declension ending in *-us* have the vocative singular in *-e*; nouns in *-r* have the vocative like the nominative.

113. In the second paragraph find nouns in the nominative plural, accusative plural, and vocative plural. What is the ending for each case?

114. The endings for these cases are seen in the following forms of *servus*:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	<i>servus</i>	<i>servī</i>
<i>Accusative</i>	<i>servum</i>	<i>servōs</i>
<i>Vocative</i>	<i>serve</i>	<i>servī</i>

115. Nouns in *r*, as *vir* and *puer*, do not have a case ending in the nominative and vocative singular:

<i>Nominative</i>	<i>vir</i>	<i>virī</i>
<i>Accusative</i>	<i>virum</i>	<i>virōs</i>
<i>Vocative</i>	<i>vir</i>	<i>virī</i>

### READING LESSON

#### 116. CORNĒLIUS ET FILII

Cornēlius et filiī in Viā Appiā sunt. Virum armātum vident. Vir armātus est nūntius Rōmānus et equum album habet. Et nūntius et equus sunt dēfessi quod Rōmam properant. Nūntius magnam pugnam Rōmānam nūntiat.

“Ubi, mī amīce, Rōmānī pugnant?” clāmat Cornēlius.

“Rōmānī in Galliā pugnant, Cornēli,” respondet nūntius.

“Quis est lēgātus?” rogat Cornēlius.



“Rōmānī Labiēnum lēgātum habent,” respondet nūntius.  
 “Labiēnus gladium tenet et virōs armātōs vocat. Tum viri  
 armātī pugnānt.”

Nūntius Rōmam properat sed Cornēlius et filii domum  
 ambulānt.

Lūcius nūntium et equum album laudat. Tum parvus  
 Pūblius clāmat, “Ego gladium magnum dēsiderō! Parvī  
 puerī semper gladiōs dēsiderant.”

“Lēgātī, mī fili, nōn parvī puerī, gladiōs habent,” respondet  
 Cornēlius.

“Gladium nōn dēsiderās, parve Pūbli,” clāmat Lūcius.  
 “Tū es parvus puer. Ego sum paene adultus et gladium  
 dēsiderō.”

“Mārcus, meus filius adultus, gladium habet,” respondet  
 Cornēlius, “sed vōs, filii mei, nōn estis adultī et nunc librōs  
 tabellāsque, nōn gladiōs, dēsiderātis.”



## Nōtā bene

**117.** The word *-que*, *and*, is used as an enclitic, like *-ne* (see § 27). It is not placed between the two words which it connects, like *et* and English *and*, but is always attached to the second of two connected words; as, *pueri puellaeque*, *boys and girls*.

**118.** Proper nouns in *-ius*, and the common noun *filius*, have the ending *-ī* in the vocative, the accent being retained on the syllable which is accented in the nominative; as, *fīlī*, *O son*, or, more simply, *son*; *Cornēlī*, *Cornelius*. *Meus*, meaning *my*, also has the vocative singular masculine in *-ī*, as in *mī fili*, *my son*.



*Courtesy of The Pennsylvania University Museum*

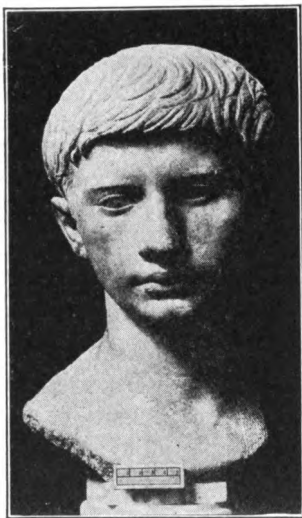
## Puer Rōmānus

endings of the first declension; when used with masculine nouns they have the endings of the second declension; as, *filia bona*, *a good daughter*; *filius bonus*, *a good son*. When listing adjectives in a vocabulary, it is customary to give the forms of the nominative for the different genders; as, *bonus*, *bona*, *good*.

**121.** Most nouns of the second declension ending in *-us* or *-r* in the nominative singular are masculine.

## VOCABULARY XII

- adultus, adulta, *grown up, full-grown*  
 armātus, armāta, *armed*  
 \*clāmō, clāmāre, *call out, shout, exclaim*  
 discipulus, *pupil*  
 dominus, *master*  
 \*equus, *horse*  
 \*ferē, adv., *almost*  
 \*filius, *son*  
 Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul*  
 \*gladius, *sword*  
 hortus, *garden*  
 \*lēgātus, *lieutenant; envoy*  
 liber, *book*  
 \*nōndum, adv., *not yet*  
 \*nūntiō, nūntiāre, *announce, report*  
 \*nūntius, *messenger; message*  
 \*puer, *boy*  
 \*pugna, -ae, f., *fight, battle*  
 pugnō, pugnāre, *fight, contend*  
 \*respondeō, respondēre, *reply, answer*  
 \*rogō, rogāre, *ask, question*
- Rōmānus, Rōmāna, *Roman; as a noun, Rōmānus, a Roman (man)*  
 \*servus, *manservant, slave*  
 tabella, -ae, f., *writing tablet*  
 \*teneō, tenēre, *hold, grasp*  
 \*vir, *man*



Puer Rōmānus

122. Observe that a number of nouns in this vocabulary are the same as nouns which you have had in earlier lessons, except for the ending: dominus, *master*, and domina, *mistress*; filius, *son*, and filia, *daughter*; servus, *manservant*, and serva, *maidservant*. In English there is often no very satisfactory way of distinguishing the sex of a person or animal referred to: discipulus and discipula could both be translated *pupil*,

and the hearer would have to tell from the context whether the pupil was a boy or a girl.

Sometimes a masculine word in Latin does not have the ending *-us*, as *poëta*, *agricola*, *nauta*.

### 123. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Explain the meaning of the italicized words in the following sentences:

1. There is a large *equestrian* statue in the park.
2. The *gladiators* ran into the arena.
3. Victor goes to the *library* for reference work.
4. Do not offend a *pugnacious* man.
5. The English bulldog is a *tenacious* animal.

### DRILL

*Supply the proper case endings:*

1. Dominus bon.... serv.... bon.... habet.
2. Serv.... bon.... domin.... amat.
3. Cornēli.... magn.... hort.... habet.
4. Hort.... est long....
5. Quō, serv.... dēfess..., properās?
6. Fīli.... sunt puer.... bon....
7. Lēgāt.... est armāt....
8. Pūblius, parv.... puer, gladi.... dēsīderat.
9. Cornēli.... puer.... bon.... amat.
10. Amātisne Cornēli..., puer....?

### EXERCISE XII

*Write in Latin:*

1. The little boys and the servants like the big garden. (See § 21.)
2. Tullia's little sons do not yet have swords.
3. Marcus, the lieutenant, is grown up and has both a horse and a sword.
4. Lucius and Aulus are pupils and have tablets and books.
5. "Have you your books, Lucius

and Aulus?" calls out the master. 6. The boys see a messenger in the street. 7. "Are the Romans fighting in Gaul, my friend?" asks Lucius. 8. "I am announcing a great battle, boys," replies the messenger. 9. Perhaps Marcus grasps (his) sword and calls (his) armed men into battle. 10. Messengers hurry to Rome almost every day because the Romans are always fighting.



Equitēs Rōmānī

## CHAPTER XIII

### MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION GENITIVE, DATIVE, AND ABLATIVE



124.

#### IN HORTŌ CORNĒLĪ

Cornēlius villam habet. In villā sunt hortus magnus et parva silva. Itaque Cornēlius dominus est *hortī* et silvae. Proximus *hortō* est ager. Dominus *hortī* et *agrī* saepe in *hortō* cum *filiō* ambulat. Filius *nāviculam* habet; Cornēlius *nāviculam fili* libenter spectat.

Hortus est pulcher. Circum hortum est mūrus altus. Proxima mūrō est statua pulchra deī Mercurī. In hortō Cornēlī est magnus numerus statuārum deōrum et deārum.

( 96 )

Cornēlius multōs amicōs habet. Cornēlius *amicīs* est cārus quod est vir bonus. Cum *amicīs* in hortō hodiē sedet. Filii filiaeque Cornēli in hortō sedent. Proximī Cornēliō et amicīs sunt filii et filiae. *Amicōrum* fābulae filiis et filiabus dominī sunt grātae.

Extrā mūrū sunt inagnī agrī Cornēli. In agris servi cotidiē labōrant. Vespere servi dēfessi ex agris ad villam properant. Servi in hortis nōn saepe sedent quod servi dīligenter labōrant.

### 125. Respondē Latinē:

1. Quid habet Cornēlius? 2. Cuius est Cornēlius dominus? 3. Ubi est ager? 4. Quid habet filius? 5. Ubi est statua dei? 6. Quid est in hortō Cornēli? 7. Suntne multae statuae deōrum et deārum in hortō?

8. Habetne Cornēlius amicōs? 9. Nōne est Cornēlius amicīs cārus? 10. Quālis vir est Cornēlius? 11. Ubi sunt filii et filiae? 12. Quōrum fābulae filiōs et filiās Cornēli dēlectant?

13. Ubi sunt agrī Cornēli? 14. Ubi servi iabōrant? 15. Unde servi dēfessi vespere properant? 16. Num servi in hortis sedent?

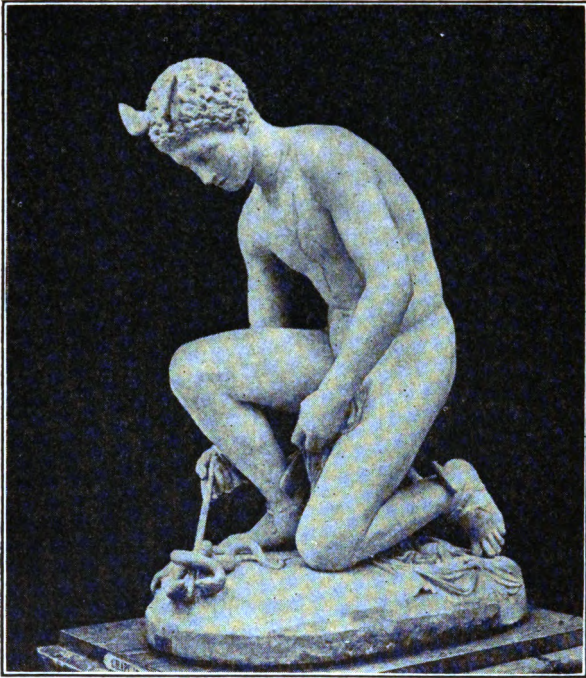
Nōtā bene

Quōrum, *whose?* (masculine plural).

### DISCUSSION

126. In the sentence *Itaque Cornēlius dominus est horti et silvae*, how is the word *horti* used? In what case and number is it? What is the ending? Nouns in the second declension have the genitive singular in *-i*.

In the sentence *Amicōrum fābulae filiis et filiabus sunt grātae*, how is *amicōrum* used? In what case and number is it? What is the ending? How does this ending differ from the genitive plural ending of the first declension?



**Mercurius**

**127.** Make a list of nouns used with the adjectives meaning *dear*, *near*, and *pleasing*. In what case are these nouns? What is the ending of the dative singular? of the dative plural?

**128.** Make a list of phrases showing *place in which* and *place from which*. In what case are the nouns in these phrases? What is the ending of the ablative singular? of the ablative plural?

**129.** The form of the genitive singular of any noun will tell you the declension of the noun; as, *serva*, *servae*, first declension; *servus*, *servi*, second declension.

130. The following paradigms will show you how masculine nouns of the second declension are declined.

**servus, servī, base serv-, servant, slave**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	servus	servī
<i>Gen.</i>	servī	servōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	servō	servīs
<i>Acc.</i>	servum	servōs
<i>Abl.</i>	servō	servīs

The vocative singular is *serve*; the vocative plural, as in all nouns, is like the nominative plural.

**filius, fili, base fili-, son**

<i>Nom.</i>	filius	fili
<i>Gen.</i>	fili	filiōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	filiō	filiis
<i>Acc.</i>	filium	filiōs
<i>Abl.</i>	filiō	filiis

Note that the genitive singular of nouns in *-ius* ends in *-i* instead of *-ii*; and that here, contrary to the general rule, the base is changed. The vocative singular of *filius*, and of proper names in *-ius*, ends in *-i* instead of *-ie*; as, *fili*, *Cornēli*. The accent of such forms is on the syllable that is accented in the nominative.

**puer, puerī, base puer-, boy**

<i>Nom.</i>	puer	puerī
<i>Gen.</i>	puerī	puerōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	puerō	puerīs
<i>Acc.</i>	puerum	puerōs
<i>Abl.</i>	puerō	puerīs



The noun *vir*, *virī*, base *vir-*, is declined exactly like *puer*:

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>vir</i>	<i>virī</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>virōrum</i>
	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>

*ager*, *agrī*, base *agr-*, *field*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>agrī</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>agrōrum</i>
	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>

131. Observe that it is especially important to memorize the genitive singular of nouns that end in *-er*. Thus the genitive singular of *puer* is *puerī*, and hence the base, *puer-*, contains an *e*, just as the nominative does. But the genitive singular of *ager* is *agrī*, and hence the base is *agr-*, which does not contain an *e*.

132. Certain adjectives in *-us* and *-er* are declined according to the second declension when they modify a masculine noun, and according to the first declension when they modify a feminine noun. The base of such adjectives can be found by dropping the *-a* of the feminine form; as, *altus*, feminine *alta*, base *alt-*; *pulcher*, feminine *pulchra*, base *pulchr-*.

### READING LESSON

133.

#### DISCIPULI

*Lūcius* et *Aulus* sunt *filii* *Tulliae* et *Cornēli*. *Māne* ad *lūdum* cum *paedagōgō* ambulant. *Pueri* *librōs* et *tabellās* et *stilōs* portant. In *lūdō* *diligenter* student.

*Orbilius* est *lūdi* *magister*. *Orbilius* est *sevērus* et *pigrī* *discipulī* *Orbiliō* nōn sunt *grātī*. *Sī* *lūdi* *magister* *irātus* est, *discipulōs* *castigat*. *Tum* *puerī* *clāmant* et *lacrimant*.

*Lūcius* et *Aulus* sunt *boni* *discipulī*; *itaque* ad *lūdum* *libenter* *properant*. *Vespere* *filii* *Cornēli* *ā* *lūdō* ad *villam* *properant*. *Tum* *librōs* et *tabellās* in *mēnsam* *conlocant* et



cum puellis in hortō villae sedent. Postea Cornēlius filiis  
et filiabus fabulās nārrat.

### VOCABULARY XIII

\*ager, agrī, m., *field*

\*altus, alta, *high, tall, deep*

\*amicus, amīci, m., *friend*

castigo, castigāre, *punish,*  
*reprove, beat*

\*circum, prep. (with acc.),  
*around*

\*conlocō, conlocāre, *place*

\*deus, deī, m., *god*

\*extrā, prep. (with acc.),  
*outside of*

irātus, irāta, *angry*

lacrimō, lacrimāre, *weep, cry*

lūdus, lūdi, m., *school; game*

magister, magistrī, m.,  
*master, schoolmaster*

Mercurius, Mercurī, m.,  
*Mercury, messenger of the*  
*gods*

\*mūrus, mūrī, m., *wall*

\*numerus, numerī, m., *num-*  
*ber*

paedagōgus, paedagōgī, m.,  
*attendant, tutor*

piger, pigra, <i>lazy</i>	stilus, stilli, m., <i>style</i> , or
pulcher, pulchra, <i>beautiful</i> ,	<i>stylus</i> , a pointed instru-
<i>fair</i>	ment for writing on wax
*sī, conj., <i>if</i>	vespere, adv., <i>in the evening</i>

### 134. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

- I. 1. At what time of day are *vesper* services held?
2. What are *mural* decorations?
3. What is *circumpolar* exploration?
4. What is the difference between *horticulture* and *agriculture*?

II. When a newsboy calls "*Extra!*" he is using a Latin word. An *extra* edition of a newspaper may be thought of as an edition issued outside the regular editions, to convey special news.

### DRILL

I. *Supply the proper case endings:*

1. Hortus Cornēl.... est magn.....
2. Cum Cornēli.... sunt amīc.....
3. Serv.... in agr.... (*pl.*) labōrant.
4. Puerī amīc.... (*pl.*) sunt grāt.....
5. Librī magistr.... (*sing.*) sunt grāt.....

II. *Write in parallel columns the declension of dominus and domina, and compare the endings.*

### EXERCISE XIII

*Write in Latin:*

1. Many slaves work in the master's fields; a few work in the garden. 2. Cornelius and (his) sons like the beautiful garden. 3. In the garden Cornelius tells (his) sons stories about Roman gods. 4. The Romans have a great number of gods. 5. There is a high wall around the master's garden. 6. Where are you, Lucius and Aulus? We are

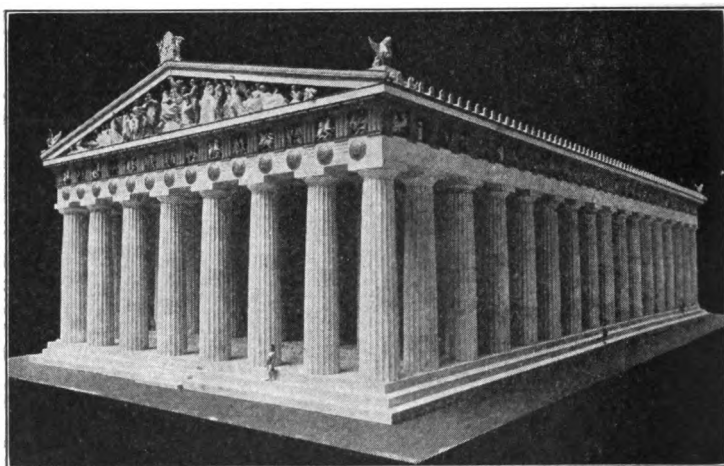
outside the wall with our attendant. 7. Orbilius, the school-master, calls the boys and (their) friends into school. 8. The lazy boy does not study, but places (his) stylus and tablet on the bench; then the angry teacher sees the boy and punishes (him). 9. The boy cries because Orbilius is angry. 10. In the morning the pupils hurry to school but in the evening they hurry home.



**Magister discipulum castigat**  
A wall painting from Herculaneum

## CHAPTER XIV

### NEUTER NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

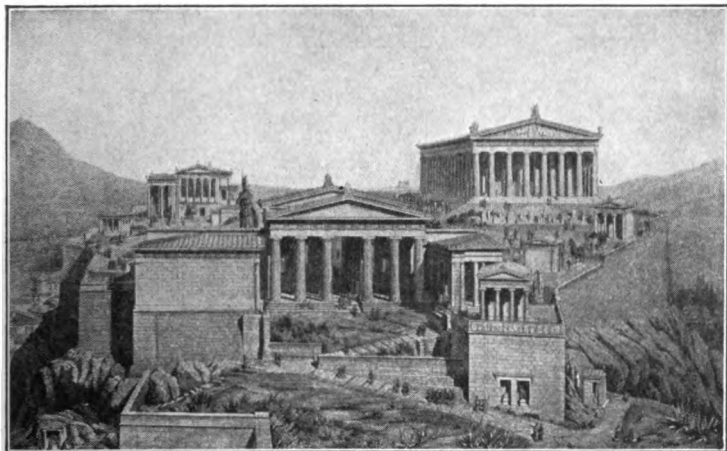


*Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art*

#### Parthenōn, clārissimum templum Graeciae

#### 135.                    TEMPLA ANTĪQUA

*Templum* est Athēnis. Templum est *antīquum*. Incolae Athēnārum *templum* saepe intrant. Incolae in templum ambulant quod columnās et statuās libenter spectant. Proximī templō sunt multī virī. Columnae pūlchrae templi virōs dēlectant. In templō est magna statua deae sapientiae. Proximae statuae sunt ārae. Fēminae ārās deae ōrnant. Agricolae frūmentum ad ārās templi portant. Nautae aurum ā terrīs extrēmīs in templum portant. Sic virī et fēminae templi deam adōrant.



The Acropolis at Athens

The hill on which the Parthenon stands as it probably looked two thousand years ago. Notice the statue of Athena in the foreground. This bronze statue was about fifty feet high and could be seen far out at sea

Hodiē quoque *templa antīqua* virōs et fēminās dēlectant. Ā terrīs extrēmīs ad Graeciam nāvigant. *Templa clāra* intrant et laudant. Etiam hodiē *columnae templōrum antīquōrum* sunt pulchrae. Proxima magnīs templīs sunt multa domicilia parva. Incolae Graeciae longās fābulās dē templīs antīquīs nārrant.

**136. Respondē Latinē:**

1. Ubi est templum? 2. Quāle est templum? 3. Quid incolae Athēnārum saepe intrant? 4. Ubi sunt viri? 5. Dēlectantne templī columnae virōs? 6. Ubi est statua deae? 7. Quō agricolae frūmentum portant? 8. Quid nautae in templum portant?

9. Quid virōs et fēminās hodiē dēlectat? 10. Quālia templa hodiē virōs et fēminās dēlectant? 11. Quid virī et fēminae intrant? 12. Nōne columnae templōrum anti-

quōrum sunt pulchrae? 13. Ubi sunt parva domicilia?  
14. Narrantne incolae Graeciae fābulās longās dē templis  
antīquīs?

**Nōtā bene**

Quāle, *what kind of?* (nominative and accusative singular  
neuter); quālia, *what kind of?* (nominative and accusative plural  
neuter).

**DISCUSSION**

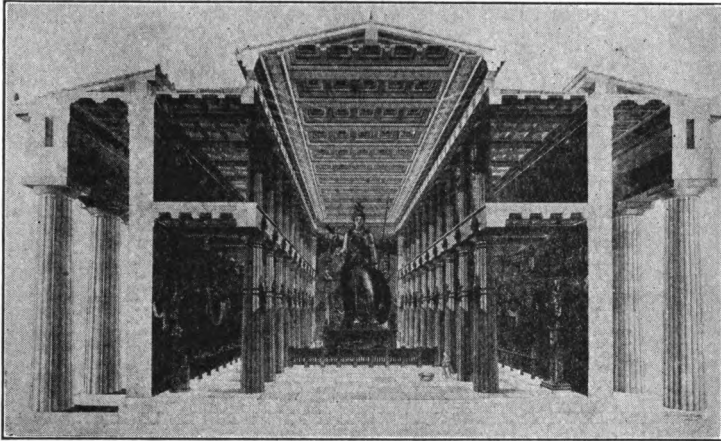
**137.** In the first two sentences of the story, how is the word **templum** used? In what case and number is it? What is the ending? In the sentence **Columnae pulchrae templi virōs dēlectant**, in what case and number is **templi**? What is the ending? To what declension does this noun belong? Nouns of the second declension with the nominative in **-um** are neuter.

In the sentence **Incolae Athēnārum templum saepe intrant**, how is **templum** used? In what case and number is it? What is the ending? Compare this ending with the nominative singular ending. Neuter nouns of the second declension have the ending **-um** in the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular.

Find sentences which contain the genitive, dative, and ablative singular of **templum**. What is the ending of each of these cases? The endings of the genitive, dative, and ablative singular of neuter nouns in the second declension are the same as those of masculine nouns.

**138.** In the first sentence of the second paragraph, how is the word **templa** used? In what case and number is it? What is the ending? In the sentence **Templa clāra intrant et laudant**, how is **templa** used? In what case and number is it? What is the ending? The nominative, accusative, and vocative plural of neuter nouns always end in **-a**.

Find sentences which contain the genitive, dative, and ablative plural of **templum**. What are the endings of these



*Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art*

### Statua Minervae

The huge statue of Minerva (called Athena by the Greeks), inside the Parthenon, was made of wood overlaid with gold and ivory. Athena has a small statue of the goddess of victory in her right hand, and a sphinx and two winged horses on her helmet. In the space between the wall and the columns on either side were stored some of the treasures of Athena—trophies of war, and various objects of gold and other metals

cases? In the plural, the endings of the genitive, dative, and ablative of neuter nouns are always the same as those of masculine nouns of the same declension.

139. Learn the following paradigm of a neuter noun of the second declension:

templum, templi, base templ-, *temple*

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	templum	templa
<i>Gen.</i>	templī	templōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	templō	templis
<i>Acc.</i>	templum	templa
<i>Abl.</i>	templō	templis



## READING LESSON

## 140.

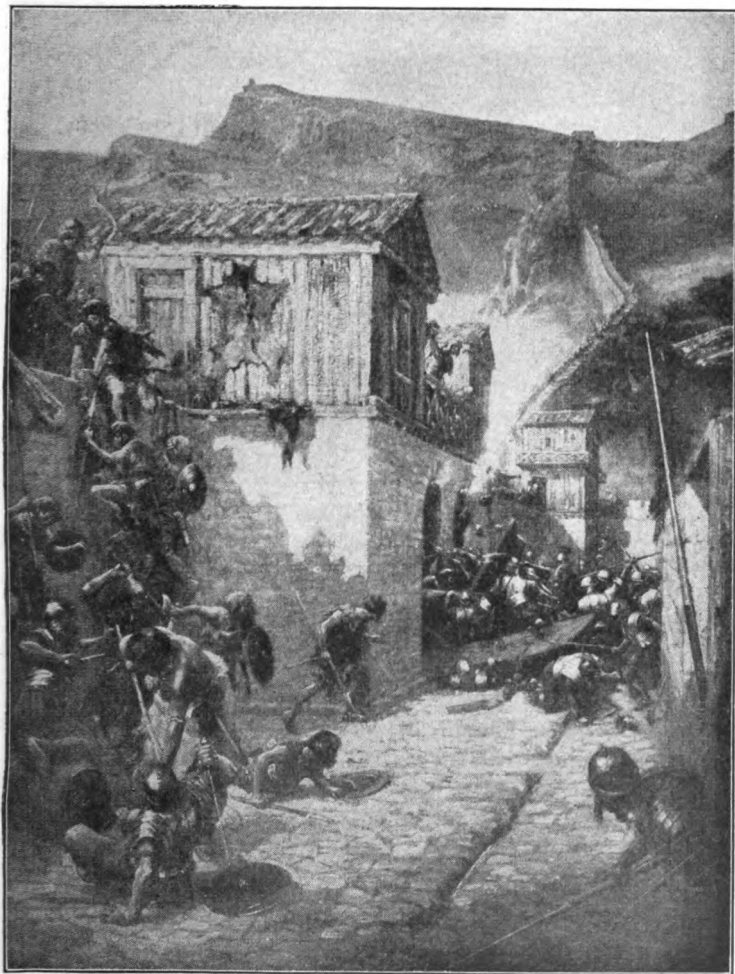
## IN BRITANNIÄ

In Britannia cōpiae Rōmānae castra magna habent. Castra Rōmāna proxima sunt ōrae quod Rōmānī multās onerāriās habent. Onerāriae auxilia et frūmentum ad cōpiās Rōmānās portant. Circum castra est altum vällum. In vällō stat Mārcus, lēgātus Rōmānus. Mārcus est adultus filius Cornēli. Mārcus nūntium Rōmānum extrā vällum videt. Nūntius ad castra Rōmāna properat. "Salvē, amice," clāmat Mārcus. "Parantne Britannī proelium?" "Salvē, lēgāte, multī Britannī armātī sunt in silvīs proximīs. Intrā silvās sunt multa arma et multum frūmentum quoque. Fēminae cum filiīs et filiābus ab oppidīs et ab agrīs in silvās properant quod fāma Rōmānōrum est magna et proelium timent," nūntius clāmat. Tum in castra celeriter properat.

Lēgātus neque Britannōs neque pericula bellī timet quod vällum castrōrum est firmum et cōpiae Rōmānae sunt multae.

## VOCABULARY XIV

adōrō, adōrāre, <i>worship</i>	celeriter, adv., <i>quickly, fast</i>
āra, -ae, f., <i>altar</i>	*cōpia, -ae, f., <i>abundance, plenty; in pl., troops, forces</i>
*arma, armōrum, n. pl., <i>arms, armor</i>	domicilium, domicili, . n., <i>dwelling, home</i>
aurum, aurī, n., <i>gold</i>	*etiam, adv., <i>even, also</i>
*auxilium, auxiliī, n., <i>aid, help; in pl., reinforcements, auxiliary troops</i>	*fāma, -ae, f., <i>fame, reputation, report</i>
*bellum, bellī, n., <i>war</i>	*frūmentum, frūmentī, n., <i>grain, corn</i>
Britannia, -ae, f., <i>Britain</i>	*intrā, prep. (with acc.), <i>within, inside</i>
Britannus, Britanna, <i>British; as a noun, Britanus, Britanni, m., a Briton</i>	*oppidum, oppidī, n., <i>town</i>
*castra, castrōrum, n. pl., <i>camp</i>	*periculum, periculī, n., <i>danger, peril</i>



**Britanni castra Rōmāna oppugnant**

\*proelium, proeli, n., *battle*

\*timeō, timēre, *fear*

\*sic, adv., *thus, so, in this way*

\*vāllum, vālli, n., *rampart,*

templum, templi, n., *temple*

*fortification*



### Mūrus Rōmānus

To keep out the attacking Scots and Picts, the Romans built a wall across their northern boundary in Britain. Part of this wall still stands

#### 141. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. Pick out the Latin words with which the following are associated: *auxiliary, bellicose, copious, perilous, timid.*

II. *Intramural* games are played between teams within the same school walls, or within the same institution.

#### DRILL

I. *Supply the proper case endings:*

1. Perīcula bell.... semper sunt magn.....
2. Circum oppid.... est mūrus altus.
3. Castra proxim.... oppid.... nōn sunt.
4. In castr.... sunt multī virī armātī.
5. Vāllum castr.... est firm.....
6. Lēgātus et virī sunt proximī vāll.....
7. Nūntius et lēgātus proeli.... (*pl.*) nōn timent.

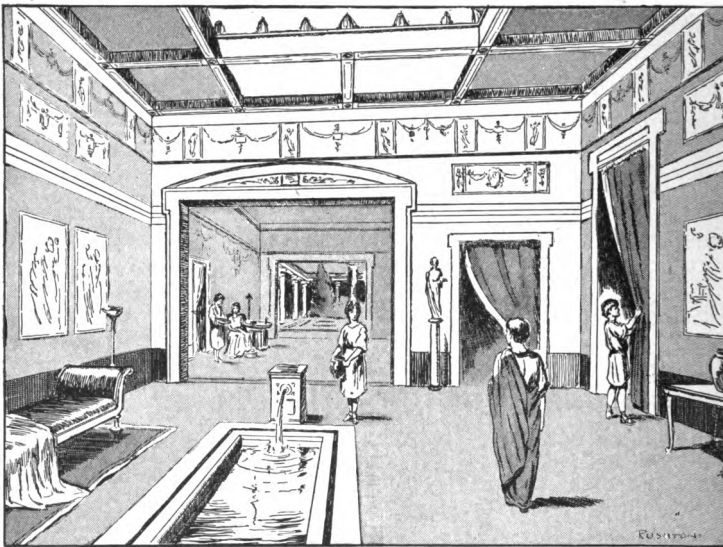
8. Nūntiī ad oppid.... (*sing.*) auxili.... celeriter vocant.
  9. Intrā oppid.... (*pl.*) sunt neque fēminae neque puellae.
  10. Templā Rōmān.... ārās habent.
- II. *Decline:* bellum, proelium, mūrus, castra, ager, fāma.

## EXERCISE XIV

*Write in Latin:*

1. There are beautiful temples in many towns of Italy.
2. The inhabitants of the towns place gold in the temples.
3. There are altars even in the dwellings of the inhabitants.
4. Men and women worship the gods both in the temples and in (their) dwellings.
5. Marcus, the lieutenant, is in Britain with the armed forces of the Romans.
6. He fears neither battles nor the dangers of war, because he has many auxiliary troops.
7. Roman transports bring arms and grain to the camp quickly.
8. Thus there is an abundance of grain in the camp.
9. The Britons are outside the rampart; the Romans are inside the rampart.
10. The Romans have a great reputation, haven't they?

CHAPTER XV  
ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST-AND-SECOND  
DECLENSION



142. DOMICILIUM URBĀNUM

Rōmae Cornēlius magnum domicilium urbānum habet. Dominus, domina, filiī, filiae, servī, servae, in domiciliō magnō habitant. Cornēlius est dominus benignus; itaque servī bonī Cornēli dīligenter labōrant. Tullia est domina benigna; itaque servae bonae Tulliam amant. Magnum domicilium est dominō et dominae grātum. Rōmae sunt multa domicilia magna.

Servī et servae in domiciliō Cornēli libenter labōrant quod dominum et dominam amant. Sextus est servus bonus. Sextus nōn est liber sed nōn est miser quod dominus est benignus. Sextus nōn est piger; itaque dominus Sextum saepe laudat. Cornēlius multōs et bonōs servōs habet. Servī bonī nōn sunt liberī sed nōn sunt miserī. Servī nōn sunt pigri. Maria nōn est libera quod est serva. Tullia est domina benigna; itaque Maria nōn est misera. Maria nōn est pigra. Tulliae servae sunt neque miserae neque pigrae.

Servī et servae nōn sunt miserī quod dominus et domina sunt benignī. Servī et servae sunt laetī quod in domiciliō pulchrō habitant. Domini filii et filiae quoque sunt laetī. Liberī laetī domiciliū pulchrum amant. In domiciliō peristylū pulchrum est. Altae columnae peristylū circumstant. In peristylō est hortus pulcher. Liberōs peristylū dēlectat quod est apertum. Domiciliū pulchrum Cornēlium et Tulliam et liberōs dēlectat. Domicilia pulchra dominis Rōmānis semper sunt grāta.

Multī incolae Italiae magna domicilia urbāna habent. Laeca domiciliū pulchrum habet. Laeca est poēta clārus et multam pecūniam habet. Agricolae Rōmāni multam pecūniam nōn habent; itaque domicilia pulchra nōn habent. Multī agricolae viās urbānās timent; itaque in casis rūsticis habitant.

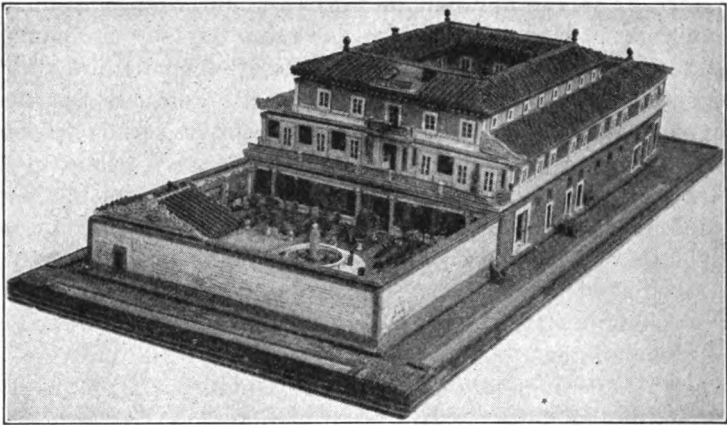
#### Nōtā bene

143. Liberī, meaning *children*, is the masculine plural of the adjective *liber*, *libera*, *liberum* and really means *the free ones*. It is used to designate the children of free parents. Hence it cannot be used to mean slave children.

Distinguish carefully between *liberī*, *children*, and *librī*, *books*.

#### 144. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quid Cornēlius Rōmae habet? 2. Quālis dominus est Cornēlius? 3. Quālēs sunt servī? 4. Quālis domina est Tullia? 5. Quālēs sunt servae Tulliae? 6. Quāle est domiciliū? 7. Quālia domicilia Rōmae sunt?



*Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art*

### Domus Pansae

A model of the House of Pansa, in Pompeii, so called because when it was excavated one of the inscriptions on the garden wall contained the name Pansa. Notices, signs, advertisements, electioneering propaganda, etc., were often written on the walls of buildings, which served as sign-boards to the ancient Romans

8. Quis est Sextus? 9. Quālis servus est Sextus? 10. Cūr dominus Sextum laudat? 11. Num servī sunt miserī? 12. Suntne servī pigri? 13. Cūr est Maria nōn misera? 14. Estne Maria pigra? 15. Quālēs sunt servae Tulliae?

16. Num miserī sunt servī et servae? 17. Quālēs sunt filii et filiae? 18. Quāle est peristylum? 19. Quōs peristylum dēlectat? 20. Quāle domicilium Cornēlium dēlectat? 21. Quālia domicilia dominīs Rōmānīs sunt grāta?

22. Quī magna domicilia habent? 23. Quālis poēta est Laeca? 24. Quī viās urbānās timent?

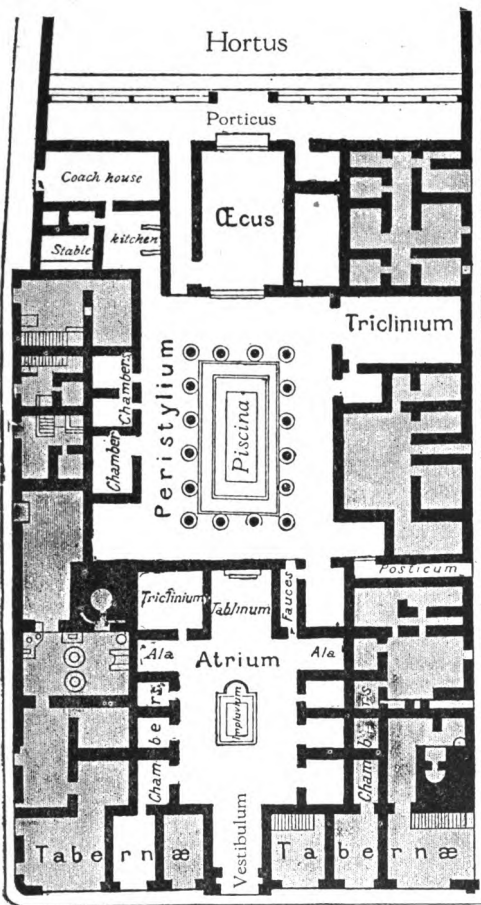
### DISCUSSION

145. State the case, gender, and number of the nouns in the following phrases: **dominus benignus, domina benigna, servī boni, servae bonae, magnum domicilium, magna domicilia, multi incolae.** What is the ending of the adjective

**KEY**

- vestibulum vestibule and main entrance
- tabernae shops
- atrium, main hall
- impluvium, pool or rain basin (see p. 120)
- [chambers, about the atrium, used as sleeping rooms]
- ala, wing or chapel
- tablinum, office or library
- triclinium, dining room
- faucēs, passage
- posticum, back door or exit
- peristylum, or peristylum, or peristylum, peristyle, an inner court open to the sky, surrounded by a portico
- piscina, fish pool (see p. 118)

- [chambers, used as sleeping rooms, especially for women or servants]
- triclinium, a second dining room, perhaps used in summer
- oecus, hall, drawing room
- porticus, portico, a roofed space, separated from the garden by a row of pillars
- hortus, garden



**First-floor Plan of the House of Pansa**

This plan is based on a restoration which is slightly different from that shown on the opposite page. The main entrance from the street (shown at the left in the plan above) was through the vestibulum, or vestibule, admitting to the atrium, or main hall, which, however, was open to the sky; the owner and his family and servants lived in comparative privacy in the rooms facing upon the atrium and the peristylum, or peristyle, a second inner court more remote from the street. The pictures on pages 118 and 130 show scenes of family life in the peristyle. The rooms along the outside of the house, shaded in the plan, were rented out as shops (tabernae) or apartments. In the large garden in the rear of the house (shown in the foreground in the picture opposite), there were vegetables and fruits, and also flowers and ornamental shrubs.



in each phrase when it modifies a masculine singular noun; a feminine singular noun; a neuter singular noun? What is the ending of the adjective when it modifies a masculine plural noun; a feminine plural noun; a neuter plural noun?

146. Adjectives have three genders, for they must agree in gender, number, and case with the nouns which they modify. Certain adjectives, when modifying masculine nouns, have masculine forms like those of the second-declension masculines. When they modify feminine nouns, they have feminine forms like those of the first declension. When they modify neuter nouns, they have neuter forms like those of the second-declension neuters. Such adjectives are called adjectives of the first-and-second declension. Hereafter adjectives will be listed in the three genders; as, **magnus, magna, magnum, or magnus, -a, -um.**

147. Learn the following paradigm of an adjective of the first-and-second declension.

**magnus, magna, magnum, great**

*Singular*

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	magnus	magna	magnum
<i>Gen.</i>	magnī	magnae	magnī
<i>Dat.</i>	magnō	magnae	magnō
<i>Acc.</i>	magnum	magnam	magnum
<i>Abl.</i>	magnō	magnā	magnō

*Plural*

<i>Nom.</i>	magnī	magnae	magna
<i>Gen.</i>	magnōrum	magnārum	magnōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs
<i>Acc.</i>	magnōs	magnās	magna
<i>Abl.</i>	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs

148. In the second paragraph, observe the endings and bases of the adjectives meaning *wretched* and *lazy*.

Some of the adjectives in *-er*, belonging to the first-and-second declension, have a base with the *e*, some have a base without the *e*. The feminine form of the nominative singular shows whether the base has the *e* or not.

149. Learn the following paradigms:

**miser, misera, miserum, wretched**

*Singular*

<i>Nom.</i>	miser	misera	miserum
<i>Gen.</i>	miserī	miserae	miserī
<i>Dat.</i>	miserō	miserae	miserō
<i>Acc.</i>	miserum	miseram	miserum
<i>Abl.</i>	miserō	miserā	miserō

*Plural*

<i>Nom.</i>	miserī	miserae	misera
<i>Gen.</i>	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
<i>Acc.</i>	miserōs	miserās	misera
<i>Abl.</i>	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

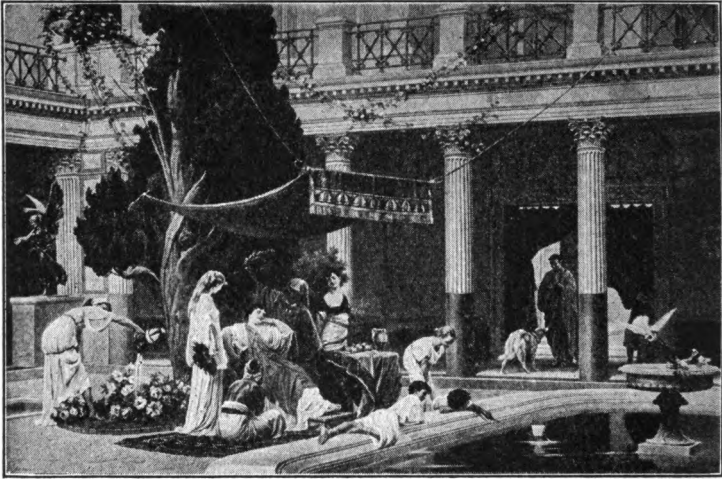
**pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, beautiful**

*Singular*

<i>Nom.</i>	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
<i>Gen.</i>	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
<i>Dat.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
<i>Acc.</i>	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
<i>Abl.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

*Plural*

<i>Nom.</i>	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
<i>Gen.</i>	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
<i>Abl.</i>	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs



### In peristylō

150. In the sentence *Servi et servae nōn sunt miserī quod dominus et domina sunt benignī*, how are the words *servi* and *servae* used? What is the gender of each word? What adjective describes *servi* and *servae*? What ending has it? What adjective describes *dominus* and *domina*? What ending has it? An adjective has a masculine ending if used to limit two nouns referring to persons of different genders.

In the fourth paragraph study the phrases *multī incolae*, *poēta clārus*, and *agricolae Rōmānī*. Why do the adjectives have masculine endings? Adjectives of the first-and-second declension have the endings of the second declension if they modify masculine or neuter nouns, and the endings of the first declension if they modify feminine nouns, whether the nouns modified have these endings or not.

### RULE

151. An adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.

## VOCABULARY XV

circumstō, circumstāre, <i>sur-</i> <i>round, encircle</i>	peristylum, peristylī, n., <i>peristyle</i>
*liber, libera, liberum, <i>free</i>	rūsticus, rūstica, rūsticum, <i>rustic, rural</i>
*liberī, liberōrum, m. pl., <i>children</i>	urbānus, urbāna, urbānum, <i>pertaining to the city,</i> <i>urban</i>
*miser, misera, miserum, <i>wretched, unhappy</i>	

## 152.

## LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

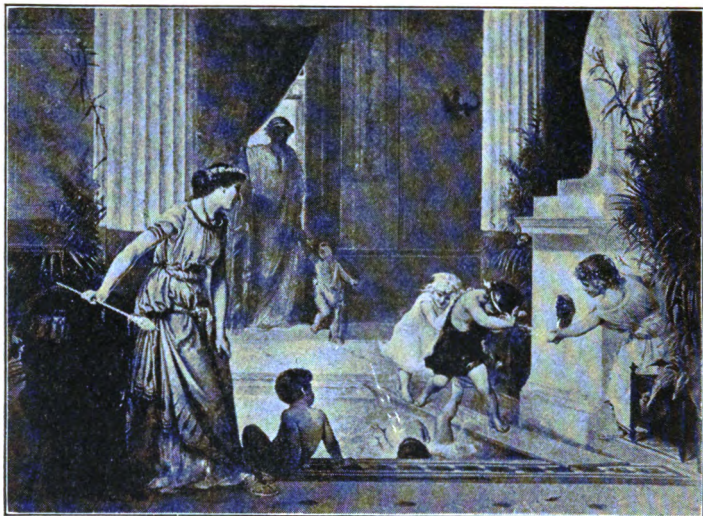
Explain the meaning of the italicized words in the following sentences:

1. *Circumstantial* evidence should be received with caution.
2. Without *liberty* man is a *miserable* slave.
3. The *interurban* busses run every hour.
4. The garden contains several pieces of *rustic* furniture.

## DRILL

I. *The adjectives in earlier lessons were given without showing the forms for the three genders. These forms are given in the following list. Give the meaning of each adjective.*

adultus, -a, -um	clausus, -a, -um	noster, -tra, -trum
albus, -a, -um	Cornēliānus, -a, -um	novus, -a, -um
altus, -a, -um	dēfessus, -a, -um	parvus, -a, -um
Americānus, -a, -um	extrēmus, -a, -um	paucī, -ae, -a
amicus, -a, -um	firmus, -a, -um	piger, -gra, -grum
amplus, -a, -um	grātus, -a, -um	plēnus, -a, -um
antiquus, -a, -um	irātus, -a, -um	proximus, -a, -um
apertus, -a, -um	Italicus, -a, -um	pulcher, -chra, -chrum
armātus, -a, -um	laetus, -a, -um	Rōmānus, -a, -um
benignus, -a, -um	lātus, -a, -um	ruber, -bra, -brum
bonus, -a, -um	longus, -a, -um	sevērus, -a, -um
Britannus, -a, -um	magnus, -a, -um	tēctus, -a, -um
cārus, -a, -um	meus, -a, -um	tuus, -a, -um
clārus, -a, -um	multus, -a, -um	vester, -tra, -trum



### Impluvium

#### II. Supply the proper case endings:

via long....	poëta Rōmān....
domicilium parv....	fēmina pulchr....
ager lāt....	agricol.... liber
filius cār....	vāllum alt....
serv.... miser	naut.... irāt.... ( <i>nom. sing.</i> )

III. Decline the Latin for the following: lazy boy, long war, free man, famous poet, beautiful daughter, big book.

#### IV. Supply the proper case endings:

1. Laeca, poëta clār...., ad Cornēlī domicilium saepe ambulat.
2. Poëta fābulās grāt.... nārrat.
3. Liberī laet.... poëtam clār.... amant.
4. In peristylō pulchr.... poëta cum liberīs bon.... saepe sedet.

5. Fābulae dē terrīs extrēm.... puerīs Rōmān.... sunt grāt....
6. Fābulae dē deābus puellās parv.... dēlectant.
7. Lūdī liberōrum parv.... poētae clār.... sunt grāt....

## EXERCISE XV

*Write in Latin:*

1. Many Romans have beautiful city dwellings. 2. Our peristyle is long and wide. 3. Beautiful columns surround the open peristyle. 4. Marcus is at home today and is sitting in the peristyle with the little children. 5. He is telling the happy boys and girls stories about the Roman camp and the long war.

6. A rustic cottage is pleasing to the Roman farmer. 7. In the cottage of the happy farmer are a few menservants and maidservants. 8. The farmer is a good master; and so (his) slaves are not lazy. 9. We are not free but we are not unhappy. 10. The life of your slaves is unhappy because you are not a kind master.



### Pictūra Rōmāna

The ancient Romans were fond of decorating the walls and floors of their homes with pictures like this, a floor mosaic from an ancient house

## CHAPTER XVI

### REVIEW OF NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND VERBS

#### 153. I. Case endings

##### Nominative

*Supply the proper case endings:*

1. Cornēlius est domin.... bon.... et Tullia est domin.... benign....
2. Lēgāt.... et cōpi.... armāt.... cum Britannīs pugnāt.
3. Rōmān.... sunt irāt....; itaque pericul.... est magn....
4. Castr.... Rōmānōrum sunt proxim.... oppidō clārō.
5. In oppidō sunt domicili.... mult.... et templum pulchr....
6. Mult.... vir.... et fēmin.... templum intrant.
7. Iānu.... templi est semper apert....
8. Oliv.... et ūv.... pulchr.... dēlectant incolās Rōmae; mult.... incol.... agricolae pecūniam dant.

##### Genitive

*Give the Latin for the italicized words:*

1. The stories *of the famous poets* delight the boys.
2. The old poet likes to tell his stories to the *lieutenants'* sons.
3. The *boys'* school is near the town.
4. The boys like the *messenger's* horse.
5. The walls *of the town* are high.
6. In the shop near the school are baskets full *of grain*.
7. Galba's shop is full *of books*.
8. In the shops of Rome are little statues *of gods and goddesses*.



### Sacrarium

Nearly every house uncovered in Pompeii had its family shrine. On this one we see the two gods or *Larēs* (each one was called a *Lār*) who watched over the household, dancing about the figure which probably represented the spirit of the family or household. The Romans often associated snakes, which were frequently seen in cemeteries, with the spirits of the dead. The snake on this shrine represents, perhaps, the family ancestors

### Ablative

*Give the ablative of these words in the number indicated:*

- |                     |                       |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. terra, singular  | 6. gladius, plural    |
| 2. equus, plural    | 7. numerus, singular  |
| 3. aqua, plural     | 8. fāma, plural       |
| 4. amīcus, singular | 9. arma, plural       |
| 5. cōpia, singular  | 10. pecūnia, singular |



**Dative**

*Give the dative of the following words in the number indicated:*

- |                      |                        |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. aqua, singular    | 11. servus, plural     |
| 2. silva, plural     | 12. auxilium, singular |
| 3. oppidum, singular | 13. lēgātus, plural    |
| 4. via, plural       | 14. liberī, plural     |
| 5. amīcus, singular  | 15. equus, singular    |
| 6. vita, singular    | 16. templum, plural    |
| 7. castra, plural    | 17. fābula, plural     |
| 8. pugna, singular   | 18. proelium, plural   |
| 9. patria, plural    | 19. filius, plural     |
| 10. vir, singular    | 20. filia, plural      |

**Accusative**

*Give the accusative of the following words in the number indicated:*

- |                       |                       |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. auxilium, singular | 7. bellum, singular   |
| 2. liber, plural      | 8. arma, plural       |
| 3. cōpia, plural      | 9. amīcus, singular   |
| 4. vāllum, plural     | 10. mūrus, plural     |
| 5. gladius, singular  | 11. deus, plural      |
| 6. prōvincia, plural  | 12. periculum, plural |

**Vocative**

*Give the vocative of each of the following words in the number indicated:*

- |                         |                         |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. dominus, singular    | 7. Orbilius, singular   |
| 2. Iūlia, singular      | 8. liberī, plural       |
| 3. discipulus, singular | 9. puer, singular       |
| 4. magister, plural     | 10. vir, singular       |
| 5. filius, singular     | 11. Cornēlius, singular |
| 6. lēgātus, singular    | 12. Mārcus, singular    |



**Pistrina**  
A bakery in Pompeii

### 154. II. Prepositional phrases

*Write the following phrases in Latin:*

- |                                     |                               |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. out of the forest                | 11. in the camp               |
| 2. on the walls                     | 12. with the auxiliary troops |
| 3. from (away from) the<br>ramparts | 13. in the provinces          |
| 4. with the messenger               | 14. out of the windows        |
| 5. out of the streets               | 15. around the rampart        |
| 6. away from the school             | 16. to (toward) the forces    |
| 7. in the books                     | 17. outside the wall          |
| 8. with the woman                   | 18. within the camp           |
| 9. away from the battle             | 19. into the water            |
| 10. out of the fight                | 20. to (toward) the messenger |



### Molae

Slaves are turning the mills shown empty in the preceding picture. Sometimes donkeys were used in place of slaves. In the background the baker is putting leaves into the oven. Sacks of grain waiting to be ground are piled on the stone pavement; the wealthier families brought their own grain to the bakery to be ground and made up into bread.

### 155. III. Relations of place expressed without a preposition

*Express the following in Latin:*

- |                     |                        |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| 1. away from Athens | 9. in Rome             |
| 2. at home          | 10. to (toward) Athens |
| 3. into Rome        | 11. out of Rome        |
| 4. from the country | 12. from home          |
| 5. in Athens        | 13. at Athens          |
| 6. home (homeward)  | 14. into Athens        |
| 7. to (toward) Rome | 15. at Rome            |
| 8. to the country   | 16. in the country     |

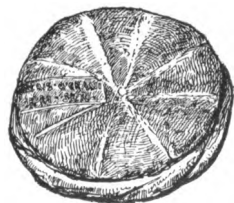
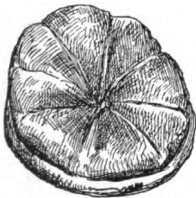
**156. IV. Agreement of adjectives**

a) *Decline the following:*

- |                   |                     |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| 1. via lāta       | 5. discipulus piger |
| 2. puer noster    | 6. poēta laetus     |
| 3. bellum miserum | 7. vir liber        |
| 4. nauta dēfessus | 8. proelium longum  |

b) *Give the Latin for the following in the singular and plural of the case indicated:*

- |                                    |                          |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. a lazy slave, accusative        | 16. your town, dative    |
| 2. a new temple, nominative        | 17. new arms, ablative   |
| 3. a harsh master, nominative      | 18. my slave, dative     |
| 4. a Roman camp, genitive          | 19. deep water, dative   |
| 5. much grain, accusative          | 20. our camp, accusative |
| 6. an ancient poet, ablative       |                          |
| 7. a free inhabitant, nominative   |                          |
| 8. a long life, accusative         |                          |
| 9. the tired messenger, dative     |                          |
| 10. a city dwelling, ablative      |                          |
| 11. a large number, ablative       |                          |
| 12. a good reputation, genitive    |                          |
| 13. the grown-up son, vocative     |                          |
| 14. great danger, nominative       |                          |
| 15. the most remote land, genitive |                          |



**Pānis**

These petrified loaves were discovered at Pompeii. Notice their shape, and the baker's stamp on one of them

**157. V. Verbs**

a) *State the person and number of each of the following verbs, and give the three translations of each form:*

- |              |                  |
|--------------|------------------|
| 1. habet     | 11. salūtant     |
| 2. stātis    | 12. vident       |
| 3. timēmus   | 13. respondētis  |
| 4. habitās   | 14. vocat        |
| 5. respondet | 15. studēs       |
| 6. sedeō     | 16. parās        |
| 7. rogant    | 17. adōrō        |
| 8. clāmāmus  | 18. tenent       |
| 9. nāvigat   | 19. dēmōnstrātis |
| 10. tenētis  | 20. vidēs        |

b) *Give each of the following in the present tense:*

1. spectō, third person plural
2. videō, third person singular
3. respondeō, second person plural
4. laudō, second person singular
5. parō, third person singular
6. nārrō, second person singular
7. pugnō, third person plural
8. rogō, second person singular
9. doceō, third person singular
10. dō, third person plural
11. teneō, third person plural
12. vocō, first person singular
13. timeō, first person singular
14. sedeō, second person singular
15. conlocō, first person plural
16. studeō, third person plural
17. clāmō, first person plural
18. habeō, first person singular
19. nūntiō, third person singular
20. timeō, second person singular

## EXERCISE XVI

*Write in Latin:*

1. The inhabitants of the small town are asking (for) aid because they fear a long war. 2. A messenger hurries to the Roman camp and announces the danger to the lieutenant. 3. The lieutenant calls (his) armed men and hurries with the troops to the walls of the town. 4. "Have you arms, my friends? Have you plenty of grain in the town?" calls out the lieutenant. 5. "Our slaves are bringing the grain from the fields into the town. 6. We are preparing (for) a great battle," reply the inhabitants.

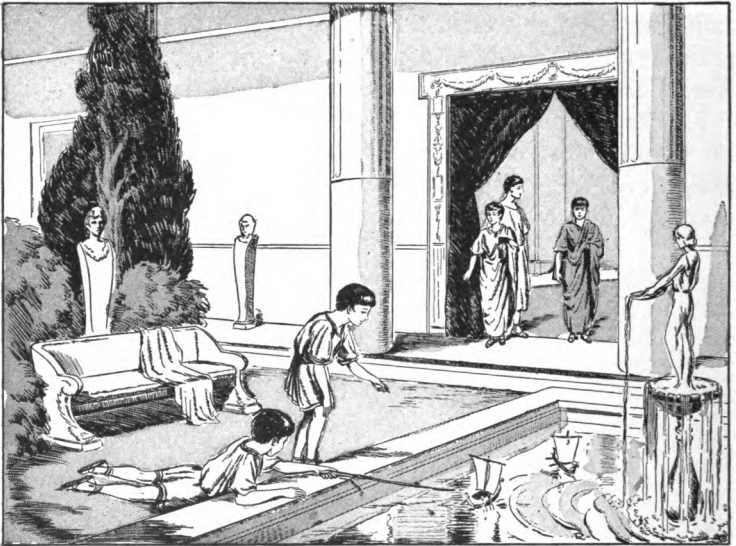
7. Sturdy transports bring many slaves to Rome from far distant provinces. 8. Many slaves are wretched; few are happy. 9. Roman masters sometimes give their slaves money. 10. A slave is often the friend of (his) master.



**Taberna pīstōris**

The baker is selling loaves from the piles on his counter.

CHAPTER XVII  
PRESENT TENSE OF VERBS OF THIRD AND  
FOURTH CONJUGATIONS



158.

I. IN PERISTŪLŌ

Peristŭlum lĭberŏs Tulliae dĕlectat. Puellae statuās saepe ōrnant. Aulus et Lūcius ibi student. Puerī parvī in peristŭlŏ libenter lūdunt quod in peristŭlŏ est aqua. Puerī parvī nāvicolās lignēās habent. Tullia in peristŭlŏ saepe sedet et lūdŏs lĭberŏrum spectat. Interdum Tullia cum lĭberīs lūdit.

( 130 )

Hodiē Pūblius et Servius domī sunt sed Lūcius et Aulus in lūdō sunt. Ā domiciliō Tullia clāmat, "Ubi es, Pūbli? Quid agis?" Pūblius respondet, "Lūdō in peristylō, Tullia." Tum Tullia clāmat, "Ubi tū lūdis, Servi?" "Ego quoque in peristylō lūdō," respondet Servius. "Num in aquā lūditis?" rogat Tullia. "In aquā nōn lūdimus sed nāviculae nostrae sunt in aquā. Nāviculās ad Graeciam et ad Crētā mittimus," respondent puerī parvī.

"Quid audīs, Pūbli? Quis venit?" subitō rogat Servius. "Lūcius et Aulus in domiciliū veniunt," respondet Pūblius. "Venitne paedagōgus cum puerīs, Pūbli?" "Puerī cum paedagōgō veniunt." "Cūr, Lūci, ā lūdō mātūrē venīs?" clāmat Pūblius. "Venīō quod magister est aeger," respondet Lūcius. "Nōne tū et Aulus in peristylū venītis?" clāmat Servius. "In peristylū nōn venimus. Ad Tulliam venimus," puerī respondent.

### 159. Respondē Latinē:

*What do the girls do?*

1. Quid puellae agunt? 2. Quid Aulus et Lūcius agunt?
3. Quid puerī parvī libenter agunt? 4. Quid Tullia interdum agit?
5. Quid Tullia clāmat? 6. Quid Pūblius respondet?
7. Quid Tullia rogat? 8. Quid puerī parvī respondent?
9. Quid Servius rogat? 10. Quid Lūcius et Aulus agunt?
11. Venitne paedagōgus? 12. Quid clāmat Pūblius?
13. Quid Lūcius respondet? 14. Quid clāmat Servius?
15. Quid puerī respondent?

### 160.

### DISCUSSION

State the conjugation of the following verb forms: *ōnant*, *student*, *sedet*, *spectat*. What is the stem vowel of the first conjugation? of the second conjugation?

In the first paragraph of the story, observe the verb forms *lūdunt* and *lūdit*. Do they belong to either of these



conjugations? Find the other persons of this verb in the second paragraph. What is the vowel used before most of the personal endings? What is the ending of the third person plural?

Verbs which are conjugated like *lūdō* belong to the *third conjugation*; the infinitive ending is *-ere*, and the present stem ends in *-e*; as, *lūdō, lūdere*, present stem *lūde-*. In the present tense, the stem vowel *-e* is changed to *-i*. Observe that in two places, however, the stem vowel does not appear: the first singular ends in *-ō*, and the vowel before *-nt* of the third plural is *u*.

161. In the third paragraph of the story find all the persons of the verb *venit*. What vowel is used before the personal endings? What seems peculiar in the third person plural? Verbs conjugated like *veniō* in the present tense belong to the *fourth conjugation*. The infinitive ending is *-ire*, and the present stem of a verb of the fourth conjugation ends in *-i*; as, *veniō, venire*, present stem *veni-*. Observe that this *i* is shortened in the forms *veniō, venit, veniunt*, in accordance with the general rule that a vowel before another vowel is short, and in verb forms a vowel is short before final *-m, -t, or -nt*.

162. Learn the following paradigms:

Present tense

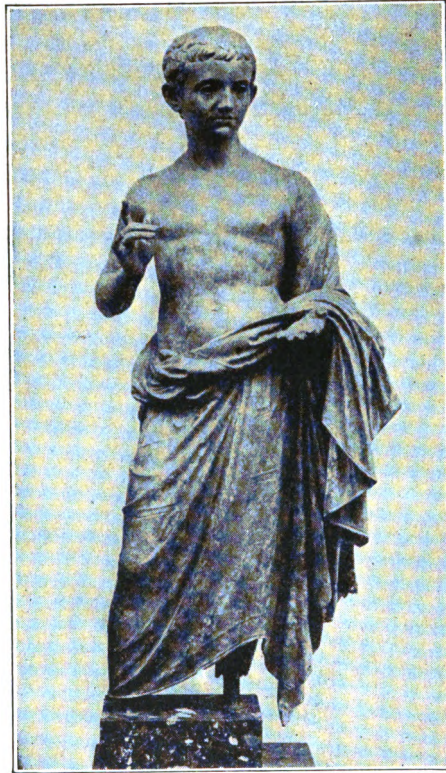
<i>Third Conjugation</i>		<i>Fourth Conjugation</i>	
<i>Singular</i>		<i>Singular</i>	
<i>lūdō</i>	<i>mittō</i>	<i>veniō</i>	<i>audiō</i>
<i>lūdis</i>	<i>mittis</i>	<i>venis</i>	<i>audis</i>
<i>lūdit</i>	<i>mittit</i>	<i>venit</i>	<i>audit</i>
<i>Plural</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>lūdimus</i>	<i>mittimus</i>	<i>venimus</i>	<i>audimus</i>
<i>lūditis</i>	<i>mittitis</i>	<i>venitis</i>	<i>auditis</i>
<i>lūdunt</i>	<i>mittunt</i>	<i>veniunt</i>	<i>audiunt</i>

163. You have now studied verbs belonging to all four conjugations. The forms studied belong for the most part to what is called the *indicative mood*; that is, they are the forms used in making ordinary statements and in asking direct questions, and also in many kinds of subordinate clauses. There are other moods (the *imperative* and the *subjunctive*); but in the beginning the indicative is the most important.

The imperative is the mood which is used to express commands. The present imperative singular is the same as the present stem of the verb (see § 108): *portā, vidē, mitte, audī*; the plural is formed by adding *-te* to the singular, except that in the third conjugation the stem vowel *-e-* changes to *-i-*: *portāte, vidēte, mittite, audite*.

The subjunctive has special uses; it will be studied in Lessons XLVI–XLIX.

The verb forms which we have studied have all been in the active voice. Passive forms will be studied in Lesson XVIII.



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art

**Puer Rōmānus**

In listing verbs, the vocabularies will give the form of the first person present indicative active, and the infinitive, the latter indicating to which conjugation the verb belongs; as, *portō, portāre*; *videō, vidēre*; *lūdō, lūdere*; *veniō, venire*.

## VOCABULARY XVII (I)

<i>*aeger, aegra, aegrum, sick,</i> <i>ill</i>	<i>lūdō, lūdere, play, frolic</i>
<i>*agō, agere, do, drive</i>	<i>mātūrē, adv., early</i>
<i>*audiō, audire, hear, listen to</i>	<i>*mittō, mittere, send</i>
<i>*ibi, adv., there, in that place</i>	<i>*subitō, adv., suddenly, un-</i> <i>expectedly</i>
<i>ligneus, -a, -um, wooden</i>	<i>*veniō, venire, come</i>

## DRILL

I. Give the first two principal parts and the stem vowel of the Latin verbs with the following meanings:

shout	teach	do
come	ask	send
reply	play	hear

II. Give the rule for forming the present stem of each conjugation.

III. Conjugate the present tense of each verb mentioned in I above.

IV. Give the Latin for the following English phrases; notice that each of these phrases can be expressed by one Latin word:

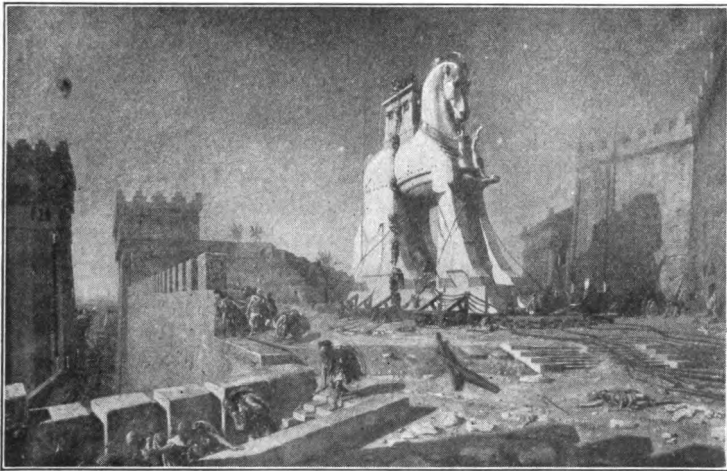
They show, they do, they see, they play, they come; I call, I hear, I do, I teach; you (*sing.*) are standing, you (*sing.*) have, you (*sing.*) are coming, you (*sing.*) do play; we prepare, we send, we are studying, we hear; he gives, he sits, he is coming, he is sending, he does; you (*pl.*) are watching, you (*pl.*) hear, you (*pl.*) are sending, you (*pl.*) do see.

## EXERCISE XVII (I)

*Write in Latin:*

1. We play in the peristyle. 2. Where are you sending your boats, little boys? 3. They are playing in the water. 4. The boys suddenly come into the peristyle. 5. Aren't you (*pl.*) coming home early from school? 6. The teacher isn't sick, is he? 7. What are you (*sing.*) doing there? 8. Servius and Publius hear the boys and come out of the peristyle

## READING LESSON



*Courtesy of The Corcoran Gallery of Art, Washington, D. C.*

## 164. II. DĒ EQUŌ LIGNEŌ

Multi dominī Rōmānī servōs Graecōs habent. Servi Graeci saepe sunt paedagōgī puerōrum Rōmānōrum. Dominī paedagōgōs cum filiīs ad lūdum mittunt. Paedagōgus Lūci et Aulī est Graecus. Puerīs fābulās dē Graeciā saepe nārrat. Fābula dē equō ligneō Lūcium et Aulum dēlectat.



### Occāsus Troiae

This picture was made from a description by an ancient Greek of a lost painting done by a famous Greek artist. Different scenes are pictured from the taking of Troy. In the upper right section are pictured some of the Greek heroes—Menelaus, Agamemnon, Ajax, Diomedes, Odysseus

“Graeci sunt irāti quod Troiāni pulchram fēminam Graecam Troiae tenent. Itaque multī armātī ōrās Graeciae relinquunt et Troiam nāvigant. Interim Troiāni arma et frūmentum cōgunt et mūrōs Troiae dīligenter mūniunt. Postea Graeci mūrōs oppugnant et longum bellum cum Troiānis gerunt. Sunt multa proelia in ōris Troiae sed dei neque Graecis neque Troiānis victōriam dant.

“Tandem Graeci magnum equum ligneum aedificant. Noctū multī armātī in equum ascendunt. Tum reliquī Graeci ad insulam parvam nāvigant sed equum extrā mūrōs Troiae relinquunt. Māne Troiāni ā Troiae mūrīs equum magnum vident. Portās celeriter aperiunt et ad equum properant. Multi clāmant, ‘Est certē dōnum deōrum! Troiāni equum nōn timent sed dēsīderant; itaque equum intrā mūrōs trahunt. Noctū armātī ex equō veniunt. Troiāni Graecōs nōn impediunt quod armātōs nōn audiunt. Ab insulā parvā ad Troiae portās reliquī Graeci properant. Tum armātī ad portās veniunt et sociōs intrā mūrōs dūcunt. Sic Graeci Troiānōs vincunt et Troiam incendunt.”



### Occāsus Troiae

This is a continuation of the picture shown on the opposite page. On the upper left the head of the wooden horse is seen above the walls. Mourning Trojan women sit near. Helen may be seen seated on the shore while the Greeks bring spoils from the city to their waiting ships

### VOCABULARY XVII (II)

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| aedificō, aedificāre, <i>build</i>                                  | *mūniō, mūnīre, <i>fortify, defend</i>                                  |
| *aperiō, aperīre, <i>open</i>                                       | *oppugnō, oppugnāre, <i>assault, besiege, storm</i>                     |
| ascendō, ascendere, <i>climb, ascend</i>                            | *porta, -ae, f., <i>gate</i>  |
| *cōgō, cōgere, <i>collect; compel, force</i>                        | *relinquō, relinquere, <i>leave, abandon</i>                            |
| dōnum, -ī, n., <i>gift, offering</i>                                | *reliquus, -a, -um, <i>remaining, rest of</i>                           |
| *dūcō, dūcere, <i>lead, guide</i>                                   | *socius, sociī, m., <i>companion, comrade, ally</i>                     |
| *gerō, gerere, <i>carry on; wear; bellum gerere, wage war</i>       | *trahō, trahere, <i>drag, draw</i>                                      |
| Graecus, -a, -um, <i>Greek; as a noun, Graecus, -ī, m., a Greek</i> | Troia, -ae, f., <i>Troy</i>   |
| *impediō, impedīre, <i>hinder, impede</i>                           | Troiānus, -a, -um, <i>Trojan; as a noun, Troiānus, -ī, m., a Trojan</i> |
| *incendō, incendere, <i>burn, set fire to</i>                       | victōria, -ae, f., <i>victory</i>                                       |
| *interim, adv., <i>meanwhile, in the meantime</i>                   | *vincō, vincere, <i>conquer, subdue, overcome</i>                       |

## 165. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Explain the italicized words in the following quotations:

1. "Inflexible in faith, *invincible* in arms."
2. \*"*Society* is no comfort to one not *sociable*."
3. "Between the acting of a dreadful thing  
And the first motion, all the *interim* is  
Like a phantasma, or a hideous dream."
4. "The *cogent* force of Nature."
5. "'Must I *relinquish* it all,' he cried with wild lamentation."

## DRILL

I. Give the present tense of each verb in the story *Dē Equō Ligneō*.

II. Give in Latin the first two principal parts of the following verbs, and state to which conjugation each belongs:

give	hear	see	leave	fear	call
drag	fortify	wage	burn	hinder	conquer
do	hold	open	assault	collect	lead
come	send	prepare	play	climb	hasten

## EXERCISE XVII (II)

Write in Latin:

1. We are Trojans; we fortify the walls of Troy because the Greeks are coming.
2. Meanwhile the Greeks are sending many armed men to the shores of Troy.
3. We also collect armed men; afterwards we wage a long war with the Greeks.
4. The Greeks build a wooden horse and leave the horse outside the gates.
5. Many armed Greeks climb into the horse.
6. We do not hear the Greeks; and so we open the walls and drag the gift of the Greeks within the gates.
7. The Greeks come out of the horse and hasten to the gates.
8. The Greeks open the gates and lead their allies into Troy.
9. The Greeks assault Troy and finally have the victory.
10. Thus the Greeks conquer the Trojans and burn Troy.

CHAPTER XVIII  
PRESENT PASSIVE, FOUR CONJUGATIONS  
ABLATIVE OF PERSONAL AGENT  
ABLATIVE OF MEANS



166. FĀBULA ORBILĪ I

Orbilius magister discipulōs laudat sī dīligerter student. Interdum ā *magistrō* fābulae nārrantur. Hodiē Orbilius rogat, “Dēsīderātisne fābulam, puerī?” “Certē, certē, fābulam longam, fābulam longam dēsīderāmus,” puerī clāmant. Tum fābula dē Helenā, fēminā pulchrā Graecā, ab Orbiliō nārrātur.



“In Graeciā Helena habitat. Fēmina pulchra ā multīs virīs amātur. Troiānus clārus ad Graeciam nāvīgat. Fēmina pulchra ā Troiānō vidētur et amātur. Tandem Troiānus fēminam Troiam dūcit. Graeci sunt irātī; itaque bellum parātur. Arma et frūmentum et armātī *onerārīs* ad ōrās Troiānās mittuntur. In ōris Troiānis Graeci castra pōnunt. Troia *mūrō altō* et *portīs firmis* mūnītur. Posteā castra Graecōrum fossā et vallō altō mūniuntur. Graeci Troiānōs nōn timent sed ā Troiānis timentur. Diū bellum geritur. Armātī gladiīs, hastīs, sagittīs pugnant. Et Graeci et Troiānī ā virīs clārīs dūcuntur sed deī victōriam nōn dant.”

167. Respondē Latinē:

1. Ā quō fābulae narrantur? 2. Ā quō fābula dē fēminā pulchrā nārrātur? 3. Ā quō pulchra fēmina vidētur et amātur? 4. Ā quō bellum parātur? 5. Quōmodo arma et frūmentum et armātī ad ōrās Troiānās mittuntur? 6. Quōmodo Troia mūnītur? 7. Ā quō Graeci timentur? 8. Quōmodo armātī pugnant?

Nōtā bene

Ā quō, *by whom?* quōmodo, *how?* *by means of what?*

DISCUSSION

168. In the sentence *Fābulae ā magistrō narrantur*, what is the subject of the verb? Does the subject act? When the subject of a verb does not act but is acted upon, the verb is said to be in the passive voice. What is the person and number of the verb? What is the ending? In the story *Fābula Orbili I*, list all the verbs in the third person plural, passive voice. To what conjugation does each verb belong? What is the ending of each verb? The personal ending of the third person plural of the passive voice is *-ntur*. In the same story find the passive form of a singular verb in each conjugation. What is the ending? The personal ending of the third person singular of the passive voice is *-tur*.

169. In the sentence *Fābulae ā magistrō nārrantur*, by whom are the stories told? What phrase expresses the actor or the agent? What preposition is used? What case? The ablative case with the preposition *ā* (*ab*) is used with a verb in the passive voice to express the agent or doer of an act. An ablative so used is called an *ablative of personal agent*. It answers the question *by whom?* Find other phrases that express agency in the story.

170. In the sentence *Troia mūrō altō et portīs firmīs mūnītur*, which words tell by means of what or with what Troy is being fortified? In what case are the words *mūrō* and *portīs*? Is a preposition used? The ablative without a preposition is used with either a passive verb or an active verb to express the thing by means of which the action of the verb is accomplished. An ablative so used is called an *ablative of means*. It answers the question *by means of what?* or *with what?* In the story find other nouns that express means.



**Helena et Priamus**

From the walls of Troy, Helen is pointing out the Greek leaders to Priam, the Trojan king

171. Observe the following differences between the ablative of agent and the ablative of means:

*The Ablative of Agent:*

- (1) denotes persons or living objects;
- (2) is used with the preposition *ā* (*ab*);
- (3) is used with passive verbs only;
- (4) is translated *by* (by the agency of)

*The Ablative of Means:*

- (1) refers to things;
- (2) is used without a preposition;
- (3) is used with either active or passive verbs;
- (4) is translated *with, by, or by means of*.

RULES

172. *Ablative of agent.* The ablative with the preposition *ā* (*ab*) is used with a passive verb to express personal agent.

173. *Ablative of means.* The ablative without a preposition is used to show the instrument or the means by which an act is performed.

174. FĀBULA ORBILĪ II

“Achillēs, filiūs Pēlei, est clārus Graecus. Sī cōpiās Graecās dūcit, Graecis victōria est. Sed Achillēs irātus est quod captīva pulchra ab eō rapta est. Itaque in tabernāculō sedet neque pugnat. Patrōclus amicus cum sociīs multīs ad tabernāculum venit.

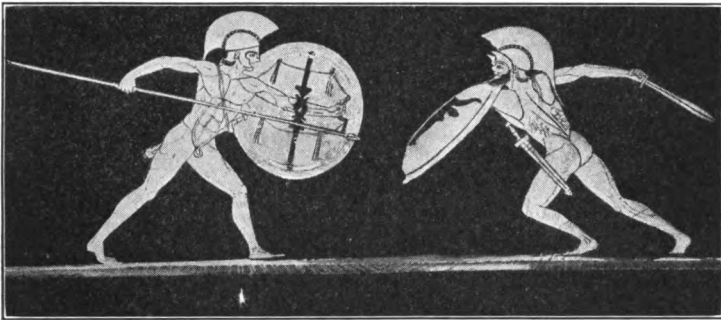
“Cūr prō patriā nōn pugnās, amice?’ Patrōclus rogat. ‘Tū ā Troiānis maximē timēris. Nōs impedimur quod tū nōn pugnās.’

“Ego ā Troiānis timeor. Quod cōpiās nōn dūcō, vōs impedimīni. Irātus, tamen, prō patriā nōn pugnō,’ Achillēs respondet.

“Nōs in castrīs ā lēgātīs tenēmur quod tū in tabernāculō sedēs. Interdum nōs ē castrīs ā cōpiīs Troiānis pellimur.

Saepe hastis et sagittis Troiānōrum vulnerāmur. Si ā filiō Pēlei dūcimur, nōn vincimur. Tuum auxilium victōriam semper portat. Tū ad tabernāculum nōn pelleris; tū in tabernāculō nōn tenēris. Tū nōn vulnerāris neque impediris neque vinceris. Cūr tū nōn pugnās?’ iterum Patrōclus rogat.

“Vōs, socii mei, in castris saepe tenēmini. Ē castris saepe pellimini. Tēlis Troiānōrum vulnerāmini. Vincitis et vincimini. Ad tabernāculum ego nōn pellor. Ego nōn vulneror neque impediōr neque vincor. Irātus, tamen, nōn



### Achillēs cum Troiānō pugnat

This painting on an old Greek vase is full of action. Notice how Achilles (the figure on the left) holds his shield. Memnon (the warrior on the right) has the cheek piece of his helmet raised

pugnō,’ Achillēs clāmat. Tum et gladium et arma in terram mittit.

“Patrōclus gladium et arma amici celeriter induit. Tum Graecōs ad mūrōs Troiae dūcit. Ibi Patrōclus necātur.”

### Nōtā bene

Achillēs, *Achilles*, a famous Greek hero.

Graecis victōria est, *the Greeks are victorious*.

Ab eō rapta est, *has been taken from him*.

### DISCUSSION

175. In the Fābula Orbili II, list all the verbs in the passive voice whose subjects are in the first and second persons,



Militēs Graeci

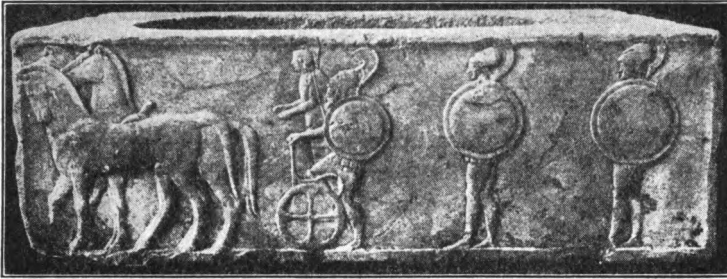
singular and plural. What are the endings of the verbs in the first person singular? first plural? second singular? second plural? To what part of the verb are these endings added? Are they used with verbs of all conjugations?

In the passive voice the endings *-r* and *-mur* are the personal endings of the first person singular and plural; the endings *-ris* and *-mini* are the personal endings of the second person singular and plural. These endings are added to the stem of the verb just as the active endings are. Note, however, that the first person singular ends in *-or*. Note also that in the third conjugation, second person singular, the stem vowel, short *e*, is retained in the passive instead of being changed to *i* as in the active; as, *mittis*, active; *mitteris*, passive.

#### Personal endings, passive voice

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	<i>-r</i>	<i>-mur</i>
<i>2d person</i>	<i>-ris</i>	<i>-mini</i>
<i>3d person</i>	<i>-tur</i>	<i>-ntur</i>

176. The present tense, passive voice, indicative mood, is conjugated as follows. The translations are in the form.



Militēs Graeci

*I am being carried, or I am carried; you are being carried, or you are carried; etc.*

**Present indicative passive**

<i>First Conjugation</i>	<i>Second Conjugation</i>	<i>Third Conjugation</i>	<i>Fourth Conjugation</i>
<i>Singular</i>			
portor	videor	mittor	audior
portāris	vidēris	mitteris	audīris
portātur	vidētur	mittitur	audītur
<i>Plural</i>			
portāmur	vidēmur	mittimur	audīmur
portāminī	vidēminī	mittiminī	audīminī
portantur	videntur	mittuntur	audiuntur

Note that the short e of the stem in the third conjugation appears in only the second person singular.

VOCABULARY XVIII

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| *ā, ab, prep. (with abl.), <i>by</i>   | hasta, -ae, f., <i>spear</i>                    |
| *apud, prep. (with acc.), <i>among</i> | Helena, -ae, f., <i>Helen, wife of Menelaus</i> |
| *captivus, -a, -um, <i>captive</i>     |   |
| *diū, <i>for a long time</i>           | induō, induere, <i>put on</i>                   |
| *fossa, -ae, f., <i>ditch, trench</i>  | *necō, necāre, <i>kill</i>                      |

*pellō, pellere, <i>drive, drive out</i>	tabernāculum, -ī, n., <i>tent</i>
*pōnō, pōnere, <i>put, place</i>	*tamen, <i>nevertheless, still</i>
*prō, prep. (with abl.), <i>in be- half of, for</i>	*tēlum, -ī, n., <i>weapon</i>
*sagitta, -ae, f., <i>arrow</i>	vulnerō, vulnerāre, <i>wound, injure</i>

*Idiom*

castra pōnere, *to pitch camp*

## 177. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. Pick out the Latin words in the vocabulary with which the following are associated: *beneficial, expel, postpone, tabernacle.*

II. Achilles, the Greek hero of the Trojan war, was immersed when a child in the river Styx by his mother Thetis. He was thus made *invulnerable* in every part of his body except the heel by which she held him.

## DRILL

I. Give the English translation of the following verb forms:

laudor	docēris	vincitur	impedimur
salūtāminī	timentur	dūcor	parāris
aperītur	vidēmur	pelliminī	aperiuntur

II. Express the following in Latin:

I am being wounded	I am being driven
you ( <i>sing.</i> ) are feared	you ( <i>sing.</i> ) are hindered
he is led	he is asked
we are heard	we are seen
you ( <i>pl.</i> ) are killed	you ( <i>pl.</i> ) are left
they are held	they are heard

III. Change the above verbs to the corresponding active forms.

IV. Conjugate the present active and passive of the following verbs, giving the English meaning of each form:

1. necō      2. videō      3. dūcō      4. impediō

## EXERCISE XVIII

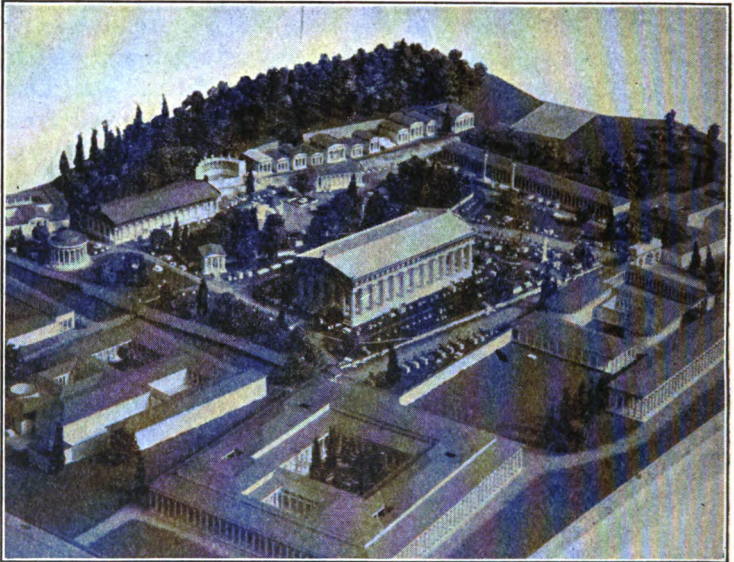
*Write in Latin:*

1. War is waged for a long time by the Trojans. 2. There are many famous men among the Trojans and they are fighting for (their) country. 3. Troy is being fortified with high walls. 4. The camp of the Greeks is being pitched on the shore. 5. A rampart and ditch are being built around the camp by the Greeks. 6. The Greeks are often hindered by the arrows and spears of the Trojans. 7. Achilles is not wounded by the arrows, and he is not driven to his tent by the Trojans; nevertheless he is not fighting. 8. Does Patroclus put on (his) friend's armor? 9. Are you being overcome by the weapons of the Trojans, Patroclus? 10. Patroclus is killed in battle; he is not a captive of the Trojans.



## CHAPTER XIX

### IMPERFECT TENSE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE, OF FOUR CONJUGATIONS AND THE VERB *SUM*



*Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art*

#### Olympia antiqua

178.

#### DĒ TEMPLĪS GRAECĪS

Liberī cum paedagōgō in peristylō sedent. Paedagōgus liberis fābulam dē templis Graecis nārrat quod in Graeciā lived, or used to live habitābat.

“Graeci multōs deōs et deās habēbant. In pulchris tem- were adorned plis deōs et deās adōrābant. Tempa *ōrnābantur* columnis

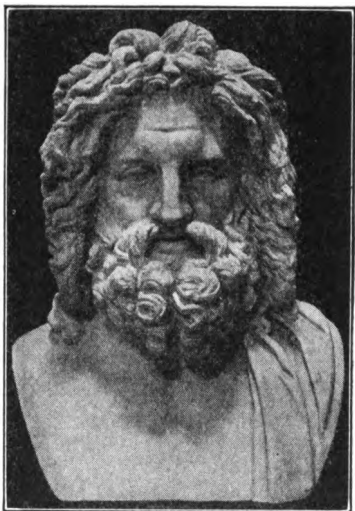
( 148 )

altis et āris. Magnae statuae deōrum et deārum in templis vidēbantur. Graeci multa dōna ad templa mittēbant. Frūmentum ab agricolis et aurum ā nautis mittēbātur. Cotidiē magnae iānuae templōrum aperiēbantur; nam Graeci ad templa saepe veniēbant.

“Olympia oppidum pulchrum in Graeciā <sup>was</sup> erat. Olympiae erant multa templa. Hic erat templum dei maximī. In soliō altō deus sedēbat. Deus ā viris et fēminis adorābātur et timēbātur. Deus verba virōrum et fēminārum audiēbat et cōsilia regēbat. Statua numquam relinquēbātur sed semper custodiēbātur.”

### 179. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Habēbantne Graeci multōs deōs et deās? 2. Ubi Graeci deōs et deās adorābant? 3. Quōmodo templa ornābantur? 4. Nōne statuāe deōrum et deārum in templis vidēbantur? 5. Quid Graeci agēbant?



Jupiter optimus maximus

6. Ubi erat Olympia? 7. Ubi erant multa templa? 8. Ubi erat deus? 9. Ā quibus deus timēbātur? 10. Nōne deus verba virōrum et fēminārum audiēbat?

### 180.

### DISCUSSION

State the person, number, and voice of each verb in the second paragraph of the story *Dē Templis Graecis*, and tell in what conjugation it is. What syllable has each verb between the stem and the personal ending? The suffix



Pompa

**-bā-** is used to form the stem of the imperfect tense. This tense expresses an action in the past which is habitual or progressive; as, *habēbant*, *they used to have* or *they were having*, often translated simply *they had*.

181. Find an example of each conjugation in the imperfect tense in this paragraph. Each conjugation uses its present stem, the sign **-bā-**, and the proper personal ending, active or passive voice, to form this tense. In the third conjugation, what is the quantity of the stem vowel before the sign **-bā-**? In the fourth conjugation, what is the quantity of the stem vowel? In the fourth conjugation, what letter is added before the sign **-bā-**?

182. In the last paragraph of the story, to what time do the verbs *erat* and *erant* refer? Since the forms *erat* and *erant* are parts of the irregular verb *sum*, *I am*, the formation of the imperfect tense is irregular and does not follow the rules given in § 181.

183. Memorize the following paradigms. The translations are in the form *I was carrying*, *I used to carry*, or often simply *I carried*, etc., for the active, and *I was being carried*, *I used to be carried*, or often simply *I was carried*, etc., for

the passive. In a question, the proper translation form would be *was I carrying?* etc.

### Imperfect indicative

#### Active

<i>First Conjugation</i>	<i>Second Conjugation</i>	<i>Third Conjugation</i>	<i>Fourth Conjugation</i>
portābam	vidēbam	mittēbam	audiēbam
portābās	vidēbās	mittēbās	audiēbās
portābat	vidēbat	mittēbat	audiēbat
portābāmus	vidēbāmus	mittēbāmus	audiēbāmus
portābātis	vidēbātis	mittēbātis	audiēbātis
portābant	vidēbant	mittēbant	audiēbant

#### Passive

portābar	vidēbar	mittēbar	audiēbar
portābāris	vidēbāris	mittēbāris	audiēbāris
portābātur	vidēbātur	mittēbātur	audiēbātur
portābāmur	vidēbāmur	mittēbāmur	audiēbāmur
portābāminī	vidēbāminī	mittēbāminī	audiēbāminī
portābantur	vidēbantur	mittēbantur	audiēbantur

### Imperfect indicative of *sum*

#### *Singular*

eram, *I was, I used to be, etc.*

erās

erat

#### *Plural*

erāmus

erātis

erant

## READING LESSON

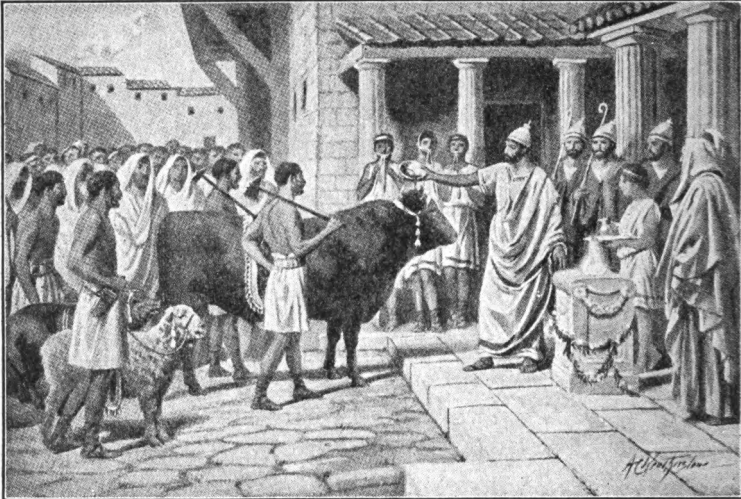
### 184.

### TULLIA ET LĪBERĪ

“*Quid herī agēbātis, liberī?*” rogat Tullia.

“*In peristylō cum paedagōgō sedēbāmus,*” respondent liberī. “*Paedagōgus fābulam vēram dē templis Graecis nārrābat.*”

“*Amābāsne fābulam, parve Servi?*” rogat Tullia.



### Rōmānī dīs sacrificant

Sacrifices of pigs, sheep, and oxen were always offered after a triumph, or after a review of the army

“Ego fābulam amābam, Tullia,” respondet Servius.  
 “Habitābantne deī et deae in templīs?”

“Nōn in templīs sed in Olympō deī et deae habitābant,  
 Servi.”

“Quid deī et deae in Olympō agēbant, Tullia?”

“Deī et deae incolās terrārum cūrābant et cōnsilia regē-  
 bant. Zeus maximus deus erat; reliquōs deōs et deās dē  
 cōnsiliīs monēbat. Tamen discordia inter incolās Olympī  
 saepe veniēbat. Discordia, vērō, erat causa bellī Troiānī.”

“Nōnne lūdī magister herī fābulam dē bellō Troiānō  
 nārrābat, Lūcī?”

“Certē! Herī fābulās dē bellō Troiānō et dē Patrōclō  
 nārrābat. Erant fābulae bonae.”

Nōtā bene

Zeus, *Zeus*, Greek name for the chief of the gods. The corre-  
 sponding Roman god was named Iuppiter, *Jupiter*.

## VOCABULARY XIX

* <i>causa</i> , -ae, f., <i>cause, reason</i>	* <i>moneō, monēre</i> , <i>advise, warn</i>
* <i>cōnsilium</i> , <i>cōnsili</i> , n., <i>plan, purpose</i>	* <i>nam</i> , conj., <i>for</i>
<i>custōdiō, custōdire</i> , <i>guard, watch</i>	* <i>numquam</i> , adv., <i>never</i>
<i>discordia</i> , -ae, f., <i>discord, quarrel</i>	<i>Olympia</i> , -ae, f., <i>Olympia, a town in Greece</i>
<i>herī</i> , adv., <i>yesterday</i>	<i>Olympus</i> , -ī, m., <i>Mt. Olympus, the home of the gods</i>
<i>hīc</i> , adv., <i>here, in this place</i>	* <i>regō, regere</i> , <i>guide, direct, control, rule</i>
* <i>inter</i> , prep. (with acc.), <i>between, among</i>	<i>solium, solī</i> , n., <i>throne</i>
<i>maximus</i> , -a, -um, <i>greatest, very great</i>	<i>verbum</i> , -ī, n., <i>word</i>
	<i>vērō</i> , adv., <i>truly, indeed</i>
	* <i>vērus</i> , -a, -um, <i>true</i>

## 185. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

1. What does the *custodian* of the high school do?
2. What are *interscholastic* contests?
3. What do you do when you *verify* a problem?
4. In some states the minimum wage is set by law. What is a *maximum* wage?

## DRILL

## I. Give the English for the following verb forms:

<i>lūdēbant</i>	<i>vulnerābantur</i>	<i>reguntur</i>	<i>mittēbār</i>
<i>monent</i>	<i>erās</i>	<i>erant</i>	<i>dabāmus</i>
<i>relinquēbātis</i>	<i>custōdiēbātur</i>	<i>dūcēbāminī</i>	<i>induimus</i>
<i>oppugnābant</i>	<i>vidēbāris</i>	<i>aperiēbam</i>	<i>cōgēbat</i>

## II. Give the Latin for the following verb forms:

I was; I was opening; I was being heard; he is leading; you (*sing.*) are leaving; you (*pl.*) used to be guarded; it was being burned; you (*sing.*) were directing; we are conquering; they were fearing; they used to be dragged; you (*pl.*) were; they were doing; I am.

## EXERCISE XIX

*Write in Latin:*

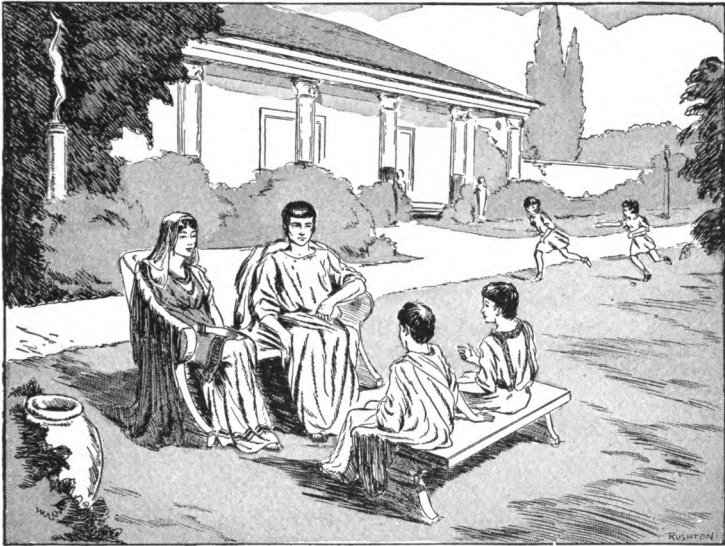
1. Yesterday the children were listening to the words of the attendant. 2. At Olympia the ancient temples were truly beautiful. 3. The temples of the gods and goddesses were carefully guarded, for beautiful gifts were often placed on the altars. 4. Here the greatest of the gods (the greatest god) used to have a temple. 6. His throne was often decorated with wreaths, and was never left (unguarded). 6. The gods used to live on Olympus and direct the plans of men and women. 7. The Greeks and Trojans were advised by the gods. 8. Discord among the goddesses was the cause of the Trojan war.

**Mars**

The Romans regarded Mars, the war god, as their special deity, who favored and protected them

## CHAPTER XX

### FUTURE TENSE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE, OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS AND *SUM*



#### 186. LŪCIUS ET AULUS

Hodiē Lūcius et Aulus in hortō cum Cornēliō et Tullia sedent. Parvī puerī ibi lūdunt.

“Crās, meī filiī, Rōmam *ambulābō*,” inquit Cornēlius. “Nōnne tū quoque, Lūcī, *ambulābis*?” “Ego libenter *ambulābō*, sī Aulus *ambulābit*,” respondet Lūcius. “Bene! bene! Crās nōs Rōmam *ambulābimus*!” clāmat Aulus. “Quō crās *ambulābitis*?” rogat Tullia. “Puerī Rōmam *ambulābunt*,” respondet Cornēlius.

( 155 )



“Quid, Aule, Rōmae vidēbis?” rogat Tullia. “Forum Rōmānum vidēbō,” respondet Aulus. “Fortasse lūdōs in Circō Maximō vidēbimus,” clāmat Lūcius. “Certē,” inquit Cornēlius, “puerī lūdōs Rōmānōs vidēbunt, Tullia, quod nunc Rōmae lūdi celebrantur.” “Lūdōs amō,” clāmat Lūcius. “Adultus ego auriga erō!” “Tū auriga eris et ego poēta erō; fābulās dē aurigīs nārrābō,” clāmat Aulus.

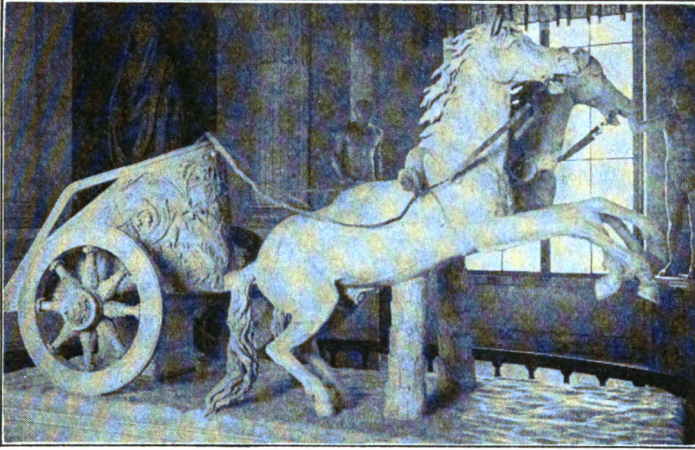
“Crāsne erit Mārcus Rōmae?” rogat Tullia. “Rōmae erunt multī viri et fēminae quod lūdi celebrantur. Fortasse Mārcus ibi erit,” respondet Cornēlius. “Fortasse Mārcum vidēbimus,” clāmant puerī et in domicilium properant.

“Nōne nōs quoque Rōmam ambulābimus?” rogant Pūblius et Servius. “Vōs, parvī puerī, domī manēbitis; ā Tulliā docēbiminī,” respondet Cornēlius. “Tū, Tullia, ā parvīs puerīs servāberis. Dōna Rōmā portābuntur. Fortasse, meī filiī parvī, ā Tulliā laudābiminī. Tum bonīs puerīs dōna dabō.” “Ā Pūbliō et Serviō bene servābor,” clāmat Tullia. “Bonī erimus,” clāmant Pūblius et Servius. “Ā Tulliā, vērō, laudābimur. Portā multa dōna.”

#### DISCUSSION

187. In the conversation in the first paragraph, to what time do the forms of the verb *ambulō* refer? Read the forms as they occur in the conversation. How are these forms made? How do they differ from the forms of the imperfect tense? These are future forms of the verb *ambulō*. The future indicative active of *ambulō* is formed by adding the tense sign of the future *-bi-* to the present stem *ambulā-*, and then adding the personal endings. Note that the tense sign is combined with the ending to form *-bō* in the first person singular, and that the tense sign is *-bu-* in the third person plural; as, *ambulābō, ambulābunt*.

188. In the second paragraph are found several forms of the future tense of the verb *videō*. To what conjugation



### Bigae

Both two-horse and four-horse chariots were used in the races

does this verb belong? What is the tense sign? The future tense of *videō* is formed in the same way as the future tense of *ambulō*.

### 189. Summary

To form the future active indicative of verbs of the first and second conjugations, add the tense sign *-bi-* to the present stem, and then add the personal endings. Notice carefully the variation in the first person singular and the third person plural.

190. In the third and fourth paragraphs are found several forms of the future tense of the verb *sum*. Do these forms use the tense sign *-bi-*? How do they differ from the imperfect tense of the same verb?

191. In the fifth paragraph, several passive forms of the future tense are given. They are made like the active forms of the future tense, except that the passive personal endings

are used instead of the active ones. These endings are added to the future tense sign just as the active endings are. Note, however, that the first person singular ends in *-bor*, and the second person singular in *-beris*. (See § 175.) The vowel of the tense sign in the future tense is always short.

192. Memorize the following paradigms. Translate as *I shall carry, you will carry*, etc., in the active; and *I shall be carried, you will be carried*, etc., in the passive.

### Future indicative

#### Active

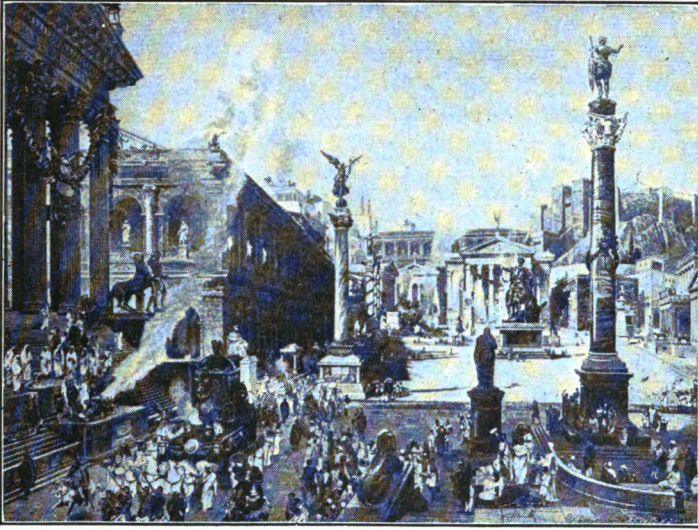
<i>First Conjugation</i>	<i>Second Conjugation</i>	<i>The verb sum</i>
portābō	vidēbō	erō
portābis	vidēbis	eris
portābit	vidēbit	erit
portābimus	vidēbimus	erimus
portābitis	vidēbitis	eritis
portābunt	vidēbunt	erunt

#### Passive

portābor	vidēbor
portāberis	vidēberis
portābitur	vidēbitur
portābimur	vidēbimur
portābiminī	vidēbiminī
portābuntur	vidēbuntur

### VOCABULARY XX

aurīga, -ae, m., <i>charioteer, driver</i>	forum, -ī, n., <i>forum, market place; Forum, specifically, the Roman Forum at Rome</i>
*bene, adv., <i>well, fine</i>	*inquit, <i>he says, he said</i>
celebrō, celebrāre, <i>celebrate; throng</i>	*maneō, manēre, <i>remain, stay</i>
circus, -ī, m., <i>circus</i>	*servō, servāre, <i>save, protect</i>
crās, adv., <i>tomorrow</i>	



### Forum Rōmānum

This view of the ancient Roman Forum shows a religious procession before the temple of Castor and Pollux, or, as the Romans called it, *Templum Castōrum*, the "temple of the Castors"

### 193. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. *Procrastinate* contains two Latin words, *prō* meaning *for*, and *crās* meaning *tomorrow*. Hence, *procrastinate* means to put off for another day, or to defer from day to day.

II. The *Roman Forum* was originally the market place and became the official center of the life of Rome. It was the place where the people assembled to discuss matters of public interest. There were several other fora in Rome, but only one was called specifically the *Roman Forum*.

Today the word *forum* is applied to an assembly of people who meet to discuss matters of common interest or of controversy. The magazine called *The Forum* is a magazine devoted to the discussion of controversial subjects.

## DRILL

I. Give the English for the following verb forms:

timēberis	vocābiminī	erō	habēbit
dēlectābunt	tenēbis	docēbitur	erimus
eritis	monēbor	sedēbitis	clāmābō

II. Give the Latin verb forms for the following:

I shall fear, he will be called, we shall be delighted, you will hold, you will be seen, they will be, you will be taught, I shall be praised, you will be cared for, they will ask.

III. Give the present and imperfect tenses of the above verbs in the indicated person and number.



Pugil

## EXERCISE XX

Write in Latin:

1. Tomorrow the boys will walk to Rome.
2. "You, Servius, will stay at home with Publius."
3. "I, too," says Tullia, "shall be at home with the little boys."
4. "You will be well protected by the children, won't you, Tullia?"
5. Tullia will be praised by the little boys.
6. Gifts will be given to the children by Cornelius.
7. We shall hurry to the Forum and shall see our friends there.
8. The games will be celebrated in the Circus Maximus.
9. Many beautiful horses will be seen by Lucius and Aulus.
10. There will be a great number of famous charioteers.

## CHAPTER XXI

### FUTURE TENSE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE, OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS



#### 194. PŪBLIUS ET SERVIUS

Pūblius et Servius in hortō lūdunt. Prope puerōs parvōs Tullia cum amīcā Camillā sedet. Fēminae puerōs spectant et audiunt.

“Nōn semper,” inquit Pūblius, “parvī erimus. Tum nōs quoque cum Lūciō et Aulō Rōmam ambulābimus.” “Mox discipulī erimus et cotīdiē ad lūdum properābimus,” respondet Servius. “Quid in lūdō agēs?” rogat Pūblius. “In

lūdō fābulās *legam*," respondet Servius. "Tūne, Servi, semper fābulās *legēs*?" "Interdum lūdi magister fābulās *leget*. Fābulās dē deīs et deābus *leget*," respondet Servius. "Nōs in lūdō multās fābulās *legēmus!*" clāmat Pūblius.

"Quālēs fābulās, mei filiī, *legētis*?" rogat Tullia. "Fābulās dē bellis et dē aurīgīs *legēmus*," respondent Pūblius et Servius.

"Meī filiī parvī, Camilla," inquit Tullia, "libenter fābulās *legent*. Fortasse domī fābulās nārrābunt." "Parvī filiī tuī sunt cārī, Tullia. Fortasse ad villam meam mox *venient*. Nunc domum prope-rābō. Nōnne ad lectīcam, puerī, *veniētis*?" rogat Camilla. "*Veniēmus* sī Tullia quoque *veniet*," respondent puerī. "Cum filiīs parvis," inquit Tullia, "libenter *veniam*. Nōnne iterum, cāra Camilla, ad villam *veniēs*?" "Mox *veniam* et filiae meae quoque *venient*," respondet Camilla.



Puer legit

## DISCUSSION

195. In the second paragraph of the story Pūblius et Servius, to what time do the forms of the verb *legō* refer? Read the forms as they occur in the story. How do they differ from the forms of the future tense of verbs of the first and second conjugations? What is the tense sign used?

The future tense of verbs of the third conjugation does not use the tense sign *-bi-*. The tense sign of the future of the third conjugation is *-ē-* (*-a-* in the first person singular), shortened as usual in the third person singular and plural, before *-t* and *-nt*. The future tense of verbs of the third conjugation is formed by dropping the stem vowel of the present stem and adding the tense sign *-ē-* and the personal

endings. Notice carefully the variation in the first person singular and the third person singular and plural.

196. Compare the future forms of *veniō* with those of *legō*. In what respect are they alike? How do they differ? The future tense in the fourth conjugation also has the tense sign *-ē-*; but note that the stem vowel *-ī* of the present stem is shortened to *-i* before adding the future tense sign *-ē-*. The future tense sign and the endings are exactly as in the third conjugation.

197. Memorize thoroughly the following paradigms. The translations are in the form *I shall send, you will send, etc.*, for the active, and *I shall be sent, you will be sent, etc.*, for the passive.

### Future indicative

#### *Third Conjugation*

#### *Fourth Conjugation*

#### Active

*mittam*  
*mittēs*  
*mittet*

*audiam*  
*audiēs*  
*audiet*

*mittēmus*  
*mittētis*  
*mittent*

*audiēmus*  
*audiētis*  
*audient*

#### Passive

*mittar*  
*mittēris*  
*mittētur*

*audiar*  
*audiēris*  
*audiētur*

*mittēmur*  
*mittēmini*  
*mittentur*

*audiēmur*  
*audiēmini*  
*audientur*





### READING LESSON

198.

#### CRĀS

Crās Cornēlius filiōs Lūcium et Aulum ad Forum Rōmānum dūcet. Ibi puerī aedificia multa et magna vidēbunt. Multōs virōs clārōs quoque vidēbunt. Nam virī clārī ad Forum Rōmānum cotīdiē veniunt. Multa verba dē glōriā patriae dicentur et audientur. Fortasse Cornēlius sententiam dē bellō dicet. Tum puerī laetī erunt quod Cornēlius ā multīs audiētur et laudābitur. Forum Rōmānum virōrum et fēminārum erit plēnum. Erit pompa in Forō Rōmānō. Virī ad templa deōrum properābunt. Fēminae ad tabernās ambulābunt et puerī tardī ad lūdōs current. In Forō nōn erit ōtium quod multum negōtium agētur.

Cornēlius rogābit, “Nōnne, puerī, in tabernās veniētis?” “Libenter in tabernās veniēmus, nam dōna ad Tulliam liberōsque mittēmus,” respondēbunt filiū. Ē tabernīs multa

dōna ad vīllam ā servis portābuntur. Parvum scūtum ad Pūblium, parvus gladius ad Servium mittētur. Ad Tulliam fibula pulchra mittētur. Tum Cornēlius et filii per angustās viās Rōmae ad Circum Maximum properābunt, et cum amicis spectāculum exspectābunt. Ē subselliis spectāculum vidēbunt. Quadrigae per arēnam volābunt. Equi celeriter current. Viri et fēminae et pueri clāmābunt. Tandem dēfessi domum venient et Tulliae liberisque dōna dabunt.

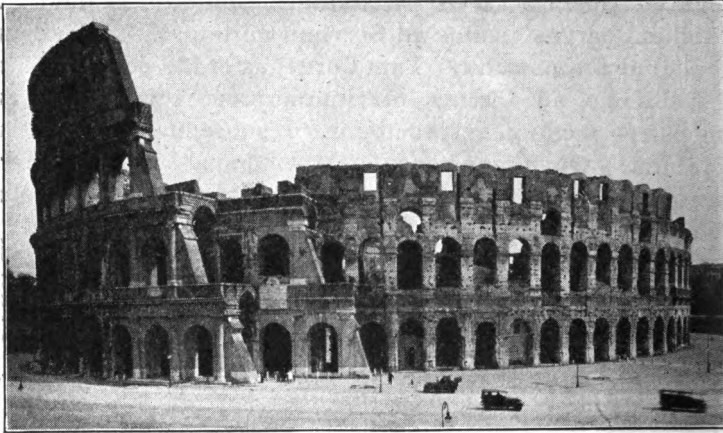
## VOCABULARY XXI

*aedificium, aedifici, n., <i>building</i>	pompa, -ae, f., <i>procession,</i> <i>parade</i>
*angustus, -a, -um, <i>narrow</i> arēna, -ae, f., <i>sand; arena</i>	*prope, prep. (with acc.), <i>near</i> quadrigae, -arum, f. pl., <i>team</i> <i>of four horses, chariot with</i> <i>team</i>
*currō, currere, <i>run</i>	
*dicō, dicere, <i>say, tell, express</i>	
*exspectō, exspectāre, <i>await,</i> <i>expect, wait for</i>	*scūtum, -i, n., <i>shield</i>
fibula, -ae, f., <i>pin, brooch</i>	*sententia, -ae, f., <i>opinion,</i> <i>thought</i>
*glōria, -ae, f., <i>glory</i>	spectāculum, -i, n., <i>exhibi-</i> <i>tion, spectacle</i>
legō, legere, <i>choose; read</i>	subsellium, subselli, n., <i>bench, seat</i>
mox, adv., <i>soon</i>	
*negōtium, negōtī, n., <i>busi-</i> <i>ness, task</i>	*tardus, -a, -um, <i>slow, tardy</i>
ōtium, ōtī, n., <i>leisure, rest</i>	volō, volāre, <i>fly; walk or</i> <i>run with great speed</i>
*per, prep. (with acc.), <i>through</i>	

## 199.

## LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. The word arēna meant originally *sand*, or a *sandy area*. In ancient times the open space in the center of the amphitheater, where the combats of the gladiators or wild beasts took place, was covered with sand to keep the gladiators from slipping, and to absorb the blood; hence this open space took the name arēna. The English word *arena* is applied to any place where a public contest occurs.



### Colossēum

This was the largest and most famous amphitheater of ancient times. In its huge arena, gladiatorial combats and wild-beast fights took place. Though it is in ruins, it is estimated that 50,000 spectators could be seated in the Colosseum, and there was standing room for many thousands more.

II. *Aquascutum* is a trade name, used by an English firm, for a brand of raincoat. Why was this name selected?

III. Explain the meanings of the words *pomp*, *negotiate*, *edifice*, *sentence*.

### DRILL

#### I. Translate:

agētur	habētur	legentur
curret	audiēminī	celebrābunt
sedētis	veniētis	volābit
leguntur	erimus	mittēminī

#### II. Write in Latin:

They will fly, they will sit, they will run, they will come, you (*sing.*) will be called, you will be heard, you will be led, you will be advised, he will await, he will be awaited, he will put on, they will say.



**Amphitheatrum Pompeianum**

( 167 )

## EXERCISE XXI

*Write in Latin:*

1. Many buildings will be seen near the Roman Forum. 2. There will be no horses in the narrow streets. 3. The great procession will soon come through the Circus Maximus. 4. The tardy boys will run quickly to their seats and they will watch the exhibition. 5. The four-horse teams will fly quickly through the arena. 6. Cornelius will have leisure, and will express his opinion about the charioteers. 7. Much business will be done at Rome. 8. Meanwhile the little boys are waiting for Cornelius at home. 9. Tullia is reading stories about the glory of Rome. 10. Tullia's brooch is beautiful, and the shield and sword delight the little boys.



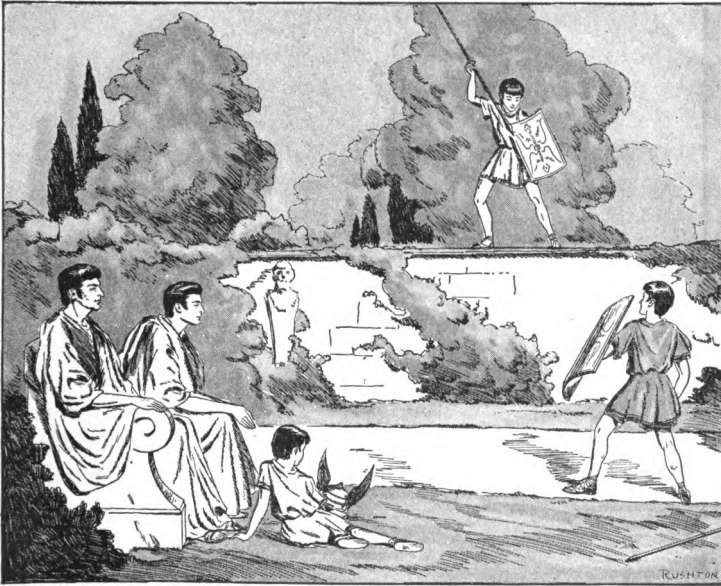
*Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art*

**Aurigae ad certamina parati**

**Two-horse and four-horse chariots, with their charioteers, on coins from Syracuse, Sicily**

## CHAPTER XXII

### PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE OF VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION IN -ĪŌ REVIEW OF THE PRESENT SYSTEM



#### 200. LŪDUS PUERŌRUM

Quotannis Mārcus lēgātus ab hībernīs domum venit. Ad puerōs dōna ferē semper portat. Saepe dōna sunt arma lignea. In hībernīs armātī nōn pugnāt et magnum est ōtium; itaque dōna parva libenter faciunt. Hodiē Mārcus puerīs dōna dat.

"Ego galeam *accipiō*," Pūblius clāmat. "Quid tū *accipis*, Aule?" "Ego pīlum et scūtum *accipiō* et Lūcius quoque pīlum et scūtum *accipit*," Aulus respondet. "Cūr pīla et scūta *accipitis*? Nōne dēsiderātis galeās?" Pūblius rogat. "Pīla et scūta *accipimus* quod libenter pugnāmus. Parvī puerī, Pūbli, galeās *accipiunt* sed nōs pīla et scūta *accipimus*," Aulus respondet. Itaque ā Lūciō et ab Aulō pīla et scūta *accipiuntur* et ā Pūbliō *galea accipitur*.

Nunc Lūcius et Aulus proelium committunt. Cornēlius et Mārcus in hortō sedent et lūdum spectant. Aulus in terrā stat; Lūcius in mūrō stat. Lūcius dē mūrō pīlum in Aulum dēicit. Aulus pīlum scūtō intercipit et rēicit. Tum pīlum ab Aulō iacitur et ā Lūciō intercipitur et rēicitur. Diū pīla ā puerīs iaciuntur, intercipiuntur, rēiciuntur. Tandem puerī dēfessī in subselliō sedent. "*Iaciēbāsne*, Mārce, pīla in barbarōs?" rogat Aulus. "Multa pīla *iaciēbam*," Mārcus respondet. "In Germānōs et in Gallōs *iaciēbantur*. Pīlum meum ā barbarō nōn semper intercipiēbātur et rēiciēbātur. Saepe ā barbarō capiēbātur."

"Mox," inquit Aulus, "pīla in barbarōs *iaciam*. Nōne tū quoque, Lūcī, pīla *iaciēs*?" "Pīla multa *iaciēmus*. Pīla barbarōrum saepe intercipiēmus. Fortasse pīla barbarōrum capiēmus," respondet Lūcius. "Mox," inquit Cornēlius, "meī filii erunt armāti. Tum multa pīla et in Germānōs et in Gallōs *iacient*."

#### DISCUSSION

201. In the second paragraph of the story, list the forms that make up the present tense active of the verb *accipiō*. Do these forms resemble the forms of any of the conjugations previously studied? Which of these forms are like the corresponding forms of *mittō*? Which are different? Do these resemble the forms of any other conjugation? The present tense active and passive of *accipiō* is conjugated like *mittō* except in the first person singular and the third person



### Militēs pugnāt

Figures carved on the Arch of Constantine at Rome

plural. In those persons the forms are like the corresponding forms of the fourth conjugation; as, *accipiō, accipior, accipiunt, accipiuntur*. Verbs like *accipiō* are called *-iō verbs of the third conjugation* and are distinguished from verbs of the fourth conjugation by the present infinitive, which ends in *-ere*. They are listed in vocabularies just like other third-conjugation verbs: *accipiō, accipere*.

	<i>Third Conjugation</i>	<i>Third Conjugation in -iō</i>	<i>Fourth Conjugation</i>
<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>mittō</i>	<i>accipiō</i>	<i>audiō</i>
<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>mittere</i>	<i>accipere</i>	<i>audire</i>
<i>Pres. Stem</i>	<i>mitte-</i>	<i>accipe-</i>	<i>audi-</i>

202. Forms of the imperfect tense of four other *-iō* verbs of the third conjugation are found in the third paragraph.



They are *iaciō*, *throw*, *rēiciō*, *throw back*, *intercipiō*, *intercept*, *capiō*, *take*. Is the imperfect tense of *-iō* verbs like the imperfect tense of *mittō*, or of *audiō*? The imperfect tense of *-iō* verbs of the third conjugation is conjugated like verbs of the fourth conjugation: *accipiēbam*, like *audiēbam*.

Which conjugation do the forms of the future tense of the *-iō* verbs found in the last paragraph resemble? The future tense of *-iō* verbs of the third conjugation is conjugated like the future tense of verbs of the fourth conjugation: *as*, *accipiam*, like *audiam*.

203. Memorize thoroughly the following paradigms:

**Present indicative**

<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>
<i>capiō</i>	<i>capior</i>
<i>capis</i>	<i>caperis</i>
<i>capit</i>	<i>capitur</i>
<i>capimus</i>	<i>capimur</i>
<i>capitis</i>	<i>capimini</i>
<i>capiunt</i>	<i>capiuntur</i>

**Imperfect indicative**

<i>capiebam</i>	<i>capiebar</i>
<i>capiebās</i>	<i>capiebāris</i>
<i>capiebat</i>	<i>capiebātur</i>
<i>capiebāmus</i>	<i>capiebāmur</i>
<i>capiebātis</i>	<i>capiebāmini</i>
<i>capiebant</i>	<i>capiebantur</i>

**Future indicative**

<i>capiam</i>	<i>capiar</i>
<i>capies</i>	<i>capieris</i>
<i>capiet</i>	<i>capietur</i>
<i>capiemus</i>	<i>capiemur</i>
<i>capietis</i>	<i>capiemini</i>
<i>capient</i>	<i>capientur</i>

## VOCABULARY XXII

*accipiō, accipere, receive, accept	Germānus, -a, -um, Ger- man, Germanic; as a noun,
*barbarus, -a, -um, uncivil- ized, barbarous; as a noun, barbarus, -ī, m., a barbarian	Germānus, -ī, m., a Ger- man
*capiō, capere, take, seize	*hīberna, -ōrum, n. pl., winter quarters
*committō, committere, join, begin	*iaciō, iacere, throw, hurl, fling
dēiciō, dēicere, throw down, hurl down	intercipiō, interciperere, inter- cept
*faciō, facere, make, do, per- form	*pīlum, -ī, n., javelin
galea, -ae, f., helmet	quotannis, adv., every year, yearly
Gallus, -a, -um, Gallic; as a noun, Gallus, -ī, m., a Gaul	rēiciō, rēicere, throw back, hurl back; beat or force back, repulse

## Idiom

proelium committere, begin battle, join battle

## 204. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. Answer the following questions:

1. When the bear *hibernates*, what does he do?
2. What is a shoe *factory*?

II. *Barbarous* is derived from a Greek word which originally meant *stammer, babble*, and later *foreign*, in allusion to the confused sounds of any foreign language. Then it began to carry associations of contempt, and to imply vulgarity and lack of civilization. The Greeks at the height of their power called the Romans "barbarians," and the Romans, after they had conquered the Greeks, applied the word to all who differed in language and manners from themselves. So today the word *barbarian* is applied to a person who is felt to have customs and a culture inferior to one's own.

## DRILL

I. *Translate:*

mittētur  
relinquunt  
iaciunt  
tenēmini

docētur  
mūniēmur  
custōdiētur  
pugnās

cōgēbātis  
pugnābimus  
faciēbās  
accipiēris

II. *Give the present, imperfect, and future, in the active and passive, of the following verbs in the person and number indicated:*



Princeps Gallicus

1. servō, third singular
2. moneō, first singular
3. dūcō, second singular
4. iaciō, third plural
5. custōdiō, first plural
6. vincō, second plural

## EXERCISE XXII

*Write in Latin:*

1. The men were led into winter quarters every year.
2. They used to make many beautiful gifts there.
3. Gifts were often brought home by Marcus.
4. We shall receive helmets; you (*pl.*) will receive shields.
5. I shall begin the battle; you will intercept my javelin and throw it back, Aulus.
6. Stories about the Gauls and Germans are pleasing to the boys.
7. "I was almost taken by the barbarians," says Marcus.
8. Weapons were thrown upon the Romans from the walls of the town.

CHAPTER XXIII  
NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

Nouns in *x, s*



205.

DUX ET MILITĒS

*Dux* bellum amat. Libenter dux armātōs ad bellum dūcit. Vita *ducis* periculōrum est plēna; sed *ducis* virtūs est magna. *Ducī* patria est cāra. Saepe patria *ducem* vocat; tum ā *duce* armātī ad bellum dūcuntur.

Erant apud Rōmānōs multī et clārī *ducēs*. Statuae *ducum* clārōrum in Forō Rōmānō vidēbantur. Bellum *ducibus* Rōmānīs erat semper grātum quod spolia erant multa. Nōs *ducēs* Rōmānōs laudāmus et fābulās dē *ducibus* legimus.

( 175 )

**Mīles bellum amat. Virtūs militis est magna. Victōria militi est grāta; itaque prō patriā dīligerter pugnat. Pāx quoque militem dēlectat et ā milite laudātur.**

**Apud Rōmānōs erant multī et clārī militēs. Victōriae militum Rōmānōrum erant multae. Saepe magnī triumphī agēbantur. Triumphī et ducibus et militibus erant grātī. Populus Rōmānus militēs laudābat quod multa spolia ā ducibus militibusque Rōmam portābantur. Lēx antiq̄ua erat: victōrī sunt spolia.**

#### Nōtā bene

*Victōrī sunt spolia, to the victor belong the spoils.*

#### 206. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quis bellum amat? 2. Cuius virtūs est magna?  
3. Cui est patria grāta? 4. Quem patria vocat? 5. Ā quō armātī ad bellum dūcuntur?

6. Nōnne erant apud Rōmānōs multī ducēs clārī?  
7. Quōrum statuāe in Forō Rōmānō vidēbantur? 8. Quibus erat bellum grātum? 9. Quōs laudāmus? 10. Dē quibus fābulās legimus?

11. Nōnne mīles bellum amat? 12. Cuius virtūs est magna? 13. Cui est victōria cāra? 14. Quem pāx dēlectat? 15. Ā quō pāx laudātur?

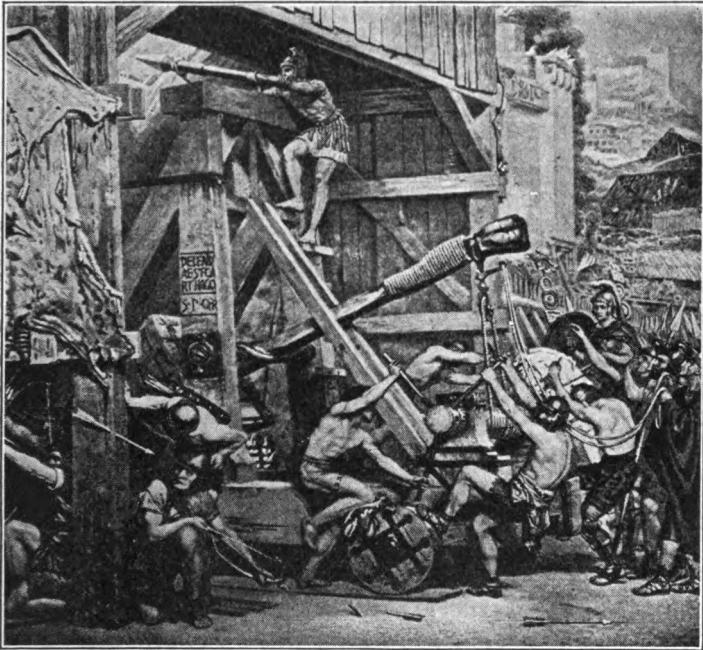
16. Erantne multī militēs clārī apud Rōmānōs?  
17. Nōnne erant victōriae militum Rōmānōrum multae?  
18. Quibus triumphī erant grātī? 19. Quōs Rōmānī laudābant? 20. Ā quibus multa spolia Rōmam portābantur?

#### Nōtā bene

Quibus, dative and ablative plural, all three genders, of the interrogative pronoun.

#### DISCUSSION

207. In the first paragraph of the story, find examples of the nominative and genitive singular of the word **dux**.



### Oppugnātiō oppidī

What is the ending of the genitive singular? What is the base to which the ending is added? Does the nominative case use this base? At first the nominative case does not seem to show this base; but **x** is a double consonant and stands for the combination **cs**, and the base of **dux**, **ducis** can be shown in the nominative by writing **duc-s**, **duc-is**.

A noun whose genitive singular ends in **-is** belongs to the *third declension*. Find examples of the remaining cases in the singular. In the second paragraph, find examples of these cases used in the plural. The endings used with these words are those of masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension.

**208.** In the third and fourth paragraphs, find examples of all cases of the singular and plural of the word *mīles*. What letters form the base? How does the base differ from the nominative? Many nouns of the third declension have a nominative in *x* or *s*. If the base of a noun ends in *c* or *g*, its nominative ends in *x*; as, *dux*, *ducis*, base *duc-*; *lēx*, *lēgis*, base *lēg-*. Nouns whose nominative ends in *s* often have a base ending in *t*, or *d*, or *p*. You will find examples of such nouns in the Reading Lesson which follows.

**209.** In the Reading Lesson of this chapter other new nouns of the third declension are used. Memorize carefully the nominative singular, the genitive singular, and the gender. Notice that masculine and feminine nouns have the same endings. Learn carefully the spelling of the base from the genitive form, as the endings for all the cases except the nominative and vocative are added to this base.

**210.** Learn the following paradigms of masculine and feminine nouns in *s* or *x*:

*dux*, *ducis*, *m.*, base *duc-*, *leader*  
*mīles*, *mīlitis*, *m.*, base *mīlit-*, *soldier*  
*lēx*, *lēgis*, *f.*, base *lēg-*, *law*

*Singular*

<i>Nom.</i> <i>dux</i>	<i>mīles</i>	<i>lēx</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>ducis</i>	<i>mīlitis</i>	<i>lēgis</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>ducī</i>	<i>mīlitī</i>	<i>lēgī</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>ducem</i>	<i>mīlitem</i>	<i>lēgem</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>duce</i>	<i>mīlite</i>	<i>lēge</i>

*Plural*

<i>Nom.</i> <i>ducēs</i>	<i>mīlitēs</i>	<i>lēgēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>ducum</i>	<i>mīlitum</i>	<i>lēgum</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>ducibus</i>	<i>mīlitibus</i>	<i>lēgibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>ducēs</i>	<i>mīlitēs</i>	<i>lēgēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>ducibus</i>	<i>mīlitibus</i>	<i>lēgibus</i>

## READING LESSON

## 211.

## MĪLITĒS RŌMĀNĪ

Auctōritās Rōmāna erat magna quod Rōma tot mīlitēs habēbat. Mīlitēs erant peditēs et equitēs. Eques equum habēbat et ab equō pugnābat. Pedes equum nōn habēbat;

<sup>on horseback</sup>  
pedibus pugnābat. Equitēs proelium committēbant sed peditēs pīlis et gladiis proelium gerēbant. Arma peditis erant lōrica, galea, scūtum, gladius. In sinistrā scūtum, in dextrā pilum portābātur. Interdum mīlitēs Rōmānī oppidum oppugnābant, et magnī lapidēs in mūrōs oppidī mittēbantur.

<sup>afoot</sup>  
Virtūs mīlitum Rōmānōrum erat magna. Ā rēgibus et prīncipibus multārum terrārum Rōmānī timēbantur quod fāma mīlitum Rōmānōrum erat magna. Līberī rēgum et prīncipum saepe erant obsidēs Rōmānōrum et Rōmam dūcēbantur. Multās fābulās dē obsidibus Rōmānōrum legēmus.

## VOCABULARY XXIII

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| *auctōritās, auctōritātis, f.,<br><i>power, influence, authority</i>       | *pēs, pedis, m., <i>foot</i>  |
| *dexter, dextra, dextrum,<br><i>right; dextra, -ae, f.,<br/>right hand</i> | *populus, -ī, m., <i>a people,<br/>nation</i>   |
| *dux, ducis, m., <i>leader</i>   | *prīnceps, prīncipis, m., <i>chief</i>  |
| *eques, equitis, m., <i>horse-<br/>man; in pl., cavalry</i>                | *rēx, rēgis, m., <i>king</i>  |
| *lapis, lapidis, m., <i>stone</i>  | *sinister, sinistra, sinistrum,<br><i>left; as a noun, sinistra,<br/>-ae, f., left hand</i> |
| *lēs, lēgis, f., <i>law</i>  | spolium, spoli, n., <i>spoil, booty</i>   |
| lōrica, -ae, f., <i>corselet, armor</i>                                    | *tot, adj. (indeclinable), <i>so<br/>many</i>   |
| *mīles, mīlitis, m., <i>soldier</i>  | triumphus, -ī, m., <i>triumph;<br/>triumphum agere, to hold<br/>a triumph</i>               |
| *obses, obsidis, m., <i>hostage</i>  | *virtūs, virtūtis, f., <i>courage,<br/>valor</i>  |
| *pāx, pācis, f., <i>peace</i>  |   |
| *pedes, peditis, m., <i>foot sol-<br/>dier; in pl., infantry</i>           |   |





### Imperātor et milītēs

#### Idioms

**ab equō pugnāre**, to fight on horseback; **pedibus pugnāre**, to fight afoot.

#### 212. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Pick out the Latin words with which the following are associated: *legal, military, pedestrian, principal, regal.*

#### DRILL

I. Decline the Latin expressions for the following: Roman foot soldier, large foot, German chief, good law, famous leader.

II. Give the nominative singular, genitive singular, gender, nominative plural, and genitive plural of the Latin nouns for the following:

courage	stone	triumph	shield
hostage	power	peace	horseman
spoil	law	foot	king



## Spolia

III. *Supply the proper case endings:*

1. Scūta pedit.... erant magna.
2. Pedit.... ped.... pugnant.
3. Milit.... lapid.... saepe vulnerābantur.
4. Auctōritās Rŏmāna obsid.... nŏn erat grāta.
5. Duc.... multŏs prīncip.... Rŏmam dūcēbant.
6. Nŏs lēg.... Rŏmānās laudāmus.

## EXERCISE XXIII

*Write in Latin:*

1. I shall read many stories about the power and laws of the Romans. 2. Roman leaders used to carry on war with cavalry and infantry. 3. The leader sometimes fought on (from) horseback, sometimes afoot. 4. Both the leader and (his) soldiers had great courage. 5. The Roman soldier used to wear a helmet and a corselet. 6. The left hand held the shield, the right hand the sword. 7. The soldiers used to storm a town with large stones. 8. Kings and chiefs were often hostages of the Roman leaders. 9. A triumph was a great spectacle because there were so many spoils. 10. Peace was also dear to the Roman people.

CHAPTER XXIV  
NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION  
ABLATIVE OF TIME

Nouns in *r, er, l*



213. DĒ PRINCIPIBUS RŌMĀNĪS

In principiō Rōma ā rēgibus regēbātur. Prīmus rēx erat Rōmulus. Frāter Rōmulī erat Remus. Rōmulus et Remus erant geminī. Pater Rōmulī et frātris Remī deus Mārs, māter Rhēa Silvia erat. Rōmae erant statuae patris Mārtis et mātris Rhēae Silviae et frātrum. Rōmulus erat rēx bonus et ā Rōmānīs laudābātur. Erant septem rēgēs Rōmānī.

Posteā erant cōsulēs. *Cōsul* Rŏmānus ā populŏ Rŏmānŏ dēligēbātur. *Imperium cōsulis* erat maximum. Duo cōsulēs quotannis dēligēbantur et civitātem regēbant.

Posteā imperātŏrēs Rŏmam regēbant. *Imperātor* clārus erat Augustus Caesar. Rŏmae est magna statua *imperātŏris* Augustī Caesaris.



### Lictŏrēs

Lictors preceded important magistrates through the streets. As symbols of authority, they carried the *fascēs*, bundles of rods bound together about an ax, which they used to inflict punishment on those sentenced by the magistrates

### Nŏtā bene

Duo, *two* (see § 355); septem, *seven* (indeclinable adjective).

### 214. Respondē Latīnē :

1. Quis erat Rŏmulus? 2. Quis erat Remus? 3. Quis erat Mārs? 4. Quis erat Rhēa Silvia? 5. Quŏrum statuae sunt Rŏmae?

6. Quis ā populŏ Rŏmānŏ dēligēbātur? 7. Cuius imperium erat maximum?

8. Quis erat Augustus Caesar? 9. Ubi est magna statua imperātōris? 10. Quālēs erant principēs Rōmae?

## DISCUSSION

215. In the story *Dē Principibus Rōmānis*, find the genitive singular of the nouns *imperātor*, *frāter*, and *cōsul*. To what declension do these nouns belong?



Augustus Caesar Imperātor

216. Learn the paradigms of the following nouns ending in *r*, *er*, and *l*:

**imperātor, imperātōris, m.**, base *imperātōr-*, *commander, emperor* (observe that *-ōr-* of the base appears as *-or* in the nominative)

**frāter, frātris, m.**, base *frātr-*, *brother*

**cōsul, cōsulis, m.**, base *cōsul-*, *consul*

*Singular*

<i>Nom.</i>	imperātor	frāter	cōsul
<i>Gen.</i>	imperātōris	frātris	cōsulis
<i>Dat.</i>	imperātōrī	frātrī	cōsulī
<i>Acc.</i>	imperātōrem	frātrem	cōsulem
<i>Abl.</i>	imperātōre	frātre	cōsule

*Plural*

<i>Nom.</i>	imperātōrēs	frātrēs	cōsulēs
<i>Gen.</i>	imperātōrum	frātrum	cōsulum
<i>Dat.</i>	imperātōribus	frātribus	cōsulibus
<i>Acc.</i>	imperātōrēs	frātrēs	cōsulēs
<i>Abl.</i>	imperātōribus	frātribus	cōsulibus

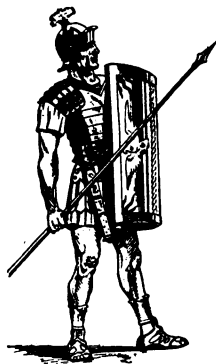
Nouns in *ō, s*

## 217. DĒ CAESARE ET LEGIŌNIBUS

Apud Rōmānōs Caesar erat maximus dux. Caesar et legiōnēs in Galliā et Britanniā pugnābant, In legiōne est magnus numerus mīlitum. *Bellō Helveticō* multae legiōnēs cum Caesare erant. Decima legiō et in bellō et in *pāce* Caesarī cāra erat. Virtūs decimae legiōnis erat magna. *Hieme* Caesaris legiōnēs in hibernis manēbant. *Aestāte* Caesar legiōnēs cōgēbat et bellum cum Gallīs gerēbat.

Saepe imperātor mīlītēsque triumphum agēbant. *Multitūdō* hominum in Rōmae viās properābat. Per Forum Rōmānum victor, mīlītēs, spolia, veniēbant. Clāmōrēs *multitudinis* erant magnī. Spectāculum multitudinem laetam dēlectābat.

Triumphus erat *mōs* antiquus. Hodiē quoque vestigia *mōris* antiquī vidēmus; nam in viīs nostrīs pompae magnae videntur.



Mīles Rōmānus

## 218. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Ubi Caesar pugnābat? 2. Quandō erant multae legiōnēs cum Caesare? 3. Cui erat legiō decima cāra? 4. Quandō decima legiō Caesarī cāra erat? 5. Cuius virtūs erat magna? 6. Quandō Caesaris legiōnēs in hibernis manēbant? 7. Quandō Caesar bellum gerēbat?

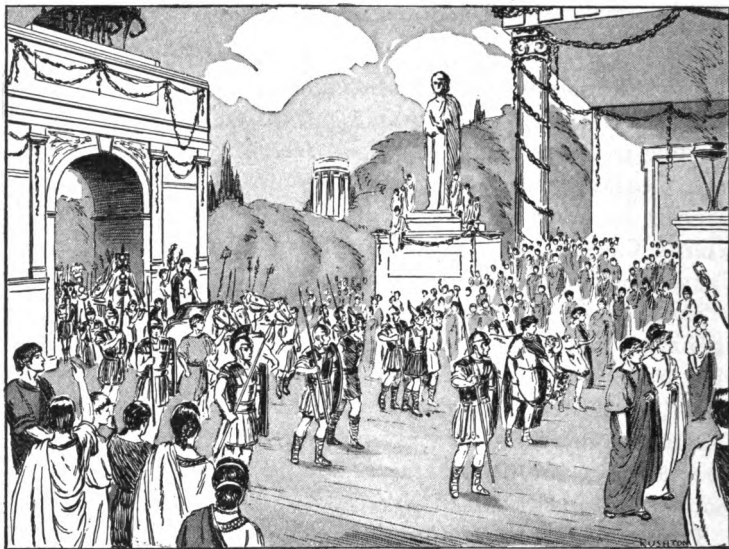
8. Quō multitūdō properābat? 9. Cuius clāmōrēs erant magnī? 10. Quid hodiē vidēmus?

Nōtā bene

Quandō, *when?*

## DISCUSSION

219. In the story *Dē Caesare et Legiōnibus*, what is the genitive singular of *legiō*? To what declension does this



### Triumphus

noun belong? What is the genitive singular of **multitūdō**? To what declension does it belong? Many nouns of the third declension end in **ō** in the nominative but have the base in **n**. Notice the spelling of the genitive. Some nouns in **ō** have a genitive form in **-ōnis**, some in **-inis**; as, **legiō**, **legiōnis**; **multitūdō**, **multitūdinis**.

220. What is the genitive singular of **mōs**? To what declension does it belong? A few nouns of the third declension have a nominative in **s**, but use the letter **r** in the genitive and all cases thereafter; as, **mōs**, **mōris**.

221. Always learn the nominative and genitive singular and gender of a third-declension noun. List the third-declension nouns in the story **Dē Caesare et Legiōnibus**, and try to give the nominative and genitive singular and gender of each noun without referring to the vocabulary.

222. Learn these paradigms of nouns ending in *ō* and *s*:

homō, hominis, *m. or f.*, base homin-, *person*  
 legiō, legiōnis, *f.*, base legiōn-, *legion*  
 mōs, mōris, *m.*, base mōr-, *custom*

*Singular*

<i>Nom.</i>	legiō	homō	mōs
<i>Gen.</i>	legiōnis	hominis	mōris
<i>Dat.</i>	legiōnī	hominī	mōrī
<i>Acc.</i>	legiōnem	hominem	mōrem
<i>Abl.</i>	legiōne	homine	mōre

*Plural*

<i>Nom.</i>	legiōnēs	hominēs	mōrēs
<i>Gen.</i>	legiōnum	hominum	mōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	legiōnibus	hominibus	mōribus
<i>Acc.</i>	legiōnēs	hominēs	mōrēs
<i>Abl.</i>	legiōnibus	hominibus	mōribus

223. State what question the following expressions answer: **bellō Helveticō, in bellō et in pāce, aestāte, hieme.** What case is used in all the expressions? What preposition is sometimes used? All these expressions show the *time when* an action takes place. The ablative may be used to express time; when so used it is called the *ablative of time*. When the word itself refers to time, the ablative case without a preposition is used; as, **hieme, in winter; aestāte, in summer.** When the word itself does not express time, the preposition **in** is used with the ablative case; as, **in bellō, in war; in pāce, in peace.** When an adjective modifies a word not relating to time, the ablative may be used without the preposition; as, **bellō Helveticō.**

224.

RULE

**Ablative of time.** Time when may be expressed by the ablative.



## VOCABULARY XXIV

* <i>aestās, aestātis, f., summer</i>	* <i>imperium, imperī, n., command, power</i>
Caesar, Caesaris, m., <i>Caesar</i>	
* <i>cīvitās, cīvītātis, f., state</i>	* <i>legiō, legiōnis, f., legion</i>
clāmōr, clāmōris, m., <i>shout, cry</i>	Mārs, Mārtis, m., <i>Mars, god of war</i>
* <i>cōsul, cōsulis, m., consul</i>	* <i>māter, mātris, f., mother</i>
* <i>decimus, -a, -um, tenth</i>	* <i>mōs, mōris, m., custom, manner</i>
* <i>dēligō, dēligere, choose, elect</i>	<i>multitūdō, multitūdinis, f., multitude</i>
* <i>frāter, frātris, m., brother</i>	* <i>pater, patris, m., father</i>
<i>geminī, -ae, -a, twin</i>	* <i>prīmus, -a, -um, first</i>
<i>Helvēticus, -a, -um, Helvetian</i>	<i>prīncipiū, prīncipī, n., beginning</i>
* <i>hiems, hiemis, f., winter</i>	<i>vestigium, vestigī, n., trace, footprint</i>
* <i>homō, hominis, m. or f., person, man</i>	<i>victor, victōris, m., victor</i>
<i>imperātor, imperātōris, m., commander, emperor</i>	

## 225. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Explain the italicized words in the following sentences:

1. Our monetary system is a *decimal* system.
2. We do not have *fraternities* in our school.
3. His *maternal* grandfather was president.
4. He is a man of good *morals*.

## DRILL

I. *Decline the Latin expressions for the following:*

Famous consul, good mother, great commander, weary legion, happy person, old custom.

II. *Supply the proper case endings:*

1. Pāx homin.... est cāra.
2. Aestāt.... bellum ā milit.... gerēbātur.
3. Hiems multitūdin.... nōn dēlectat.



**Iò triumphe!**

4. Clāmōr.... victōr.... erant magnī.  
 5. Milit.... decimae legiōn.... sunt Caesar.... cārī.



**Victōria**

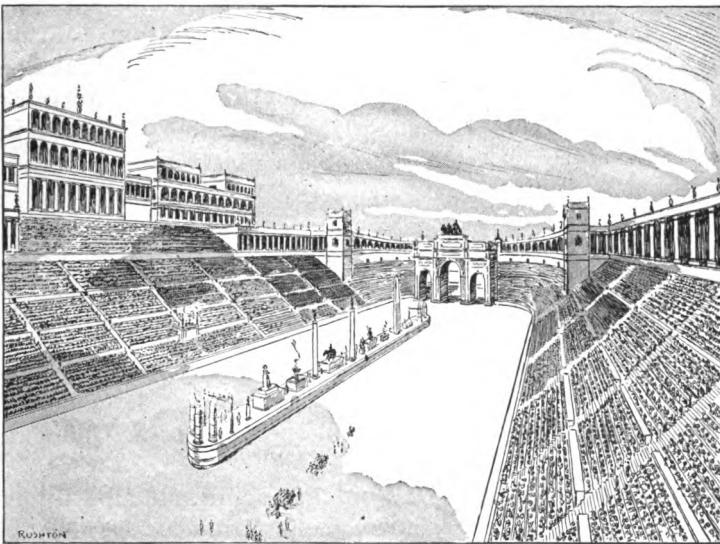
#### EXERCISE XXIV

*Write in Latin:*

1. Kings, consuls, and emperors used to rule the Roman state.
2. Romulus, the first king, and Remus, were the twin sons of Mars.
3. Later on the Roman people elected consuls.
4. The power of the consuls was very great.
5. In the Helvetian war, Caesar was the commander of many legions.
6. We hear many stories about the tenth legion.
7. In winter the Roman soldiers were led into winter quarters; in summer they carried on war.
8. Triumphs were always held in Rome.
9. A multitude of people used to watch the triumph.
10. In the beginning many shouts were heard.
11. The fathers and mothers of the victors were in the streets.
12. Traces of the ancient custom are seen today.

## CHAPTER XXV

### NEUTER NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION ABLATIVE OF MANNER



#### 226. DE CERTAMINIBUS RŌMĀNĪS

Populus Rŏmānus lūdōs et spectācula amābat. Erant lūdī gladiātōriū, *certāmina* quadrigārum, alia spectācula. Rŏmānī lūdōs gladiātōriōs et certāmina quadrigārum libenter spectābant. *Certāmen* quadrigārum in Circō Maximō erat et populō Rŏmānō maximē acceptum erat. Multitūdō virōrum et fēminārum et liberōrum certāmen quadrigārum *magnō cum studiō* spectābat. Prīncipiū *certāminis* quadrigārum

ā dominō lūdōrum nūntiābātur. Tum spectātōrēs cum studiō aurigās salūtābant.

Saepe auriga erat servus. *Corpus* aurigae aut rubrā aut albā tunicā tegēbātur. Colōre tunicae Rōmānī corpus aurigae cernēbant. Pulchra erat aurigae magnitudō *corpōris*. Maximā cum celeritāte equī currēbant. *Corpora* equōrum erant pulchra. Spectātōrēs corpora equōrum laudābant. Victōrī certāminis quadrigārum palma ā dominō lūdōrum dabātur. *Mūnus* erat aurigae grātum. Multa *mūnera* pulchra victōrī ā spectātōribus dabantur. Crās Cornēlius cum filiis Lūciō et Aulō Circum Maximum iterum intrābunt. Ibi puerī certāmen quadrigārum maximō studiō spectābunt. Clāmōrēs spectātōrum Circum Maximum complēbunt.

#### Nōtā bene

Magnitudō corpōris, *stature, build*; literally, *size of body*.  
Certāmen quadrigārum, *chariot race*.

#### 227. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quālēs erant lūdī? 2. Quid Rōmānī libenter spectābant? 3. Quid erat maximē acceptum? 4. Quōmodo multitudō certāmen quadrigārum spectābat? 5. Quōmodo spectātōrēs aurigās salūtābant?

6. Quis erat auriga? 7. Quid aut rubrā aut albā tunicā tegēbātur? 8. Quid Rōmānī colōre tunicae cernēbant? 9. Quōmodo equī currēbant? 10. Nōne erant corpora equōrum pulchra? 11. Quid spectātōrēs laudābant? 12. Quid erat aurigae grātum? 13. Cui mūnera ā spectātōribus dabantur? 14. Quōmodo filii Cornēli certāmen quadrigārum spectābunt? 15. Quōrum clāmōrēs Circum Maximum complēbunt?

#### Nōtā bene

Quōmodo, *how*? This expression is really two words run together, *quō* and *modō*, and means *in what manner*?



Rŏmānī lūdōs gladiātōriōs libenter spectābant

#### DISCUSSION

**228.** In the sentence *Certāmen quadrigārum erat populō Rŏmānō maximē acceptum*, what does the adjective *acceptum* tell about the gender of the noun *certāmen*? In the sentence *Prīncipium certāminis quadrigārum ā dominō lūdōrum nūntiābātur*, in what case is *certāminis*? To what declension, then, does *certāmen* belong?

**229.** In the first paragraph of the story, find examples of the word *certāmen* in the nominative and accusative cases, singular and plural. What do you notice about the nominative and accusative singular ending? about the nominative and accusative plural ending? Neuter nouns of the third declension, like all neuters, have the same form in the nominative, accusative, and vocative. In the plural they have the ending *-a* for the nominative, accusative, and

vocative. (See § 138.) In all other cases they use the same endings as masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension. Memorize carefully the genitive of the neuter noun, for the endings must be added to the base obtained from this form.

230. Many neuter nouns of the third declension end in **-en** in the nominative singular and in **-inis** in the genitive singular; as, **certāmen, certāminis**. Notice the vowel change in the genitive. In the second paragraph of the story find two other neuter nouns. Give the nominative and genitive singular of each noun. Notice the spelling. Some neuter nouns of the third declension end in **-us** in the nominative singular and **-oris** or **-eris** in the genitive singular; as, **corpus, corporis, and mūnus, mūneris**.

231. Learn the following paradigms of neuter nouns:

**certāmen, certāminis, n., base certāmin-, contest, strife**  
**corpus, corporis, n., base corpor-, body**  
**mūnus, mūneris, n., base mūner-, gift**

*Singular*

<i>Nom.</i>	certāmen	corpus	mūnus
<i>Gen.</i>	certāminis	corporis	mūneris
<i>Dat.</i>	certāminī	corporī	mūnerī
<i>Acc.</i>	certāmen	corpus	mūnus
<i>Abl.</i>	certāmine	corpore	mūnere

*Plural*

<i>Nom.</i>	certāmina	corpora	mūnera
<i>Gen.</i>	certāminum	corporum	mūnerum
<i>Dat.</i>	certāminibus	corporibus	mūneribus
<i>Acc.</i>	certāmina	corpora	mūnera
<i>Abl.</i>	certāminibus	corporibus	mūneribus

232. Observe the following phrases, and tell what question they answer: **magnō cum studiō, maximō studiō, cum studiō, maximā cum celeritāte**. What case is used in these



### Gladiātōrēs

In this old mosaic we see the umpire between the fighters.  
Notice the protection on the arms of the combatants

phrases? Is there a preposition? All the phrases tell the *manner* in which the action took place. The ablative may be used to express manner, ordinarily with the preposition *cum*; when so used, it is called an *ablative of manner*. When the word has an adjective modifier, the ablative may be used with or without the preposition. Notice the position of *cum* when an adjective is used: *magnō cum studiō*, *with great zeal*.

### RULE

**233. Ablative of manner.** The ablative with *cum* may be used to express the manner in which an act is performed. *Cum* need not be used when the ablative has a modifier.





### In arēnā

Various scenes from the arena are represented in this old bas-relief. To the left are gladiators fighting on horseback. In the center we see wounded gladiators raising a hand to ask mercy from the audience. On the right, a gladiator who has been refused mercy is being killed by his victorious opponent

### VOCABULARY XXV

acceptus, -a, -um, <i>acceptable, pleasing</i>	gladiātōrius, -a, -um, <i>gladiatorial</i>
*aut, conj., <i>or</i> ; aut . . . aut, <i>either . . . or</i>	magnitūdō, magnitudinis, f., <i>size</i>
celeritās, celeritātis, f., <i>quickness, speed</i>	*mūnus, mūneris, n., <i>reward, gift</i>
*cernō, cernere, <i>detect, distinguish</i>	palma, -ae, f., <i>palm leaf; sign of victory</i>
certāmen, certāminis, n., <i>contest, strife, race</i>	spectātor, spectātōris, m., <i>spectator</i>
color, colōris, m., <i>color</i>	studium, studi, n., <i>zeal, eagerness</i>
compleō, complēre, <i>fill, cover</i>	*tegō, tegere, <i>cover, protect</i>
*corpus, corporis, n., <i>body</i>	

#### Idiom

magnitūdō corporis, *stature*

### 234. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. Pick out the Latin words in the vocabulary with which the following words are associated: *tegument, corporal, complete, celerity*.

II. Explain the meaning of the italicized words in the following sentences:

1. The skin is a *tegument*.
2. *Corporal* punishment is seldom practiced in the schools today.
3. Betty will soon *complete* the course in the junior high school.
4. The election was carried through with *great celerity*.

### DRILL

I. *Decline the Latin expressions for the following:*

Great contest, beautiful body, pleasing gift, happy spectator, long winter.

II. *Supply the proper case endings:*

1. Spectātōrēs magn.... cum studi.... ad certāmen properant.
2. Erant mult.... certāmin.... in Circō Maximō.
3. Equus ped.... alb.... et corpus alb.... habet.
4. Multī equī corpor.... alb.... habent.
5. Victōrēs mūner.... amant.
6. Mūnus parv.... erat accept....

### EXERCISE XXV

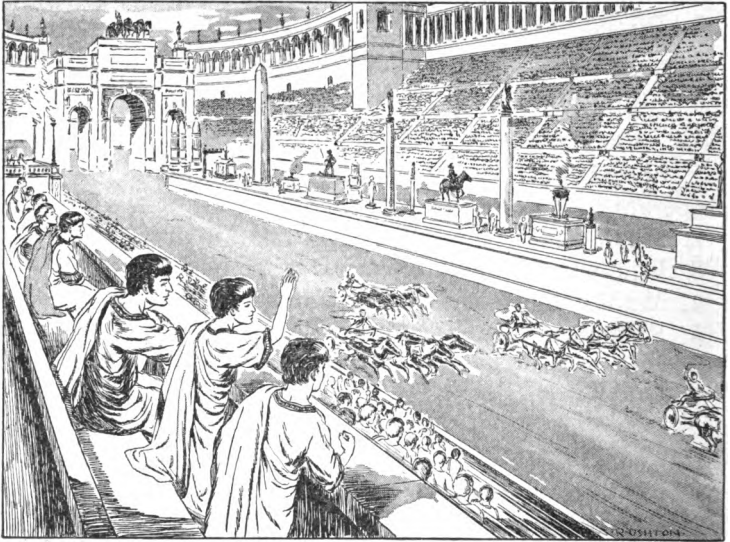
*Write in Latin:*

1. Contests were especially pleasing to the Romans.
2. A multitude of people often filled the Circus Maximus.
3. The spectators watched both gladiatorial games and chariot races with great zeal.
4. The stature of the charioteer was praised.
5. Red tunics often covered the bodies of the charioteers.
6. The drivers were distinguished by their colors.
7. The horses will run with the greatest speed.
8. The palm leaf was the victor's reward.

## CHAPTER XXVI

### SUMMARY

#### CONSONANT STEMS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION



#### 235. DĒ CERTĀMINE QUADRĪGĀRUM

Nunc Cornēlius cum filiīs Circum Maximum intrat. Magnō cum gaudiō puerī in subselliis sedent. Circus Maximus puerōs dēlectat. Circus Maximus est aedificium longum. In mediō Circō Maximō est magna arēna. Sōl arēnam illūminat. Circum arēnam sunt subsellia. Dē subselliis spectātōrēs lūdōs spectant. In Circō Maximō sunt multa genera hominum. Sunt ducēs, mercātōrēs, agricolae, servī. Dē subselliis puerī magnō studiō arēnam spectant.

( 198 )

Arēna mūrō angustō dīviditur. Nōmen mūrī angustī est “spīna.” In spīnā sunt statuæ clārōrum aurigārum et equōrum. Prope terminōs spīnae sunt columnae altae. Columnae sunt mētae. In summā spīnā prope mētās iūdicēs stant. Circum spīnam equī volant.

“Nōne est tempus certāminis, pater?” rogant puerī.

“Nōndum, mei filiī,” respondet Cornēlius. “Ante certāmen semper est pompa. Pompa per viās ad Circum Maximum iter facit. In pompā sunt equī, aurigae, virī clārī, imāginēs pulchrae deōrum. Mox pompa portam intrābit et per arēnam veniet.”

“Porta aperitur,” clāmat Lūcius. “Pompa venit!”

Post pompam spectātōrēs signum certāminis exspectant. Signum ā dominō lūdōrum datur; quadrigae maximā cum celeritāte in arēnam volant. Per septem spatia equī circum spīnam volant.

Vulnera aurigārum sunt multa. Interdum aurigae interficiuntur quod super capita et corpora miserōrum reliquae quadrigae volant.

“Meus auriga est in spatiō extrēmō,” clāmat Aulus. “Volat circum mētā extrēmā. Reliquōs aurigās relinquit. Est victor!”



Signum ā dominō lūdōrum datur

## Nōtā bene

Per septem spatia, for seven laps.

## 236. Respondē Latinē:

1. Quōmodo puerī in subselliis sedent? 2. Quāle aedificium est Circus Maximus? 3. Quid arēnam illūminat?
4. Quālēs hominēs sunt in subselliis? 5. Quōmodo arēna dīviditur? 6. Quī in summā spīnā stant?
7. Quid puerī rogant? 8. Estne pompa magna?
9. Cūr sunt vulnera aurigārum multa?
10. Quid Aulus clāmat?

## DISCUSSION

237. In many nouns of the third declension the stem (see § 82) is the same as the base, and ends in a consonant. Such nouns are called *consonant stems*. It is necessary to learn carefully the nominative and genitive singular of each noun. The following nouns show most of the types:

dux, ducis, base duc-  
 lēx, lēgis, base lēg-  
 lapis, lapidis, base lapid-  
 princeps, principis, base princip-  
 miles, militis, base milit-  
 virtūs, virtūtis, base virtūt-  
 celeritās, celeritātis, base celeritāt-  
 cōsul, cōsulis, base cōsul-  
 imperātor, imperātōris, base imperātōr-  
 frāter, frātris, base frātr-  
 legiō, legiōnis, base legiōn-  
 homō, hominis, base homin-  
 certāmen, certāminis, base certāmin-  
 corpus, corporis, base corpor-  
 mūnus, mūneris, base mūner-  
 caput, capitis, base capit-

238. There are no good rules for gender in the third declension. Learn the gender when the noun is first used. Most nouns whose nominative ends in *-tās, -tūdō, -ūs, or -ēs* are feminine. Most nouns whose nominative ends in *-men* or *-us* are neuter. *Caput* and *iter* are also neuter.

VOCABULARY XXVI

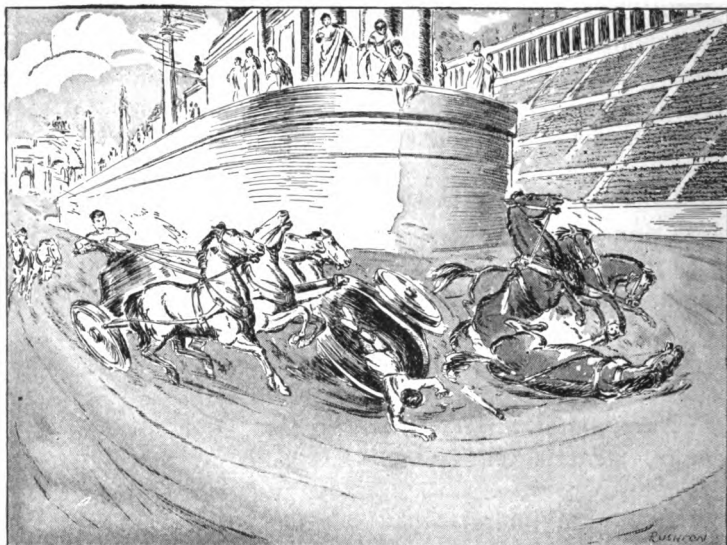
*ante, prep. (with acc.), <i>before, in front of</i>	*mercātor, mercātōris, m., <i>merchant</i>
*caput, capitis, n., <i>head, capital</i>	mēta, -ae, f., <i>goal</i>
*dīvidō, dīvidere, <i>divide, separate</i>	*nōmen, nōminis, n., <i>name</i>
gaudium, gaudī, n., <i>joy</i>	*post, prep. (with acc.), <i>after, behind</i>
*genus, generis, n., <i>kind, class</i>	*signum, -ī, n., <i>signal</i>
illūminō, illūmināre, <i>light up, illuminate</i>	*sōl, sōlis, m., <i>sun</i>
imāgō, imāginis, f., <i>image</i>	*spatium, spatī, n., <i>space</i>
*interficiō, interficere, <i>kill</i>	spīna, -ae, f., <i>spina</i>
*iter, itineris, n., <i>journey, march, route</i>	*summus, -a, -um, <i>highest, top of</i>
iūdex, iūdicis, m., <i>judge</i>	super, prep. (with acc.), <i>above, over</i>
*medius, -a, -um, <i>middle, middle of</i>	*tempus, temporis, n., <i>time</i>
	terminus, -ī, m., <i>end; boundary line</i>
	*vulnus, vulneris, n., <i>wound</i>

*Idiom*

*iter facere, to march*

239. Nōtā bene

Observe that *medius* is an adjective; it can sometimes be translated *mid*, though in English we use the adjective *mid* in only a few expressions, as *in midair, midseason, midstream*, etc. More often, the English idiom requires that *medius* be translated as if it were a noun: *in mediō Circō Maximō, in the middle of the Circus Maximus*.



### Quadrigae circum spinam volant

In the same way the adjective *summus*, *highest*, must usually be translated as if it were a noun: in *summā spinā*, *on the top of the "spine."*

Since *medius* and *summus* are adjectives, they always agree in gender, number, and case with the word they modify.

### 240. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Explain the meaning of the italicized words in the following sentences:

1. Many people do not believe in *capital* punishment.
2. He left his *itinerary* with us before he sailed.
3. Several persons were *nominated* for President.
4. They reached the *summit* of the mountain at last.
5. We felt that the *judicial* decision in the case was fair.
6. He was appointed *mediator* in the dispute.



### Aurīga victor

Bearing the palm of victory, the winning charioteer is just leaving the Circus of Maxentius, several miles south of Rome

### DRILL

I. Give the nominative and genitive singular, the gender, and the nominative and genitive plural of every third-declension noun in the story *Dē Certāmine Quadrīgārum*.

II. Decline the Latin expressions for the following:

Beautiful head, good judge, bright sun, great merchant, dear mother, small image, famous legion, long name, ancient time, the middle of the road, the top of (one's) head.

III. Supply the proper case endings:

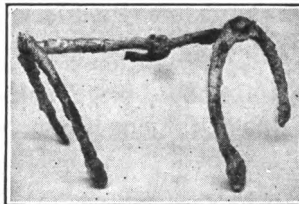
1. Capit.... equōrum sunt pulchr....
2. Mult.... genera homin.... vidēbimus.
3. Itinera milit.... erunt long....
4. Puellae corōnis imāgin.... magn.... ōrnant.
5. Mercātōr.... iūdic.... laudant.
6. Tempor.... Rōmānōrum saepe laudantur.
7. Mūner.... victōr.... (*sing.*) dantur.



## EXERCISE XXVI

*Write in Latin:*

1. There were contests of many kinds in the Circus Maximus. 2. With merchants, leaders, and judges, the boys await the signal of the master of the games. 3. The parade enters the gate and marches in front of the spectators. 4. Above the spectators is the bright sun; it lights up the arena. 5. The open space is divided by the "spine"; on the top of the spine are many images. 6. It is time for the race (of the race), and the teams fly to the goals with great speed. 7. Sometimes the charioteers are killed; often a driver has many wounds on (his) head and body. 8. The rest of the teams fly around the ends of the spine. 9. After the race the victor will stand in the middle of the arena. 10. Then there will be great joy and the name of the victor will be praised.



*Courtesy of the Metropolitan Museum of Art*

**Frēnum**

## CHAPTER XXVII

### MASCULINE, FEMININE, AND NEUTER I-STEMS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

#### 241. DE URBE RŌMĀ

Rōma est urbs clāra. Viae, templa, aedificia urbis sunt pulchra. Rōmulus, rēx primus, urbi nōmen dedit. Flūmen Tiberis urbem dividit. Mare nōn longē ab urbe abest. In mare flūmen Tiberis fluit; urbs Rōma ab ōre flūminis Tiberis nōn longē abest. Nōmen maris est Mare Īnferum. Ā *marī* paucae nāvēs Rōmam veniunt quod flūmen nōn est altum. Est Mare Superum quoque; nam *maria* Italiam ferē circumstant.

Sunt multae et magnae urbēs in Italiā. Rōma est maxima *urbium*. Rōma est caput Italiae. Multis urbibus pulchris proxima est Rōma. Viātōrēs ā multis terris ad *urbis* clārās veniunt. In multis urbibus Italiae sunt ruinae aedificiōrum magnōrum. Ruinae urbium antiquārum viātōribus sunt grātae; antiquās *urbēs* libenter spectant.

Temporibus antiquis *civis* Rōmānus erat homō superbus. Nisi homō erat *civis* Rōmānus, "barbarus" saepe appellābātur. Vīta *civis* Rōmānī erat inviolāta. Barbarus *civī* Rōmānō nōn erat cārus; itaque vīta barbarī nōn erat inviolāta. Barbarus *civem* Rōmānum nōn amābat et ā *cive* Rōmānō nōn amābātur.

*Civēs* Rōmānī extrēmīs in terris saepe habitābant. Iūra *civium* Rōmānōrum etiam extrēmīs in terris diligenter servābantur. Iūdicēs *civibus* Rōmānīs erant benignī. Sī homō clāmābat, "Civis Rōmānus sum," vīta erat inviolāta. Itaque imperium Rōmānum et in Italiā et in terris



### Rōma antiqua

This view of ancient Rome shows the temple of Juno Moneta, where a sacrifice is soon to be offered. This famous temple was also the mint of ancient Rome. It was built on the Capitoline Hill, and can be seen towering above the walls of the Capitol in the extreme right of the picture on page 159

extrēmīs civīs Rōmānōs servābat. Iūre imperium Rōmānum  
ā civibus Rōmānīs laudābātur.

### Nōtā bene

Dedit, gave; iūre, justly.

Mare Inferum, the Lower Sea, or the sea along the southwest coast of Italy.

Mare Superum, the Upper Sea, along the northwest coast.

**242. Respondē Latīnē:**

1. Quālis urbs est Rōma? 2. Nōnne sunt viae, templa, aedificia urbis pulchra? 3. Cui Rōmulus nōmen dedit? 4. Quid flūmen dīvidit? 5. Num mare longē ab urbe abest? 6. Quō flūmen Tiberis fluit? 7. Nōnne nōmen maris est Mare Īferum? 8. Unde nāvēs Rōmam veniunt? 9. Quid Italiam ferē circumstat?

10. Quid est in Italiā? 11. Estne Rōma maxima urbium? 12. Quibus est Rōma proxima? 13. Quō viātōrēs veniunt? 14. Ubi sunt ruinae aedificiōrum magnōrum? 15. Quid viātōrēs libenter spectant?

16. Quis erat homō superbus? 17. Cuius vīta erat inviolāta? 18. Amābāturne barbarus ā cīve Rōmānō? 19. Quōrum iūra servābantur? 20. Quōs imperium Rōmānum servābat?

## DISCUSSION

**243.** In the first paragraph of the story *Dē Urbe Rōmā*, find the genitive singular of *urbs*. To what declension does *urbs* belong? What letters form the base? Find examples of all the other cases in the singular, and list the endings. In the second paragraph find examples of all the cases in the plural, and list the endings. Do you find any case endings different from the endings of the third declension which you have just learned?

Nouns of the third declension which we have so far studied are called *consonant stems* because their stems end in a consonant. *Urbs* belongs to a group of nouns called *i-stems*. Masculine and feminine *i-stems* differ from consonant stems in that they have the ending *-ium* in the genitive plural and *-īs* as well as *-ēs* in the accusative plural. Neuter *i-stems* differ from consonant stems in that they have *-ī* instead of *-e* in the ablative singular, *-ia* in the nominative and accusative plural, and *-ium* in the genitive plural.

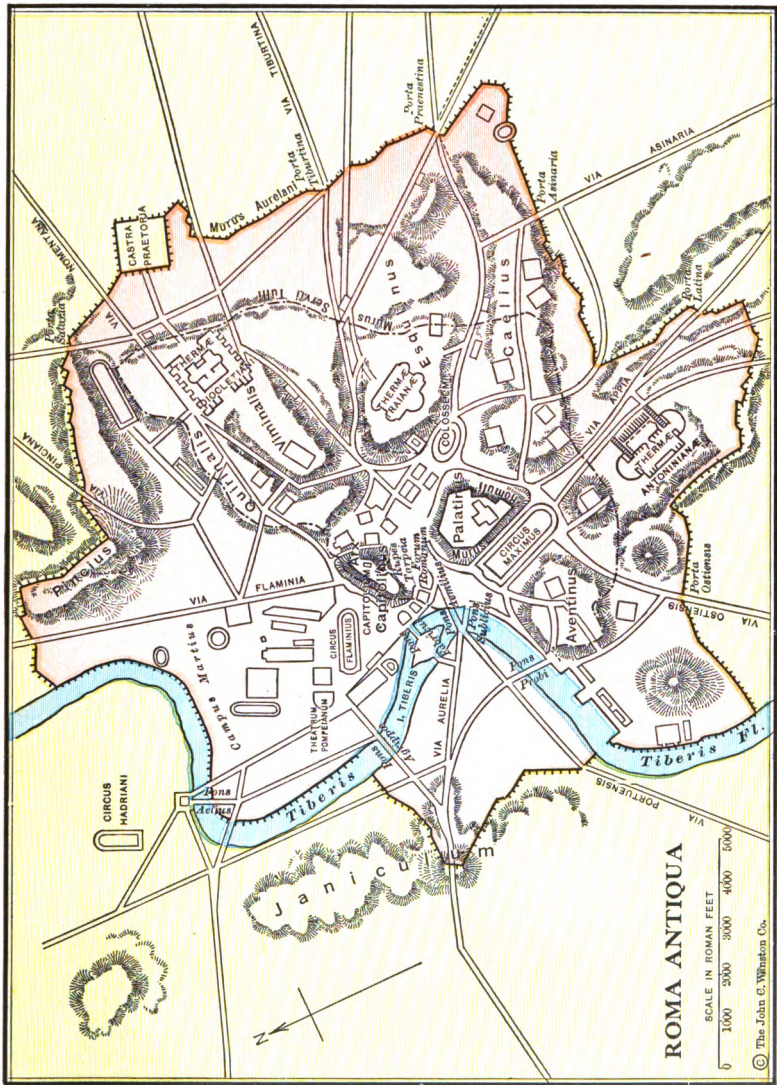
244. In the third paragraph, find the genitive singular of *civis*. To what declension does this noun belong? Notice that the nominative singular and the genitive singular have the same number of syllables. Words which have the same number of syllables in these two cases of the singular are called *parisyllables*. Find examples of all the cases, singular and plural, of *civis*. What are the endings of the genitive plural and accusative plural? This noun also is an *i*-stem.

245. In the first paragraph, what is the genitive singular of the noun *mare*? (Observe that it is a *parisyllable*.) To what declension does it belong? What is the accusative singular of the noun? What is the gender? Remember that all neuter nouns have the nominative and accusative singular alike. What is the ablative singular of *mare*? What is the nominative plural? This noun also belongs to the *i*-stem group of the third declension.

246. In order to decline a noun of the third declension, it is necessary to know whether it is an *i*-stem or not. Remember, therefore, that the following are *i*-stems:

1. All *parisyllables*. Thus *civis* (*civis*), *mare* (*maris*) are *i*-stems; but *sōl* (*sōlis*), *imāgō* (*imāginis*) are not. Note, however, the following exceptions: *animal*, *animālis*, *animal*, is an *i*-stem, though not a *parisyllable*; and *frāter*, *māter*, *pater* are not *i*-stems.
2. Nouns in which the penult (that is, the syllable next before the last) of the genitive form ends in a consonant. Thus *urbs* (*ur-bis*), *gēns* (*gen-tis*), *nox* (*noc-tis*), when syllabified according to the rules given in § 6, show a penult ending in a consonant, and belong among the *i*-stems; whereas *potestās* (*potestā-tis*), *ōs* (*ō-ris*), *prīnceps* (*princi-pis*) do not.

As an additional check, nouns of the third declension belonging to the *i*-stem group will have the genitive plural





given in the vocabularies; *as, urbs, urbis, urbium, f., city; animal, animālis, animālium, n., animal.*

247. Learn the following paradigms of i-stems:

*Masculine and Feminine*

*urbs, urbis, f., city*

*cīvis, cīvis, m. or f., citizen*

*caedēs, caedis, f., slaughter, massacre*

*Singular*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>urbs</i>	<i>cīvis</i>	<i>caedēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>urbis</i>	<i>cīvis</i>	<i>caedis</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>urbī</i>	<i>cīvī</i>	<i>caedī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>urbem</i>	<i>civem</i>	<i>caedem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>urbe</i>	<i>cīve, -ī</i>	<i>caede</i>

*Plural*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>urbēs</i>	<i>civēs</i>	<i>caedēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>urbium</i>	<i>civium</i>	<i>caedium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>urbibus</i>	<i>civibus</i>	<i>caedibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>urbīs, -ēs</i>	<i>civīs, -ēs</i>	<i>caedis, -ēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>urbibus</i>	<i>civibus</i>	<i>caedibus</i>

*Neuter*

*mare, maris, n., sea*

*animal, animālis, n., animal*

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>mare</i>	<i>maria</i>	<i>animal</i>	<i>animālia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>maris</i>	<i>marium</i>	<i>animālis</i>	<i>animālium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>marī</i>	<i>maribus</i>	<i>animālī</i>	<i>animālibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mare</i>	<i>maria</i>	<i>animal</i>	<i>animālia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>marī</i>	<i>maribus</i>	<i>animālī</i>	<i>animālibus</i>

**Nōtā bene**

The form *marium* is given as the genitive plural of *mare* in order to make a complete paradigm; but this form is not found in actual use.

Observe that *animal* has *-al* in the nominative and accusative singular, and *-āl-* in all other cases.



## READING LESSON

## 248. DE POTESTATE RŌMĀNĀ

In principiō Rōma erat parva urbs. Bellō potestātem augēbat. Primō proelia cum gentibus proximis gerēbantur. Virtūs gentium proximārum erat magna sed Rŏmānī erant victōrēs. Tandem Rōma erat domina Italiae.



Militēs Karthāginiēnsēs

Crossing the Alps on the way to invade Italy

Trāns mare habitābant Karthāginiēnsēs. Erant hostēs Rŏmānŏrum. Magnam classem habēbant; itaque mare regēbant. Magnum numerum nāvium longārum habēbant et bellum amābant. Erant longa bella inter Rŏmānŏs et Karthāginiēnsēs; magna erat caedēs. Tandem Rŏmānī erant victōrēs; itaque Rōma erat domina maris.

Tum in Asiā et in Galliā et in Britanniā bella gerēbantur. Tandem Asia, Gallia, Britannia in Rŏmae potestāte erant. Sic terrā marique potestās Rŏmāna erat maxima.

## Nōtā bene

Karthāginiēnsēs, *the Carthaginians*, people of Carthage.

## VOCABULARY XXVII

absum, abesse, <i>be distant, be absent</i>	*iūs, iūris, n., <i>right, justice</i>
*appellō, appellāre, <i>call by name, address, name, entitle, call</i>	longē, adv., <i>far</i>
*augeō, augēre, <i>increase, enlarge</i>	*mare, maris, n., <i>sea</i> (gen. pl. lacking)
*caedēs, caedis, caedium, f., <i>slaughter, massacre</i>	*nāvis, nāvis, nāvium, f., <i>ship</i>
*civis, civis, civium, m. or f., <i>citizen</i>	*nisi, conj., <i>unless, if . . . not</i>
*classis, classis, classium, f., <i>fleet; class</i>	ōs, ōris, n., <i>mouth, face</i>
*flūmen, flūminis, n., <i>river</i>	*potestās, potestātis, f., <i>power, ability</i>
*fluō, fluere, <i>flow</i>	primō, adv., <i>at first</i>
*gēns, gentis, gentium, f., <i>race, tribe</i>	ruīna, -ae, f., <i>ruin</i>
*hostis, hostis, hostium, m., <i>an enemy; in pl., the enemy</i>	superbus, -a, -um, <i>haughty, proud</i>
inviolātus, -a, -um, <i>invulnerable, unhurt</i>	Tiberis, Tiberis, m., <i>Tiber</i> (see § 567)
	*trāns, prep. (with acc.), <i>across, over</i>
	*urbs, urbis, urbium, f., <i>city</i>
	viātor, viātōris, m., <i>traveler, wayfarer</i>

## Idioms

nāvis longa, *warship*

terrā marīque, *on land and sea, by land and sea*

## 249.

## LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Tell the meaning of the adjectives in the following phrases: *civil government, oral recitation, marine painting, hostile look, fluent speaker.*



**Via antiqua Pompeiāna**

Streets in ancient Rome must have been much like this. Notice the stepping-stones for pedestrians to cross the street. Why were they necessary?

### DRILL

I. Decline the Latin expressions for the following:

Small head, large tribe, proud enemy, beautiful animal, weary traveler, warship.

II. Give the nominative and genitive singular, the gender, and the nominative and genitive plural, of the Latin nouns with the following meanings:

hostage	name	courage	body
law	foot	sun	head
mother	journey	winter	summer
custom	sea	fleet	slaughter



### Fistula

This old lead pipe was unearthed during recent excavations in Rome. The inscription on it (with abbreviated words expanded) reads as follows: **IMP(ERATORIS) DOMITIANI CAESAR(US) AUG(USTUS) SUB CURA EUTYCHI L(IBERTI) PROC(URATORIS) FEC(IT) HYMNUS CAESAR(US) N(OSTRUM) SER(VUS)**

The inscription may be translated thus: Of (Belonging to) the Emperor Domitian Caesar Augustus, under the care of Eutyclus, Freedman, Procurator (*i.e.*, Eutyclus was boss). Hymnus, slave of our Caesar, made it (the lead pipe)

### III. Supply the proper case endings:

1. Classis host.... est in mar....
2. Rōma gent.... (*pl.*) proxim.... vincet.
3. Iūr.... cīv.... diligenter servābantur.
4. In urb.... Rōm.... videntur multī cīv....
5. Puerī animāl.... magn.... libenter vident.
6. Ruīn.... urb.... Rōmānārum viātōrēs libenter vident.

### EXERCISE XXVII

#### Write in Latin:

1. At first the Romans waged many battles with the near-by tribes and there was great slaughter. 2. Then warships were built and the fleet fought with the enemy on the sea. 3. Thus the Roman power was increased on land and sea by many wars. 4. The Romans were proud because

Rome was called the mistress of both land and sea. 5. Unless a man was a Roman citizen, (his) rights were not inviolable.

6. The city of Rome is not far from the sea. 7. The river Tiber divides the city and flows into the sea. 8. Near the mouth of the Tiber are the ruins of an ancient city. 9. Every year many travelers sail across the sea to Italy. 10. Perhaps your teacher will talk about the great city of Rome.

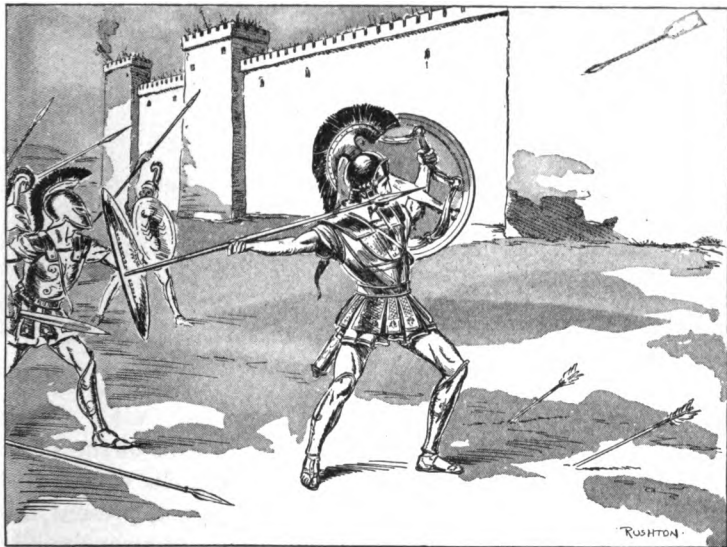


#### Nummī sociōrum rebellantium

When Julius Caesar was growing up, many Italian cities revolted against Rome. They planned to form an Italian confederation in which Rome would have the same rank as the other cities. Their ambition is shown in these coins (twice their actual size), which they issued while the war was being fought. On the coin to the right, a bull, the symbol of Italy, is seen goring the Roman wolf. The coin to the left represents the oath which the allies took to be faithful to each other against Rome. Eight warriors are pictured taking an oath by touching their spears to the body of a pig held by the kneeling warrior in the center. The country of the confederated allies was called "Italia"; this was the earliest use of the name

## CHAPTER XXVIII

### PERFECT ACTIVE, ALL CONJUGATIONS AND *SUM*



250.

#### PUERĪ ET PATER

“Cūr, Aule, librum domum portāvistī?” rogāvit Cornēlius ubi puerī ā lūdō vēnērunt. “Librum domum portāvī quod fābulam in lūdō lēgī et maximē amāvī,” respondit Aulus. “Num nōs fābulam audīvimus, Aule?” rogāvērunt parvī puerī. “Fortasse, frātrēs parvī, fābulam audīvistis,” respondit Aulus. “Quam fābulam lēgistī, Aule?” “Aulus fābulam dē Aenēā et Ascaniō lēgit,” clāmāvit Lūcius. “Nōs quoque, puerī,” inquit Cornēlius, “fābulam dē Aenēā lēgimus.” “Pater mē, adulēscēntem,” inquit Mārcus,

( 215 )

“Athēnās mīsit. Ibi tabulam dē Aenēā et sociīs vidī.”  
 “Vōs, puerī,” inquit Cornēlius, “clāram fābulam dē prīncipiīs Rōmae lēgistis. Semper puerī Rōmānī fābulam dē Aenēā lēgērunt.”

#### Nōtā bene

Mē, *me*, acc. case of *ego*; *quam*, *what? which?* (f. acc.).

Aenēās is declined like nouns of the first declension, except in the nominative singular. See main vocabulary.

#### 251. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quid rogāvit Cornēlius? 2. Quid Cornēliō respondit Aulus? 3. Quid rogāvērunt parvī puerī? 4. Quid parvīs puerīs respondit Aulus? 5. Quam fābulam lēgērunt puerī? 6. Quō Mārcum pater mīsit? 7. Quid vidit Mārcus? 8. Nōne puerī libenter fābulam dē Aenēā lēgērunt?

#### DISCUSSION

252. In the story *Puerī et Pater*, list the forms of the verb *legō* as they appear. Note that the base, to which the endings are added, is *lēg-*. To what time, past, present, or future, do these forms refer? Do they point out a continued, habitual, or repeated act, or do they refer to a single finished act? Does the subject of each verb act, or is it acted upon?

253. These forms constitute a tense called the *perfect*, or *present perfect*, tense. A verb in the perfect refers to a single act, now completed, or perfected; whence the name of the tense. The perfect tense differs from the imperfect tense because it refers to a single completed act, while the imperfect tense refers to repeated, continued, or habitual action in the past; as, *legēbat*, *he was reading, he used to read*; *lēgit*, *he read, he has read*.



Puerī fābulam audiunt

254. Read the forms as listed. What part of the verb is the same in all the forms? What are the endings that are added to this part? Are the endings the regular personal endings?

The endings of the perfect active indicative belong to that tense alone and differ from the endings of the other tenses. They are called the *characteristic* endings of the perfect tense, and are added to the *perfect stem* of the verb.

255. Learn the following paradigm of the perfect tense of *legō*, perfect stem *lēg-*:

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
lēgī	lēgimus
lēgisti	lēgistis
lēgit	lēgērunt



256. The perfect stem of all verbs is found from the third principal part. Latin verbs have four principal parts, chosen so as to show the stems from which all the verb forms are made. The principal parts of *legō* are:

<i>Present</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Perfect</i>
<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Passive Participle</i>
<b>legō</b>	<b>legere</b>	<b>lēgī</b>	<b>lēctus</b>

257. The perfect stem is found by dropping *-i* from the perfect indicative form, usually given as one of the principal parts; as, *lēgī*, *perfect stem*, *lēg-*. Upon this perfect stem are formed all the tenses of the perfect system; that is, all the tenses referring to completed action. Upon the present stem are formed all the tenses of the present system; that is, all the tenses referring to incompleted action.

258. Hereafter in the vocabulary the four principal parts of the verbs will be given and should be carefully learned. The three stems of each verb may be found from the principal parts. The forms chosen as principal parts are as follows:

1. *the present indicative active first person singular*
2. *the present active infinitive*
3. *the perfect indicative active first person singular*
4. *the perfect passive participle*

259. The rules for forming the stems are as follows:

1. The *present stem* is found by dropping the *-re* from the present infinitive.
2. The *perfect stem* is found by dropping the *-i* from the perfect indicative.
3. The *participial stem* is found by dropping the *-us* from the perfect passive participle.

## DRILL

## I. Learn the principal parts of the following verbs:

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Perf. Pass. Part.</i>
portō	portāre	portāvī	portātus
videō	vidēre	vīdī	vīsus
mittō	mittere	misī	missus
audiō	audire	audīvī	audītus

These forms are often given abbreviated, as follows: portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus; mittō, -ere, misī, missus; audiō, -ire, -īvī, -ītus.

II. Write the three stems of each of the above verbs and tell how they are found.

260. When there is no perfect passive participle, the future active participle, if there is one, is given as the fourth principal part; as, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.

261. Learn the following paradigms. The translations are in the form *I have carried, I carried, I did carry, etc.*

## Perfect Indicative Active

<i>First Conjugation</i>	<i>Second Conjugation</i>	<i>Third Conjugation</i>
portāvī	vīdī	misī
portāvisti	vīdistī	misisti
portāvit	vīdit	misit
portāvimus	vīdimus	misimus
portāvistis	vīdistis	misistis
portāverunt	vīderunt	misērunt

*Fourth Conjugation*

audīvī  
audīvisti  
audīvit  
audīvimus  
audīvistis  
audīverunt

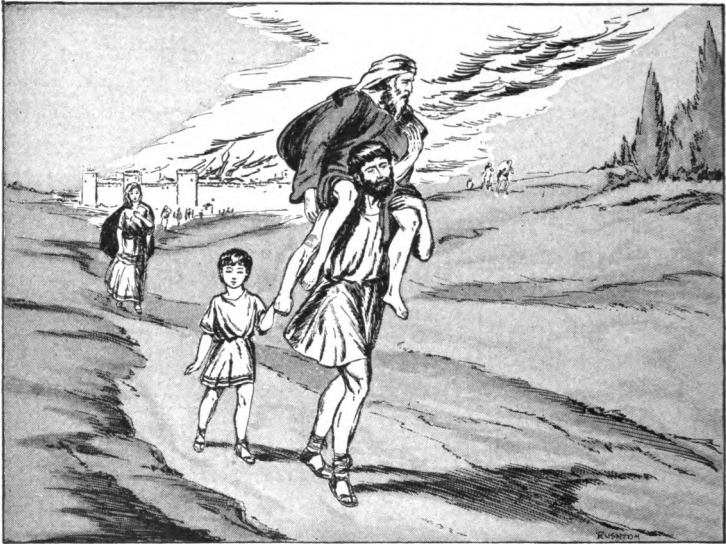
*The verb sum*

fuī  
fuisti  
fuit  
fuimus  
fuistis  
fuērunt

## RULE

262. The perfect tense represents an act as now completed.

## READING LESSON



263.

## DĒ RŌMAE PRĪNCIPIĪS I

Aenēās erat dux clārus et pius. Virtūs Aenēae erat magna. Ubi Graecī magnīs ignibus Troiam dēlēvērunt, cum uxōre Creūsā et filiō Ascaniō et patre Anchīsā ex urbe fūgit. Pater erat aeger et invalidus; itaque Aenēās umerīs patrem ad ōram maritimam portāvit. Ascanium, parvum filium, dextrā dūxit; uxor post Aenēam properāvit. Per multa tēla et magnōs ignēs properāvērunt et tandem ad ōram pervēnērunt. Ibi multī hominēs fuērunt. Sed Creūsa āfuit. Aenēās maximē lacrimāvit et clāmāvit: "Ubi, Creūsa, es? Quō cucurristī? Cūr tū sociōs reli-

quisti? Num meam Creūsam āmisi? Fātane uxōrem rapuērunt? Vidistisne, socii, meam uxōrem?" Creūsa, autem, nōn respondit. Aenēas patrem et filium reliquit et ad urbem cucurrit. Uxōrem nōn invēnit. Tandem miser ad sociōs revēnit. Tum nāvēs aedificāvit. Postea Aenēas sociique ad Italiam nāvīgāvērunt.

## Nōtā bene

**Anchisēs, Anchises**, the father of Aeneas. For inflection, see main vocabulary.

## VOCABULARY XXVIII

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| * <b>adulēscēns, adulēscētis,</b><br>m., <i>youth, young man</i>           | * <b>perveniō, pervenire, pervēni,</b><br>perventūrus, <i>arrive, come up</i>             |
| * <b>āmittō, āmittere, āmisi,</b><br>āmissus, <i>lose, send away</i>       | <b>pius, -a, -um,</b> <i>devoted to the gods</i>  |
| * <b>autem, conj., however, but,</b><br><i>furthermore</i> (postpositive)  | * <b>rapiō, rapere, rapui, raptus,</b><br><i>snatch, seize, carry off by force, steal</i> |
| * <b>dēleō, dēlere, dēlēvi, dēlē-</b><br><b>tus, destroy</b>               | <b>reveniō, revenire, revēni,</b><br>reventūrus, <i>return, come back</i>                 |
| <b>fātum, -ī, n., fate; Fāta,</b><br><b>-ōrum, n. pl., the Fates</b>       | <b>tabula, -ae, f., picture, paint-</b><br><b>ing</b>                                     |
| * <b>ignis, ignis, ignium, m., fire</b>                                    | * <b>ubi, conj., when</b> (used with<br>perf. ind., to denote a<br>single past act)       |
| <b>invalidus, -a, -um, weak</b>  | <b>umerus, -ī, m., shoulder</b>   |
| * <b>inveniō, invenire, invēni,</b><br><b>inventus, find, discover</b>     | <b>uxor, uxōris, f., wife</b>   |
| * <b>maritimus, -a, -um, pertain-</b><br><b>ing to the sea, of the sea</b> |   |

## Nōtā bene

Observe that the penult in *maritimus* is short, so that the accent is on the antepenult: *ma-ri'ti-mus*.

## 264. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Pick out the Latin words in the vocabulary with which the following words are associated: *fugitive, ignite, invalid, invent, revenue.*

## DRILL

I. *Translate the following:*

incendimus  
rapuit  
nāvigāvit  
fūgistī  
revēnī  
fuimus  
fuistis  
respondistī  
pervēnērunt  
dūxērunt  
cucurrērunt  
dēlēvī



Aenēās cum patre et filiō

II. *Give in Latin:*  
you (*pl.*) have lost, they fled, he seized,  
I returned, we shouted, they have burned, I was, you (*sing.*)  
have run, we remained, he has led.

III. *Give the principal parts and the three stems of the following:*

dō	moneō	dēleō	maneō
habeō	capiō	gerō	agō
faciō	impediō	aperiō	interficiō

## EXERCISE XXVIII

*Write in Latin:*

1. When great fires destroyed Troy, the Trojans fled to the seashore. 2. Aeneas, devoted to the gods, carried his weak father on his shoulders. 3. His wife Creusa will not arrive at the seashore. 4. Will the Fates seize the wretched Creusa? 5. Aeneas returned to the city; however, he did not find his wife. 6. And so he lost his wife and home. 7. Cornelius has often told his sons the story of the beginnings of the Roman race. 8. The youth Marcus saw pictures of the Trojans in Athens.



**In hōc nummō Aenēam vidēmus**

Both sides of the coin are shown here in twice actual size. On one side Aeneas is represented carrying his father from Troy. On the other is the head of Venus, who, according to legend, was the mother of Aeneas

## CHAPTER XXIX.

### ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS AND SUM



#### 265. DĒ RŌMAE PRĪNCIPIŪS II

Aenēās et socii septem *annōs* per varia maria et diversās  
*had wandered*  
terrās *errāverant*. Tandem Iūnō, rēgīna deōrum, magnā  
tempestāte Troiānōs ad ōrās Āfricae pepulit. Iūnō Troiānōs  
timēbat et ab Italiā arcēbat. Iūnō sic putābat: “Nisi  
Troiāni in Italiam *pervēnerint*, numquam erit gēns Rōmāna.”

( 224 )

Quod Dīdō, rēgina Karthāginis, Troiānōs benignē *accēperat* et maximē adiūverat, Aenēās rēginam amāvit. Multōs mēnsēs Karthāgine mānsit. Tandem Mercurius, deōrum nūntius, ad Aenēam mandāta ā patre deōrum portāvit. Sic Aenēam dē fātis admonuit. Tum Aenēās magnō cum studiō classem comparāvit.

Quod Dīdō cōnsilia Troiānōrum cognōverat, fuit irāta et Aenēae clāmāvit: “Sī tū <sup>*me shall have deserted*</sup> mē *reliqueris*, semper miser eris. Sī tū ad Italiam fūgeris, ego <sup>*myself*</sup> mē interficiam.” Aenēās respondit: “Ad Italiam nōn ultrō properō. Fāta mē admonērunt.” Posteā Aenēās et Ascanius ad Italiam nāvīgāvērunt et ibi gentem Rōmānam cōstituērunt.

#### 266. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quam diū Aenēās et socii errāverant? 2. Quō Iūnō Troiānōs pepulit? 3. Quid Iūnō putābat?
4. Cūr Aenēās rēginam amāvit? 5. Quam diū Karthāgine mānsit? 6. Quid ēgit Mercurius?
7. Cūr Dīdō irāta fuit? 8. Quid clāmāvit Dīdō?

Nōtā bene

Quam diū, *how long?*

#### DISCUSSION

267. In the sentence Aenēās et socii septem annōs per varia maria et diversās terrās errāverant, what do the words *septem annōs* tell? What question do they answer? In what case is the noun *annōs*? In the sentence Aenēās Karthāgine multōs mēnsēs mānsit, what do the words *multōs mēnsēs* tell? What question do they answer? Both the phrases *septem annōs* and *multōs mēnsēs* answer the question *how long?* and are in the accusative case. The accusative used in this way is called the *accusative of duration of time*.



Observe that this same construction is used in English. In the sentence *They had been wandering seven years*, *years* is just as truly an accusative of duration of time as the Latin *annōsis*. Many persons explain *years*, wrongly, as the object of the omitted preposition *for*: *They had wandered (for) many years*.



**Parcae**

The Fates were three sisters, one of whom was thought of as spinning the material of human destiny, one as twisting it into threads representing individual human lives, and one as cutting the threads when destiny was fulfilled. Although the Fates were usually referred to as *Parcae* (goddesses of fate), they were sometimes also called *Fāta* (see Lesson XXVIII)

translated *Since Dido had received the Trojans kindly*. Upon what stem is *accēperat* made? What is added to the stem to make this form?

268. In the sentence *Quod Dīdō Troiānōs benignē accēperat, Aenēās rēgīnam amāvit*, to what time do both verbs refer? Do the verbs refer to acts that take place at the same time or does the act of one verb take place before the other? Which one takes place first? Since the verb *accēperat* denotes an act in the past which takes place before the time of the perfect tense *amāvit*, it is said to be in the *past perfect* or *pluperfect tense*, and the clause is

269. In the sentence *Sī tū mē reliqueris, semper miser eris*, to what time do the verbs refer? Do the verbs refer to acts that take place at the same time or does the act of one take place before the other? Which one takes place first? Since the verb *reliqueris* refers to an act that takes place in the future and is completed before the time of the future tense *eris*, it is called the *future perfect tense*, and the clause is translated, literally, *If you shall have deserted me*, or, in more idiomatic English, *If you desert me*. Upon what stem is *reliqueris* made? What is added to the stem to make this form? List other verbs in the story in the pluperfect and future perfect tenses.

270. The pluperfect and future perfect tenses are made upon the perfect stem. The tense sign of the pluperfect tense is *-erā-* and the tense sign of the future perfect tense is *-eri-*. The pluperfect tense of any verb is composed of the perfect stem plus the sign *-erā-* plus the personal endings; as, *portāv-erā-s*, *you had carried*. In the tense sign *-erā-* the *a* remains long only in the second person singular and in the first and second persons plural. The future perfect tense is composed of the perfect stem plus the tense sign *-eri-* plus the personal endings; as, *portāv-eri-t*, *he will have carried*. Note, however, that, just as in the future tense of the first and second conjugations, the vowel of the tense sign combines with the ending of the first person singular to form *-ō*. In the third person plural, however, the vowel before the ending *-nt* is *i*.

271. The sentence *Sī tū mē reliqueris . . .*, *If you shall have deserted me . . .*, shows that Latin is more precise than English in distinguishing between simple future action and action already completed at a specified time in the future. Therefore the future perfect is a common Latin tense, but is not very common in English. In English the present or the future is likely to be used: *If you desert me*.

## RULES

272. *The accusative of duration of time.* The accusative may be used to express duration of time.

273. The pluperfect tense expresses a past action which has been completed at or before a given past time.

274. The future perfect tense expresses a future action completed at or before a given future time.

275. Learn the following paradigms of the pluperfect and future perfect tenses of *portō*, *videō*, *mittō*, *audiō*, and *sum*. The translations are in the form *I had carried*, etc., *I had been*, for the pluperfect; and *I shall have carried*, etc., *I shall have been*, for the future perfect.

*Pluperfect*

portāveram	vīderam	mīseram	audīveram	fueram
portāverās	vīderās	mīserās	audīverās	fuerās
portāverat	vīderat	mīserat	audīverat	fuerat
portāverāmus	vīderāmus	mīserāmus	audīverāmus	fuerāmus
portāverātis	vīderātis	mīserātis	audīverātis	fuerātis
portāverant	vīderant	mīserant	audīverant	fuerant

*Future Perfect*

portāverō	vīderō	mīserō	audīverō	fuerō
portāveris	vīderis	mīseris	audīveris	fueris
portāverit	vīderit	mīserit	audīverit	fuerit
portāverimus	vīderimus	mīserimus	audīverimus	fuerimus
portāveritis	vīderitis	mīseritis	audīveritis	fueritis
portāverint	vīderint	mīserint	audīverint	fuerint

276. A *synopsis* of a verb is a list of the forms in a given person and number through all the tenses, in order. Thus for *portō* in the first person singular indicative active the synopsis is *portō*, *portābam*, *portābō*, *portāvī*, *portāveram*, *portāverō*; for *dō* in the third person, *dat*, *dabat*, *dabit*, *dedit*, *dederat*, *dederit*.

## VOCABULARY XXIX

- \**adiuvō, adiuvāre, adiūvī, adiūtus, aid, help, assist*  
*admoneō, admonēre, admonuī, admonitus, advise, admonish*
- \**annus, -ī, m., year*  
*arceō, arcēre, arcuī, —, hold at a distance, keep away, hold off*  
*benignē, adv., kindly*
- \**cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus, learn about, understand*
- \**comparō, comparāre, comparāvī, comparātus, make ready, set in order, prepare; procure*
- \**cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī, cōstitutus, establish, station; decide*
- Didō, Didōnis, f., Dido, queen of Carthage*
- \**diversus, -a, -um, different, diverse, various*  
*errō, errāre, errāvī, errātus, wander, roam*
- Karthāgō, Karthāginis, f., Carthage, a city of northern Africa*
- \**mandātum, -ī, n., command, order*
- \**mēnsis, mēnsis, mēnsium, m., month*
- \**putō, putāre, putāvī, putātus, consider, think*  
*rēgīna, -ae, f., queen*
- \**tempestās, tempestātis, f., storm; weather*  
*ultrō, adv., voluntarily*  
*varius, -a, -um, various*

## 277.

## LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Explain the meaning of the italicized words:

Just before the *annual* election, the various candidates were *admonished* to obey the *mandates* of the law, and avoid the *errors* of their predecessors.

## DRILL

## I. Translate:

sumus	erāmus	fuimus	fuerāmus
errātis	errābātis	errāvistis	errāveritis
cognōscō	cognōvī	cognōscēbam	cognōveram
cōstituunt	cōstituent	cōstituērunt	cōstituerint

II. *Give in Latin:* we kept away, they had understood, you (*sing.*) have wandered, you (*pl.*) will have wandered, he established, they are, they were, they had been, they have been.

III. *Give a synopsis of each of the following verbs in the indicative active, in the person and number designated:*



Iūnō, rēgīna deōrum

Juno pursued the Trojans with her hatred

regō, second person singular  
fugiō, third person plural  
inveniō, first person plural  
moneō, first person singular  
errō, third person singular  
sum, second person plural

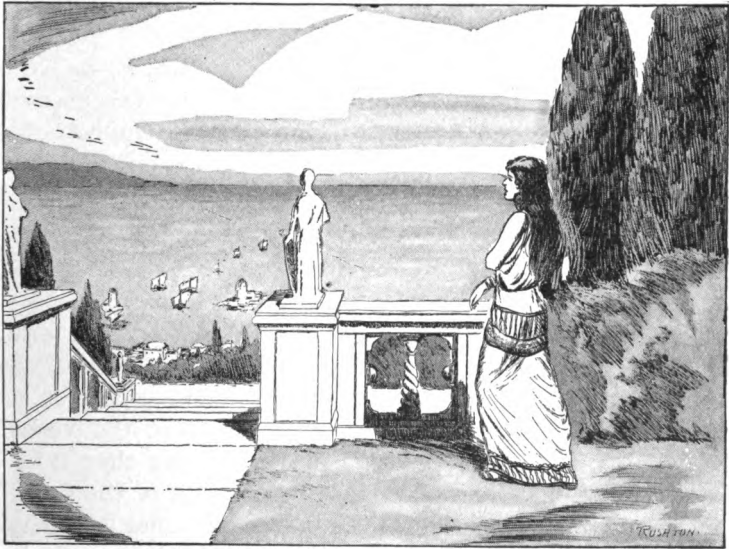
#### EXERCISE XXIX

*Write in Latin:*

1. The Trojans had wandered for many years, but had not yet established the Roman race.
2. For the angry queen of the gods had driven Aeneas and his companions into diverse seas.
3. She was keeping the Trojans from Italy with a great storm.
4. If Dido, queen of Carthage, receives (will have received) the Trojans kindly, they will voluntarily remain in Africa for many months.
5. Mercury had come to Aeneas and had brought various commands from the king of the gods.
6. The fleet will be prepared because Mercury has warned Aeneas.
7. Will Dido learn (about) the plans of Aeneas?
8. Dido thought thus: "Aeneas will not leave my city, because I have helped the Trojans."

## CHAPTER XXX

### THE PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS



278.

#### DĒ AENĒĀ PIŌ

Quod Troia ā Graecis *incēnsa erat*, Troiānī in partēs diversās *pulsī sunt*. Multī interfectī sunt, sed Aenēās et sociī ad Italiam fūgērunt. In Āfricā ā rēginā Karthāginis adiūtī sunt. Aenēās rēginae dixerat: “Sī nōs Troiānī in urbem tuam bene *acceptī erimus*, et sī auxilium ad sociōs meōs *missum erit*, nōmen tuum semper laudābitur.”

( 231 )

Itaque Troiānī ā rēgīnā adiūtī erant et nōmen rēgīnae diū laudābātur.

Tandem nāvēs Troiānae comparātae sunt quod Aenēās ā Mercuriō admonitus erat. Sed cōsilia Aenēae ā rēgīnā audita erant et Didō irāta erat. Aenēās graviter accūsātus est; rēgīnam tamen reliquit. Iterum Troiānī ā Fātīs in mare pulsī sunt. Misera Didō sē interfēcit quod relicta erat. Sed Aenēās et socii laeti ad Italiam nāvīgāvērunt.

### 279. Respondē Latinē:

1. Cūr Troiānī in partēs diversās pulsī sunt? 2. Num Aenēās et socii interfecit sunt? 3. Quō Aenēās et socii fūgērunt? 4. Ā quō Aenēās adiūtus est? 5. Quid Aenēās rēgīnae dixerat? 6. Nōnne auxilium ad sociōs missum erat? 7. Cūr nāvēs Troiānae comparātae sunt? 8. Cūr Didō irāta erat? 9. Cūr Didō sē interfēcit? 10. Quid Aenēās et socii ēgērunt?

### DISCUSSION

280. In the sentence *Quod Troia ā Graecis incēnsa erat, Troiānī in partēs diversās pulsī sunt*, do the subjects of the verbs themselves perform the action of the verbs, or do they receive the action? In what voice are the verbs? To what time—past, present, or future—do they refer? Does the action of one take place before that of the other? Which one takes place first? Then in what tense is *incēnsa erat*? What is the form *incēnsa*? With what is it combined to make the pluperfect passive? In what tense is *pulsī sunt*? What is the form *pulsī*? With what is it combined to make the perfect passive?

In the sentence *Sī nōs Troiānī in urbem tuam bene acceptī erimus, et sī auxilium ad sociōs meōs missum erit, nōmen tuum semper laudābitur*, are the verbs active or passive? Why? To what time do they refer? Do they all take place at the same time? Explain the difference in time.







In what tense are the verbs **accepti erimus** and **missum erit**? What forms are **incēnsi** and **missum**? With what are these forms combined to make the future perfect passive?

**281.** The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses of the passive voice of verbs of all conjugations are made by combining the perfect passive participle with the present, imperfect, and future tenses of **sum** respectively. In all these forms the participle must agree in gender, number, and case with the subject of the verb; as, **Troia incēnsa erat**; **Troiāni pulsī sunt**; **auxilium missum erit**; **Aenēas accusātus est**.

**282.** Learn the paradigms of the passive in the perfect tenses. The translations are in the following form:

*Perfect: portātus sum, I was carried, I have been carried*

*Pluperfect: portātus eram, I had been carried*

*Future Perfect: portātus erō, I shall have been carried*

<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>	<i>Future Perfect</i>
portātus sum	portātus eram	portātus erō
portātus es	portātus erās	portātus eris
portātus est	portātus erat	portātus erit
portātī sumus	portātī erāmus	portātī erimus
portātī estis	portātī erātis	portātī eritis
portātī sunt	portātī erant	portātī erunt

**283.** The verb **portō** is in the first conjugation; but verbs in the other conjugations are inflected in exactly the same way, by adding the proper forms of **sum** to the past participle of the verb to be inflected.

*Second Conjugation: vīsus sum, vīsus eram, vīsus erō, etc.*

*Third Conjugation: missus sum, missus eram, missus erō, etc.*

*Fourth Conjugation: audītus sum, audītus eram, audītus erō, etc.*

## READING LESSON

## 284. AENĒAS IN ITALIAM VENIT

Postquam Aenĕās et socii Karthāginem reliquērunt, ad Italiam pervēnērunt. Multī Italiae incolae Troiānis erant inimici, quod aliēni erant. Sed Latinus, rēx Laurenti, Troiānōs benignē accēperat.

Lāvīnia, Latīni filia, ā Turnō amāta est. Turnus erat rēx



## Vergilius

The story of Aeneas as we know it today was written by the Roman poet Vergil nearly two thousand years ago. This old manuscript portrait represents the poet seated, tablet in hand, beside a reading desk. The *capsa*, or book chest, is beside him

Rutulōrum. Turnus Aenĕam timēbat quod Aenĕās ā Latīnō benignē acceptus erat. Turnus sic putābat: “Sī pulchra Lāvīnia ab Aenĕā visa erit, et amāta erit, coniūnx Turnō nōn dabitur.” Itaque bellum miserum inter Aenĕam et Turnum gestum est. Multī hominēs utrimque interfecti sunt. Tandem Turnus in proeliō cecidit.

Lāvīnia ab Aenĕā in mātirimōnium ducta est, et oppidum Lāvīnium conditum est. Ibi Aenĕās paucōs annōs rēgnābat. Postēā Aenĕās ā Rutulīs occīsus est. Tum Ascanius,

Aenēae fīlius, rēgnābat. Ascanius Albam Longam, urbem clāram, condidit. Albae Longae gēns Troiāna trecentōs annōs rēgnābat. Tandem Rōmulus, fīlius Rhēae Silviae et Mārtis, Rōmam condidit. Sic gēns Rōmāna cōstitutā est.

## VOCABULARY XXX

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>accuse, reproach</i>	Lāvīnium, Lāvīnī, n., <i>Lavinium</i> , a city of Latium, founded by Aeneas
*aliēnus, -a, -um, <i>foreign, strange</i> ; as a noun, aliēnus, -ī, m., a stranger	mātrimōnium, mātrimōnī, n., <i>marriage</i>
*cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, <i>fall, fall down</i>	*occidō, -ere, occidī, occīsus, <i>kill, slay, cut down</i>
condō, -ere, condidī, conditus, <i>found, establish</i>	*pars, partis, partium, f., <i>part; direction</i>
coniūnx, coniugis, m. or f., <i>husband; wife</i>	*postquam, conj., <i>after</i> (used with perfect indicative)
*graviter, adv., <i>violently, hard</i>	rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>reign, rule</i>
*inimicus, -a, -um, <i>unfriendly, hostile</i>	trecentī, -ae, -a, <i>three hundred</i>
Laurentum, -ī, n., <i>Laurentum</i> , a town in Latium, where Latinus lived	utrimque, adv., <i>on both sides, from each side</i>

*Idiom*

in mātrimōnium dūcere, *to marry*

## 285.

## LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. Pick out the Latin words in the vocabulary with which the following words are associated: *alien, cadence, inimical, partial*.

II. *Dido*. 'To cut a dido means to cut a caper, play a prank, or do an extravagant thing. This use of the word is sometimes explained from a story of the founding of Carthage. When Dido asked Iarbas, a Numidian prince,



### Trojiānī Lāvīnium condunt

This picture and the one on the opposite page are drawn from an old Roman fresco, now partly destroyed. The fresco showed various scenes from the founding of Lavinium, Alba Longa, and Rome. Workmen are laying the city walls. Lavinia is seated facing you in the left corner of the picture

for enough land to found a city, he did not wish to give it to her, but disliked to make a definite refusal. So he told her that she might have as much land as she could cover with a bull's hide. Dido outwitted him by having the bull's hide cut up into long thin strips with which she inclosed a large tract of land; and on this land she was able to build her city.

### DRILL

#### I. Write in Latin:

She had been received, she had received; they will have been helped, they will have helped, they will help; he has killed, he has been killed, he was killing; we shall fall, we shall have fallen; they were establishing, they had established, they had been established; you were ruling, you had ruled, you will have ruled.

II. Write a synopsis in the active and passive of each of the following verbs, in the person and number designated, and give the English meaning of each form:

1. accūsō, in the second person plural
2. occīdō, in the third person plural



### Troiānī Lāvīnium condunt

In this part of the fresco we see the fighting between the Trojans and the Latins. Aeneas, wearing a crested helmet, may be seen charging an enemy, probably Turnus, whose figure is now defaced

3. moneō, in the third person singular
4. impediō, in the first person plural
5. iaciō, in the second person singular

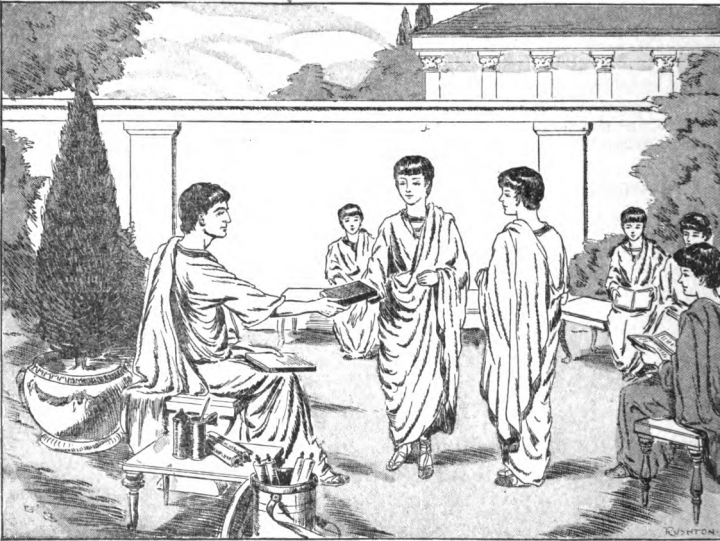
### EXERCISE XXX

*Write in Latin:*

1. The inhabitants of Troy had been driven in many directions by the Greeks. 2. The Trojans remained in Carthage for many months. 3. They fled from Carthage because they had been warned by the Fates. 4. Aeneas had thought: "If I am received (shall have been received) kindly, I shall remain in Italy and establish a new race." 5. But because they were strangers, the Trojans were not kindly received by the unfriendly inhabitants of Italy. 6. Men from each side fought hard and fell in battle. 7. Turnus violently reproached the Trojan leader. 8. After Turnus had been killed in battle, Aeneas married Lavinia, daughter of Latinus. 9. Latinus had founded Laurentum, but Aeneas and his wife were founding Lavinium. 10. The Trojan race will rule at Alba Longa for three hundred years.

## CHAPTER XXXI

### PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS; GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE, GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES; POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES



286.

#### IN LŪDŌ

Hodiē Sextus magnā cum celeritāte in lūdum venit, quod magister puerīs praemia dabit. In lūdō Orbilius mox Sextum ad sē vocat et dicit: “Herī, Sexte, ego tē laudāvī quod tū fābulam pulchram dē Rōmā scripserās. Rōma mihi est cāra et fābula tua mē dēlectāvit. Itaque hodiē praemium tibi ā mē datur. Praemium tuum est novus stilus.” Sextus

respondet, “Tibi, magister, grātiās agō,” et stilum cum

( 238 )

gaudiō accipit. "Stilus novus mihi est maximē acceptus. Nunc ego magnā diligentīā scribam." Sextus amicis suis stilum novum dēmōnstrat.

Tum Orbilius Lūcium et Aulum ad sē vocat, "Herī, mei pueri," inquit, "vōs quoque laudāvimus. Vōs nōbīs fābulam dē Aenēā et principiīs Rōmae nārrāvistis. Fābulae vestrae nōs dēlectāverunt et ā nōbīs laudātae sunt. Vōbīs quoque praemia dō. Praemia vestra sunt librī. In librīs sunt fābulae dē Rōmānīs clārīs. Fortasse *pars fābulārum* nōbīs ā vōbīs nārrābitur." Puerī laetī librōs suōs accipiunt. "Nōs," inquit Lūcius, "tibi grātiās agimus; libenter librōs novōs legimus."

*Which one of us*

"*Quis nostrum* fābulās hodiē nārrābit?" Titus magis-

*Part (Some) of you*

trum rogat. "*Pars vestrum* fābulās nārrābit et *pars vestrum* fābulās scribet. Parvī puerī fābulās nārrābunt," respondet Orbilius. "Nōnne nōs quoque, Orbilī, ā tē laudābimur?"

*You will not forget us (be forgetful of us), will you?*

Num tū eris oblītus nostrī? Cupidī praemiōrum sumus. Nōnne nōbīs quoque praemia dabis?" rogat Titus. "Ego nōn erō oblītus vestrī, sī vōs mēcum dīligenter labōrāveritis," respondet Orbilius. "Dē quō fābulam nārrābō?" rogat Titus. "Fābulam dē Aenēā nārrā," respondet Orbilius.

*He was self-sacrificing*

"Aenēās," inquit Titus, "pius erat. *Suī* erat oblītus et prō patriā sē dēvovēbat. Adultus, ego quoque meī oblītus erō." "Nōs nostrī semper oblītī erimus et prō patriā nōs dēvovēbimus," clāmant discipulī. "Certē," inquit Orbilius, "sed nunc librīs Latinīs vōs dēvovēte."

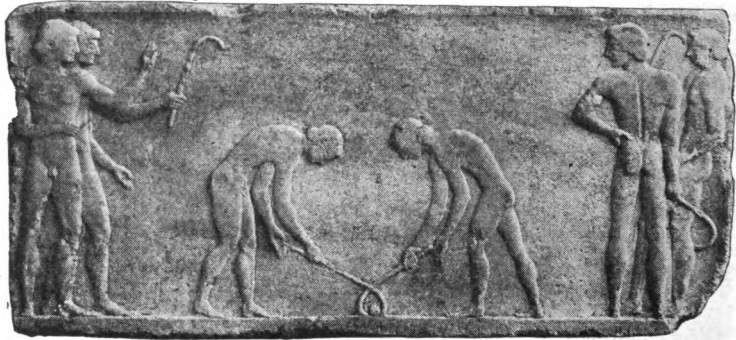
#### Nōtā bene

Tibi, magister, grātiās agō, *thank you, sir; literally, to you, sir, I perform thanks.*

*Suī* erat oblītus, *he was self-sacrificing; literally, he was forgetful of self.*

Nārrā, *tell* (imperative); vōs dēvovēte, *devote yourselves.* (See § 163.)





### Lūdus antiquus

The Romans learned from the Greeks a game which resembled in some ways our modern hockey. Notice the way in which the sticks are used in playing, as contrasted with the modern position

### DISCUSSION

287. In the story *In Lūdō* are found many pronouns. *Ego* is called the pronoun of the *first* person because it refers to the person speaking. *Tū* is called the pronoun of the *second* person because it refers to the person spoken to. *Ego* and *tū* with their plurals *nōs* and *vōs* are called *personal* pronouns. Find as many cases as you can of these pronouns in the story.

288. The nominative forms of the personal pronouns are not often used except to give emphasis or make a contrast. For the genitive of the plural *nōs* there are two forms, *nostrī* and *nostrum*; for the genitive of *vōs* there are two forms, *vestrī* and *vestrum*. These genitive forms are not ordinarily used to denote possession; for this purpose the possessive adjectives *noster*, *our*, and *vester*, *your*, are used instead.

289. The genitive case often designates the whole of which a part is taken; as, *pars fābulārum*, *a part of the stories*. In the same way the genitive forms *nostrum* and

**vestrum** are used to designate the whole of which a part is taken; as, **quis nostrum**, *who (which one) of us?* **pars vestrum**, *part of you*. A genitive so used is called a *genitive of the whole*, or, often, a *partitive genitive*.

**290.** The genitive case is used with many adjectives meaning *desirous, forgetful, mindful, full, and skilled*; as, **cupidī praemiōrum sumus**, *we are desirous of prizes*. In the same way the genitive forms **nostrī** and **vestrī** are used with these adjectives; as, **oblītus nostrī**, *forgetful of us*; **oblītus vestrī**, *forgetful of you*. The genitive so used is called the *genitive with adjectives*.

**291.** **Suī, sibi, sē** (*acc.*) and **sē** (*abl.*) are the forms of the reflexive pronoun used in the third person only. It is called reflexive because it refers back to the subject of the sentence in which it is used. This pronoun has no nominative. The declension is the same in the plural as in the singular. The meaning is determined by the subject; as, **puella sē vulnerat**, *the girl wounds herself*; **puer sē vulnerat**, *the boy wounds himself*; **animal sē vulnerat**, *the animal wounds itself*; **militēs sē vulnerant**, *the soldiers wound themselves*.

**292.** All forms of the personal pronouns **ego** and **tū** except the nominative may be used reflexively; as, **ego mē vulnerō**, *I wound myself*; **tū tē vulnerās**, *you wound yourself*.

**293.** Note that in expressing the ablative of accompaniment with these pronouns the preposition **cum** follows the pronoun and is attached to it; as, **mēcum**, *with me*; **tēcum**, *with you* (sing.); **nōbiscum**, *with us*; **vōbiscum**, *with you* (pl.); **sēcum**, *with himself, herself, themselves*.

**294.** The personal pronouns **ego** and **tū**, and the reflexive **suī**, each have a corresponding pronominal adjective which is used to show possession. These adjectives are called

*possessive* adjectives and are declined according to the first-and-second adjective declension. They are **meus, mea, meum, my or mine; noster, nostra, nostrum, our; tuus, tua, tuum, your** (used when speaking to one person); **vester, vestra, vestrum, your** (used when speaking to more than one person); **suus, sua, suum, his, her, its, their** (used when referring to the subject of the clause in which it stands).

Possessive adjectives follow the rule for the agreement of adjectives—that is, they agree in gender, number, and case with the words they modify; as, **frāter meus, my brother; soror mea, my sister; nōmen meum, my name.**

295. Learn the paradigms of personal and reflexive pronouns. The reflexive pronoun has no forms in the nominative.

### Personal Pronouns

First Person		Second Person
	<i>Singular</i>	
<i>Nom.</i> ego		tū
<i>Gen.</i> meī		tuī
<i>Dat.</i> mihi		tibi
<i>Acc.</i> mē		tē
<i>Abl.</i> mē		tē
	<i>Plural</i>	
<i>Nom.</i> nōs		vōs
<i>Gen.</i> nostrī, nostrum		vestrī, vestrum
<i>Dat.</i> nōbīs		vōbīs
<i>Acc.</i> nōs		vōs
<i>Abl.</i> nōbīs		vōbīs

For the third person, the pronoun is, *he, ea, she, id, it*, is used. This pronoun and its forms are discussed in the next chapter.

## Reflexive pronouns

	First Person	Second Person	Third Person
	<i>Singular</i>		
<i>Gen.</i>	meī	tuī	suī
<i>Dat.</i>	mihī	tibi	sibi
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	tē	sē, sēsē
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	tē	sē, sēsē
	<i>Plural</i>		
<i>Gen.</i>	nostrī	vestrī	suī
<i>Dat.</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi
<i>Acc.</i>	nōs	vōs	sē, sēsē
<i>Abl.</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē, sēsē

Suus, -a, -um, is used only when the possessor is the same person or thing as the subject of the clause in which it stands.

296. The possessive adjectives are as follows:

meus, mea, meum, *my, mine*

tuus, tua, tuum, *your* (one person)

suus, sua, suum, *his, her, its*

noster, nostra, nostrum, *our*

vester, vestra, vestrum, *your* (more than one person)

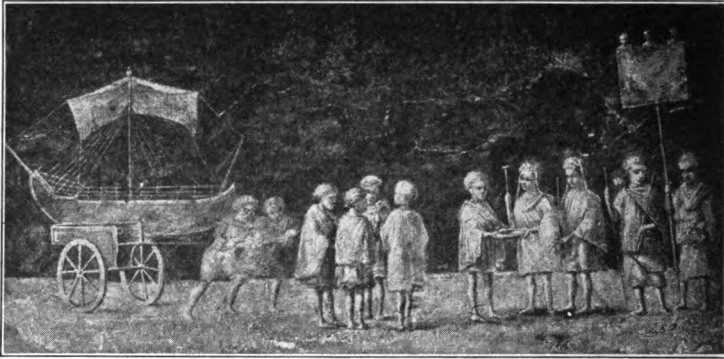
suus, sua, suum, *their*

## RULES

297. A possessive adjective agrees with the noun it modifies, in gender, number, and case.

298. *Genitive of the whole.* The genitive is used to express the whole of which a part is taken.

299. *Genitive with adjectives.* Adjectives meaning *desirous, full, mindful, skilled*, and their opposites, govern the genitive.



### Pompa puerōrum

This picture and the one on the opposite page decorated the walls of a building in Ostia, the ancient port of Rome. The pictures represent a society of boys honoring Diana. In the picture on this page we see the boys carrying a standard and pulling a model of a boat. The two flower-crowned boys are making a libation. The ceremony probably took place at the opening of navigation in the spring.

### VOCABULARY XXXI

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| *cupidus, -a, -um, <i>desirous, eager</i>                     | *scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptus, <i>write</i>                                |
| dēvoveō, -ēre, dēvōvī, dēvōtus, <i>devote; vow; sacrifice</i> | *suī (gen.), reflex. pron., <i>of himself, etc.</i>                           |
| diligentia, -ae, f., <i>diligence, care</i>                   | *suus, -a, -um, <i>his, her, its, their</i>                                   |
| *ego, I; nōs, <i>we</i>                                       | *tū, <i>you (sing.); vōs, you (pl.)</i>                                       |
| *grātia, -ae, f., <i>favor, esteem</i>                        | *tuus, -a, -um, <i>your (used when addressing one person)</i>                 |
| *meus, -a, -um, <i>my</i>                                     | *vester, -tra, -trum, <i>your (used when addressing more than one person)</i> |
| *noster, -tra, -trum, <i>our</i>                              |   |
| oblītus, -a, -um, <i>unmindful, forgetful</i>                 |   |
| praemium, praemī, n., <i>reward</i>                           |   |

#### Idiom

grātiās agere, *to thank*: used with the dative of the person



Pompa Puerōrum

In this picture, four boys are burning torches before a statue of Diana, while the others carry baskets of fruit, and standards from which hang bunches of grapes. The leader of the procession is giving an order. This ceremony probably took place at the time of the vintage in the autumn

### 300. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Explain the meaning of the italicized words:

1. The *cupidity* of the dealer gave him a bad name.
2. Many officials try to *ingratiate* themselves with the people.
3. Each month the company gave a *premium* to the regular customers.
4. Time has *obliterated* the names on the tombstones.
5. The card was printed in old English *script*.

### DRILL

Substitute the correct Latin word for the italicized English word or words:

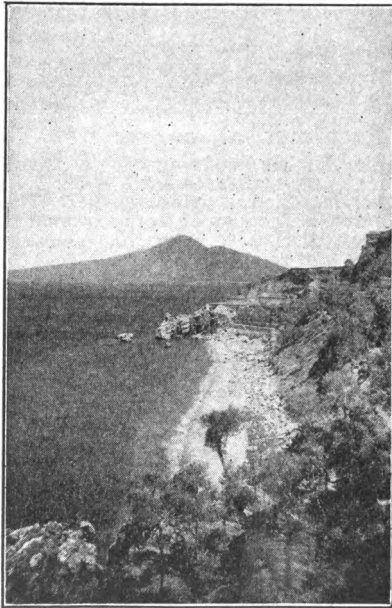
1. Lūcius et Aulus cum amicis *their* domum properant.
2. Estne pater *with you*, māter?

3. *Your pater nōn est with me, pueri.*
4. *Quis domum with you vēnit?*
5. *Our amīcī with us vēnērunt.*
6. *Pater of himself est oblītus.*
7. *Pater prō patriā himself dēvovet.*
8. *Pater est cupidus of peace.*

## EXERCISE XXXI

*Write in Latin :*

1. Aulus was writing his Latin story with great diligence:



*Ōra Italiae*

2. "The commander called his soldiers to him.
3. 'You have fought with the greatest courage, my legions.
4. You have been eager for battle.
5. You have been unmindful of yourselves; you have devoted yourselves to your country.
6. You have not been forgetful of your country.
7. Part of you have been wounded.
8. Many of my soldiers have been killed.
9. I shall give you great rewards.'

10. "Your story is good, Aulus," says Orbilius. "Thank you, sir," replied Aulus.

## CHAPTER XXXII

### THE DEMONSTRATIVE *IS*; THE RELATIVE *QUI*

#### The demonstrative



#### 301. DĒ PROCAE FILIIS I

Multōs annōs rēgēs Albae Longae rēgnāverant. Proca  
fuit rēx clārus Albānōrum. <sup>He</sup> *Is* duōs filiōs habuit. <sup>Of him, or His</sup> *Eius*  
filiū erant Numitor et Amūlius. Numitor erat maior nātū;  
itaque *eī* rēgnum datum est. Sed Amūlius, malus homō, *eum*  
cum filiō et filiā ā rēgnō pepulit. Etiam tum Amūlius frātre  
et eius liberōs timēbat. Itaque ab *eō* filius Numitōris inter-

( 247 )



fectus est et filia, Rhēa Silvia, sacerdos Vestae facta est.  
*She* *Of her, or Her*  
*Ea* tamen à Mārte, deō bellī, amābātur. *Eius* filiī erant  
 Rōmulus et Remus, geminī. Puerī parvī *eī* erant cārī.  
 Sed Amūlius *eam* in custōdiam trādīdit et geminōs ab *eā*  
 rapuit. Puerī in arcā positī sunt et in flūmen Tiberim iactī  
 sunt. Tum crēbrī imbrēs in flūmen vēnerant; itaque *id*  
 erat altum. In *eius* ripās aqua redundāverat et flūmen  
 nunc Palātium tangēbat. Proxima *eī* sub Palātiō erat arbor  
 antiq̄ua. Paucī rāmī arboris flūmen tetigērunt et arcam  
 continuērunt. Nōn diūtius erat flūmen altum; arca in terrā  
 relicta erat. Paulō post lupa ad flūmen vēnit. Lupa puerōs  
 invēnit et servāvit.

Nōtā bene

Maior nātū, *elder, older*; duōs, *two*.

Tiberim is acc. sing.; see main vocabulary.

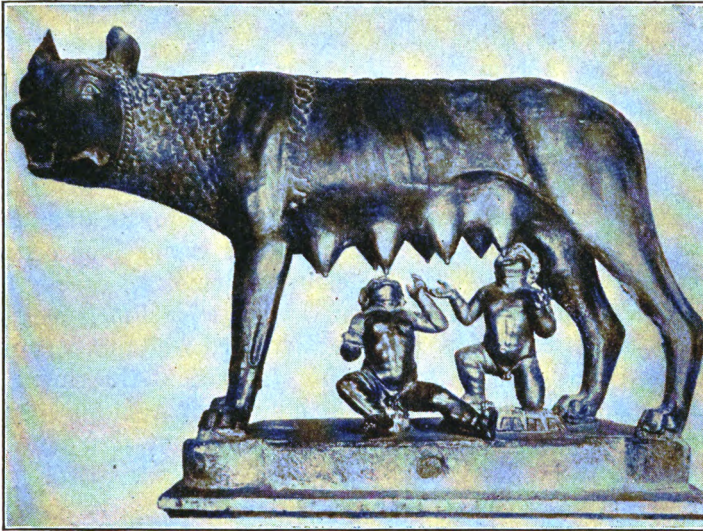
#### DISCUSSION

302. The singular forms of the pronoun *is* are used in the story *Dē Procae Filiis I*. This pronoun has three genders. The gender of the pronoun is the same as that of the noun which it represents. Find the masculine forms of the pronoun. Give the case and meaning of each. Find the feminine forms of the pronoun. Give the case and meaning of each. Find the neuter forms of the pronoun. Give the case and meaning of each.

The plural forms of this pronoun must be learned from the paradigm given on the next page.

303. The pronoun *is, ea, id* is really a demonstrative pronoun, because it stands for, and points out, an object or person previously mentioned; but it is frequently used as the personal pronoun of the third person. It may also be used as a demonstrative adjective, modifying a noun.

When *is, ea, id* is used as an adjective, it means *this* or *that*, and agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun



Lupa cum Rōmulō et Remō

it modifies; as, is *vir*, *this* (or *that*) *man*; *ea* *sacerdōs*, *this* (or *that*) *priestess*; *id* *flūmen*, *this* (or *that*) *river*. *Is* refers without special emphasis to persons or objects which already have been mentioned; it is a weak demonstrative.

304. Learn the following paradigm. Observe that the plural endings are the same as those of adjectives of the first-and-second declension.

		<i>Singular</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	
<i>Gen.</i>	eius	eius	eius	
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	

*Plural*

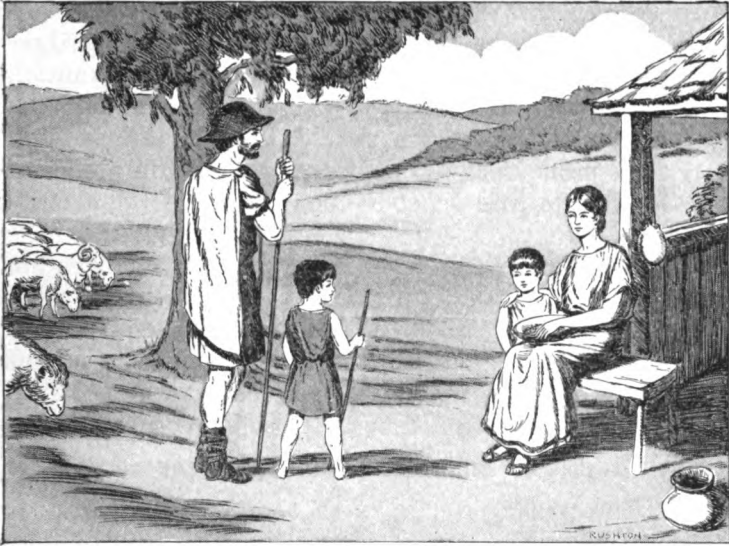
<i>Nom.</i>	eī, iī	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
<i>Acc.</i>	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

305. The possessive adjective *suus*, -a, -um, meaning *his, her, its, their*, is used when the possessor is the same person or thing as the subject of the clause in which it stands; as, *Pueri mātrem suam amāvērunt*, *The boys loved their mother*. Under other conditions the genitive forms of the personal pronoun must be used: *eius*, *his, her, its*, in the singular, and *eōrum* or *eārum*, *their*, in the plural; as, *Amūlius eōrum mātrem in custōdiam trādidit*, *Amulius put their mother under arrest*.

## The relative

## 306. DĒ PROCAE FĪLIIS II

Geminī ā deō Mārte <sup>who</sup> *quī* erat pater eōrum semper cūrā-  
bantur. Is lupam <sup>which</sup> *quae* in Palātiō habitābat ad puerōs misit.  
Ea lupa liberōs ad latibulum suum <sup>which</sup> *quod* erat sub Palātiō  
trāxit et multōs mēnsēs mātrem sē gessit. Tum pāstor,  
cuius nōmen erat Faustulus, eōs invēnit et domum ad  
uxōrem Accam portāvit. Statim Acca puerōs *quī* erant  
pulchrī amāvit. Sic liberī Rhēae, filiae Numitōris, quem  
Amūlius ā rēgnō pepulerat, servātī sunt. Multōs annōs  
geminī quibus nōmina Rōmulus et Remus data erant cum  
Accā et Faustulō habitābant. Pāstōrēs quibuscum cotīdiē  
labōrābant eōs ducēs dēlēgērunt. Post multōs annōs  
Rōmulus et Remus fābulam dē avō Numitōre et eius  
frātre audīvērunt. Deinde geminī quōrum virtūs erat  
maxima Albam Longam properāvērunt et Amūlium ex rēgnō



pepulērunt. Itaque Numitor iterum rēx Albānōrum factus est et Albae Longae erat magnum gaudium.

Ea est fābula dē Rōmā quam liberī Rōmānī amābant. Etiam hodiē nōs quī eam fābulam legimus dēlectāmur.

Nōtā bene

Sē gessit, *acted (as), conducted herself (as).*

#### DISCUSSION

307. In the sentence *Geminī ā deō Mārte quī erat pater eōrum semper cūrābantur*, to what word does the pronoun *quī* refer? In what gender and number is *Mārte*? The pronoun *quī* is in the same gender and number as the word to which it refers. This word is called the *antecedent* and the pronoun is called a *relative pronoun*. In what case is *Mārte*? In what case is *quī*? Is the relative pronoun *quī* in the same case as its antecedent *Mārte*?

In the sentence *Sic liberī Rhēae, filiae Numitōris, quem Amūlius ā rēgnō pepulerat, servātī sunt*, to what word does *quem* refer? In what gender and number is *Numitōris*? In what gender and number is *quem*? In what case is *Numitōris*? How is *quem* used? In what case is *quem*? A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends upon its use in the clause in which it occurs.

In the sentence *Etiam hodiē nōs quī eam fābulam legimus dēlectāmur*, what is the antecedent of *quī*? What person and number is *nōs*? Of what verb is *quī* the subject? What is the person and number of the verb? A relative pronoun also agrees in person with its antecedent; therefore the verb of which it is subject must be in the same person.

308. Learn the following paradigm of the relative *quī, quae, quod*.

<i>Singular</i>			
	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>
<i>Plural</i>			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

#### Nōtā bene

If the preposition *cum* is used with the forms *quō, quā* and *quibus*, it is usually attached to them as an enclitic; as, *quōcum; quācum; quibuscum*.

## RULE

309. A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, but its case depends upon its use in the clause in which it stands.

## VOCABULARY XXXII

*arbor, arboris, f., <i>tree</i>	pāstor, pāstōris, m., <i>shepherd</i>
arca, -ae, f., <i>chest</i>	*paulō, adv., <i>a little</i>
avus, -i, m., <i>grandfather</i>	*quī, quae, quod (relative), <i>who, which, that</i>
*contineō, -ēre, continui, contentus, <i>hold fast, hem in</i>	rāmus, -i, m., <i>branch</i>
crēber, -bra, -brum, <i>dense; frequent</i>	redundō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>overflow</i>
custōdia, -ae, f., <i>guard, custody</i>	*rēgnum, -i, n., <i>kingdom, royal power</i>
*deinde, adv., <i>then, thereupon, afterwards</i>	rīpa, -ae, f., <i>bank</i>
diūtius, adv., <i>longer</i>	sacerdōs, sacerdotis, m. or f., <i>priest; priestess</i>
imber, imbris, imbrium, m., <i>rain</i>	*statim, adv., <i>immediately, at once</i>
*is, ea, id (demonstrative), <i>this, that, he, she, it; pl., they</i>	*sub, prep. (with abl.), <i>under, at the foot of</i>
latibulum, -i, n., <i>den</i>	*tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus, <i>touch</i>
lūpa, -ae, f., <i>wolf (female)</i>	*trādō, -ere, trādidī, trāditus, <i>hand over, surrender, betray</i>
*malus, -a, -um, <i>bad, wicked</i>	
Palātium, Palātī, n., <i>the Palatine hill</i>	

*Idioms*

in custōdiam trādere, *to put under arrest*

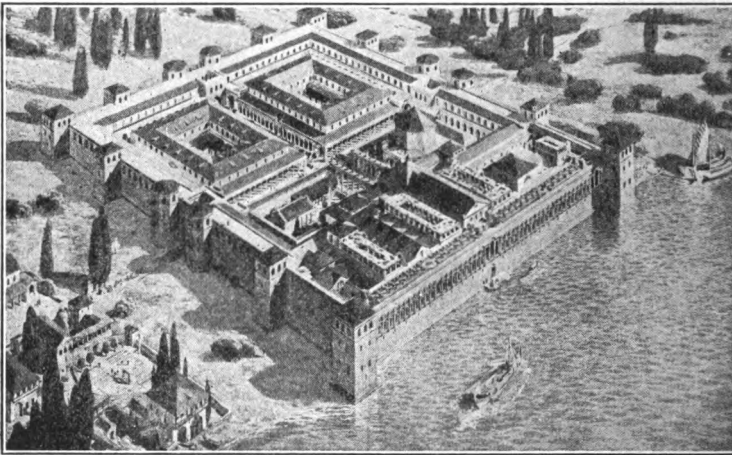
maior nātū, *the elder*

paulō post, *a little later*

## 310. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

*Arbor Day* is a day set apart for the planting of trees by school children. It was first instituted in Nebraska, where

the trees were scarce, and was finally established in every State and Territory. The date is fixed by proclamation. The word *arbor* meaning *trellis for vines* is not derived from Latin *arbor, tree*, but from *herba, grass*; it formerly meant *plot of grass*, then *lawn or orchard*, and finally *trellis*.



**Rêgia**

This is the palace of the emperor Diocletian at Salernae (now the city of Split, in Yugoslavia). As Diocletian was a great soldier, he laid out his palace on the general plan of a Roman military camp

*Palace*, meaning a *fine residence*, comes from the name of the Palatine Hill, where the Emperor Augustus and many wealthy Romans had elaborate dwellings.

*Pastor*. The name *pastor* is often applied to the minister of a church. His work as a pastor is likened to that of a shepherd who cares for his flock.

*Tradition* is the giving over or handing down of opinions or beliefs, by the people of one age to those of another through oral communication.



### Rōmulus et Remus in nummō signātī

On one side of the coin is the head of Roma, the goddess of the city of Rome. On the other side is the wolf with Romulus and Remus. Behind them is the fig tree whose branch kept the twins from floating farther down the Tiber. On the left is Faustulus leaning on his staff

### DRILL

#### I. Give the Latin for the following phrases:

1. This clan (*nom.* and *acc.*), this king (*nom.* and *acc.*), this river (*nom.* and *acc.*), these shepherds (*nom.* and *acc.*), these priestesses (*nom.* and *acc.*), these temples (*nom.* and *acc.*).

2. With him, to or for them, of her, of them, him (*acc.*), them (*masc. acc.*), she, they (*fem.*), of it, they (*neuter*).

#### II. Give the Latin for the italicized words:

1. The wolf came to *them* and the boys liked *her*.
2. The mother loved *her boys*, but Amulius feared *her boys*.
3. *Her boys* were thrown into the river.
4. The wolf heard *their cries*.
5. The boys found *their grandfather* and made him king.

#### III. Substitute Latin words for the italicized English words:

1. Arca in *which* puerī positī erant parva erat.
2. Parvī erant puerī *whom* Fastulus invēnerat.
3. Flūmen in *which* geminī iactī erant Palātium tetigit.



4. Casa ad *which* pāstor liberōs portābat erat proxima rīpae Tiberis.

5. Posteā in Palātiō erant domicilia magna in *which* clārī virī habitābant.

6. Casae *which* pāstōrēs aedificāverant nōn erant magnae.

7. Pāstor *with whom* Rōmulus et Remus habitābant erat benignus.

### EXERCISE XXXII

*Write in Latin:*

1. This was the kingdom which Proca had given to Numitor. 2. But Numitor was driven out of the kingdom by his brother Amulius. 3. The priestess whom Mars loved was immediately put under arrest. 4. At that time the twins were placed in a little chest by Amulius. 5. The river was high because there had been frequent rains. 6. It had overflowed upon its banks and had touched the branches of the trees. 7. The chest was held fast at the foot of a tree. 8. A little later a wolf whose den was near the Palatine hill found the boys. 9. Afterwards a shepherd found them and hurried home with them. 10. Amulius will reign no longer; the boys' grandfather will reign again in Alba Longa.



Pāstor

## CHAPTER XXXIII

### THE DEMONSTRATIVES *HIC, ILLE, ISTE* THE INTENSIVE *IPSE*; ABLATIVE OF CAUSE PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE



#### 311. DĒ URBIS NOVAE LOCŌ I

Rōmulus et Remus *victōriā magnā* laetī cum avō suō Albae Longae mānsērunt. Sed dēsiderābant agrōs et montēs suōs; itaque revēnērunt ad loca in quibus eī, puerī et adulēscentēs, habitāverant. Praetereā *amōre* libertātis suam urbem et rēgnum cupiēbant. Sed frātrēs dē urbis novae locō inter sē dissentiēbant.

<sup>This</sup>  
 “*Hic* mōns,” inquit Rōmulus, “est locus urbī novae idōneus. Latera *huius* montis sunt alta et hostēs prohibēbunt. Proximum *huic* montī est flūmen magnum quō nāvēs ad terrās extrēmās nāvīgābunt. Praetereā ad *hunc* montem ā Faustulō portātī sumus et in *hōc* monte tot annōs habitāvimus. *Hōc* in locō urbem novam condēmus.”

“*Istis* causīs nōn addūcor,” respondet Remus. “*Hic* mōns est altus sed nōn est aequus. *Ille* mōns et altus et aequus est. Agrī *illius* montis sunt lātī. Flūmen est proximum *illī* montī quoque et hostēs prohibēbit. Itaque ad *illum* montem properābimus et *illō* in locō urbem novam condēmus.”

Sic Rōmulus dēlēgit montem quem postea Rōmānī *Palātium* appellābant. Remus autem montem quī postea appellābātur *Aventinus* dēlēgit.

#### DISCUSSION

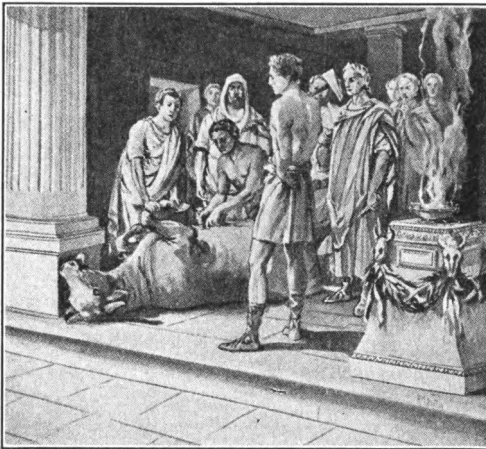
**312.** In the second paragraph of *Dē Urbis Novae Locō I*, the masculine singular forms of the demonstrative *hic* are found. Determine the case of these forms by observing the nouns which they modify. Is the mountain which *hic* points out near the speaker?

**313.** In the third paragraph of the story, the masculine singular forms of the demonstrative *ille* are found. Determine the case of these forms also. Is the mountain which *ille* points out near the speaker or relatively far away from the speaker?

**314.** The demonstrative *hic* is used to point out persons or objects near the speaker in time, place, or thought, and is sometimes called the *demonstrative of the first person*. The demonstrative *ille* is used to point out persons or things remote from the speaker in time, place, or thought, and is sometimes called the *demonstrative of the third person*.

315. In the third paragraph, the words *Istis causis* may be translated *by those reasons of yours*. *Iste* is sometimes called the *demonstrative of the second person* because it points out persons or objects near the person spoken to; it often implies scorn. There is no word in English that exactly translates it; often *that* alone is sufficient.

316. When *hic* and *ille* refer to two different persons or things named in a sentence, *hic* usually refers to the nearer word, *ille* to the remoter word. In such a case *ille* may be translated *the former*, and *hic*, *the latter*; as, *Aenēās et Rōmulus erant clārī*; *ille Troiānus*, *hic Rōmānuserat*, *Aeneas and Romulus were famous men*; *the former was a Trojan*, *the latter was a Roman*. When *ille* follows the noun which it modifies it often means *that famous*, *that well-known*.



Rōmānī augurium capiunt

The Romans had several methods of learning the will of the gods. Like Romulus and Remus, they observed the flight of birds, such as the eagle and the vulture. Another method is shown in this picture, that of observing the entrails of animals sacrificed

317. In the reading lesson are examples of the intensive *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*. The intensive strengthens the word it modifies; as, *Amūlius ipse Numitōrem pepulit*, *Amulius himself drove out Numitor*; *Ego ipse hunc locum dēsiderō*, *I myself long for this place*. *Ipse* may sometimes be translated *very*; as, *ipsa causa*, *the very reason*. *Ipse*, *ipsa*,

*ipsum* is declined like *iste, ista, istud*, except that the neuter nominative and accusative ending is *-um* instead of *-ud*.

318. Learn the following paradigms:

*hic, haec, hoc, this (sing.), these (pl.)*

	<i>Singular</i>		
	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hoc</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hoc</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>
	<i>Plural</i>		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>

*ille, illa, illud, that (sing.), those (pl.)*

	<i>Singular</i>		
	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>
	<i>Plural</i>		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>

**iste, ista, istud, that (sing.) of yours, those (pl.) of yours**

*Singular*

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>iste</b>	<b>ista</b>	<b>istud</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>istius</b>	<b>istiūs</b>	<b>istius</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>istī</b>	<b>istī</b>	<b>istī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>istum</b>	<b>istam</b>	<b>istud</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>istō</b>	<b>istā</b>	<b>istō</b>

*Plural*

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>istī</b>	<b>istae</b>	<b>ista</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>istōrum</b>	<b>istārum</b>	<b>istōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>istīs</b>	<b>istīs</b>	<b>istīs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>istōs</b>	<b>istās</b>	<b>ista</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>istīs</b>	<b>istīs</b>	<b>istīs</b>

**319.** In the sentence **Rōmulus et Remus victōriā magnā laetī cum avō suō Albae Longae mānsērunt**, what phrase tells why Romulus and Remus were happy? In what case are these words? Is a preposition used? In the sentence **Praetereā amōre libertātis suam urbem et rēgnum cupiēbant**, what words tell for what reason they desired a new city? In what case is **amōre**? The ablative may be used, generally without a preposition, to express cause or reason. When so used it is called the *ablative of cause*. This ablative is generally used with adjectives and verbs of emotion.

**320.** In the sentence **Sic Rōmulus dēlēgit montem quem posteā Rōmānī Palātium appellābant**, the verb **appellābant** has two accusatives. **Quem** is the direct object and **Palātium** is the predicate accusative, referring to **quem**. In the sentence **Remus montem quī posteā appellābātur Aventīnus dēlēgit**, the verb **appellābātur** is passive and has two nominatives. **Quī** is the subject nominative and **Aventīnus** is the predicate nominative, referring to **quī**.

Many verbs of *making, choosing, naming, and calling* take two accusatives, one the direct object, the other the predicate accusative. In the passive the *direct object* becomes the subject and the *predicate accusative* becomes the *predicate nominative*.

### RULES

**321. Ablative of cause.** The ablative may be used, generally without a preposition, to express the cause or reason of an action, state, or feeling.

**322. Predicate accusative.** Verbs of naming, making, choosing, showing, and calling may take two accusatives: a direct object and a predicate accusative. In the passive voice such verbs take two nominatives: the subject and the predicate nominative.

### READING LESSON

#### 323. DĒ URBIS NOVAE LOCŌ II

*took the augury*

Deinde frātrēs augurium cēpērunt. Illō tempore, ut erat mōs, hominēs avium fugā auguria capiēbant. Vulturēs bona signa semper habēbantur. Rōmulus in Palātiō mānsit et augurium exspectāvit. Remus ad montem quem dēlēgerat properāvit et caelum spectāvit. Per illam noctem frātrēs caelum spectāvērunt. Tandem primā lūce sex vulturēs ā Remō visī sunt. Is magnō cum gaudiō nūntium ad sē vocāvit. Subitō nūntius, qui ā Rōmulō ipsō missus erat, aderat. Rōmulus vulturēs duodecim vīderat! Sic Rōmulus erat victor et Palātium erat locus deīs acceptus.

Nūntius magnā cum celeritāte ad Rōmulum sociōsque revēnit. "Hunc montem," clāmāvit Rōmulus victōriā laetus, "deī ipsī dēlēgērunt." Magnum erat gaudium in Palātiō. Statim Rōmulus ipse āram in hōc locō posuit et deīs grātiās ēgit.



Posteā mūrus urbis ā Rōmulō ipsō dēsignātus est. Remus auguriō miser mūrum spectāvit et clāmāvit, “Iste mūrus hostēs nōn prohibēbit.” Deinde eum trānsiuit. Rōmulus eīs verbīs irātus Remum interfēcit. Rōmulus fuit primus rēx Rōmānōrum.

Nōtā bene

Sex, *six*, and duodecim, *twelve*, are indeclinable adjectives.

#### VOCABULARY XXXIII

addūcō, -ere, addūxī, adductus, <i>lead to, move, influence</i>	amor, amōris, m., <i>love</i>
*adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus, <i>be present</i>	augurium, augurī, n., <i>augury, omen</i>
*aequus, -a, -um, <i>level, even, equal</i>	Aventīnus, -ī, m., <i>the Aventine, one of the seven hills of Rome</i>
	avis, avis, avium, f., <i>bird</i>



caelum, -ī, n., <i>sky</i>	libertās, libertātis, f., <i>liberty, freedom</i>
*cupiō, -ere, cupivī, cupītus, <i>desire, be eager for, long for</i>	*locus, -ī, m., <i>place, location; loca, locōrum, n. pl., places, region</i>
dēsignō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>mark out, designate</i>	*lūx, lūcis, f., <i>light</i>
dissentiō, -īre, dissēnsī, dissēnsus, <i>disagree, differ</i>	*mōns, montis, montium, m., <i>mountain</i>
*fuga, -ae, f., <i>flight</i>	*nox, noctis, noctium, f., <i>night</i>
*hic, haec, hoc (demonstrative), <i>this</i>	*praetereā, adv., <i>besides, furthermore, moreover</i>
*idōneus, -a, -um, <i>suitable, convenient, fit</i>	*prohibeō, -ēre, prohibuī, prohibitus, <i>keep off, prohibit, prevent</i>
*ille, illa, illud (demonstrative), <i>that</i>	trānsiliō, -īre, trānsilūī, —, <i>leap across, jump over</i>
*ipse, ipsa, ipsum (intensive), <i>self</i>	*ut, conj., <i>as</i>
*iste, ista, istud (demonstrative), <i>that</i>	vultur, vulturis, m., <i>vulture</i>
*latus, lateris, n., <i>side</i>	

#### Idioms

augurium capere (or augurium agere), *to take the augury, consult the omens*

mediā nocte, *at midnight; primā lūce, at daybreak*

summus mōns, *the top of the mountain*

#### 324. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Answer the following questions:

1. In what art are *aviators* engaged?
2. What is an *equilateral* triangle?
3. What is *local* option?
4. What are the duties of a *designer*?
5. Why is a bat called a *nocturnal* animal?

## DRILL

I. *Decline the following phrases, singular and plural:*

Haec nāvis, illud certāmen, nūntius ipse, illa nox, hoc augurium, ista causa.

II. *Supply the proper case endings:*

1. H.... adulescētēs auguri.... laetī domum revēnerunt.

2. Ill.... adulescētēs vultu-  
rum fug.... sunt miserī.

3. H.... arborēs ripam tetigē-  
runt.

4. Ill.... arborēs erant in flū-  
mine ips....

5. Ill.... loca sunt templis  
idōnea.

6. Fug.... avium ill.... sacer-  
dōtēs addūcuntur.

7. Casa Rōmuli ips.... erat in  
latere ill.... montis.

8. "Ego trānsiliam ist....  
mūrum," clāmat Remus.



Sibylla

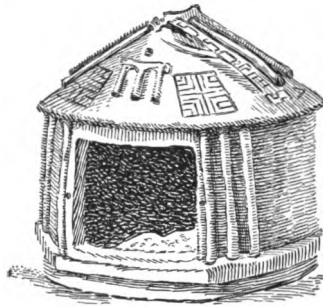
In emergencies, the Romans consulted the Sibylline books of prophecies which were kept in the temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline and could be opened only by order of the Senate. The books were supposed to contain the prophetic sayings of a great prophetess or Sibyl, who was inspired by Apollo

## EXERCISE XXXIII

*Write in Latin:*

- The young men were influenced by their love of liberty. 2. They longed for a new city but they disagreed with each other about the location.
- Then Romulus marked out a level place on the mountain whose sides were steep. 4. On this place he took an augury, as was the custom. 5. "I myself shall remain on this mountain and shall watch the sky," said Romulus.
- On that night Remus also awaited the flight of the birds.

7. At daybreak twelve vultures were seen by the former, six by the latter. 8. Those who were present on the Palatine shouted with great joy. 9. That wall of yours is not suitable, and furthermore it will not keep out (prohibit) the enemy. 10. Then the wretched youth jumped over the wall.



### **Casa antiqua**

**In some parts of Italy, peasants  
still live in houses similar to this**

## CHAPTER XXXIV

### ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION

#### 325. DĒ FACTĪS FORTIBUS

Fābulae dē Rōmae principiis erant liberis Rōmānis maximē acceptae. Facta clāra *ācrium* virōrum et fēminārum ab eis laudābantur. Faustulus, *ācer* pāstor, ā pueris, Acca, *ācris* uxor eius, ā puellis laudābātur. Ingenium pāstorum erat *ācre*, nam multa erant perīcula. Facta pāstōris *ācris* et uxōris *ācris* sunt nōta. Fāmam ingenī *ācris* eōrum etiam hodiē audīmus. Ab *ācrī* pāstōre geminī inventī sunt et domum portātī sunt. Ab uxōre *ācrī* puerī educātī sunt. Cum pāstōribus geminī multōs annōs habitāvērunt. Eī posteā ducēs dēlectī sunt, quod adulēscentēs erant *magnī ingenī*. Mox multa dē ingenīō *ācrī* Rōmulī rēgis legēmus.

Liberī Rōmānī fābulās dē factis *fortium* virōrum et fēminārum libenter audiēbant. Saepe patrēs eis fābulās dē Rōmulō fortī nārrābant. Rōmulus etiam puer erat *fortis*. Agrōs pāstorum custodiēbat et saepe cum latrōnibus pugnābat. Virēs puerī fortis erant magnaē. Multae fābulae dē Rhēā Silvīā quoque nārrābantur. Ea erat fēmina *fortis*. Filii parvī ā mātrem fortī diligenter custodiēbantur. Malus rēx, tamen, eōs rapuit et dolor māttris fortis erat magnus. Liberī parvī fābulam dē lupā maximē amābant. Animal *forte* suō ore geminōs parvōs ā ripā flūminis trāxit. Cotidiē in latibulō animālis fortis puerī cūrābantur. Sed tandem Faustulus puerōs invēnit et ab animālī fortī eōs cēpit.

Facta *audācium* virōrum et fēminārum fāmam Rōmae auxērunt. *Audāx* rēx, Rōmulus, filiās Sabīnōrum rapuit;

*audāx factum Rōmulī est nōtum. Erat quoque virgō audāx, Tarpeia, dē quā fābula nārrātur. Magna est fāma rēgis audācis et virginis audācis. Brevī tempore fābulās nōtās dē rēge audāci et dē virgine audāci legēmus.*

326. Respondē Latinē:

1. Quālis erat Faustulus? 2. Quālis erat Acca? 3. Quāle erat ingenium pāstōrum? 4. Cuius facta sunt nōta? 5. Ā quō geminī inventī sunt? 6. Ā quō puerī ēducātī sunt? 7. Quālis ingenī erant adu-  
lēscētēs?

8. Quid liberī Rōmānī libenter audiēbant? 9. Quālis puer erat Rōmulus? 10. Quis erat fēmina fortis? 11. Quāle animal puerōs ā rīpā flūminis por-  
tāvit?

12. Quōrum facta fāmam Rō-  
mae auxērunt?

13. Rapuitne

rēx audāx filiās Sabinōrum? 14. Dē quō fābulās legēmus?



Casa Rōmulī

Modern Romans made this hut on the ancient models, such as that shown on page 266. Romulus's hut probably looked much like this

#### DISCUSSION

327. In the first paragraph of the story *Dē Factis Fortibus*, find the nominative singular forms, masculine, feminine, and

neuter, of the adjective *acer*. Find the genitive singular forms for the three genders also. To what declension does *acer* belong? This is an adjective of the third declension. Find the ablative singular forms for the three genders. What is the ending of the genitive plural? Like what group of nouns in the third declension is this adjective declined?

**328.** Some adjectives of the third declension have *three terminations* in the nominative singular, an ending for each of the three genders; as, *acer* (*masc.*), *acris* (*fem.*), *acre* (*neut.*). All genders in the genitive singular have the ending *-is*. The base of some of these adjectives ends in *-r*, of others in *-er*. The vocabulary form always shows whether the *e* is kept or not, as, *acer*, *acris*, *acre*, and *celer*, *celeris*, *celere*. The endings of these adjectives are the same as the endings of the *i*-stem nouns in the third declension. Observe that the only ending of the ablative singular is *-ī*.

**329.** In the second paragraph of the story, various cases of the adjective *fortis* are used. Identify the cases. What are the nominative singular endings of this adjective in the three genders? This is also an adjective of the third declension, but since its masculine and feminine endings are alike, it is called an *adjective of two terminations*.

**330.** In the third paragraph of the story, forms of the adjective *audax* are used. Identify the forms. What is the ending of the nominative singular in the three genders? Because the three genders have the same ending, this is called an *adjective of one termination*. Notice the base of this adjective. In what letter does it end? In memorizing this type of adjective, learn both nominative and genitive singular, as the base, to which the endings must be added, is formed from the genitive. In the vocabulary the second form given for such adjectives is the genitive singular.

**331.** Adjectives of the third declension are therefore classified as *adjectives of three terminations*, *adjectives of two terminations*, and *adjectives of one termination*. Learn the following paradigms:

### Three terminations

<i>Singular</i>			
	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
<i>Plural</i>			
<i>Nom.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
<i>Abl.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

### Two terminations

### One termination

<i>Singular</i>				
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	fortis	forte	audāx	audāx
<i>Gen.</i>	fortis	fortis	audācis	audācis
<i>Dat.</i>	fortī	fortī	audācī	audācī
<i>Acc.</i>	fortem	forte	audācem	audāx
<i>Abl.</i>	fortī	fortī	audācī	audācī
<i>Plural</i>				
<i>Nom.</i>	fortēs	fortia	audācēs	audācia
<i>Gen.</i>	fortium	fortium	audācium	audācium
<i>Dat.</i>	fortibus	fortibus	audācibus	audācibus
<i>Acc.</i>	fortīs, -ēs	fortia	audācīs, -ēs	audācia
<i>Abl.</i>	fortibus	fortibus	audācibus	audācibus

332. In the second clause of the sentence *Eī posteā ducēs dēlectī sunt, quod adulēscentēs erant magnī ingenī*, which words show what kind of young men the twins were? In what case are these words? A noun in the genitive, modified by an adjective, may describe a noun; such a genitive is called a *genitive of description*.

#### RULE

333. *Genitive of description.* A phrase consisting of a noun in the genitive with a modifying adjective may be used to describe another noun.



#### READING LESSON

334.

#### DĒ URBE NOVĀ

Urbs nova quam Rōmulus condiderat erat parva et paucōs incolās habēbat. Sed rēx Rōmulus magnam urbem cupīvit; itaque asyllum aperuit. Ad asyllum hominēs omnium generum convēnērunt. Erant pāstōrēs, mercātōrēs, agri-



colae, nautae, servī, latrōnēs. Hominēs qui ex suis civitatibus pulsī erant ad asyllum properāvērunt. Sed fēminae ad asyllum nōn vērērunt; itaque novā in urbe fuērunt paucae fēminae. Tum Rōmulus ad gentēs quae prope habitābant nūntiōs celerēs misit. Cum eis gentibus rēgnum commūne cupivit et ab hominibus filiās uxōrēs petivit. Sed negōtium nūntiōrum erat difficile; ab omnibus gentibus pulsī sunt.

Deinde Rōmae Rōmulus cum studiō lūdōs parāvit et Sabīnōs, finitimōs potentēs, ad lūdōs vocāvit. Sabīnī fābulās dē viribus Rōmānōrum audīverant. Itaque nūntium libenter accēperunt. Cum omnibus fēminīs et liberīs Rōmam convēnērunt. Brevī tempore Rōmulus ipse signum dedit et Rōmānī lūdōs commīsērunt.

## VOCABULARY XXXIV

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| *ācer, ācris, ācre, <i>spirited, keen, fierce</i>                            | *finitimus, -a, -um, <i>neighboring</i> ; as a noun, finitimus, -ī, m., <i>neighbor</i>                  |
| animal, animālis, animālium, n., <i>animal</i>                               | *fortis, forte, <i>brave, strong</i>   |
| asyllum, -ī, n., <i>refuge</i>   | ingenium, ingenī, n., <i>disposition, ability</i> ; nature   |
| *audāx, audācis, <i>daring, bold</i>   | latrō, latrōnis, m., <i>robber</i>   |
| *brevis, breve, <i>short, brief</i>  | nōtus, -a, -um, <i>renowned, well-known</i>  |
| *celer, celeris, celere, <i>swift</i>  | *omnis, omne, <i>all, every</i>  |
| *commūnis, commūne, <i>common, general, joint</i>                            | *petō, -ere, petivī or petiī, petitus, <i>seek, ask</i>  |
| conveniō, -ire, convēnī, conventūrus, <i>come together, gather, assemble</i> | *potēns, potentis, <i>powerful</i>   |
| *difficilis, difficile, <i>difficult, hard</i>                               | Sabīnus, -a, -um, <i>belonging to the Sabines</i> ; as a noun, Sabīnī, -ōrum, m. pl., <i>the Sabines</i> |
| dolor, dolōris, m., <i>grief, sorrow</i>                                     | virgō, virginis, f., <i>maiden, virgin</i>   |
| ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>rear, train, educate</i>                        | *vīres, vīrium, f. pl., <i>strength</i>  |
| factum, -ī, n., <i>deed, act</i>   |  |

## LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

335. Answer the following questions:

1. What is a *convention*?
2. What is the meaning of the phrase *Community Chest*?
3. What is a *dolorous* expression?
4. What is *education*?
5. For whom are *omnibuses* run?

## DRILL

I. *Decline the Latin phrases for the following:*

Difficult route, swift robber, a bold Sabine, common city, my word.

II. *Express the following phrases in Latin:*

Of all the inhabitants, to or for the daring boys, of this brave young man, with the swift messengers, by the eager shepherd, brief stories (*acc.*), noted soldier (*nom.*), quick animals (*acc.*), great grief (*nom.*), daring deeds (*nom.*), these birds (*acc.*).

III. *Supply the proper case endings:*

1. Brev.... fābulae discipulōs dēlectant.
2. Negōtia nūntiōrum sunt difficil.....
3. Puerī equōs celer.... laudant.
4. Lūdī ā rēge potent.... parātī sunt.
5. Cīvēs in rēgnō commūn.... habitābant.

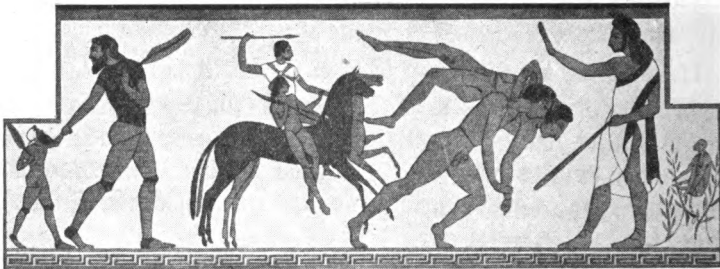
## EXERCISE XXXIV

*Write in Latin:*

1. The mother's grief was great because her little sons had been stolen. 2. The twins were saved by the quick animal who had found them on the bank of the river. 3. The spirited wife, to whom the shepherd had carried the boys, trained them with great diligence.

4. Many difficult deeds had been performed. 5. In this way the young men had increased the fame of Rome among

the powerful neighbors. 6. The neighbors themselves were not seeking a joint kingdom. 7. For they feared the refuge in which there were daring robbers. 8. Romulus, a man of great ability, had prepared games and had invited (called) the Sabines. 9. The spectators have assembled and the Romans will begin the games in a short time. 10. All the Sabine maidens are praising the strength of the brave Romans.



### Rōmulus lūdōs parat

Riding and wrestling, shown in this picture of an ancient fresco, were probably part of the entertainment prepared by Romulus and his men for the Sabines. In the following chapter you will see three other pictures of games performed at ancient entertainments

CHAPTER XXXV  
PARTICIPLES OF ALL CONJUGATIONS



336. DĒ FĪLIĀBUS SABĪNŌRUM

*induced*

Rōmulus, rēgnī cupiditāte *adductus*, nūntiōs ad gentēs proximās miserat. Sed eae gentēs timōre *adductae* nūntiōs benignē nōn accēperant. Omnēs finitimī nūntiōs ā Rōmulō missōs pepulerant. Itaque nova cōnsilia capta sunt. Is Rōmae lūdōs parāvit et Sabīnōs ad eōs vocāvit. Sabīnī nūntium ā Rōmulō missum accēpērunt et eum libenter audīvērunt. Tum Sabīnī Rōmam *ventūrī* uxōrēs et liberōs

( 275 )

convocāvērunt. Fēminae domicilia relictūrae multa fēcērunt. Tandem omnia ad id iter parāta erant.

Sabīnī cum fēminīs et liberīs Rōmam intrāvērunt. Rōmulus eōs <sup>seeing</sup> *cernēns* et eōrum clāmōrēs *audiēns* gaudiō mōtus est. Tandem erat magnus numerus fēminārum in urbe! Rōmulus apud nōbilēs Rōmānōs *sedēns* et multa *cōgitāns* cum gaudiō certāmina spectāvit. Sabīnī quoque prope sedentēs et lūdōs spectantēs gaudiō mōtī sunt. Rōmānī spectābant ōs Rōmulī cernentis gaudium Sabīnōrum et audientis clāmōrēs spectātōrum. Ōs Rōmulī apud nōbilēs Rōmānōs sedentis et multa cōgitantis nihil significābat. Quid est? Cūr Rōmulus surgit? Daturne signum ā Rōmulō stante? Signum datur. Rōmānī lūdōs intermittunt et filiās Sabīnōrum rapiunt. Clāmōrēs patrum filiās petentium undique audiuntur. Eās frūstrā petunt. Virginēs in casās ā Rōmānīs rapiuntur. Sīc fēminae ab audāci Rōmulō Rōmam *ductae sunt*.

#### DISCUSSION

337. In the expression *Rōmulus rēgnī cupiditate adductus*, what word does *adductus* modify? What is the gender, number, and case of *adductus*? In the expression *Sed eae gentēs timōre adductae*, what word does *adductae* modify? What is the gender, number, and case of *adductae*? What does *adductus* tell about Romulus? What does *adductae* tell about *gentēs*? Was Romulus influenced before or after he had sent the messengers? Why had the tribes not received the messengers?

The forms *adductus* and *adductae* describe their nouns and refer to actions finished before the time of the main verb. Do you recognize the form *adductus* as the fourth principal part of the verb *addūcō*? (See §§ 256, 258.) Certain forms of the verb are called *participles* because they have partly the function of a verb and partly that of an adjective.

The fourth principal part is called, specifically, the *perfect passive participle*, or, commonly, the *perfect participle*. Grammatically the perfect passive participle is an adjective of the first-and-second declension. As an adjective it must agree with the noun it modifies in gender, number, and case. It always represents an action as finished *before* the time of the main verb. The literal translation of *adductus* is *having been induced*; of *missōs*, *having been sent*. Often, however, the shorter translation, in the form *induced*, or *sent*, is appropriate. Find the remaining perfect participles in the first paragraph of the story.

338. In the sentence *Tum Sabīnī Rōmam ventūrī uxōrēs et liberōs convocāvērunt*, what word does *ventūrī* modify? What is the gender, number, and case of *ventūrī*? What were the Sabines about to do? Is the form *ventūrī* built from the present stem, the perfect stem, or the participial stem of the verb *veniō*? The participial stem is found by dropping the *-us* ending from the perfect passive participle. The future active participle is formed by adding the letters *-ūrus*, *-a*, *-um* to the participial stem, and it is declined like an adjective of the first-and-second declension. It refers to an action, in the active voice, which will occur *after* the time of the main verb. There is no form of the English verb corresponding to *ventūrus*, though it is often conventionally translated *about to come* as the most convenient way of expressing the idea. So also *portātūrus*, *about to carry*. Find another future active participle in the first paragraph.

339. In the sentence *Rōmulus eōs cernēns et eōrum clāmōrēs audiēns gaudiō mōtus est*, the words *cernēns* and *audiēns* describe the noun *Rōmulus* by telling what he is doing. Likewise in the sentence *Rōmulus apud nōbilēs Rōmānōs sedēns et multa cōgitāns cum gaudiō certāmina spectāvit*, the words *sedēns* and *cōgitāns* describe *Rōmulus* by telling what he is doing. The conventional translation



Lūdi Rōmāni

of *cernēns*, *audiēns*, *sedēns*, *cōgitāns*, is in the form *seeing*, *hearing*, *sitting*, *thinking*. Does the action in these participles occur at the same time as that of the main verb, or before it, or after it?

340. To what conjugation does *cernēns* belong? *audiēns*? *sedēns*? *cōgitāns*? What stem is used in making these participles? The present active participle in all conjugations ends in *-ns*, which in the first and second conjugations is added directly to the present stem: *cōgitāns*, *sedēns*. In the third the stem vowel of the present is lengthened before *-ns*: *cernēns*; and the *-iō* third and the fourth have *-iē-* before the ending *-ns*; as, *fugiēns*. For the pronunciation, see note at the bottom of page 3.

341. Since the forms *cernēns*, *audiēns*, *sedēns*, and *cōgitāns* modify *Rōmulus*, what must their gender, number, and case be? Find the genitive singular forms of these participles in the story. What ending is found on all these forms? To what declension must these participles belong? Memorize the base carefully. The present active participle is an adjective of one termination in the third declension. Observe that the ablative singular ending is either *-e* or *-ī*. (See § 575.) There are several other present participles in the second paragraph of the story. Identify the conjugation, case, gender, and number of each participle.



Lūdī Rōmānī

**342.** The literal translation of a participle is often unsuitable in the English sentence. Therefore the perfect passive participle is sometimes translated by a clause introduced by *when* or *after*, and the present participle is often translated by a clause introduced by *while*. A relative clause is often used for either of these participles. While you are first learning about participles, you may find it convenient to use the literal translations; but you should always try to see the real meaning of the participle, and to express that meaning in idiomatic English:

**Sabīnī nūntium missum accēpērunt**     *The Sabines received the having-been-sent messenger*

*The Sabines received the messenger who had been sent*

**Rōmulus eōs cernēns gaudiō mōtus est**     *Romulus, seeing them, was moved with joy, or was pleased*

*Romulus was pleased when he saw them*

**Puella in turri stāns ornāmenta aurea spectāvit**     *The girl standing in the tower observed (their) golden ornaments*

*While standing in the tower, the girl observed (their) golden ornaments*



## 343. Participles of verbs of all conjugations

<p><b>Present active participle</b>  <i>Time same as that of main verb;</i>  <i>Third-declension adjective</i></p>	<p>I. <b>portāns</b>, gen. <b>portantis</b>,  <i>carrying</i>            II. <b>vidēns</b>, gen. <b>videntis</b>, <i>seeing</i>            III. <b>mittēns</b>, gen. <b>mittentis</b>,  <i>sending</i>            -iō III. <b>capiēns</b>, gen. <b>cipientis</b>,  <i>seizing</i>            IV. <b>audiēns</b>, gen. <b>audientis</b>,  <i>hearing</i></p>
<p><b>Future active participle</b>  <i>Time after that of main verb;</i>  <i>First-and-second declension adjective</i></p>	<p>I. <b>portātūrus</b>, -a, -um, <i>about to carry</i>            II. <b>visūrus</b>, -a, -um, <i>about to see</i>            III. <b>missūrus</b>, -a, -um, <i>about to send</i>            -iō III. <b>captūrus</b>, -a, -um, <i>about to seize</i>            IV. <b>audītūrus</b>, -a, -um, <i>about to hear</i></p>
<p><b>Perfect passive participle</b>  <i>Time before that of main verb;</i>  <i>First-and-second declension adjective</i></p>	<p>I. <b>portātus</b>, -a, -um, <i>having been carried, carried</i>            II. <b>visus</b>, -a, -um, <i>having been seen, seen</i>            III. <b>missus</b>, -a, -um, <i>having been sent, sent</i>            -iō III. <b>captus</b>, -a, -um, <i>having been seized, seized</i>            IV. <b>audītus</b>, -a, -um, <i>having been heard, heard</i></p>

## RULE

344. A participle is a verbal adjective, and agrees with the noun it modifies in gender, number, and case.

## READING LESSON



## 345.

## DĒ TARPEIĀ

Sabinī insidiis Rōmulī incitātī Rōmā fūgērunt. Raptae virginēs quoque erant irātae et libertātem Rōmulum ōrāvērunt. Sed Rōmulus eis libertātem nōn dedit. Mox lēgātī ā patribus Sabinīs ad Rōmulum missī sunt. Rōmulus eōs domum mīsit. Tum bellum longum et ācre inter Rōmānōs et Sabinōs gestum est. Multōs annōs gentēs pugnābant. Multa proelia extrā mūrōs urbis facta sunt. Tandem Tatius, quī erat potēns rēx Sabinōrum, multōs militēs coēgit et Rōmam iter fēcit.

Rōmānī Capitōlium mūnīverant. Tarpeiō princīpī Rōmānō salūs urbis tribūta erat. Eius filia, virgō audāx, erat Tarpeia. Ea in turri stāns ōrnāmenta aurea in sinistrīs Sabīnō-  
*bracelets*  
rum vīdit. Tarpeia armillās aureās amāvit et ōrnāmentōrum cupida mūnitiōnēs clam reliquit. Ad duces Sabīnōrum cu-

currit. “Sī mihi dabis ea quae militēs tuī in sinistrīs gerunt, nocte portam urbis aperiam et militēs tuōs in urbem dūcam.”  
*wear, or carry*

Tatius mūrōs oppugnātūrus cum gaudiō eam audivit. Celeriter Tarpeia intrā mūrōs urbis revēnit. Mediā nocte ipsa portam aperuit. Tatius prīmus in Tarpeiam ōrnāmenta postulantem nōn solum armillās sed etiam scūtum iēcit. Eius militēs quoque ōrnāmenta et scūta iēcērunt. Nam Sabīnī in sinistrīs et ōrnāmenta et scūta gessērunt. Tarpeia scūtis oppressa cecidit. Ab illō tempore eī quī patriam trādiderant dē Capitōliō dēiectī sunt. Ea pars Capitōli appellātur Mōns Tarpeius.

### VOCABULARY XXXV

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| aureus, -a, -um, <i>golden</i>                                    | *moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, <i>move, disturb</i>                            |
| Capitōlium, Capitōli, n., <i>the Capitoline Hill in Rome</i>      | mūnitiō, mūnitiōnis, f., <i>fortification, rampart</i>                     |
| *clam, adv., <i>secretly</i>                                      | *nihil, n. (indeclinable), <i>nothing</i>                                  |
| *cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>consider, weigh, think</i>         | *nōbilis, -e, <i>renowned, noble</i>                                       |
| cupiditās, cupiditātis, f., <i>longing, desire</i>                | nōn solum . . . sed etiam, <i>not only . . . but also</i>                  |
| *frustrā, adv., <i>in vain</i>                                    | *opprimō, -ere, oppressī, oppressus, <i>weigh down, overwhelm, oppress</i> |
| *incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>urge, incite, arouse</i>           | ōrnāmentum, -ī, n., <i>ornament, decoration; equipment, trappings</i>      |
| *insidiae, -ārum, f., <i>ambuscade, plot, wiles</i>               |  |
| *intermittō, -ere, intermisī, intermissus, <i>leave off, stop</i> |  |

*ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>plead, pray, beg</i>	surgō, -ere, surrēxī, surrēctūrus, <i>rise, stand up</i>
*postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>demand, request</i>	tīmor, timōris, m., <i>fear</i>
*salūs, salūtis, f., <i>safety, health</i>	*tribuō, -ere, tribuī, tribūtus, <i>assign, attribute</i>
*significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>express, indicate, point out; signify</i>	*turris, turris, turrium, f., <i>tower</i>
	*undique, adv., <i>on all sides, from all parts</i>

*Idiom*

cōnsilium capere, *to form a plan*

346. The verbs petō and postulō take the accusative of the thing asked for and ab with the ablative of the person asked:

Ā Rōmulō libertātem postulāvērunt, *They demanded (their) liberty from Romulus.*

The verbs rogō and ōrō usually take the accusative for both the person and the thing asked.

## 347. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Pick out the Latin words in the vocabulary with which the following are associated:

*Frustrate, insidious, annihilate, resurrection, salutary.*

## DRILL

I. Give the conventional translations of the following participles:

surgēns	tribūtus	petitus	incitātūrus
cōgitātūrus	movēns	oppressus	postulāns

II. Give the Latin for the following English participles:

Surrendering, about to oppress, demanding, having been seen, receiving, having been killed, interrupting, having been indicated, hearing, about to run.

III. Give the participles—present, future, and perfect—of the following verbs, with the English translations:

interficiō    petō    cōgitō    prohibeō    mūniō

IV. Decline the Latin phrases for the following:

a loving mother                      the fortified hill  
the aroused king                      the pleading girl

#### EXERCISE XXXV

Write in Latin:

1. The noble Romulus was not moved by fear; he was considering a daring plot. 2. If he stands up (will have stood up), the Romans will stop the games. 3. The stolen maidens are being held in the new city. 4. The envoys sent by their fathers were not heeded (heard) by Romulus. 5. The pleading maidens sought their liberty in vain.

6. The safety of the city had been assigned to Tarpeia's father. 7. But Tarpeia, aroused by a longing for the golden ornaments, betrayed not only her father but also her country. 8. She ran from the tower and secretly left the fortifications. 9. The face of the Sabine leader had indicated nothing. 10. The maiden demanding her rewards was weighed down on all sides by the shields.



Lūdi Rōmāni

## CHAPTER XXXVI

### CARDINAL AND ORDINAL NUMERALS NINE IRREGULAR PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

#### 348. DĒ NUMERIS RŌMĀNIS

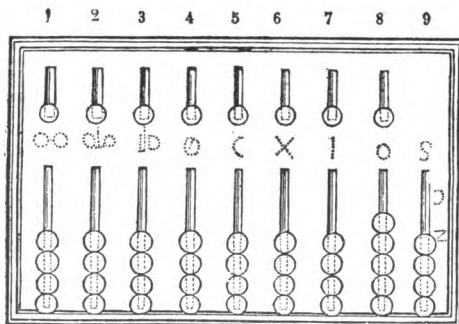
Est hōra tertia et Orbilius parvōs puerōs numerōs docet. Numerī ab ūnō ad vīgintī docentur. Nōn omnēs discipulī sunt diligētēs. <sup>One</sup> *Alius* numerōrum memor erit, <sup>another</sup> *alius* oblītus. <sup>Some</sup> *Aliī* bene, <sup>others</sup> *aliī* male respondēbunt. “Ūnus, duo, trēs, quattuor, quīnque, sex, septem, octō, novem, decem,” respondet puer primus. “Bene!” inquit Orbilius. Orbilius secundum puerum reliquōs numerōs rogat. “Nesciō,” respondet is puer. Orbilius eum nōn laudat. Laudātur opus <sup>of one</sup> *alterīus* sed opus <sup>of the other</sup> *alterīus* reprehenditur. Alter domī dīlīgenter labōrāverat; alter nōn labōrāverat. Tum tertius respondet, “Ūndecim, duodecim, tredecim, quattuordecim, quīndecim, sēdecim, septendecim, duodēvīgintī, ūndēvīgintī, vīgintī.” “Quis omnēs numerōs scit?” “Ego numerōs sciō. Bene eōs memoriā teneō,” clāmat Titus. Titus magnam laudem accipit. “Quot digitōs, Claudī, habēs?” “Decem digitōs habeō.” “Sī ūnī digitō adduntur duo digitī, quot digitī sunt?” “Trēs digitī sunt,” respondet puer quīntus. “Sī duōbus digitīs quīnque digitī adduntur, quot digitī sunt?” “Nesciō,” respondet puer sextus. Is timet quod Orbilius certē eum castigābit. Tum Orbilius septimum vocat et rogat, “Sī tribus digitīs septem digitī adduntur, quot digitī sunt?” Is quoque respondet, “Nesciō.” Nunc magister irātus ambōs puerōs pigrōs ad sē vocat. Animus neutrius est laetus. Orbilius cum studiō ambōs castigat.

Utrī laus crās dabitur? Crās ambō puerī laudābuntur. Omnēs quidem puerī laudābuntur. Nullī discipulī erunt numerōrum oblitī sed omnēs tōtam hōram cum diligentiā labōrābunt.

### 349. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quid agit Orbilius? 2. Quid puer primus respondet? 3. Estne secundus discipulus bonus? 4. Cuius opus laudātur? reprehenditur? 5. Quid tertius respondet? 6. Cūr Titus magnam laudem accipit? 7. Quot digitōs habet Claudius? 8. Sī ūnī digitō trēs digitī adduntur, quot digitī sunt? 9. Sī duōbus digitīs ūnus digitus additur, quot digitī sunt? 10. Sī tribus digitīs duo digitī adduntur, quot digitī sunt? 11. Cūr est Orbilius irātus? 12. Quōs Orbilius castigat? 13. Cuius animus est laetus?

14. Uter puer crās reprehendētur? 15. Quam diū discipulī cum diligentiā labōrābunt? 16. Ūllusne discipulus erit numerōrum oblitus?



Abacus

By means of the movable buttons in the grooves of this counting board, Romans did their sums. The seven grooves numbered 1 to 7 were for whole numbers; the other two for fractions. The longer, lower grooves stood for the different denominations according to a decimal system, groove 7 marking the units, groove 6 the tens, groove 5 the hundreds, etc. The upper grooves had five times the denominational value of the lower, a moved button representing 5 in upper groove 7, 50 in 6, etc. The fractions were counted

by a duodecimal system:  $\frac{1}{12}$ ,  $\frac{2}{12}$ , etc., in groove 8, and fractional parts of  $\frac{1}{12}$  in groove 9. Thus, to represent 12, move up one button in lower groove 6 and two in lower 7; for 17, move up one in lower 6, and two in lower 7 and one in upper 7. The number 6,348 would be represented by moving one button in upper 4 and one in lower 4, three in lower 5, four in lower 6, and three in lower 7 and one in upper 7

## DISCUSSION

**350.** In the story *Dē Numerīs Rōmānīs* are found the cardinal numerals one to twenty. Cardinal numbers correspond to English *one, two, three, etc.*; they state how many objects or persons are mentioned. The word *cardinal* is derived from Latin *cardō, cardinis, hinge*; cardinal numbers are so called because they are considered the most important numbers, the pivotal numbers; and numbers of other kinds, as *first, second, third, etc.*, hinge or depend upon them.

Consider the following clauses:

*Sī ūnī digitō adduntur duo digiti*

*Sī duōbus digitīs quīnque digiti adduntur*

*Sī tribus digitīs septem digiti adduntur*

What is the case of the numerals *ūnī, duōbus, tribus*? These three cardinals are declinable; the other cardinals, except 200, 300, 400, etc., to 900, are indeclinable. The declension of *ūnus, duo, and trēs* must be carefully memorized (see § § 355, 356).

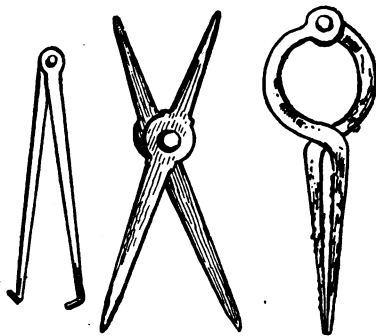
**351.** In the same story there are a few numerals corresponding to English *first, second, third, etc.* These numerals tell the *order* of persons or objects; hence they are called *ordinal* numerals, or *ordinals*. They are adjectives of the first-and-second declension. Memorize the first ten ordinals.

**352.** In the sentence *Alii bene, alii male respondēbunt*, what meanings has *alii*? In the sentence *Alius numerōrum memor erit, alius oblitus*, what meanings has *alius*? The word *alius* is often used with contrasted meanings, *one . . . another* for the singular meanings, and *some . . . others* for the plural meanings. When only one *alius* occurs in a sentence, it has the meaning *another*.

*Alius* is declined like a first-and-second declension adjective except in the genitive and dative singular. Memorize all its forms. (See § 356.)



**353.** In the sentence *Opus alterius laudatur sed opus alterius reprehenditur*, what is the case of *alterius* and what meanings has it? In the sentence *Alter domi diligenter laboraverat, alter non laboraverat*, what meanings has *alter*? The word *alter* is used only when two definite persons or things have been mentioned and something is told about *(the) one* and *the other*. Its contrasted meanings in the singular are *(the) one . . . the other*. This word is also somewhat irregular, as can be observed from the genitive singular form. Memorize all its forms.



**Instrumenta ad circulos ducendos**

These compasses were found in Pompeii

**354.** There are nine words in Latin which show this peculiarity of declension, having *-ius* in the genitive singular and *-i* in the dative singular. They are *unus, alius, alter*; also, *solus, totus, uter, neuter, ullus, nullus*. Of these, *alius* has the form *aliud* in the neuter singular nominative and accusative. With these exceptions, the words in this group have the endings of a first-and-second declension adjective; but the vocative is lacking.

These words are called *pronominal adjectives*: they are used sometimes as pronouns, sometimes as adjectives.

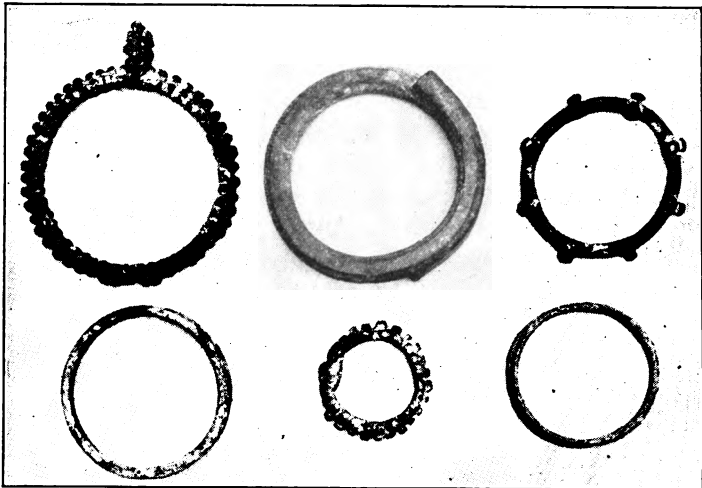
## 355. Numerals

<i>Cardinals</i>	<i>Ordinals</i>
1. ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um, <i>first</i>
2. duo, duae, duo	secundus, -a, -um, <i>second</i>
3. trēs, tria	tertius, -a, -um, <i>third</i>
4. quattuor	quārtus, -a, -um, <i>fourth</i>
5. quīnque	quīntus, -a, -um, <i>fifth</i>
6. sex	sextus, -a, -um, <i>sixth</i>
7. septem	septimus, -a, -um, <i>seventh</i>
8. octō	octāvus, -a, -um, <i>eighth</i>
9. novem	nōnus, -a, -um, <i>ninth</i>
10. decem	decimus, -a, -um, <i>tenth</i>
11. ūndecim	
12. duodecim	
13. tredecim	
14. quattuordecim	
15. quīndecim	
16. sēdecim	
17. septendecim	
18. duodēvigintī	
19. ūndēvigintī	
20. vīgintī	

The declension of ūnus is given in § 356. Ūnus, of course, has no plural, and duo and trēs have no singular. Duo and trēs are declined as follows:

	<i>duo, two</i>			<i>trēs, three</i>	
	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
<i>Acc.</i>	duōs (duo)	duās	duo	trēs, trīs	tria
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

Ambō, *both*, is like duo, except that final -ō is long.



*Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art*

### Armillae

356. The nine irregular pronominal adjectives are:

<b>ūnus</b> , -a, -um, <i>one</i>	<b>nūllus</b> , -a, -um, <i>none</i>
<b>tōtus</b> , -a, -um, <i>whole</i>	<b>ūllus</b> , -a, -um, <i>any</i>
<b>sōlus</b> , -a, -um, <i>alone, only</i>	
<b>neuter</b> , neutra, neutrum, <i>neither</i> (of two)	
<b>uter</b> , utra, utrum, <i>which?</i> (of two)	
<b>alter</b> , altera, alterum, <i>the other</i> (of two)	
<b>alius</b> , alia, aliud, <i>another</i>	

Ūnus and alius are declined as follows:

	ūnus, <i>one</i>		
	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	ūnus	ūna	ūnum
<i>Gen.</i>	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus
<i>Dat.</i>	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī
<i>Acc.</i>	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
<i>Abl.</i>	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō

*alius, another, other*

*Singular*

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	alius	alia	aliud
<i>Gen.</i>	(alterius)	(alterius)	(alterius)
<i>Dat.</i>	aliī	aliī	aliī
<i>Acc.</i>	aliū	aliā	aliud
<i>Abl.</i>	aliō	aliā	aliō

*Plural*

<i>Nom.</i>	aliī	aliae	alia
<i>Gen.</i>	aliōrum	aliārum	aliōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs
<i>Acc.</i>	aliōs	aliās	alia
<i>Abl.</i>	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs

The form *alterius* is almost always used instead of *alius* in the genitive.

READING LESSON

357.

DĒ BELLŌ SABĪNŌ

Sabīnī in Capitōlium ā Tarpeiā ductī mūnitiōnēs occupāvērunt sed Rōmānī ad Palātium fūgērunt. Inter duōs montēs fuit spatium aequum quod postea Forum Rōmānum appellātum est. Hīc duo rēgēs cum multīs mīlitibus proelium commīsērunt. Diū atque ācritēr pugnātum est sed victōria neutrī rēgī data est. Multa proelia facta sunt; multī mīlitēs caesī sunt. Tandem Hostīlius, dux Rōmānus, interfectus est et Rōmulus lapide vulnerātus cecidit. Rōmānī rēgem vulnerātum videntēs perterritī sunt et aliī in aliam partem fūgērunt. Brevī tempore autem Rōmulus surrēxit. Fugā mīlitum irātus ācritēr eōs accūsāvit; sed nē ūnus quidem fugam intermīsīt. Tum Rōmulus Iovem patrem deōrum invocāns auxiliū ōrāvit. Virtūs Rōmānōrum verbīs Rōmulī cōfirmāta est et fugam intermīsērunt.



“Proelium committite et hostēs vincite, mīlitēs,” clāmat Rōmulus. “Iuppiter nōbīs auxilium dabit.” Itaque Rōmānī cum Sabīnīs iterum proelium committunt. Subitō Sabīnōrum filiae, quae ā Rōmānīs raptae sunt, in proelium currunt. Neque tēla neque virēs hominum timent. Hūc et illūc currunt, ōrantēs finem bellī. Et Sabīnī et Rōmānī verbīs eārum addūcuntur. Itaque ambō rēgēs finem bellī faciunt.

Pāx inter eōs cōstitutā est. Rōmānī Sabīnīque urbem commūnem habuērunt. Et Rōmulus et Tatius urbem commūnem quīnque annōs rēxērunt. Tandem Tatius interfectus est et Rōmulus sōlus rēgnāvit. Postea multa mīlia Rōmānōrum Rōmulum deum et patrem urbis adōrāvērunt.

Nōtā bene

Iuppiter, Iovis, *Jupiter*, chief of the gods.

Nē ūnus quidem, *not even one, not a single one.*

## VOCABULARY XXXVI

- ācritēr, adv.,** *fiercely, eagerly, bitterly*  
**addō, -ere, addidī, additus, add**  
**ambō, ambae, ambō, both**  
 (see §355, note)  
**\*animus, -ī, m.,** *mind, feeling, disposition*  
**\*caedō, -ere, cecidī, caesus, cut down, slay, kill**  
**\*cōfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, strengthen, declare**  
**digitus, -ī, m.,** *finger*  
**\*diligēns, diligentis, diligent, careful**  
**\*finis, finis, finium, m., end, limit; in pl., boundaries, territory**  
**\*hōra, -ae, f.,** *hour*  
**\*hūc et illūc, hither and thither**  
**invocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, call upon, invoke**  
**\*laus, laudis, f.,** *praise, glory*  
**male, adv.,** *poorly, badly*  
**memor, memoris, mindful, heedful**  
**\*memoria, -ae, f.,** *memory*  
**\*mīlia, mīlium, n. pl.,** *thousands* (followed by the genitive of the whole)  
**nesciō, -īre, -īvī, —, not to know, be ignorant**  
**\*occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, seize, take possession of**  
**\*opus, operis, n.,** *work, labor; composition*  
**perterreō, -ēre, perterrūī, perterritus, terrify, thoroughly alarm**  
**\*quidem, adv.,** *indeed, certainly, at least; nē . . . quidem, not even*  
**quot, adj. (indeclinable),** *how many?*  
**reprehendō, -ere, reprehendī, reprehensus, seize; blame, censure**  
**\*sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, know**

Note that *cecidī*, from *caedō*, means *I killed*, and *cecidī*, from *cadō*, means *I fell down* (see Vocabulary 30).

*Idioms*

*diū atque ācritēr pugnātum est, they fought long and also fiercely*

*aliī in aliam partem, some in one direction, others in another; some one way, some another*

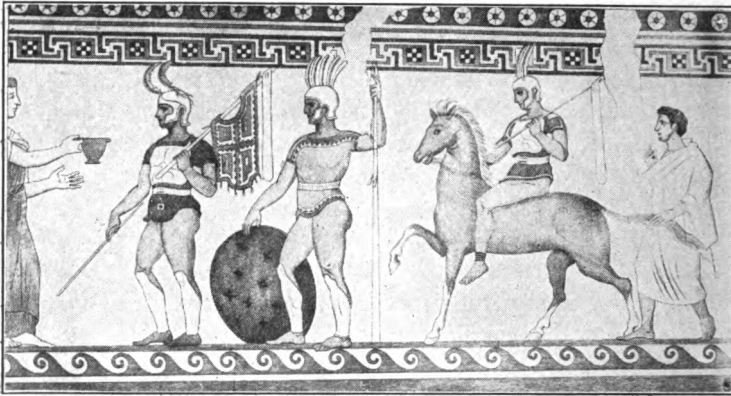
*memoriā tenēre, to remember*

## 358.

## LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. Explain the meaning of the italicized words:

1. The man was so *terrified* that he committed *suicide*.
2. The *pastor* of *Unity* Church gave the *invocation*.
3. On *Memorial* Day we honor the *memory* of the dead.
4. The man's act was *reprehensible*.



**Militēs domum reveniunt**

II. The Roman year originally began with *March*. This month was named for *Mārs*, god of agriculture (and of war), because agricultural work for the spring begins in this month. *September*, *October*, *November*, and *December* were the seventh, eighth, ninth, and tenth months respectively, as their names indicate.

### DRILL

1. Give the cardinal numerals to twenty.
2. Give the ordinal numerals to ten.
3. Give the nine irregular pronominal adjectives, with their meanings.

II. *Decline the following phrases in the number given:*  
 virgō sōla duo animālia trēs adulēscētēs ūnus digitus  
 alii militēs alterum iter mīlia hominum ambō frātrēs

III. *Supply the proper endings for the adjectives:*

1. Null.... puellae erant in Orbili lūdō.
2. Habēbatne lūdus Rōmānus ūll.... fenestrās?
3. Utr.... puerō praemium datum est?
4. Opus neutr.... laudātum est.
5. Numitōrī sōl.... rēgnum datum erat.
6. Militēs tōt.... noctem pugnāvērunt.
7. Rēgnum ūn.... rēgī dabitur.
8. Duo puerī bene respondērunt; alter.... liber datus est, alter.... stilus datus est.
9. Fābulae dē Aenēā ali.... discipulōs dēlectant; fābulae dē Rōmulō ali.... dēlectant.

#### EXERCISE XXXVI

*Write in Latin:*

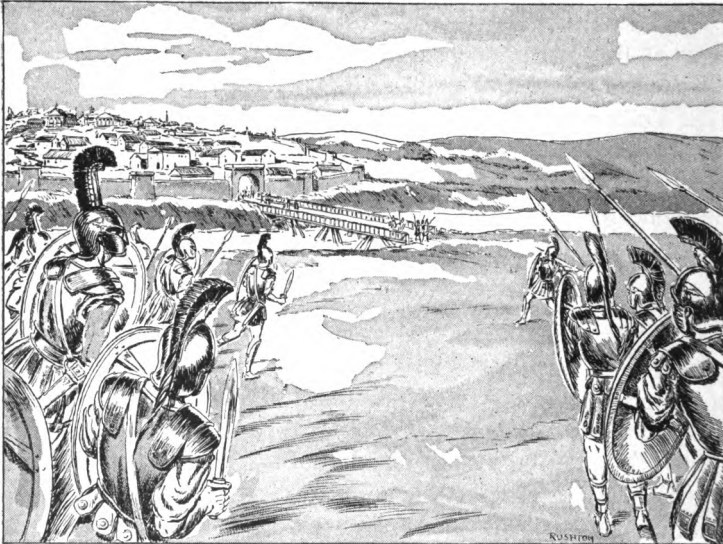
1. At the third hour the diligent boys will give their compositions to Orbilius. 2. To some boys he will give praise, to others he will not. 3. The mind of the first boy who had answered badly was wretched. 4. Not even the second boy knew the numbers. 5. Orbilius beat both boys because they had not remembered their numbers. 6. Titus, mindful of the numbers, did not reply, "I do not know"; he added seven fingers to three fingers with great quickness.

7. Romulus called upon the father of the gods because the Sabines had seized the Capitoline Hill and the Romans were fleeing. 8. Many had been slain; and so the rest, terrified, were running hither and thither. 9. The Romans, bitterly reproached by Romulus, were strengthened by his words and put an end to their flight. 10. Many thousands of Romans have worshiped Romulus as god and father of the city.



## CHAPTER XXXVII

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES; DECLENSION OF THE COMPARATIVE; COMPARISON WITH *QUAM*; ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON



#### 359. DE HORATIO I

Apud Rōmānōs Horātius Cocles fuit *clārus* mīles. Horā-  
tius fuit <sup>more famous</sup> *clārīor* <sup>than</sup> vir <sup>than many</sup> quam multī principēs. Fuit *multis*  
<sup>kings</sup> *rēgibus* *clārīor*. Appellābātur <sup>most famous</sup> *clārīssimus* mīles Rōmānō-  
rum antiquōrum.

Quid fuit forte factum huius virī? Numquam *fortius*  
factum ā Rōmānō gestum est. Factum Horātī fuit fortissi-

mum; sōlus cōpiās hostium vicit. Factum nullius militis clāriōris et fortiōris umquam scriptum est. Numquam fābulam dē virō fortiōre, numquam fābulam dē factō clāriōre legētis. Fābula dē audāciā huius fortissimī et clārissimī militis etiam ā poētis scripta est. Facta nullōrum virōrum *fortiōrum* et *clāriōrum* umquam scripta sunt.

Ubi Tarquinius Superbus, postrēmus rēx Rōmānōrum, propter *ācerimās* iniūriās ex rēgnō expulsus est, *miserrimus* erat et auxilium ā rēge potentissimō Etruscōrum petivit. Lārs Porsena, rēx Etruscōrum, quī erat etiam Tarquiniō ācrior, Rōmam magnā cum celeritāte contendit. Sine morā fortissimis et celerrimis cōpiis montem Iāniculum occupāverat. Tum vērō Rōmānī magnō periculō



Fēmina Etrūsca

erant miseriorēs quam miserrimī servī. Nōn diūtius erat iter in urbem hostibus difficillimum. Pōns Sublicius, qui erat in flūmine Tiberī inter montem Iāniculum et urbem, sōlus hostēs prohibēbat. Ante oculos Rōmānōrum visio caedis et mortis miserrimae erat. Lārs Porsena deō crudēlissimō simillimus vidēbātur; itaque magnō terrōre mōti sunt.

360. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quālis vir fuit Horātius?    2. Quam clārus fuit?
3. Quis fuit multis rēgibus clārior?

4. Quam forte fuit factum Horātī? 5. Lēgīstīne fābulam dē factō ūllius mīlītis clārīōris et fortīōris? 6. Quī fābulam dē audāciā huius fortissimī et clārissimī mīlītis scrīpsērunt?

7. Quā dē causā Tarquinius ex rēgnō expulsus erat? 8. Quam ācer erat Porsena? 9. Quam miserī erant Rōmānī? 10. Cui fuit Porsena similimus?



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art

### Miles Italicus

ing the greatest degree, *clārissimus*, *most famous*. When we express these different degrees of an adjective we are giving the *comparison* of the adjective. In English we sometimes use suffixes in comparison, as in *bright*, *brighter*, *brightest*, and sometimes use *more* and *most*, as in *famous*, *more famous*, *most famous*. The three degrees of an adjective are called *positive degree*, *comparative degree*, and *superlative degree*; as, *clārus*, *clārīor*, *clārissimū*.

### Nōtā bene

Quam, *than*; as an interrogative adverb, *how?* or *how much?* to what degree? quā dē causā, *why?* for what reason?

### DISCUSSION

361. In the first paragraph of the story *Dē Horātīō I*, what are the phrases used to describe *Horātius*? Do the adjectives in these phrases differ in degree? The three degrees of the adjective *clārus* are expressed as follows: the simple form, *clārus*, *famous*; a form showing a greater degree, *clārīor*, *more famous*; and a form showing

In the second paragraph of the story, what are the three forms of the adjective *fortis* used to describe *factum*? Do they differ in degree? The forms *forte*, *fortius*, *fortissimum* show the comparison of a neuter adjective of the third declension. Since most adjectives follow the same rules for comparison, by studying and combining the forms of *clārus* and *fortis* we learn that adjectives are compared as follows:

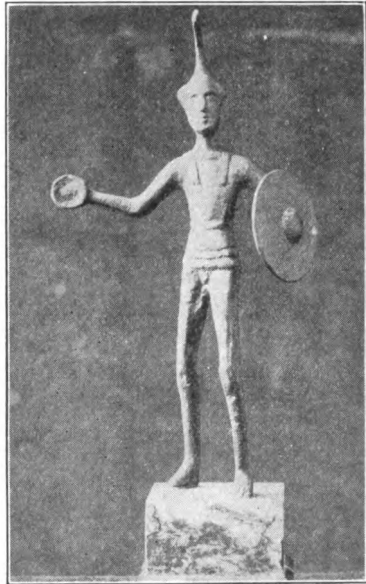
<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
<i>clārus, -a, -um</i>	<i>clārior, clārius</i>	<i>clārissimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>fortis, forte</i>	<i>fortior, fortius</i>	<i>fortissimus, -a, -um</i>

The meaning of the comparative degree is usually expressed in English by *more* or by the suffix *-er*; but often *rather*, *quite*, *too* will express the meaning better. In the same way the superlative may be expressed by *most* or by the suffix *-est*, and also by *very* or *exceedingly*. Thus *clārior* may be translated *rather famous, too famous, etc.*, and *clārissimus*, *very famous, exceedingly famous, etc.*

### RULES

**362.** The comparative degree of an adjective is regularly formed by adding *-ior* (m., f.) and *-ius* (n.) to the base of the positive form.

**363.** The superlative degree is regularly formed by adding *-issimus, -a, -um*, to the base of the positive.



*Courtesy of The Barnes Art Foundation*

**Miles Etruscus**

**364.** To determine the declension of the comparative degree of an adjective, study the second paragraph of the story. What case of the adjective establishes the declension of the comparative? *Clāriōris* and *fortiōris* agree with *mīlitis* and are in the genitive case. They show that the comparative degree of an adjective is in the third declension. What form tells whether it is an *i*-stem or not? *Fortiōrum* and *clāriōrum* are in the genitive plural and indicate that the stem is a consonant stem. The ending of the ablative singular is usually *-e*, as shown in *clariōre*, *fortiōre*.

The declension of the comparative is as follows:

<i>Singular</i>		
	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>fortior</i>	<i>fortius</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>fortiōris</i>	<i>fortiōris</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>fortiōrī</i>	<i>fortiōrī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>fortiōrem</i>	<i>fortius</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>fortiōre</i>	<i>fortiōre</i>
<i>Plural</i>		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>fortiōrēs</i>	<i>fortiōra</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>fortiōrum</i>	<i>fortiōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>fortiōribus</i>	<i>fortiōribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>fortiōrēs</i>	<i>fortiōra</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>fortiōribus</i>	<i>fortiōribus</i>

The declension of the superlative can be readily determined by studying the phrases *clārissimus mīles*, *fortissimum factum*, and *clārissimī et fortissimī mīlitis*.

#### RULES

**365.** The comparative degree of any adjective is an adjective of two terminations in the third declension, with a consonant stem.

**366.** The superlative degree of any adjective is an adjective of the first-and-second declension in *-us*, *-a*, *-um*.

**367.** Some adjectives have an unusual comparison. In the third paragraph of the story, find different degrees of the adjectives *miser*, *celer*, and *acer*. Is the comparative of these adjectives like that of *clarus*? Is the superlative? You can make the superlative degree of adjectives ending in *-er* by adding the ending *-rimus* directly to the nominative masculine singular.

**368.** Study the following forms:

*miser, misera, miserum*

*comp.*, *miserior, miserius*; *superl.*, *miserrimus, -a, -um*

*pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum*

*comp.*, *pulchrior, pulchrius*; *superl.*, *pulcherrimus, -a, -um*

*celer, celeris, celere*

*comp.*, *celerior, celerius*; *superl.*, *celerrimus, -a, -um*

*acer, acris, acre*

*comp.*, *acrior, acrius*; *superl.*, *acerrimus, -a, -um*

**369.** In the two sentences *Nōn diūtius erat iter in urbem hostibus difficillimum*, and *Lārs Porsena deō crūdēlissimō simillimus vidēbātur*, how is the superlative degree of the adjectives *difficilis* and *similis* formed? Is the superlative of *crūdēlis* formed in the same way? Six adjectives ending in *-lis* form the superlative by adding *-limus* to the base of the positive; as, *difficillimus, simillimus*. They are *facilis, easy*; *difficilis, hard*; *similis, like*; *dissimilis, unlike*; *gracilis, slender*; and *humilis, low*. Memorize this list. All other adjectives ending in *-lis* form their superlative regularly; as, *nōbilissimus, crūdēlissimus*.

**370.** In the sentence *Hōrātius fuit clārior vir quam multī principēs*, with what is the noun *Hōrātius* compared? How is the comparison expressed? In what case is *vir*? In what case is *principēs*? Comparison of two nouns may be expressed by using the conjunction *quam, than*. The second

noun must then be in the same case as the first; as, *vir, nominative, principēs, nominative*. Find another example of this construction in the story.

**371.** In the sentence *Fuit multīs rēgibus clārior*, with what is the subject of *fuit* compared? Is the word *quam* used? In what case is *multīs rēgibus*? In what case is the subject



*Courtesy of Mary A. Grant, Ph.D.*

### Via Rōmāna

Paved by the Romans, this road is still in use

of *fuit*? Comparison may also be expressed by the ablative without *quam* if the first of the two words compared is in the nominative or accusative.

**372.** In the sentence *Ubi Tarquinius Superbus propter ācerrimās iniūriās ex rēgnō expulsus est*, what does the phrase *propter ācerrimās iniūriās* show? How is it made? Cause may be shown by using the preposition *propter* and the accusative. You will remember that cause may also be shown by using the ablative (see § 321).

## RULES

373. *Comparison with quam.* When *quam* is used to express comparison, the two words compared must be in the same case.

374. *Ablative of comparison.* The ablative without *quam* may be used to express comparison if the first of the two words compared is in the nominative or accusative.

375. *Cause expressed by a prepositional phrase.* The preposition *propter* followed by the accusative may be used to express cause.

## VOCABULARY XXXVII

audācia, -ae, f., <i>boldness</i>	postrēmus, -a, -um, <i>last</i>
*contendō, -ere, contendī, contentus, <i>fight; hasten</i>	*propter, prep. (with acc.), <i>on account of, because of</i>
crūdēlis, crūdēle, <i>cruel, fierce</i>	*quam, conj., <i>than</i>
expellō, -ere, expulī, expulsus, <i>drive out, expel</i>	*similis, simile, <i>like, similar</i>
Iāniculum, -ī, n., <i>Janiculum</i> , a hill across the Tiber from the Forum	*sine, prep. (with abl.), <i>without</i>
*iniūria, -ae, f., <i>wrong, injury, insult</i>	sublicius, -a, -um, <i>built upon piles; Pōns Sublicius</i> , the <i>Pile Bridge</i> , a bridge over the Tiber
*mora, -ae, f., <i>delay</i>	terror, terrōris, m., <i>terror, great fear</i>
*mors, mortis, mortium, f., <i>death</i>	*umquam, adv., <i>ever</i>
*oculus, -ī, m., <i>eye</i>	*videor, -ēri, visus sum, <i>be seen, seem, seem best</i>
*pōns, pontis, pontium, m., <i>bridge</i>	vīsiō, vīsiōnis, f., <i>vision</i>

*Idioms*

quā dē causā, *wherefore? for what reason?* (interrogative);  
 wherefore, for which reason (relative)



## 376.

## LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Explain the meaning of the italicized words:

1. The pirates of the Barbary coast were men of the greatest *audacity*.
2. Some people are naturally *contentious*.
3. *Expulsion* from school is a great disgrace.
4. Dr. Jones is a famous *oculist*.

## DRILL

I. Compare the following adjectives:

clārus	lātus	longus	brevis
audāx	ācer	miser	pulcher
facilis	dissimilis	nōbilis	crūdēlis

II. *Decline in the singular:* mora brevior, iter difficile, terror ācrior, oculus clārior.

III. *Decline in the plural the Latin expressions for:* more cruel injuries, longer bridges, swifter rivers, braver animals.

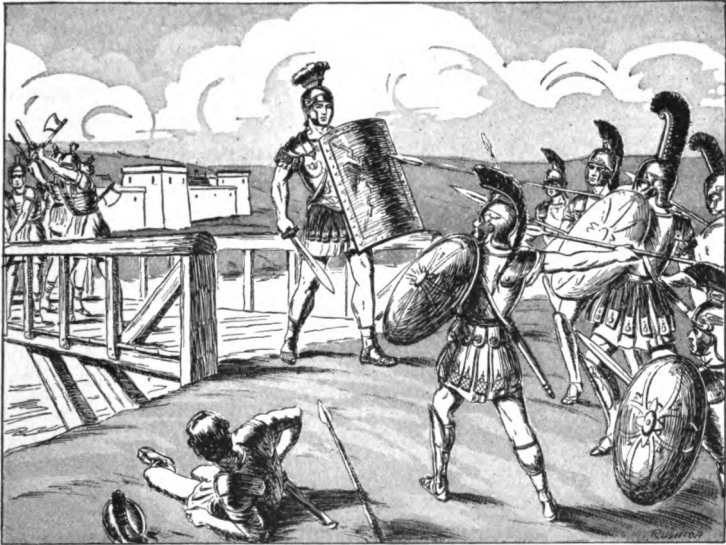
## EXERCISE XXXVII

*Write in Latin:*

1. The last king of Rome was very cruel.
2. Because he had been expelled from Roman territory, the king, in great wretchedness (the very wretched king), was seeking help from Porsena.
3. The deeds of Porsena were more cruel than the insults of Tarquinius.
4. Porsena's face was very like the face of a fierce animal.
5. The eyes of the Romans were filled with visions of death and slaughter.
6. Never will the Romans see a more extensive (wider) camp than that of the cruel Porsena.
7. The Romans were greatly terrified at the boldness of the enemy (were moved with great fear on account of the boldness of the enemy).
8. The Etruscans hastened without delay to the Pile Bridge.
9. Then indeed the city was in the greatest danger.
10. Will any soldier ever be braver than Horatius?

## CHAPTER XXXVIII

### IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION



377.

### DĒ HORĀTIŌ II

Horātius Coclēs cum aliis militibus Rōmānis pontem dēfendēbat. Subitō cōpiās Porsenae infimum ad montem dēcurrentēs vidērunt. Itaque magnō terrōre commōtī alii in aliam partem fugiēbant. Tum Horātius clāmāvit: “Quā dē causā, Rōmānī, fugitis? Timētisne mortem? Cōpiae Etruscōrum sunt *magnae*; sunt *multis milibus* militum

*maiōrēs* quam nostrae cōpiae; sed virtūs Rōmāna est *maxima* et semper omnia vincet. Sī militēs *malī* Porsenae pontem tenuerint, civēs Rōmānōs in servitūtem dabunt. Estne mors servitūte *peior*? Civibus Rōmānīs, vērō, servitūs est longē *pessimum* malum. Rōmānī numquam servī erunt. Hic minimus pōns sōlus coniugēs liberōsque nostrōs dēfendit. Nōne nōs igitur *hōc ponte* Etrūscōs prohibēbimus? Nōne nostrās coniugēs liberōsque *ab hostibus* liberābimus? Sī ferrō ignique pontem vōs dēlēbitis, ego sōlus in extrēmō ponte stāns hostēs prohibēbō. Ācerrimae cōpiae Etrūscōrum hunc pontem nōn tenēbunt!”

Haec dixit et extrēmum ad pontem cucurrit. Herminius et Lartius, duo militēs optimī, ad Horātium properāvērunt. Hī trēs erant *multō* audaciōrēs cūctīs Etrūscīs et eōs *ā ponte* prohibēbant. Cēterī Rōmānī maximō cum studiō pontem dēlēbant. Mox Horātius Herminiō et Lartiō clāmāvit, “Pontem relinquite, meī comitēs. Ad cēterōs Rōmānōs properāte. Ego sōlus in ponte manēbō!” Eī Horātium reliquērunt, et ad terram firmam cucurrērunt. Tum hostēs clāmāntēs tēla in Horātium misērunt, sed Horātius, rūpī simillimus, scūtō tēla eōrum accipiēbat. Tandem pōns magnō fragōre in flūmen cecidit. Horātius deum flūminis invocāns impeditus in flūmen dēsiluit, et ad terram tūtus vēnit.

Sic Horātius *magnum* et *bonum* factum ēgit. Nūllus mīles umquam erat Horātiō *maior*; nūllus mīles umquam erat Horātiō *melior*. Etiam hodiē hominēs fābulam dē *maximā* et *optimā* virtūte Horāti nārrant.

Pessimum malum, *the worst evil*. Malum is used as a noun.

### 378. Respondē Latinē:

1. Cuius cōpiās militēs Rōmānī vidērunt? 2. Quō cōpiae dēcurrēbant? 3. Quō militēs Rōmānī fugiēbant? 4. Quam magnae sunt cōpiae Etrūscōrum? 5. Quam magna est

virtūs Rōmāna? 6. Estne mors servitūte peior? 7. Nōne Horātius ponte Etrūscōs prohibēbit? 8. Ā quibus militēs Rōmānī coniugēs liberōsque liberābunt? 9. Quōmodo militēs Rōmānī pontem dēlēbunt?

10. Quō Horātius cucurrit? 11. Quālēs militēs erant Herminius et Lartius? 12. Quam audācēs erant eī militēs? 13. Cui erat Horātius simillimus? 14. Eratne ūllus mīles Horātiō maior?

### DISCUSSION

**379.** In the story *Dē Horātiō II* are found the forms of several adjectives that are compared irregularly. In the sentence *Cōpiae Etrūscōrum sunt magnae . . .*, find the three degrees of the adjective *magnus*. They are *magnus, maior, maximus*. Is this comparison made according to the rules of comparison? In the sentence *Sī militēs malī Por-senae pontem tenuerint . . .*, and in the following sentences, find the three degrees of the adjective *malus*. They are *malus, peior, pessimus*. In the last paragraph of the story find the three degrees of the adjective *bonus*. They are *bonus, melior, optimus*.

**380.** Several other irregular forms are found in the story. They are *īnīmus*, which serves as the superlative of the adjective *īnferus*, *low*; *minimus*, serving as the superlative of *parvus*, *small*; and *extrēmus*, the superlative of *exterus*,



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art

### Militēs Etrūscī

These warriors form part of the decoration on an Etruscan chariot which was found in the tomb of an Etruscan nobleman (see p. 313)

*outside*. These are all irregular in their comparison; that is, their forms are not made according to the rules for comparing adjectives (see §§ 362, 363). The only way to learn the comparison of such adjectives is to memorize them thoroughly at once.

**381.** The most important examples of irregular comparison are as follows:

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>
bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i>	melior, melius, <i>better</i>
malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i>	peior, peius, <i>worse</i>
magnus, -a, -um, <i>great</i>	maior, maius, <i>greater</i>
parvus, -a, -um, <i>small</i>	minor, minus, <i>less</i>
multus, -a, -um, <i>much</i>	—, plūs, <i>more</i> (sing.)
multī, -ae, -a, <i>many</i>	plūrēs, plūra, <i>more</i> (pl.)

<i>Superlative</i>
optimus, -a, -um, <i>best</i>
pessimus, -a, -um, <i>worst</i>
maximus, -a, -um, <i>greatest</i>
minimus, -a, -um, <i>least</i>
plūrimus, -a, -um, <i>most</i> (sing. or pl.)

The following are also used rather frequently:

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>
inferus, -a, -um, <i>low</i>	inferior, inferius
exter or exterus, -a, -um, <i>outside</i>	exterior, exterius
superus, -a, -um, <i>high</i>	superior, superius

<i>Superlative</i>
īnfirmus, -a, -um; īmus, -a, -um
extrēmus, -a, -um
summus, -a, -um; suprēmus, -a, -um

**382.** Phrases containing the adjectives *summus*, *extrēmus*, and *īnfirmus* are often translated idiomatically: *summus*



### Militēs socium mortuum portant

This group in bronze formed the handle of a box made in the fourth century B.C. Though the figures appear crude when compared with modern sculpture, they show a good deal of rugged vigor. They typify the military spirit of the early Romans

*mōns*, the top of the mountain; *infimus mōns*, the bottom of the mountain; *extrēmus pōns*, the end of the bridge. (See § 239.)

383. Several adjectives are compared by using the adverbs *magis*, *more*, and *maximē*, *most*; as, *idōneus*, *suitable*; *magis idōneus*, *more suitable*; *maximē idōneus*, *most suitable*.

384. In the sentence *Cōpiae Etrūscōrum sunt magnae; sunt multīs milibus militum maiōrēs quam nostrae cōpiae*,

what phrase tells how much greater the forces of the Etruscans are than the forces of the Romans? This phrase shows the amount of difference between the two sets of forces, indicated specifically by the ablative *mīlibus*.

The sentence *Hī trēs erant multō audāciōrēs cūctīs Etrūscīs* may be translated, *These three were bolder by much, or much bolder, than all the Etruscans*. What does the word *multō* show? *Multō*, which is in effect a substantive in the ablative, used as an adverb, shows how much bolder these men were than the Etruscans. It shows the degree of difference in their boldness. English has a very similar construction, sometimes using *by*, sometimes omitting it, as in the sentences "Charles is taller than Mary *by a head*," "Charles is *a year* older than Mary."

When two persons or things are compared, then, the amount of the difference between them is often specified. This amount of difference is expressed by a noun in the ablative; the ablative so used is called *ablative of degree of difference*.

**385.** In the sentence *Nōnne nōs igitur hōc ponte Etrūscōs prohibēbimus*, what phrase shows that from which the Etruscans were to be kept away? What is the case of the noun in this phrase? Is a preposition used? In the sentence *Hī trēs erant multō audāciōrēs cūctīs Etrūscīs et eōs ā ponte prohibēbant*, what phrase shows from what the three kept the Etruscans? What case is used? Is there a preposition?

In the sentence *Nōnne coniugēs liberōsque nostrōs ab hostibus liberābimus*, what phrase shows from whom the wives and children are to be freed? In what case is *hostibus*? Is there a preposition in this phrase?

With verbs meaning *keep (from)*, *free*, *separate*, etc., the idea of separation is expressed by the ablative, sometimes with, sometimes without, a preposition.

## RULES

**386. Ablative of degree of difference.** The ablative is used to express the degree of difference between two objects compared.

**387. Ablative of separation.** The ablative, sometimes with a preposition, sometimes without, may be used to express separation.

## VOCABULARY XXXVIII

*cēterī, -ae, -a, <i>the rest of;</i> as a pronoun, ( <i>the</i> ) <i>others</i> comes, comitis, m., <i>companion,</i> <i>comrade</i>	*ferrum, -ī, n., <i>iron; sword</i> fragor, fragōris, m., <i>crashing,</i> <i>noise</i> impeditus, -a, -um, <i>burdened,</i> <i>hindered</i>
commoveō, -ēre, commōvī, commōtus, <i>stir up, move</i> <i>deeply, alarm</i>	*infimus, -a, -um, <i>lowest</i>
cūctus, -a, -um, <i>all, entire,</i> <i>the whole (of)</i>	*liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>set</i> <i>free, free, liberate</i>
dēcurrō, -ere, dēcurrī or dēcucurrī, dēcursūrus, <i>run</i> <i>down, run</i>	*magis, adv., <i>more</i> multō, adv., <i>much</i> rūpēs, rūpis, rūpium, f., <i>cliff,</i> <i>rock</i>
*dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī, dē- fēnsus, <i>defend, guard</i>	*servitūs, servitūtis, f., <i>slavery,</i> <i>servitude</i>
dēsiliō, -īre, dēsiliū, dēsul- tus, <i>leap down</i>	*tūtus, -a, -um, <i>safe, secure,</i> <i>out of danger</i>

*Idioms*

infimus mōns, *the bottom of the mountain;* summus mōns, *the top of the mountain;* extrēmus pōns, *the end of the bridge*

**388. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE**

I. Pick out the Latin words in the vocabulary with which the following are associated: *desultory, defendant, infirmity.*

II. *Fe* (for Latin *ferrum*) is the chemical symbol for iron.





### Horātius in nummō signātus

On this old Roman coin, Horatius is seen swimming the Tiber. A Roman with uplifted ax is still chopping at the bridge. The head of the Roman emperor Antoninus Pius is stamped on the other side of the coin

III. The abbreviation *etc.* stands for *et cētera*, which means *and others*, but is usually translated *and so forth*.

### DRILL

I. Compare the following adjectives, giving all the genders for each degree:

celer	īferus	magnus	similis
nōbilis	multus	exterus	firmus
bonus	parvus	crūdēlis	clārus

II. Express the following phrases in Latin in the designated case:

Very bad companions (*gen.*); greater crashing (*acc.*); the bottom of the mountain (*nom.*); very firm rocks (*acc.*); worse slavery (*dat.*); the end of the road (*abl.*); rather good swords (*dat.*); the tops of the trees (*abl.*).

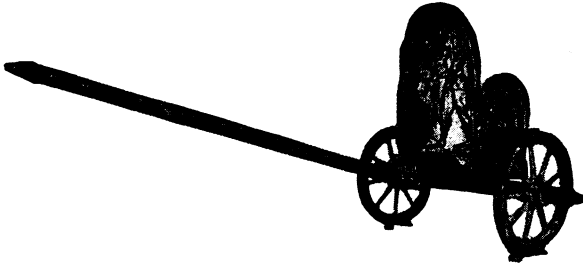
III. Express the italicized phrases in Latin:

1. Horatius is near *the end of the bridge*.
2. The soldiers stand like *very firm rocks*.
3. Slavery is *much worse than death*.
4. Horatius had a *very keen mind*.
5. He is desirous of *very little praise*.

## EXERCISE XXXVIII

*Write in Latin:*

1. Horatius, who was defending the bridge, was very like a god. 2. "Slavery," says Horatius, "is much more suitable for the enemy than for Romans." 3. This brave soldier with two companions kept off many thousands of the enemy. 4. In the meantime the others, stirred by the greatest terror, were destroying the bridge with fire and iron. 5. The whole city, safe again, heard the great crashing of the bridge. 6. Horatius, burdened with his weapons, will leap down from the end of the bridge into the river. 7. The companions of Horatius were at the bottom of the cliff. 8. These ran down to the river and dragged him to dry land (*ad terram firmam*).



*Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art*

**Currus Etrūscus**

A closer view of the decoration on this chariot is given on page 307

CHAPTER XXXIX  
COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE  
*POSSUM*  
*VOLŌ, NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ*



389. DĒ DAEDALŌ ET ICARŌ I

Multis ante annis Daedalus cum Īcarō, parvō filiō, Athēnīs ad insulam Crētā fūgit quod ab Athēnārum cīvibus damnātus erat. Primō Minōs, rēx Crētae, eum benignē accēpit; nam Daedalus erat vir artium perītissimus et rēgem *iuvāre poterat*. Sed postea rēx Daedalō et Īcarō fuit inimicus et

eōs in custōdiam dedit. Mare et terra ā custōdibus rēgis custōdiēbantur. Daedalus, tamen, patriam vidēre cupiēbat et semper cōnsilia fugae cōgitābat. Sic sēcum cōgitābat: “Nōne novās artēs *facere possum?* Nōne ego et Īcarus ā Crētā fugere possumus?”

Tandem parvum filium ad sē vocat. “Mīnōs quidem nāvis et mīlitibus mare terramque regere potest. Caelum, vērō, regere nōn potest. Ā caelō nullī custōdēs nōs prohibēre possunt. Ego ālās facere possum; tum nōs Athēnās mox revenīre possumus. Tū, parve fili, mē iuvāre potes.

“Tū et tuī custōdēs, Mīnōs, *vinci potestis.* Callidus es, Mīnōs, sed callidior est Daedalus; nōn *terrēri potest.* Mare et terra ā tē *custōdirī* et *regī* possunt. Sed caelum ā tē *occupārī* nōn potest. Ē caelō neque vocārī neque *capī* possumus.

“Effugere nōn potui; nunc dēmum hanc aliēnam insulam relinquere poterō. Nōs Graeciam iterum vidēre poterimus. Tū, mī fili, Athēnīs habitāre poteris. Cīvis Athēnārum esse dēbēs. Nunc properāre dēbeō; negōtium enim est difficile.”

Hōc modō Daedalus effugere cōstituit. Tum is multās pennās comparāvit. Ē pennis cērāque ālās levēs fēcit. Sed Īcarus opus saepe impediēbat. Tum eius pater rogābat, “*Visne relinquere Crētā, mī fili?*” “Certē, pater, *volō fugere.*” “Quārē, igitur, pennis lūdīs?” “Pennae, pater, sunt levēs et pulchrae. Ventus eās hūc et illūc mittit. Mē iuvat pennis lūdere.” “Sed nōs ālās *facere volumus.* Sī adultī opus *facere volunt*, nōn lūdunt; tū puer lūdere nōn dēbēs.” “Ego labōrābō. In Crētā *manēre nōlō.* Ego quoque Athēnīs *habitāre mālō.*”

Sic dēmum ālae sunt parātae; Daedalus Īcarō eās dēmōnstrat. Ālae Īcarum dēlectant, nam ālis avis simillimae esse videntur. Poteruntne Daedalus et Īcarus eis ālis volāre?

## Nōtā bene

Mīnōs, Mīnōis, *Mīnos*, a king of Crete.

Mē iuvat pennīs lūdere, *it pleases me to play with the feathers;*  
that is, *I like to play with the feathers.*

## 390. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quandō Daedalus cum filiō parvō ad Crētam fūgit?

2. Quālis vir erat Daedalus?

3. Cūr rēx eum benignē accēpit? 4. Cūr Daedalus et Īcarus ā Crētā fugere nōn poterant?

5. Quid Daedalus Īcarō dē rēge nārrat? 6. Quid Daedalus Īcaro dē sē nārrat?

7. Quid ā rēge agī potest?

8. Quid ambō iterum agere poterunt? 9. Cūr Daedalus properāre dēbet?

10. Quid Daedalus agere cōstituit? 11. Quōmodo ālās facere poterat?

12. Quid



## Labyrinthus

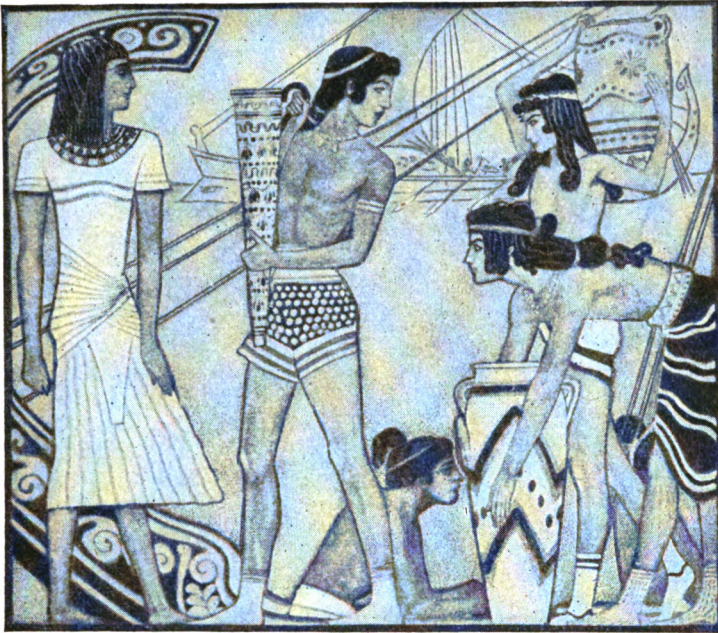
When Daedalus was in Crete, he built the labyrinth for the king. The Minotaur, a famous monster, was confined in the center of the labyrinth

pater rogābat? 13. Ubi Īcarus manēre nōn vult? 14. Ubi Īcarus habitāre māvult?

15. Quālēs sunt ālae Daedali? 16. Quōmodo Daedalus et Īcarus volāre poterunt?

## DISCUSSION

391. In the sentence Nōnne novās artēs facere possum, what part of the word *possum* is familiar? List the other forms of this verb found in the first four paragraphs of the story *Dē Daedalō et Īcarō I*. What forms belong to the present tense of this verb? to the imperfect tense? to



### Mercâtôrēs Crêtēnsēs

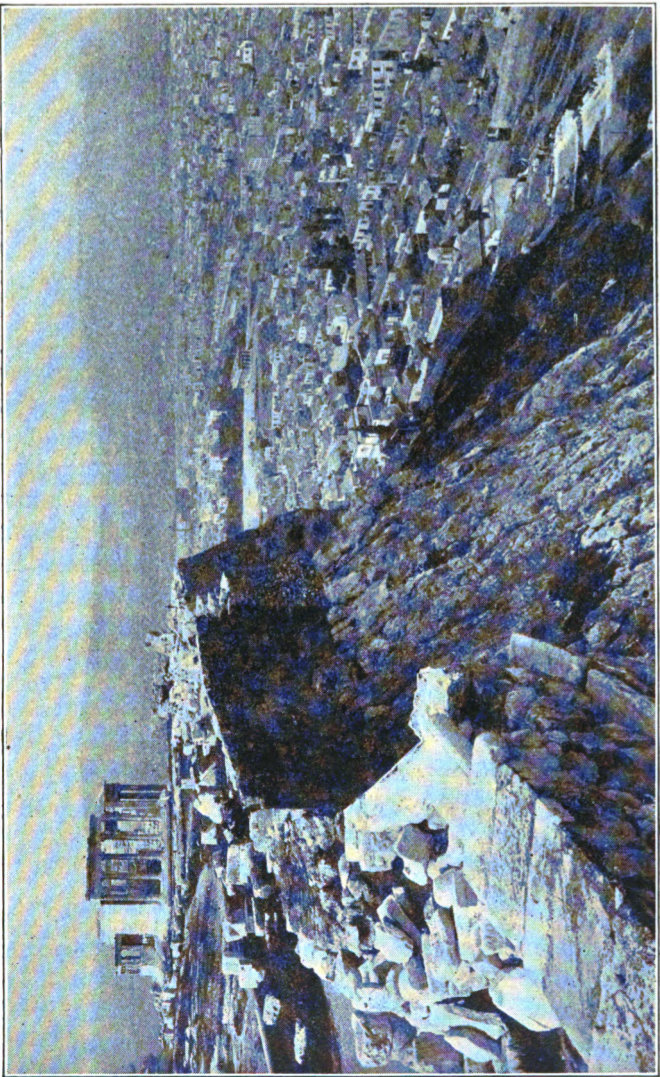
Crete was an early center of civilization, and Cretan merchants went to all the Mediterranean countries with the Cretan wares. Notice the boats in the picture. Can you tell from the costume of the man on the left with what country the merchants are trading?

the future tense? What syllables are used with the various tenses of *sum* to form this verb? To what forms of *sum* are the letters *pos-* prefixed? What prefix is used with all other forms of *sum*? The verb *possum* is a compound of the adjective *potis*, *able*, and the verb *sum* and has the meaning, *I am able*, *I can*. The present, imperfect, and future tenses of this verb may be found by prefixing the syllable *pot-* or *pos-* to the present, imperfect, and future tenses of *sum*. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect are formed on the third principal part, as in other verbs.

392. Learn the following paradigm of *possum*. Observe carefully the spelling of the pluperfect and the future perfect forms.

<b>Present</b>	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>possum, I am able, I can, etc.</i>	<i>possumus</i>
<i>potes</i>	<i>potestis</i>
<i>potest</i>	<i>possunt</i>
<b>Imperfect</b>	
<i>poteram, I was able, I could, etc.</i>	<i>poterāmus</i>
<i>poterās</i>	<i>poterātis</i>
<i>poterat</i>	<i>poterant</i>
<b>Future</b>	
<i>poterō, I shall be able, etc.</i>	<i>poterimus</i>
<i>poteris</i>	<i>poteritis</i>
<i>poterit</i>	<i>poterunt</i>
<b>Perfect</b>	
<i>potuī, I have been able, I could, etc.</i>	<i>potuimus</i>
<i>potuistī</i>	<i>potuistis</i>
<i>potuit</i>	<i>potuērunt</i>
<b>Pluperfect</b>	
<i>potueram, I had been able, etc.</i>	<i>potuerāmus</i>
<i>potuerās</i>	<i>potuerātis</i>
<i>potuerat</i>	<i>potuerant</i>
<b>Future Perfect</b>	
<i>potuerō, I shall have been able, etc.</i>	<i>potuerimus</i>
<i>potueris</i>	<i>potueritis</i>
<i>potuerit</i>	<i>potuerint</i>

393. What verb form accompanies all the forms of *possum* that appear in the story? The meaning of *possum, I am able, or I can*, is often made fuller or more complete by adding an infinitive, called a *complementary infinitive*, which completes its meaning; as, *effugere possum, I am able to escape*,



Athēnae, urbs Graeciae clārrissima



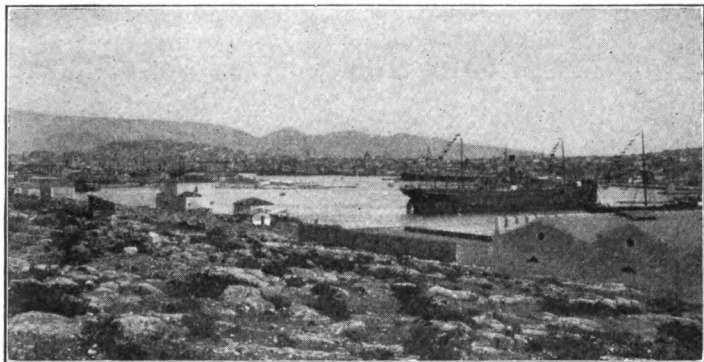
or *I can escape*. The subject of the verb *possum* is the person thought of as doing the action expressed in the infinitive.

394. In the second paragraph of the story, pick out the complementary infinitives and state the conjugation to which each belongs. The present active infinitive of regular verbs ends in *-re*. The vowel preceding the letters *-re* identifies the conjugation. In the third paragraph of the story, list the forms of *possum* and their complementary infinitives. Do the subjects of these phrases act or are they acted upon? If the subject of the phrase is acted upon, then the infinitive is passive. State the conjugation to which each infinitive belongs and give the present active infinitive. What change takes place in the present active infinitive to form the present passive infinitive of each conjugation? In the first, second, and fourth conjugations the final *-e* of the present active infinitive becomes *-ī*. In the third conjugation, including *-iō* verbs, the ending *-ere* is dropped and *-ī* is substituted.

395. Observe the following infinitive forms:

<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>
I. <i>portāre, to carry</i>	<i>portārī, to be carried</i>
II. <i>vidēre, to see</i>	<i>vidērī, to be seen, to seem</i>
III. <i>mittere, to send</i>	<i>mittī, to be sent</i>
<i>-iō</i> III. <i>capere, to take</i>	<i>capī, to be taken</i>
IV. <i>audire, to hear</i>	<i>audīrī, to be heard</i>

396. In the fifth paragraph of the story, various forms of the verb *volō, I wish*, are found. List these forms. Are these forms made from a regular stem? Since this verb has no regular stem, it is said to be an *irregular verb*. Its forms must be memorized thoroughly. There are only a few irregular verbs in Latin. From the word *volō* two others are formed. They are *nōlō*, composed of *ne* and *volō*,



### Piraeus, portus Graecus

Piraeus, the port of ancient Athens, is an important modern seaport

meaning *I am unwilling*, and *mālō*, composed of *magis* and *volō*, meaning *I am more willing*, or *I prefer*.

397. What do the verbs *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō* require to complete their meaning? Find other verbs in the story which require an infinitive to complete their meaning. Verbs meaning *decide*, *wish*, *try*, *seem*, *be able* are often followed by the infinitive; and also the various forms of *dēbeō*, *I ought*. Observe that the complementary infinitive immediately precedes the word upon which it depends. The negative *nōn* may intervene between the two. The complementary infinitive may be active or passive.

### RULE

398. *Complementary infinitive.* The infinitive may be used with certain verbs to complete the meaning.

399. Learn the conjugations of the following irregular verbs. Observe that all the tenses except the present are formed regularly according to the rules for the third conjugation.

volō, velle, voluī, —, *to be willing*  
 nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, *to be unwilling*  
 mālō, mālle, māluī, —, *to prefer*

<i>Present</i>	volō vīs vult volumus vultis volunt	nōlō nōn vīs nōn vult nōlumus nōn vultis nōlunt	mālō māvīs māvult mālumus māvultis mālunt
<i>Impf.</i>	volēbam <i>etc.</i>	nōlēbam <i>etc.</i>	mālēbam <i>etc.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	volam volēs <i>etc.</i>	nōlam nōlēs <i>etc.</i>	mālam mālēs <i>etc.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	voluī <i>etc.</i>	nōluī <i>etc.</i>	māluī <i>etc.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	volueram <i>etc.</i>	nōlueram <i>etc.</i>	mālueram <i>etc.</i>
<i>Fut. perf.</i>	voluērō <i>etc.</i>	nōluērō <i>etc.</i>	māluērō <i>etc.</i>

### READING LESSON

#### 400. DĒ DAEDALŌ ET ICARŌ II

Daedalus insulam primā lūce relinquere cōstituerat. Id tempus eī maximē idōneum fugae esse vidēbātur. Nunc Daedalus filiō parvō ālās dat et memor magni periculī sīc Īcarum monet: "Sī superior volābis, sōl cēram solvet; sī inferior volābis, aqua ālās tanget et tē impedit. Inter haec pericula volāre dēbēmus. Ego primus volābō; tū post mē volābis."



Nunc dēnum ambō sunt in caelō. Eī quī Daedalum et Īcarum per caelum volantēs spectant maximē commoventur. Eīs Daedalus et Īcarus deī esse videntur; nam deī sōlī caelum obtinent et volāre possunt.

Sine morā per caelum clārum volant. Graecia propior et cārior esse vidētur. Īcarus per caelum volāns est laetissimus. Sed propior sōlī esse vult. Mox est verbōrum patris oblītus; ad sōlem volat. Nōne cōnsilia patris, Īcare, memoriā tenēs? Nōne Graeciam vidēre vīs? Pater filium ad sōlem volantem videt et iterum eum monet. Eius verba frūstrā dīcuntur; nam sōl cēram solvit.

Nunc Īcarus perterritus volāre temptat. Sed volāre nōn potest; ālae āmittuntur. In mare cadit.

Daedalus fuit miserrimus et domum volāre nōluit. In marī corpus filī petīvit et invēnit. Tum pater sōlus volāvit.

## VOCABULARY XXXIX

<i>āla</i> , -ae, f., <i>wing</i>	* <i>nōlō</i> , <i>nōlle</i> , <i>nōluī</i> , —, <i>be unwilling</i>
<i>ars</i> , <i>artis</i> , <i>artium</i> , f., <i>art, skill, trick; device</i>	* <i>obtimeō</i> , -ēre, <i>obtinuī</i> , <i>obtentus</i> , <i>occupy, hold fast, possess</i>
<i>callidus</i> , -a, -um, <i>shrewd, skilful</i>	<i>parātus</i> , -a, -um, <i>prepared, ready</i>
<i>cēra</i> , -ae, f., <i>wax</i>	<i>penna</i> , -ae, f., <i>feather</i>
* <i>custōs</i> , <i>custōdis</i> , m., <i>guard, defender</i>	* <i>perītus</i> , -a, -um, <i>skilled, experienced</i>
<i>damnō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>condemn, convict</i>	* <i>possum</i> , <i>posse</i> , <i>potuī</i> , —, <i>be able, can</i>
* <i>dēbeō</i> , -ēre, <i>dēbuī</i> , <i>dēbitus</i> , <i>owe, ought</i>	<i>propior</i> , <i>propius</i> , <i>nearer</i>
<i>dēmum</i> , adv., <i>at length, at last</i>	<i>quārē</i> , interrog. adv., <i>wherefore? why?</i>
<i>effugiō</i> , -ere, <i>effūgī</i> , —, <i>escape</i>	<i>solvō</i> , -ere, <i>solvī</i> , <i>solūtus</i> , <i>unbind, depart, dissolve</i>
* <i>iuvō</i> , -āre, <i>iūvī</i> , <i>iūtus</i> , <i>assist, help; iuvat, impersonal, it pleases, it is useful to</i>	* <i>temptō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>try, attempt</i>
* <i>levis</i> , <i>leve</i> , <i>light</i>	* <i>terreō</i> , -ēre, <i>terruī</i> , <i>territus</i> , <i>frighten, terrify</i>
* <i>mālō</i> , <i>mālle</i> , <i>māluī</i> , —, <i>wish more, prefer</i>	* <i>ventus</i> , -ī, m., <i>wind</i>
* <i>modus</i> , -ī, m., <i>measure, manner, way</i>	* <i>volō</i> , <i>velle</i> , <i>voluī</i> , —, <i>wish, be willing</i>

## 401. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. Explain the italicized words in the following sentences:

1. The invalid likes to *solve* puzzles.
2. *Levity* often creeps into the most serious assemblies.
3. *Debts* incurred through war become national burdens.

II. 1. *Semper paratus* is a familiar motto, meaning *always prepared, or ever ready*.



*Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art*

### Pōculum Graecum

A cup from the country of Daedalus, made with the skill for which Greek artists and craftsmen were famous

2. *Possunt quia posse videntur* is a familiar Vergilian quotation, meaning *they are able because they seem to be able*, but generally translated *they can because they think they can*.

### DRILL

I. Give a synopsis of the following verbs in the person and number indicated:

possum, third singular

dēbeō, third plural active

cōstituō, first singular active

videor, first plural

solvō, third singular active

volō, second singular

nōlō, third singular

mālō, third plural

II. Give the present active and passive infinitives of the Latin verbs for the following:

move

condemn

defend

hear

seize

give

destroy

decide

throw

fortify

occupy

prepare

III. Express the italicized verb phrases in Latin:

1. Skilled men alone *can fly*.

2. Guards *seemed to be placed* everywhere.

3. *I have decided to be* brave.

4. Daedalus *ought to be praised*.
5. Icarus *did not wish to be left on the island*.
6. The little boy *wishes to hold the feathers in his fingers*.
7. Daedalus *preferred to accomplish his task*.
8. Icarus *wishes to fly with his new wings*.

## EXERCISE XXXIX

*Write in Latin:*

1. Very many men skilled in the arts have tried to fly with wings. 2. Daedalus, who had been condemned in Athens, was able to escape to Crete. 3. At first the king of Crete was very friendly, but later he put Daedalus under arrest. 4. The king's guards were able to control the sea and land. 5. The shrewd king could not possess the sky; and he could not terrify (neither could he terrify) Daedalus. 6. And so Daedalus, moved by the greatest longing for Greece, made wings out of feathers. 7. The wind seemed to play with the very light feathers; and so the little boy wished to play also. 8. At length the wings are ready; in this way both will be able to escape from the very wicked king. 9. Icarus ought not to leave his father; for the sun will melt (dissolve) the wax. 10. Icarus was unwilling to fly behind his father; he preferred to be nearer the sun.

## CHAPTER XL

### FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION



402.

DĒ C. MŪCIŌ I

Fābulam lēgimus dē Horātiō, quī Etruscōs ā ponte prohibuit. Quamquam Lārs Porsena ita ab Horātiō pulsus erat, tamen ab urbe Rōmā nōn discessit. *Longē lātē*que castra eius in rīpīs Tiberis pertinēbant. Porsenae castra *longius et lātius* quam Rōma ipsa pertinēbant. Rēx Etruscōrum, quod victus erat, irātissimus erat. Itaque trāns flūmen Tiberim castra posuerat et Rōmam obsidēbat.

(327)



Senātōrēs Rōmānī castra in omnēs partēs *longissimē* et *lātissimē* pertinentia vidērunt. Itaque timōre magnopere mōtī sunt. Omnēs magnō in periculō erant. Nēmō ex urbe excēdere poterat; nēmō in urbem prōcēdere poterat. Interim Rōmae erat maxima inopia frūmentī. Frūstrā senātōrēs auxilium ā deīs immortālibus petivērunt. Famem mortemque miserrimē expectābant.

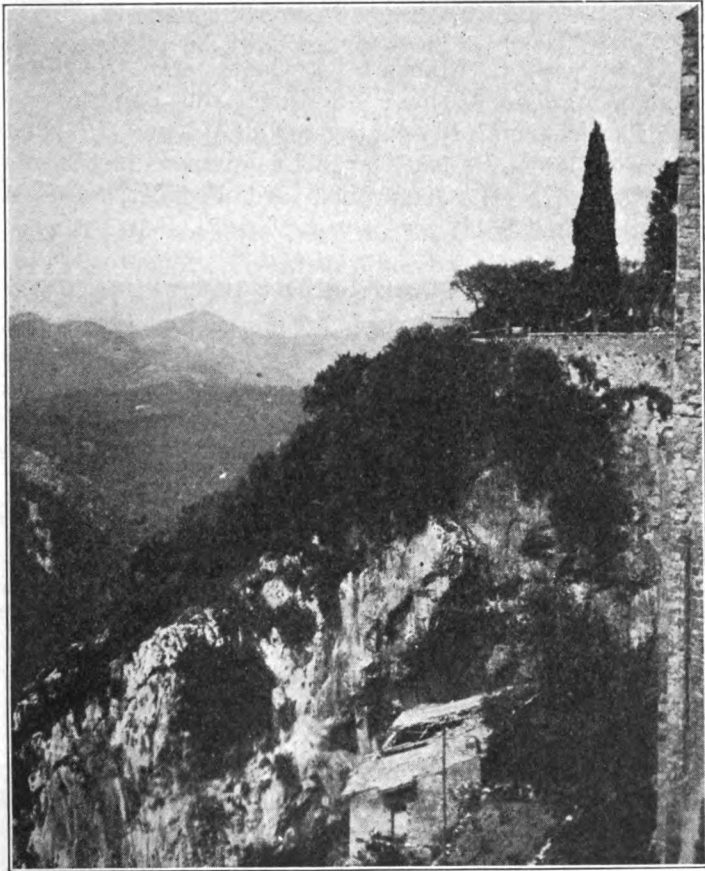
C. Mūcius erat nōbilis iuvenis *magnā virtūte*. Ad senātōrēs, virōs maximā auctōritāte, *fortiter* vēnit et audācter dixit. “Lārs Porsena, vir audācissimus,” inquit, “Rōmam iam diū obsidet. Diūtissimē civēs nostrōs perterruit. Diūtiusne eum tolerāre dēbēmus? Ego sōlus ad castra hostium *celeriter* prōcēdere volō. Nōn *celerius* quam ego sagitta ipsa volābit. Ego enim civis Rōmānus civēs Rōmānōs ab hōc periculō et ab hīs hostibus *celerrimē* liberābō! Probatīsne mea cōnsilia?”

Senātōrēs haec verba dīligenter cōgitantēs, ita respondērunt: “Bene dixistī, C. Mūcī! Nē senātor quidem melius dixit. Nam Lārs Porsena, vir maximā audāciā, male ēgit. Nullī hostēs umquam peius ēgērunt. Lārs Porsena pessimē ēgit quod nostram urbem sine causā oppugnāvit. Sī tua cōnsilia optimē perfēceris, populō Rōmānō maximum beneficium dabis et ā populō Rōmānō semper laudāberis.”

#### Nōtā bene

403. The early Latin alphabet did not have the letter G, and C was used for the sound of both C and G. The initial letter that used to stand for Gāius was therefore written C, and even after G was adopted into the alphabet, C was still used to stand for Gāius. Hence the C. of the title stands in this place for Gāiō, and should be so read. The C. in the fourth paragraph stands for the vocative Gāi.

Lārs Porsena Rōmam iam diū obsidet, *Lars Porsena has been besieging Rome for a long time*. Observe that with iam diū, a present tense should often be translated into English by a present perfect.



*Courtesy of Mary A. Grant, Ph.D.*

### Montēs in Etrūriā

#### 404. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Pertinēbantne castra Porsenae longē lātēque? 2. Pertinēbatne Rōma longius et lātius quam castra Porsenae?
3. Quid senātōrēs Rōmānī vīdērunt? 4. Ā quibus senā-

tōrēs auxilium petivērunt? 5. Quōmodo famem et mortem expectābant?

6. Quālis erat C. Mūcius? 7. Quālēs erant senātōrēs? 8. Quōmodo dixit Mūcius? 9. Quam diū Porsena cīvēs Rōmānōs perterruit? 10. Quid agere vult Mūcius? 12. Quam celeriter prōcēdet Mūcius? 13. Ā quibus liberābuntur cīvēs Rōmānī? 14. Quam male ēgit Porsena? 15. Cūr Porsena pessimē ēgit?

### DISCUSSION

405. In the sentence *Longē lātēque castra eius in ripis Tiberis pertinēbant*, how are the words *longē* and *lātē* used? If they are used to modify the verb *pertinēbant*, what part of speech are they? From what Latin adjectives are they formed? To what declension do these two adjectives belong? How are the adverbs made?

In the sentence *Ad senātōrēs virōs maximā auctōritāte fortiter vēnit*, how is *fortiter* used? From what Latin adjective is it made? To what declension does this adjective belong? In the sentence *Ego sōlus ad castra hostium celeriter prōcēdere volō*, how is *celeriter* used? From what adjective is it made? To what declension does the adjective belong? Study these two adverbs *fortiter* and *celeriter* and state how they are made.

In the sentence *Senātōrēs haec verba dīligenter cōgitantēs, ita respondērunt*, how is the adverb *dīligenter* made?

### RULES

406. Adverbs may be made from adjectives of the first-and-second declension by adding *-ē* to the base of the positive degree of the adjective.

407. Adverbs may be made from adjectives of the third declension by adding *-iter* to the base of the positive degree of the adjective.

408. Adverbs may be made from adjectives of the third declension ending in *-ns* by adding *-er* to the base.

Examples of these formations are: *lātus*, *wide*, base *lāt-*, adverb *lātē*; *fortis*, *brave*, base *fort-*, adverb *fortiter*; *diligēns*, *careful*, base *diligent-*, adverb *diligenter*.

The adverb *audācter*, *boldly*, made on the base *audāc-*, has lost the *i* of the suffix *-iter*; as, *audāx-*, base *audāc-*, adverb *audācter*.

409. In the sentence *Bene dixistī, C. Mūcī*, what part of speech is *bene*? To what adjective does it correspond? In the sentence *Nam Lārs Porsena . . . male ēgit*, what part of speech is *male*? To what adjective does it correspond? Some adverbs appear to be irregularly formed from the corresponding adjectives; as, *bonus*, adverb *bene*, and *malus*, adverb *male* (*male* irregular because ending in *-e* instead of *-ē*); also *magnus*, adverb *magnopere*.

410. A few words used as adverbs are really the accusative neuter singular form of the corresponding adjective; as, *facilis*, *easy*, adverb *facile*; *multus*, *much*, *many*, adverb *multum*. Other words used as adverbs are the ablative neuter singular form of the adjective, as *multō*. *Multum* means *to a great amount, extent, or degree*; *multō* means *by a great amount, etc.* *Multō* is used mainly with comparatives; as, *multō magis*, *much more*; that is, *more by a great amount*.

411. In the first and second paragraphs of the story *Dē C. Mūciō I*, find the other degrees of the adverbs *lātē* and *longē*. In the third paragraph of the story find the comparison of the adverb *celeriter*. In the last paragraph find all the degrees of the adverbs *bene* and *male*. List these comparisons and study the comparative degree of each. Are they all made alike? Does the form of the comparative look familiar? What does it resemble? The comparative degree of the adverb is the neuter accusative singular of the comparative degree of the corresponding adjective.

**412.** Examine the forms of all the superlative adverbs listed. Are these forms similar? What does the superlative form of the adverb resemble? What change has been made? The superlative degree of the adverb may be made by adding *-ē* to the base of the corresponding superlative adjective. This is true of all superlative adverbs (except *plūrimum*), regular or irregular, for which a corresponding adjective exists.

**413.** Some adverbs not made from adjectives are also compared; as, *diū, diūtius, diūtissimē; saepe, saepius, saepissimē.*

**414.** Observe the relation of adverb to adjective, in the various degrees, in the following table:

	<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
<i>Adjective</i>	<i>lātus</i>	<i>lātiōr, lātius</i>	<i>lātissimus</i>
<i>Adverb</i>	<i>lātē</i>	<i>lātius</i>	<i>lātissimē</i>
<i>Adjective</i>	<i>celer</i>	<i>celerior, celerius</i>	<i>celerrimus</i>
<i>Adverb</i>	<i>celeriter</i>	<i>celerius</i>	<i>celerrimē</i>
<i>Adjective</i>	<i>bonus</i>	<i>melior, melius</i>	<i>optimus</i>
<i>Adverb</i>	<i>bene</i>	<i>melius</i>	<i>optimē</i>

The following list of irregular adverbs must be memorized:

<i>bene, well</i>	<i>melius</i>	<i>optimē</i>
<i>male, badly</i>	<i>peius</i>	<i>pessimē</i>
<i>magnopere, greatly</i>	<i>magis</i>	<i>maximē</i>
<i>parum, (a) little</i>	<i>minus</i>	<i>minimē</i>
<i>multum, much</i>	<i>plūs</i>	<i>plūrimum</i>
<i>prope, near</i>	<i>propius</i>	<i>proximē</i>

**415.** In the sentence *Lārs Porsena, vir audācissimus, Rōmam iam diū obsidet*, what is the word that tells what kind of man Lars Porsena is? What part of speech is this

word? In the sentence *Nam Lārs Porsena, vir maximā audāciā, male ēgit*, what phrase describes the word *vir* and takes the place of *audācissimus*? Of what is this phrase made? In what case are the two words? The phrase *maximā audāciā* and the adjective *audācissimus* both describe the word *vir*, and have the same meaning.

A phrase consisting of a noun and modifying adjective in the ablative may be used to describe another noun. An ablative so used is called an *ablative of description*. You will remember that we studied the *genitive of description* in Chapter XXXIV (§ 333). Thus either the ablative or the genitive may be used to describe a noun. The genitive must be used when the phrase denotes dimension or measure; as *pedum decem mūrus*, a *ten-foot wall*.

#### RULE

**416.** *Ablative of description.* A noun and modifying adjective, in the ablative, may be used to describe another noun.

#### READING LESSON

417.

#### DĒ C. MŪCIŌ II

Tum C. Mūcius gladiō armātus ad castra hostium laetissimē et celerrimē properāvit. Ibi mīlitibus Etrūscīs ignōtus ambulābat et omnia spectābat. Subitō in mediīs castrīs duōs virōs magnā auctōritāte in sellā sedentēs vidit. Circum eōs plūrimī mīlitēs ācritēr properābant. “Uter est Porsena? Poterōne perficere cōnsilia mea?” Ita cōgitāns ad virōs audācissimē cucurrit et gladiō virum sibi proximum occīdit. Tum quam celerrimē fūgit. Iuvenis miser vērō scribam, nōn rēgem, occīderat!

Mīlitēs iuvenem captum ad rēgem trāxērunt. Rēx magnopere commōtus eum superbē rogāvit, “Cūr hoc malum perfēcisti? Sine causā scribam meum occīdisti!”

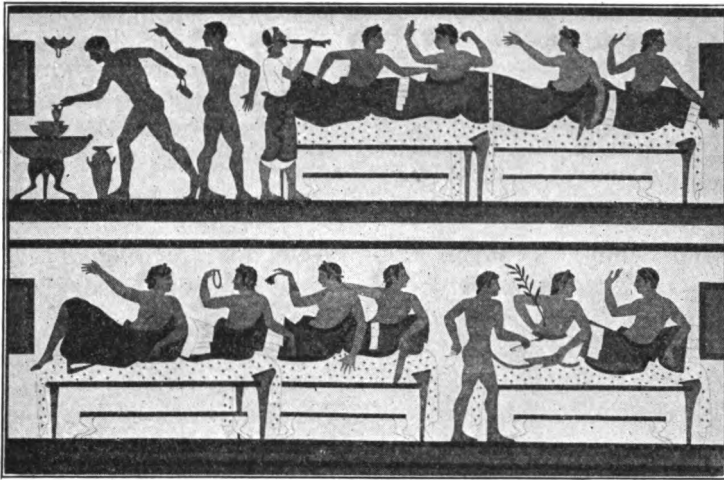


C. Mūcius sine timōre etiam superbius respondit, “Rēgem, nōn scribam humilem, occidere volūi. Id autem perficere nōn potuī. Sed, Porsena, maximis periculīs et plūrimis insidiis semper circumdaberis. Multi enim iuvenēs Rōmānī tē occidere cōstituērunt.”

Porsena maximē perterritus respondit, “Nisi mihi omnia cōsilia Rōmānōrum statim nārrāveris, ignī cōsumēris.”

Mūcius respondit, “Cīvis Rōmānus multō magis honōrem suum quam vitā amat. Patria cīvi Rōmānō vitā multō est cārīor. Cīvis Rōmānus mortem nōn timet.” Haec dixit et posuit dextram in ignī quī prope in ārā erat. Dextra ignī cōsumpta est. Mūcius autem statuæ simillimus sē nōn mōvit.

Porsena virtūtem eius vidēns etiam plūs timōris habēbat, et magnā vōce clāmāvit, “Tū es fortis! Hostem tam fortem interficere nōn possum! Deī ipsī mortem tālis virī vetant!”



Convīvium Etrūscum

Sic C. Mūcius servātus est quod tam fortis fuit et quod patriam suam amāvit. Tum hōc beneficiō adductus, rēgī omnia cōnsilia iuvenum Rōmānōrum dixit. “Sunt,” inquit, “trecentī nōbilēs iuvenēs quī tē occīdere cōstituērunt. Sī fortūna alium ab hōc factō prohibuerit, alius id libenter temptābit. Tandem ūnus ex nōbīs cōnsilia perficiet. Sic dēmum Rōma, nostra patria, liberābitur!”

Tum Lārs Porsena hīs verbīs adductus virum fortissimum domum mīsīt. Mox cum Rōmānīs pācem cōfirmāvit. Omnibus suis cōpiīs Rōmā discessit. Postea populus Rōmānus propter magnam eius virtūtem Mūciō cognōmen Scaevolam dedit, et nōmen eius semper laudāvit.

## Nōtā bene

Scaevola means literally *left-handed*.

Quam celerrimē, *as quickly as possible*. The highest possible degree of an adjective or adverb is expressed by *quam* and the superlative. The translation is in the form *as . . . as possible*.



**Plūs timōris, more fear.** Plūs is used as a noun and is followed by the genitive of the whole.

**Ūnus ex nōbis, one of us.** With numerals the ablative with **ex** or **dē** is commonly used instead of the genitive of the whole.

**Omnibus suis cōpiis, with all his forces.** In military expressions, such as this, the ablative of accompaniment is often used without **cum**.

## VOCABULARY XL

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| * <b>beneficium, benefīci, n.,</b><br><i>kindness, benefit, favor</i>                     | <b>laetē, adv., joyfully</b>   |
| * <b>circumdō, -are, circumdedī,</b><br><b>circumdati, encircle, sur-</b><br><b>round</b> | * <b>nēmō, (nullius), (see § 567),</b><br><i>no one</i>  |
| <b>cognōmen, cognōminis, n.,</b><br><i>surname</i>  | * <b>obsideō, -ēre, obsēdī, ob-</b><br><b>sessus, besiege, blockade</b>                          |
| * <b>cōnsūmō, -ere, cōnsūmpsi,</b><br><b>cōnsūmptus, consume, de-</b><br><b>stroy</b>     | * <b>perficiō, -ere, perfēcī, per-</b><br><b>fectus, accomplish, per-</b><br><b>form</b>         |
| <b>discēdō, -ere, discessī, dis-</b><br><b>cessūrus, go away, depart</b>                  | * <b>pertineō, -ēre, pertinui, —,</b><br><i>extend, pertain</i>                                  |
| <b>excēdō, -ere, excessī, ex-</b><br><b>cessūrus, go out</b>                              | * <b>probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, ap-</b><br><b>prove, test, try out</b>                            |
| * <b>famēs, famis, f., hunger,</b><br><i>famine</i>                                       | <b>prōcēdō, -ere, prōcessī, prō-</b><br><b>cessūrus, go before, ad-</b><br><b>vance, proceed</b> |
| * <b>fortūna, -ae, f., fortune, lot</b>   | * <b>prope, adv., near by, near</b>  |
| * <b>honor, honōris, m., honor,</b><br><i>esteem</i>                                      | <b>quamquam, conj., although</b>   |
| * <b>iam, adv., already, now</b>  | <b>scriba, -ae, m., secretary,</b><br><i>scribe</i>  |
| <b>ignōtus, -a, -um, unknown,</b><br><i>unnoticed</i>                                     | <b>senātor, senātōris, m., sen-</b><br><b>ator</b>   |
| <b>immortālis, -e, immortal</b>   | <b>superbē, adv., haughtily</b>  |
| * <b>inopia, -ae, f., lack, scarcity</b>  | <b>tālis, -e, such</b>   |
| * <b>ita, adv., thus, so</b>  | <b>tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,</b><br><i>endure</i>   |
| <b>iuvenis, iuvenis, iuvenum</b><br><b>m., young man, youth</b>                           | <b>vetō, -āre, vetuī, vetitus,</b><br><i>forbid, prohibit</i>                                    |

## 418. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Answer the following questions:

1. What is a *perfect* recitation?
2. When is a person *obsessed*?
3. What is an *intolerable* act?
4. What is a *veto*?
5. What is a period of *probation*?



*Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art*

**Lucerna Etrusca**

### DRILL

I. Compare the Latin adjectives for the following, giving all the genders for each degree:

cruel	difficult	safe	light
suitable	quick	beautiful	good
skilled	large	bold	wide

II. Compare the Latin adverbs for the following:

swiftly	firmly	boldly	badly
easily	beautifully	diligently	greatly
often	(a) little	near	bravely

III. Express in Latin the following phrases:

Very light feathers (*acc.*); a very long sword (*abl.*);  
 swiftest horses (*nom.*); a rather haughty young man (*gen.*);

too brave a man (*acc.*); more famous stories (*gen.*); most diligent guard (*dat.*); rather suitable places (*nom.*); easier routes (*nom.*); very cruel deeds (*abl.*).

IV. *Express in Latin the italicized words or phrases:*

1. We were freed *from the greatest danger.*
2. He worked *as well as possible.*
3. Horatius was a soldier *of great boldness.*
4. The bridge was *a few feet higher* than the banks of the river.
5. Was the deed of Horatius *more famous than the deed of Mucius?*
6. The plans of Mucius *had not been carried out easily.*

#### EXERCISE XL

*Write in Latin:*

1. No one had been able to go out from Rome because Lars Porsena was besieging it. 2. If the very cruel king does not withdraw (will not have withdrawn), famine will very quickly destroy the inhabitants of the city. 3. The senators have joyfully approved the plans of Mucius. 4. Will he be able to accomplish his plans and to free his country (which is) surrounded by such dangers? 5. A greater benefit than this cannot be bestowed upon (given to) the Roman people. 6. I shall go out boldly from the fortifications and I shall proceed to the enemy's camp, which extends far on the banks of the river. 7. Although he observes all the men as carefully as possible, the king is still unknown to him. 8. He wished to kill the king but fortune prevented him; he killed the secretary. 9. The immortal gods forbade the death of the youth whom the haughty king had not been able to terrify. 10. The Roman people gave the surname "Scaevola" to him because they wished thus to give him great honor.

## CHAPTER XLI

### FOURTH DECLENSION DATIVE OF PURPOSE; DATIVE OF INTEREST ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION



#### 419. DĒ EXERCITIBUS RŌMĀNIS I

*Exercitus Rōmānus, quem Caesar in Galliam dūcēbat, in trēs partēs dīvisus est. Ūna pars exercitūs equitātus erat, altera pars auxilia, tertia pars peditēs, quī milītēs legiōnārii appellābantur.*

*Potentissima pars exercitūs Rōmāni erant legiōnēs, nam habēbant milītēs legiōnāriōs, virōs maximae virtūtis, quī pilīs*

gladiisque pugnābant. Ubi Caesar signum dedit, milites primī in hostēs appropinquantēs pila mittēbant; tum gladii in eōs impetum faciēbant. Post proelium equitātus, quī in cornū dextrō et in cornū sinistrō cōnstitat, in hostēs fugientēs impetum faciēbat et eōs caedēbat. Ante proelium quoque equitātus *of great service to Caesar and the army* *Caesari et exercitū magnō auxiliō* erat, nam equitātus cum equitātū hostium proelium saepe committēbat. Auxilia, vel peditēs levis armātūrae, proeliis nōn saepe pugnābant. Eae cōpiae tamen magnō ūsuī erant, quod ad exercitum frūmentum ā finitimis gentibus coactum portābant. Ab exercitū Caesaris multae gentēs victae sunt; nam milites Rōmānī *virtūte viribusque* omnēs aliōs superāvērunt.

Exercitūs Rōmānī ad multās terrās sociis praesidiō mittēbantur. Milites eōrum exercituum terrā marique pugnābant. Nullī exercitūs exercitibus Rōmānis parēs erant virtūte. Omnēs nātiōnēs orbis terrārum igitur potentēs exercitūs Rōmānōs timēbant. Diū cum Rōmānis bellum gerēbant, sed frūstrā pugnābant, nam omnēs nātiōnēs ab exercitibus Rōmānis victae sunt.

#### 420. Respondē Latinē:

1. Quot in partēs exercitus Rōmānus dīvisus est? 2. Quō nōmine ūna pars exercitūs appellābātur? altera pars? tertia pars?

3. Ubi equitātus cōnstitit? 4. Cui equitātus magnō auxiliō erat? 5. Quid ad exercitum portābātur? 6. Ā quō multae gentēs victae sunt? 7. Quōmodo milites Rōmānī aliōs superāvērunt?

8. Quibus exercitūs Rōmānī praesidiō mittēbantur? 9. Ubi milites eōrum exercituum pugnābant? 10. Erantne ūllī exercitūs exercitibus Rōmānis virtūte parēs? 11. Nōnne omnēs nātiōnēs exercitūs Rōmānōs timēbant? 12. Ā quibus omnēs nātiōnēs victae sunt?



### Imperātor mīlitēs cohortātur

Compare this with the similar picture shown on page 180

### DISCUSSION

421. In the sentence **Exercitus Rōmānus in trēs partēs dīvisus est**, in what case is **exercitus**? In the sentence **Ūna pars exercitūs equitātus erat**, in what case is **exercitūs**? How does the genitive case differ from the nominative? What does the genitive singular ending tell about a noun? The genitive singular ending of **exercitus** is **-ūs**.

The word **exercitus** is not in the first, second, or third declension, as is shown by the ending of the genitive singular. Nouns that have the ending **-ūs** in the genitive singular belong to the fourth declension.

In the second paragraph of the story find the dative, accusative, and ablative singular of **exercitus**. What is the ending of each case?

In the last paragraph of the story, find the nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative plural of **exercitus**. Give the ending of each case. These are the endings of masculine and feminine nouns of the fourth declension. Most nouns of the fourth declension ending in **-us** are masculine, though **manus**, **manūs**, *hand*, or *band*, and **domus**, **domūs**, *house*, are feminine. Several cases of the noun **domus** have endings of the second declension also, in addition to the fourth-declension endings: **domō** (ablative singular); **domōs** (accusative plural). In the locative singular, only the second-declension form, **domī**, is found. (See § 567.)

**422.** There are three neuter nouns of the fourth declension, ending in **-ū** in the nominative singular. The most common is **cornū**, **cornūs**, *wing of an army*, or *horn*.

**423.** Learn the following paradigms of nouns in the fourth declension:

**exercitus, -ūs, m., base exercit-, army**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	exercitus	exercitūs
<i>Gen.</i>	exercitūs	exercituum
<i>Dat.</i>	exercitui	exercitibus
<i>Acc.</i>	exercitum	exercitūs
<i>Abl.</i>	exercitū	exercitibus

**cornū, cornūs, n., base corn-, horn, wing**

<i>Nom.</i>	cornū	cornua
<i>Gen.</i>	cornūs	cornuum
<i>Dat.</i>	cornū	cornibus
<i>Acc.</i>	cornū	cornua
<i>Abl.</i>	cornū	cornibus

**424.** In the sentence **Ante proelium quoque equitātus Caesarī et exercitui magnō auxiliō erat**, what is the Latin phrase that tells that the cavalry was of service? In what case are the words of this phrase? Who were affected by

this aid? In what case are *Caesari* and *equitatui*? In the sentence *Exercitūs Rōmānī ad multās terrās sociis praesidiō mittēbantur*, what word shows the purpose of sending Roman armies to many lands? In what case is *praesidiō*? Who were affected by this protection? In what case is *sociis*?

425. The dative case may be used to show the purpose, advantage, or end for which persons or things serve; when so used, it is called the *dative of purpose*. With the dative of purpose is often found another dative which designates the person affected or referred to; and this is called the *dative of interest*, or, sometimes, the *dative of reference*. When the dative of purpose and the dative of interest are used together, the combination is called the *double dative*. *Sum* and certain verbs of motion are used most frequently with the dative of purpose. The nouns *auxiliō*, *cūrae*, *impedimentō*, *praesidiō*, and *ūsui* are used most frequently as datives of purpose.

426. In order to show the construction, a phrase like *Equitātus Caesari auxiliō erat* is often translated *The cavalry was for an advantage to Caesar*; but such translations to show construction, if they do not happen to agree with the English idiom, should always be followed by a more natural expression, such as *The cavalry was of service to Caesar*.

427. In the sentence *Militēs Rōmānī virtūte vīribusque omnēs aliōs superāvērunt*, which words tell in what respect the Roman soldiers surpassed all others? In what case is *virtūte*? In what case is *vīribus*? Is a preposition used? In the sentence *Nūllī exercitūs exercitibus Rōmānīs parēs erant virtūte*, what word tells in what respect other armies were not equal to the Roman armies? In what case is *virtūte*? Is a preposition used?

The ablative without a preposition may be used to show *in what respect* a statement or assertion is true or a term





**Sagittarii**

The long robes show that these archers are not Romans. They are Roman allies, who have probably come from an Oriental country

is to be applied. An ablative so used is called an *ablative of specification*.

#### RULES

**428. Dative of purpose.** The dative may be used with forms of *sum* and verbs of motion to express purpose or service, and is often accompanied by another dative showing the person affected or interested.

**429. Ablative of specification.** The ablative without a preposition may be used to show in what respect a statement is true or a term is to be applied.

## READING LESSON

## 430. DE EXERCITIBUS RŌMĀNĪS II

Militēs legiōnārii erant civēs Rōmāni, incolae Italiae aut provinciārum Rōmānarum. Equitēs nōn erant civēs Rōmāni sed erant militēs aliēni quī ex aliis terris vēnerant. Militēs legiōnārii equitibus magnitudine corporis nōn semper erant parēs sed saepe eōs virtūte superābant.

Miles legiōnārius bene armātus erat. In capite galeam, in corpore loricam, in sinistrā manū scūtum gerēbat. Quae arma ei praesidiō erant. In dextrā manū gerēbat grave pīlum, quod longissimē mittere poterat. Habēbat praetereā gladium, quī a dextrō latere pendēbat. Ubi hostēs propius vēnerant, miles legiōnārius pīlum mittēbat. Tum in hostēs dēcurrēbat et cum eis gladiō pugnābat. Arma equitum erant variōrum generum; nam equitēs a variis terris vēnerant.

Quī summum imperium exercitūs habēbat "dux belli" appellābatur. Post eius primam victōriam "imperātor" appellābatur. Lēgāti erant militēs quī singulās legiōnēs dūcēbant. Ei lēgāti erant nōbilēs magnae virtūtis. Fortissimī autem militum omnium erant centuriōnēs. Erant belli peritissimī et multōs impetūs in hostēs fēcerant.

Nōtā bene

431. Quae arma: *These arms; literally, which arms.* The relative quī, quae, quod may be used as an adjective, modifying



Centuriō

a noun. When so used at the beginning of a sentence, it is often translated *this, these, etc.*

432. *Qui summum imperium exercitūs habēbat, He who had the supreme command.* The relative *qui, quae, quod* may be used to mean *he who, etc.*, like English *whoever*. When so used it is called a *double relative*, because it is equivalent to the relative and its antecedent.

## VOCABULARY XLI

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| * <i>appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus</i><br>(with dat. or ad and acc.),<br><i>approach, draw near</i> | <i>legiōnārius, -a, -um, of a</i><br><i>legion; as a noun, legiō-</i><br><i>nārius, -ārī, m., a legion-</i><br><i>ary, member of a legion</i> |
| <i>armātūra, -ae, f., armor,</i><br><i>equipment</i>   | * <i>manus, manūs, f., hand;</i><br><i>band (of soldiers)</i>   |
| * <i>centuriō, centuriōnis, m.,</i><br><i>centurion</i>  | * <i>nātiō, nātiōnis, f., race, tribe,</i><br><i>nation</i>   |
| * <i>cōsistō, -ere, cōstitī, —,</i><br><i>stand, take a position</i>                                 | <i>orbis, orbis, orbium, m.,</i><br><i>circle</i>   |
| * <i>cornū, cornūs, n., horn; wing</i><br>(of an army)   | * <i>pār, paris, equal</i>  |
| * <i>domus, domūs, f., house;</i><br><i>home (see §§ 76, 78)</i>                                     | <i>pendeō, -ēre, pependī, —,</i><br><i>be suspended, hang down</i>  |
| * <i>equitātus, equitātūs, m.,</i><br><i>cavalry</i>   | * <i>praesidium, praesidī, n., gar-</i><br><i>risson, protection</i>  |
| * <i>exercitus, exercitūs, m.,</i><br><i>army</i>  | * <i>singulī, -ae, -a, one at a</i><br><i>time, single</i>  |
| * <i>gravis, -e, heavy; grave, se-</i><br><i>vere</i>  | * <i>superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,</i><br><i>overcome, surpass, defeat</i>   |
| * <i>impetus, impetūs, m., attack,</i><br><i>assault</i>   | * <i>ūsus, ūsūs, m., use, service</i>   |
|  | * <i>vel, conj., or</i>   |

*Idioms*

*orbis terrārum, the world*

*impetum facere (with in and acc.), to make a charge or attack (upon)*

## 433. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Explain the italicized words:

An *impetuous* youth, *manual* training, *international* law, the *usual* procedure, a *pendent* nest.

## DRILL

I. *Decline the Latin phrases for the following:*

Right wing, foreign cavalry, our house, a fierce attack, the left hand.

II. *Supply the proper case endings:*

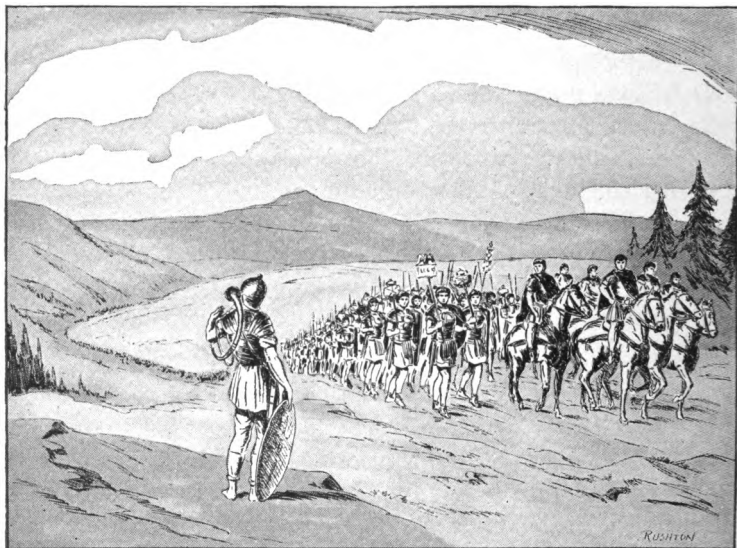
1. Militēs impet.... in hostēs faciēbant.
2. Lēgātī imperātōr.... auxili.... vēnērunt.
3. Militēs lev.... armātūr.... auxilia appellābantur.
4. Auctōritās senātōr.... erat maxima.
5. Multī militēs legiōnāriī erant in exercit.....
6. Peditēs celeritāt.... nōn erant parēs equitāt.....
7. Dux soci.... praesidi.... equitātum mīsit.
8. Nātiōnēs orbis terrārum virtūt.... Rōmānōs nōn superābant.

## EXERCISE XLI

*Write in Latin:*

1. The soldiers of light armor, called auxiliaries, were not often sent into battle by Caesar. 2. The cavalry often fought with the enemy's (*pl.*) cavalry before the battle; after the battle they attacked the fleeing enemy. 3. The cavalry stood in both wings of the army. 4. The legions took their position one at a time and awaited the approaching enemy. 5. The legionary soldiers carried on the battle with their swords. 6. The shield, which was of great protection to the soldier, was carried in his left hand; the sword hung from his right side. 7. The centurions were not equal to the lieutenants in authority, but they often surpassed them in experience. 8. The nations of the world feared the attacks of the Roman armies.

CHAPTER XLII  
FIFTH DECLENSION  
ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT OF SPACE



434. DĒ ACIĒ TRIPLICĪ ET DĒ AGMINE .

Exercitus Rōmānus ad proelium instrūctus *aciēs* appellābātur. *Aciēs* Caesaris *aciēs* triplex appellābātur. *Aciēs* triplex complūrēs legiōnēs habēbat. Omnis legiō in decem cohortēs dīvidēbātur. Eae cohortēs ad proelium parātae hōc modō instruēbantur. Prīma *aciēs* quattuor cohortēs habēbat. Mīlitēs prīmae *aciēi* gerēbant pīla quae primō impetū in hostēs mittēbant. Secunda *aciēs* trēs cohortēs

( 348 )

habēbat. Eae cohortēs saepe primae aciēi auxiliō mittēbantur. Tertia aciēs quoque trēs cohortēs habēbat. Tertia aciēs vel primam aciēm vel secundam aciēm magnō in periculō iuvāre poterat. Militēs quī proximē cōscripti erant rei militāris peritī nōn erant et in tertiā aciē conlocābantur. Interdum aciēs triplex circiter *octingentōs pedēs* pertinēbat. Aciēs legiōnum sex veterānārum quam Caesar in ripis Axonae instrūxerat circiter *mille passūs* pertinuit.

Exercitus Rōmānus, iter faciēns, agmen appellābatur. Aestate Caesaris militēs, ex hibernis ēducti, iter *multa milia passuum* in finēs hostium faciēbant. Gallia longē aberat et multī diēs cōsumēbantur. Eōrum diērum ōrdō agminis sic cōstituēbatur. Inter singulās legiōnēs erat magnus numerus impedimentōrum; itaque legiōnēs auxiliū inter sē dare nōn potuerunt. Sī, autem, legiōnēs hostibus appropinquābant et periculum erat maximum, agmen sē aliter habēbat. Veterānae legiōnēs in primō agmine conlocābantur; post eas impedimenta totius exercitūs conlocābantur; deinde reliquae legiōnēs quae proximē cōscriptae erant agmen claudēbant et impedimentis praesidiō erant. Cotidiē militēs castra mūniēbant. Itaque tōtum diem iter facere nōn poterant. Iter quīndecim milium passuum erat illis diēbus idōneum. Quod sī Caesar in hostēs repentinum impetum facere voluit, paucōs diēs magna itinera fēcit. Magnis itineribus Caesar paucis diēbus ad hostium castra subitō pervenire poterat.

#### Nōtā bene

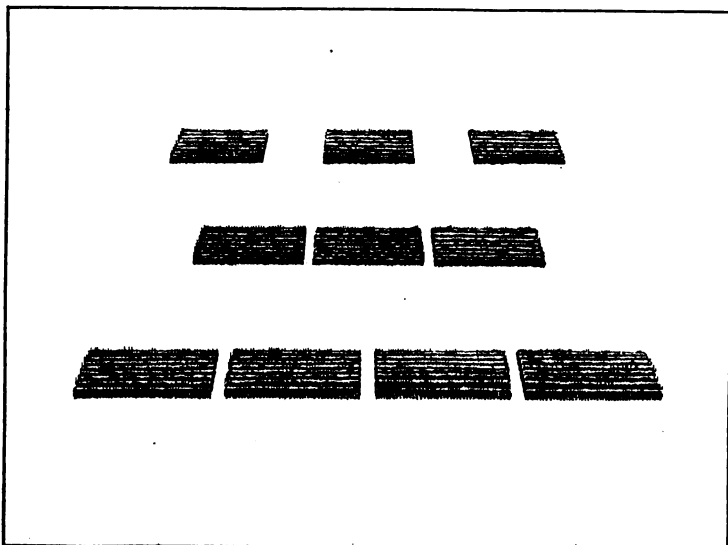
Axona, *Axona*, now called *Aisne*, a river in Belgium.

Octingentōs pedēs, *eight hundred feet*. The Latin word *pēs*, *pedis* was used, like the English word *foot*, as a unit of length. For the construction of *pedēs*, see §§ 441, 443.

#### 435. Respondē Latinē:

1. Quot cohortēs prima aciēs habēbat? 2. Quid militēs primae aciēi gerēbant? 3. Cui cohortēs secundae aciēi

auxiliō saepe mittēbantur? 4. Quam aciem tertia aciēs iuvāre poterat? 5. Ubi milītēs quī proximē cōscriptī erant



### Aciēs triplex

This diagram shows the ten cohorts of a single legion drawn up in the threefold battle array, facing the beholder. Four cohorts are in the front line, and three in each of the other two. The cohorts in the third, or rear, line are spread out to protect the flanks of the second line, and to be in a position to go to the assistance of either the first or the second line

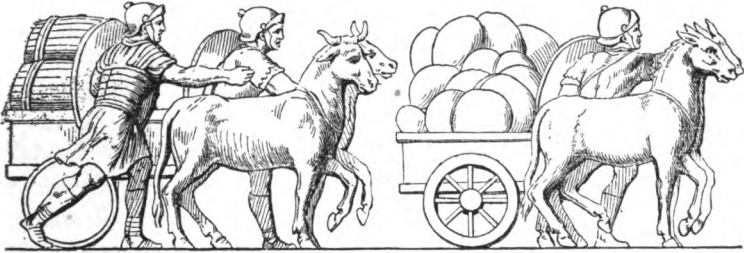
conlocābantur? 6. Quam longē aciēs triplex interdum pertinēbat? 7. Quam longē aciēs Caesaris pertinuit?

8. Quō nōmine exercitus Rōmānus, iter faciēns, appellābātur? 9. Quam longē Caesaris milītēs iter faciēbant? 10. Cūr cōsūmēbantur multī diēs? 11. Quālis erat eōrum diērum ōrdō agminis? 12. Quāle iter erat illīs diēbus idōneum? 13. Quot diēs Caesar magna itinera faciēbat? 14. Quōmodo Caesar ad hostium castra paucīs diēbus pervenire poterat?

DISCUSSION

436. In the sentence *Prīma aciēs quattuor cohortēs habēbat*, in what case is *aciēs*? In the sentence *Militēs primāe aciēi pīla gerēbant*, in what case is *aciēi*? What does the genitive singular ending tell about a noun? The genitive singular ending of this word is *-ēi*. What is the base? Nouns in *-ēs* whose genitive singular ends in *-ēi* or *-ei* belong to the fifth declension.

In the first paragraph of the story, find the dative, accusa-



*Carrī et iūmenta*

tive, and ablative singular of *aciēs*. Give the ending of each case.

437. In the second paragraph of the story, find the nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative plural of *diēs*. Give the ending of each case.

438. There are very few nouns in the fifth declension. Only two nouns, *rēs* and *diēs*, have forms in all cases, singular and plural. *Aciēs* has all the forms of the singular, but only nominative and accusative in the plural. The genitive and dative singular end in *-ēi* if the preceding stem ends in a vowel, as the stem *di-* of *diēs*, *diēi*; otherwise in *-ei*, as in *rēs*, *rei*.

439. Most nouns of the fifth declension are feminine, but *diēs* is always masculine in the plural and usually so in the



singular. It is usually feminine when it denotes an appointed or specified day.

440. Learn the following paradigms of nouns in the fifth declension:

*diēs, diēi, m. or f., base di-, day*

*rēs, rei, f., base r-, thing*

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>diēi</i>	<i>diērum</i>	<i>rei</i>	<i>rērum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>diēi</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rei</i>	<i>rēbus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>diem</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rem</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>diē</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbus</i>

441. In the sentence *Interdum aciēs triplex circiter octingentōs pedēs pertinēbat*, what phrase tells how far this triple battle line extended? In what case are these words? The phrase means *for eight hundred feet* or *eight hundred feet*. An accusative so used expresses the extent of space, and answers the question *how far?* Compare this accusative with the accusative of duration of time (see § 272), which answers the question *how long?* The Latin phrase for *how far?* is *quam longē?* The phrase for *how long (a time)?* is *quam diū?*

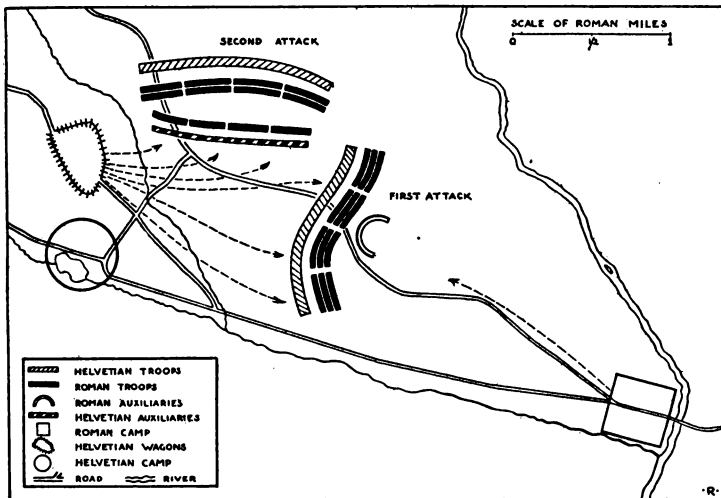
442. In the phrase *mīlle passūs*, the word *mīlle* is an indeclinable adjective modifying *passūs*, and means *a thousand*. *Mīlle passūs* means *a thousand paces*; that is, a Roman mile, which was about 150 yards less than an English mile. A *passus* was the distance which we should call two steps: the distance, in ordinary walking, between the points at which either foot leaves the ground and is placed upon the ground again; that is, about five feet.

To express the plural, *miles*, the phrase *mīlia passuum*, *thousands of paces*, is used. In this phrase *mīlia* is a noun, and its case depends upon its use in the sentence; *passuum* is a genitive of the whole. The plural *mīlia* is a neuter *i*-stem

noun of the third declension and is declined as follows:  
*mīlia, mīlium, mīlibus, mīlia, mīlibus.*

#### RULE

**443.** *Accusative of extent of space.* Extent of space may be expressed by the accusative.



#### READING LESSON

#### 444. DĒ PROELIŌ RŌMANŌ

Caesar aciem in colle instruēbat quod mīlītēs ā superiōre locō pīla in hostēs facilius mittere poterant. Clārissimō proeliō Helvēticō Caesar maiōrem partem collis mīlitibus complēvit. In colle mediō triplicem aciem instrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum. In summō colle duās legiōnēs quās proximē cōscripserat atque auxilia conlocāvit.

Iam Helvētīi primāe aciēi Caesaris appropinquant. Quod hostēs nōn longē absunt, Caesar signum dat. Statim mīlītēs



### Ad impedimenta pugnatum est

On this occasion, the Helvetian women, who had been left with the baggage, seized weapons and bravely opposed the advancing Romans

**prīmae aciēi pīla in Helvētiōs venientēs mittunt. Tum omnēs militēs gladiīs diū atque ācritēr pugnāt.**

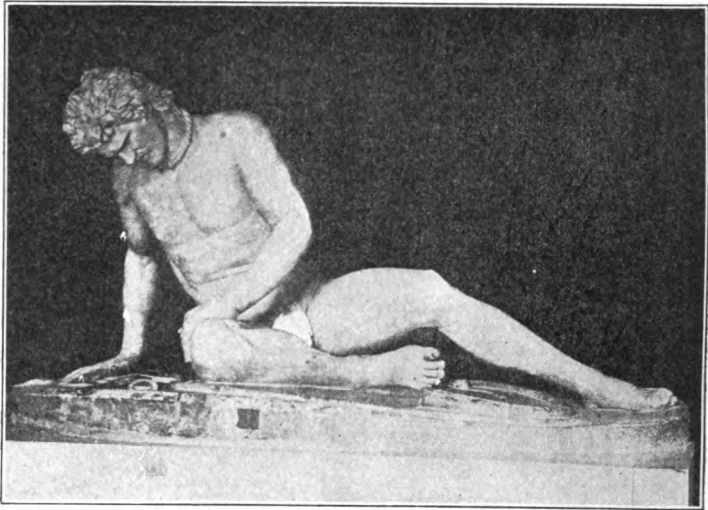
**Tandem Helvētīi vulneribus dēfessī ad proximum collem sē recipiunt. Eō in colle aciem instruunt. Sed Rōmāni victōriā audācēs ad eum collem currunt et impetum iterum faciunt.**

Auxilia Helvētiōrum quae erant in novissimō agmine et in primō proeliō nōn pugnāverant, Rōmānōs ad eum collem currentēs vident. Poteruntne circumvenire Rōmānōs in colle pugnātēs? Maximā celeritāte ab novissimō agmine militibus Rōmānis appropinquant. Nunc Rōmāni sunt inter cōpiās hostium. Sed magna est virtūs Caesaris exercitūs. Prīma et secunda aciēs cum Helvētiīs ācritēr pugnāt. Tertia aciēs sē vertit et cum Helvētiōrum auxiliīs venientibus pugnāt.

Tandem Helvĕtĭi impetŭs Rŏmānŏrum nŏn diŭtius sustinĕre possunt. Alteri in summum collem sĕ recipiunt; alteri ad impedimenta fugiunt. Etiam ibi fortĕs Helvĕtĭi tĕla in Rŏmānŏs appropinquantĕs mittunt. Tandem Rŏmāni Helvĕtĭos superant. Propter hanc victŏriam Caesar imperātor appellātur.

## VOCABULARY XLII

- \*aciĕs, aciĕi, f., *line of battle*  
 \*agmen, agminis, n., *line of march, column*  
 \*aliter, adv., *otherwise, differently*  
 \*circiter, adv., *about*  
 circumveniŏ, -ire, circumvĕni, circumventus, *surround, encircle*  
 \*claudŏ, -ere, clausi, clausus, *close*  
 \*cohors, cohortis, cohortium, f., *cohort, a tenth part of a legion, containing about 360 men*  
 \*collis, collis, collium, m., *hill*  
 \*complŭrĕs, -a or -ia, pl., *several*  
 \*cŏnscribŏ, -ere, cŏnscripsi, cŏnscriptus, *enroll, enlist*  
 \*diĕs, diĕi, m. or f., *day*  
 ĕducŏ, -ere, ĕdŭxi, ĕductus, *lead out*  
 Helvĕtĭus, -a, -um, *Helvetian*; as a noun, Helvĕtĭus, Helvĕtĭ, m., *a Helvetian*  
 \*impedimentum, -i, n., *hindrance, interference*; impedimenta, -ŏrum, n. pl., *heavy baggage, baggage*  
 \*instruŏ, -ere, instrŭxi, instrŭctus, *draw up, arrange*  
 militāris, -e, *military*  
 \*ŏrdŏ, ŏrdinis, m., *order, rank, row*  
 \*passus, passŭs, m., *pace*  
 proximĕ, adv., *last, nearest, most recently*  
 recipiŏ, -ere, recĕpi, receptus, *take back, receive*  
 \*repentĭnus, -a, -um, *sudden, unexpected*  
 \*rĕs, rei, f., *thing, affair, event, matter*  
 \*sustineŏ, -ĕre, sustinui, sustentus, *check, withstand, sustain*  
 triplex, triplicis, *triple*  
 \*vertŏ, -ere, verti, versus, *turn, change*  
 veterānus, -a, -um, *old, veteran*



Gallus moriēns

*Idioms*

**primum agmen**, *van*, *advance guard*  
**novissimum agmen**, *rear*, *rear guard*  
**agmen claudere**, *to bring up the rear*  
**magnum iter**, *a forced march*  
**aliter sē habēre**, *to be arranged differently*  
**castra mūnīre**, *to build a camp*  
**in mediō colle**, *halfway up the hill*  
**rēs militāris**, *warfare, military science*  
**inter sē dare**, *to exchange*  
**sē recipere**, *to retreat*  
**sē vertere**, *to face about*

## 445.           LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. Pick out the Latin words with which the following are associated: *circumvent, conscription, recipient, sustenance.*

II. *In re* means *in the matter (of), concerning, with regard (to)*. It is used especially as a legal term, to introduce the subject of a remark or as a title or heading to a portfolio of papers bearing on a given case; as, *In re* the railroad's claim for damages.

*Sine die* means *without a day*. It is used especially of the adjournment of an assembly without any specified day for meeting again, or of the adjournment of a committee meeting when the committee has done its work and expects to be discharged, and hence will not meet again. In law, when a prisoner is permitted to go *sine die* he is virtually discharged.

It is customary to pronounce such Latin phrases according to English rules of pronunciation. Thus *re* rhymes with *tea*, *sine* with *shiny*; and *die* is pronounced *dye-ee*.

### DRILL

I. *Decline the Latin phrases for the following:*

Short day, military science, small band, long row, light feather, great hindrance.

II. *Write the Latin for the following phrases showing extent of space:*

A mile, two miles, three miles, four miles, ten miles, twenty miles, ten feet, three feet, fourteen feet.

III. *Supply the proper case endings:*

1. Centuriō Rōmānus erat peritissimus r.... militāris.
2. Multās r.... dixit.
3. Eō di.... exercitus quīndecim mil.... pass.... iter fēcit.
4. Eae r.... militibus nūntiābantur.
5. Tōtum di.... tertia aciēs nōn pugnāvit.
6. Paucīs di.... militēs domum pervenient.
7. Multa dē mōribus illōrum di.... scrīpta sunt.
8. Duōs di.... fābulās dē mōribus Rōmānōrum lēgimus.

## EXERCISE XLII

*Write in Latin:*

1. Caesar led his legions out of camp and drew up a triple line of battle on the hill. 2. The veteran soldiers, skilled in military science, were placed in the first rank. 3. The cohorts of the third line of battle served as (were for) a protection to the second line of battle. 4. The enemy (*pl.*) will not be able to surround our (men) because they cannot withstand their sudden attacks. 5. And so they face about and retreat about a mile.

6. The line of march of those days extended for several miles. 7. The veteran soldiers marched in the van. 8. Those who had been last enrolled brought up the rear. 9. The baggage of a legion was placed behind it. 10. At this time the line of march was arranged differently, because Caesar was approaching the enemy.



**Imperātor**

## CHAPTER XLIII

### IRREGULAR VERBS *EŌ, FERŌ, FĪŌ* SUBJECTIVE AND OBJECTIVE INFINITIVES THE DEMONSTRATIVE *ĪDEM*

#### 446. DĒ GALLIĀ OMNĪ I

Lūcius et Aulus hodiē ad lūdum libenter *eunt* quod magister fābulam dē Caesare nārrābit. Paedagōgus libenter *it*, nam fābulae magistrī eum quoque dēlectant. Tēla quae frāter Mārcus ā Galliā attulit puerī ad lūdum *ferunt*; Lūcius scūtum Gallicum *fert* et Aulus galeam Gallicam *fert*. In lūdō discipulī sunt dīligentēs et omnia magnā cum celeritāte *fiunt*. Mox stilī tabellaeque dēpōnuntur et silentium *fit*. Tum magister incipit:

“Ad multās terrās Caesar *iit* et multōs annōs cum incolīs eārum terrārum bellum gessit. Ā Galliā Rōmam multa spolia *tulit* et propter magnās victōriās imperātor *factus est*. Fortasse vōs quoque, meī discipulī, *fiētis* magnī ducēs. Tum ad terrās extrēmās *ībitis* et cum hostibus bellum gerētis. Multa spolia et clārōs obsidēs Rōmam *ferētis*.”

Iam diū mōs est discipulōs multārum terrārum commentāriōs bellī Gallicī ā Caesare ipsō scīptōs *legere*; semper eōs iuvat Caesaris verba *legere*. Iam difficile est eius sententiās *intellegere*; iam facile est. Hodiē est magnum gaudium in lūdō Americānō, nam magister fābulam ā Caesare scīptam leget. Magister iubet discipulōs stilōs tabellāsque *dēpōnere*. “Erit necesse,” inquit magister, “operam dare, quod multae sententiae sunt difficiliōrēs. In lūdō Rōmānō magister fābulās nārrābat; tum discipulī eās verbis isdem reddēbant. Nōn necesse erit vōbis eadem agere.” Deinde



iubet omnēs maximā cum dīligentiā verba accipere et incipit:

“Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs; quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitāni, tertiam Gallī. Hī omnēs linguā, institūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitānis Garumna flūmen dīvidit; eōs ā Belgīs flūmina Matrona et Sēquana dīvidunt.”



Rōmānī in Galliam ineunt

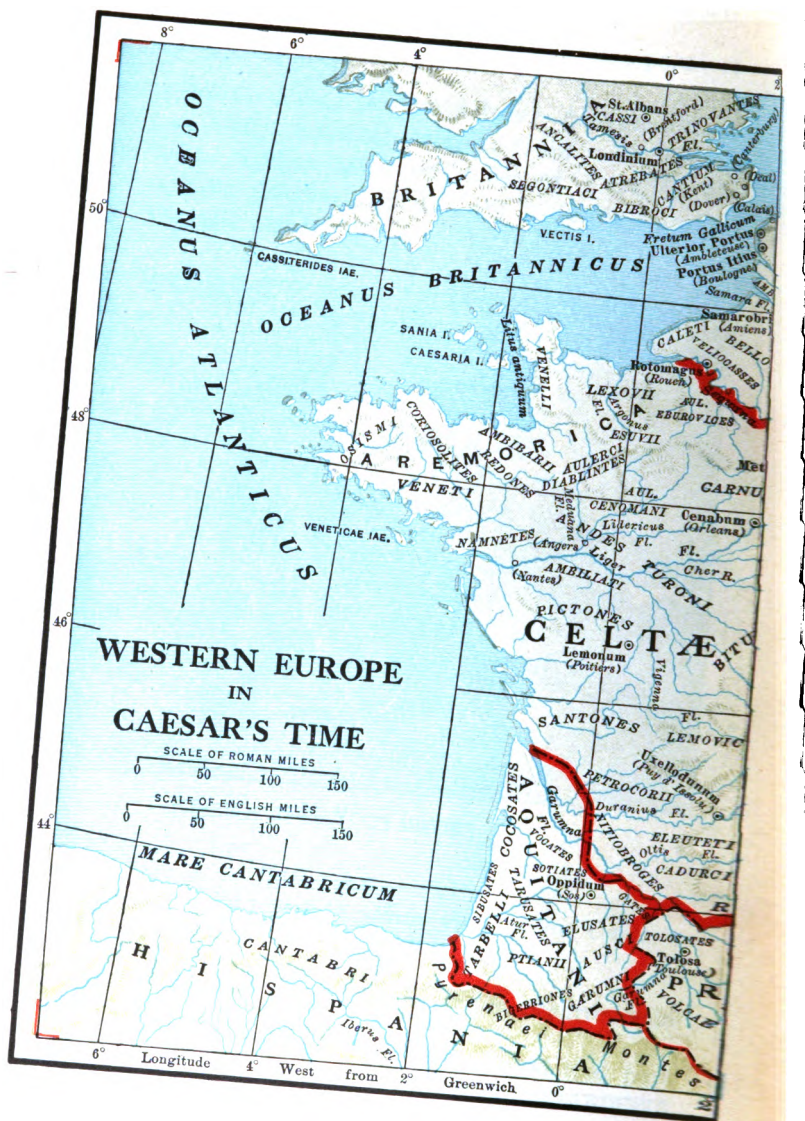
Nōtā bene

Eōs iuvat Caesaris verba legere, *it pleases them to read Caesar's words; that is, they like to read Caesar's words.*

447. The following proper nouns are of common occurrence in Caesar (see map):

Aquitāni, -ōrum, m., the *Aquitanians*, who inhabited that part of France now called Gascony, in the extreme southwestern corner.









**Belgae**, -ārum, m., the *Belgians*, who occupied a territory much larger than modern Belgium, extending roughly from the Seine to the Rhine and from the English Channel and the North Sea to Rheims and Trier.

**Garumna**, -ae, m., the *Garonne*, a river of France, rising in the Pyrenees and flowing past Bordeaux into the Bay of Biscay.

**Genava**, -ae, f., a city of the Allobroges, modern *Geneva*.

**Haedui**, -ōrum, m., the *Haeduan*s, a tribe who lived in central France, west of the Sequanians.

**Helvētīi**, -ōrum, m., the *Helvetians*, a tribe living in Helvetia, now called Switzerland.

**Iūra**, -ae, m., the *Jura*, or *Jura Mountains*, a range extending from the Rhine to the Rhone, along the northwestern boundary of Switzerland.

**Lemannus**, -ī, m., *Lake Geneva*, still called *Lake Leman*.

**Matrona**, -ae, m., a river of Gaul, now called *Marne*.

**Rhēnus**, -ī, m., the river *Rhine*.

**Rhodanus**, -ī, m., the river *Rhone*. Note that in Latin the accent is on the first syllable.

**Santonēs**, -um, m., the *Santones*, a tribe north of the Aquitanians.

**Sēquana**, -ae, m., a river of Gaul, now called *Seine*.

**Sēquanī**, -ōrum, m., the *Sequanians*, a tribe living to the north and east of the Helvetians.

#### 448. Respondē Latīnē :

1. Quid agunt Lūcius et Aulus? 2. Cūr paedagōgus ad lūdum libenter it? 3. Quid puerī ad lūdum ferunt? 4. Quis tēla ā Galliā attulit? 5. Quōmodo omnia fiunt? 6. Quid fit?

7. Quid Caesar ēgit? 8. Cūr imperātor factus est? 9. Nōnne discipulī magnī ducēs fient? 10. Nōnne discipulī multa spolia Rōmam ferent?

11. Quid iam diū mōs est? 12. Estne difficile sententiās Caesaris intellegere? 13. Quid magister hodiē iubet? 14. Quid erit necesse? 15. Quid magister Rōmānus agēbat? 16. Quid discipulī agēbant? 17. Quid magister nunc iubet?

#### DISCUSSION

449. In the first paragraph of the story *Dē Galliā Omnī I*, what is the person and number of the verb eunt? of the

verb it? Do these forms show that they are the third singular and plural of the same verb? What tense and voice are they? Do these forms have a regular stem vowel before the personal endings?

450. What is the tense, voice, person, and number of the verb forms *fert* and *ferunt*? Do they have a regular stem vowel before the personal endings?

451. What is the tense, voice, person, and number of the verb forms *fit* and *fiunt*? The verb *fiō* means properly *grow*, *become*, and its endings are like those of any other active verb. The infinitive, *ferī*, is the only passive form. The meaning of *fiō*, however, fits the translation of the passive of *faciō*; and so *fiō*, though it is an active verb, is used instead of the passive forms of *faciō* throughout the present system. *Fiō* is not used except in the present system.

452. What other tenses of these verbs are shown in the second paragraph of the story? The three verbs just mentioned are irregular, and all the tenses built on the present stem must be carefully memorized. The tenses of the perfect system (except of *fiō*) are regular.

453. In the sentence *Iam difficile est eius sententiās intellegere*; *iam facile est*, what is difficult? What is easy? What is the subject of the verb *est*? What part of speech is *difficile*? *facile*? Of what gender are these words? How are they used? What then is the gender of the infinitive *intellegere*? The infinitive may serve as the subject of the verbs *est*, *iuvat*, and various impersonal verbs; when so used, the infinitive is considered to be a noun of the neuter gender.

454. In the sentence *Iam diū mōs est discipulōs multārum terrārum commentāriōs bellī Gallicī legere*; *semper eōs iuvat Caesaris verba legere*, what has long been the custom? What relation has the clause *discipulōs . . . legere* to the verb *est*? What relation has *mōs* to the verb *est*? What

part of speech is *legere*? What case is *discipulōs*? A word used as the subject of an infinitive in a construction of this kind is in the accusative case.

455. How is the infinitive clause *discipulōs . . . legere* used? How is the infinitive clause *Caesaris verba legere* used? An infinitive with or without a subject accusative may be used as the subject of another verb; when so used it is called a *subjective infinitive*. Such an infinitive is often used as the subject of *est*, with *mōs* or a neuter adjective in the predicate. The corresponding English construction uses *it* as apparent subject, the real subject following the verb; as, *It is easy to read Caesar's Commentaries*.



In Galliā antiqūā

456. In the sentence *Magister iubet discipulōs stilōs tabellāsque dēpōnere*, what does the schoolmaster order? What relation does the phrase *discipulōs . . . dēpōnere* bear to the main verb? What part of speech is *dēpōnere*? What is the subject of *dēpōnere*? How is the infinitive clause used? An infinitive may be used as the object of a verb; when so used it is called an *objective infinitive*.



457. Learn the paradigms of the following irregular verbs:

*eō, ire, iī (or ivī), itūrus, go*  
*fiō, fierī, —, —, grow, become, be made*  
*ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, carry*

Present

<i>Active</i>	<i>Active</i>	<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>
<i>eō</i>	<i>fiō</i>	<i>ferō</i>	<i>feror</i>
<i>is</i>	<i>fīs</i>	<i>fers</i>	<i>ferris</i>
<i>it</i>	<i>fit</i>	<i>fert</i>	<i>fertur</i>
<i>imus</i>	<i>fīmus</i>	<i>ferimus</i>	<i>ferimur</i>
<i>itis</i>	<i>fītis</i>	<i>fertis</i>	<i>ferimini</i>
<i>eunt</i>	<i>fiunt</i>	<i>ferunt</i>	<i>feruntur</i>

Imperfect

<i>ībam</i>	<i>fiēbam</i>	<i>ferēbam</i>	<i>ferēbar</i>
<i>ibās</i>	<i>fiēbās</i>	<i>ferēbās</i>	<i>ferēbāris</i>
<i>ibat</i>	<i>fiēbat</i>	<i>ferēbat</i>	<i>ferēbātur</i>
<i>ibāmus</i>	<i>fiēbāmus</i>	<i>ferēbāmus</i>	<i>ferēbāmur</i>
<i>ibātis</i>	<i>fiēbātis</i>	<i>ferēbātis</i>	<i>ferēbāmini</i>
<i>ibant</i>	<i>fiēbant</i>	<i>ferēbant</i>	<i>ferēbantur</i>

Future

<i>ībō</i>	<i>fīam</i>	<i>feram</i>	<i>ferar</i>
<i>ibis</i>	<i>fīēs</i>	<i>ferēs</i>	<i>ferēris</i>
<i>ibit</i>	<i>fīet</i>	<i>feret</i>	<i>ferētur</i>
<i>ibimus</i>	<i>fīēmus</i>	<i>ferēmus</i>	<i>ferēmur</i>
<i>ibitis</i>	<i>fīētis</i>	<i>ferētis</i>	<i>ferēmini</i>
<i>ibunt</i>	<i>fīent</i>	<i>ferent</i>	<i>ferentur</i>

458. The perfect of *eō* is regular, except that in the second singular and second plural the two *i*'s usually contract to *ī*: *iī, īstī (or iīstī), iit; iimus, īstis (or iīstis), iērunt*. A *v* is occasionally found in some forms, as *ivī*. The pluperfect and future perfect are regular: *ieram, etc., and ierō, etc.* (See § 622.)

There are no forms of *fiō* in the perfect tenses. The regular passive forms of *faciō* are used instead: *factus sum, factus eram, factus erō*.

The perfect tenses of *ferō* are regular (see its principal parts): *tulī, tuleram, tulerō* in the active, *lātus sum, lātus eram, lātus erō* in the passive. (See § 618.)

459. The demonstrative *idem, eadem, idem, same*, was used in the story *Dē Galliā Omnī I*. This word is both adjective and pronoun. It is an adjective when used to modify a noun: *discipulī eās verbīs isdem reddēbant*. It is a pronoun when used instead of a noun: *Nōn necesse erit vōbīs eadem agere*.

Learn the following forms:

	<i>Singular</i>		
	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>idem</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>idem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>
	<i>Plural</i>		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>eīdem, iīdem, or iīdem</i>	<i>eaedem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eīsdem, iīsdem, or isdem</i>	<i>eīsdem, iīsdem, or isdem</i>	<i>eīsdem, iīsdem, or isdem</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eīsdem, iīsdem, or isdem</i>	<i>eīsdem, iīsdem, or isdem</i>	<i>eīsdem, iīsdem, or isdem</i>

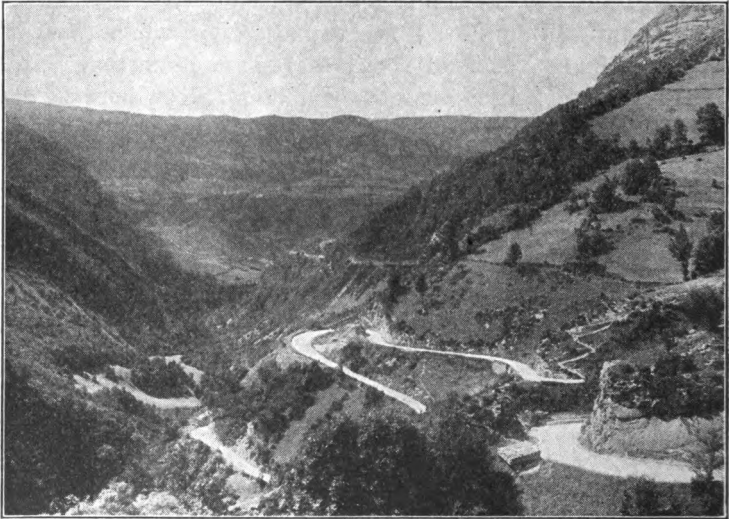
#### RULE

460. The infinitive with or without subject accusative may be used as the subject or object of a verb.

## READING LESSON

## 461. DĒ GALLIĀ OMNĪ II

Multae gentēs Galliam incolunt. Helvētīi, Sēquanī, Haeduī sunt potentēs gentēs Gallicae. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Helvētīi. Finēs eōrum autem angustī sunt et undique continentur: ūnā ex parte, flūmine Rhēnō quī



Mōns Iūra quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētīōs

agrōs Helvētīōrum ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte, monte Iūrā quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētīōs; tertiā ex parte, lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō quī prōvinciam Rōmānam ab Helvētīīs dīvidit. Īsdem causīs mercātōrēs eōs facile adīre nōn possunt neque Helvētīi dē finibus facile exīre possunt. Sunt bellicōsissimī et pericula libenter subeunt. Cum Germānīs bellum saepe gerunt; nam aut in Germānōrum finēs eunt et proeliō contendunt aut ipsī

ā finibus Germānōs prohibent. Est difficile autem propter angustōs finēs multīs finitimīs bellum inferre; quā dē causā magnō dolōre afficiuntur. Prō multitudīne hominum et prō glōriā bellī finēs sunt minōrēs et principēs eōs iubent lātiorēs agrōs petere. Orgetorix potēns princeps est rēgnī cupidus. Ab eō multi nōbilēs cōferuntur.

## VOCABULARY XLIII

- afficiō, -ere, affēcī, affectus, *afflict, trouble, weaken*  
 bellicōsus, -a, -um, *warlike*  
 commentārii, -ōrum, m. pl., *records, commentaries*  
 dēpōnō, -ere, dēposuī, dēpositus, *put aside, lay down*  
 \*eō, ire, īi or īvī, itūrus, *go*  
 \*adeō, -ire, adīi, aditūrus, *come near, approach; visit*  
 exeō, -ire, exīi, exitūrus, *go out, withdraw, depart*  
 subeō, -ire, subīi, subitūrus, *go under, undergo, suffer*  
 \*facilis, facile, *easy*  
 \*ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *bear, bring, carry*  
 afferō, -ferre, attulī, allātus, *bring to, convey*  
 cōferō, -ferre, contulī, conlātus, *collect, gather*  
 \*differō, -ferre, distulī, dilātus, *carry away; differ*  
 inferō, -ferre, intulī, inlātus, *bring in*  
 \*fiō, fierī, —, —, *be made, be done, happen* (used in the present system as the passive of faciō)  
 Gallicus, -a, -um, *Gallic, of Gaul*  
 \*īdem, eadem, idem, *the same*  
 \*incipiō, -ere, incēpī, inceptus, *begin, undertake*  
 \*incolō, -ere, incoluī, —, *inhabit, dwell*  
 īstitutum, -ī, n., *practice, custom*  
 \*intellegō, -ere, intellēxī, intellēctus, *understand*  
 \*iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus, *order, bid*  
 lacus, lacūs, m., *lake*  
 \*necesse, adj. (only in n., nom. and acc. sing.), *necessary*  
 Orgetorix, Orgetorigis, m., *Orgetorix, a Helvetian chief*  
 \*reddo, -ere, reddidī, redditus, *give back, return*  
 \*silentium, silentī, n., *silence*

*Idioms*

**affici magnō dolōre**, to be greatly annoyed

**isdem verbis reddere**, to repeat

**bellum inferre**, to make war (upon): generally used with the dative

**inter sē differre**, to differ from one another

**operam dare**, to pay attention, take pains

**prō multitudine hominum**, in proportion to the population

**ūnā ex parte**, on one side

## 462.

## LATIN IN DAILY LIFE



**Vēxillārius Gallus**

The pig was a favorite Gallic symbol

I. Explain from the vocabulary the meaning of the italicized words in the following sentences:

1. The disease was discovered in the *incipient* stage.

2. *Identical* dresses had been bought by the sisters.

3. His message was not *intelligible*.

4. He was a *dilatory* pupil.

5. The king was *deposed* by the revolutionaries.

6. The theater *exits* were marked with red lights.

II. Write down all the English words you can think of derived from the Latin verb *ferō* and its compounds.

## DRILL

I. Give the present active and passive infinitives of the Latin verbs for the following:

begin	give	collect	afflict
fortify	give back	prohibit	see

II. Give a synopsis of each of the following Latin verbs, in the person, number, and voice indicated:

subeō, third plural, active

inferō, third singular, active and passive

fiō, third plural

afficiō, first singular, active and passive

iubeō, second singular, active and passive

petō, first singular, active and passive

impediō, second singular, active and passive

vocō, first plural, active and passive

volō (*wish*), third plural

possum, third singular

III. Give five Latin expressions which are often used with a subjective infinitive. Give five verbs which are used with a complementary infinitive. Name one verb that is used with an objective infinitive. In what case is the subject of an infinitive?

IV. Supply the Latin for the italicized words and state what kind of infinitive is used in each case:

1. Est necesse discipulōs diligenter *to work*.
2. Magister iussit tabellās *to be put aside*.
3. Verba magistrī *to understand* poterāmus.
4. Paedagōgus quoque eāsdem fābulās *to hear* voluit.
5. Erat difficile Gallōs *to conquer*.
6. Magister fābulam nārrat; debēmus *to pay attention*.



Vēxillārius Gallus

V. Decline the Latin phrases for the following:

the same language	that custom
this lake	the same day

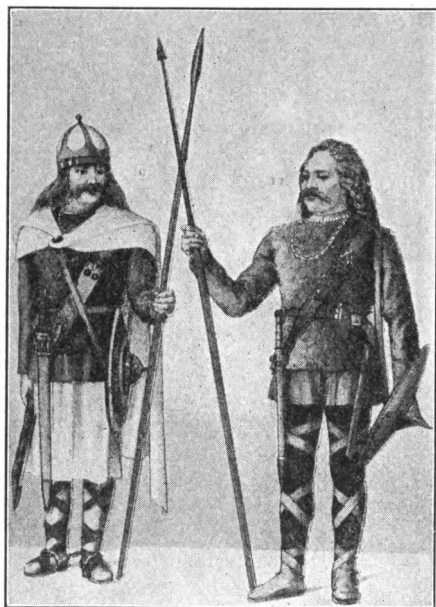
### EXERCISE XLIII

Write in Latin:

1. The pupils put aside their writing tablets because the teacher has ordered them to pay attention.

2. The pupils like to hear (it pleases the pupils to hear) the story; silence falls, for the teacher is beginning to speak.

3. "Caesar collected many legions and went to Gaul. 4. He visited the territory of the Gauls and brought many spoils to Rome. 5. In his commentaries Caesar wrote many things about the tribes who lived in Gaul. 6. All these differed in language and customs; for all Gaul was divided into three parts.



**Militēs Galli**

7. The Helvetians' territory was hemmed in by rivers, mountains, and a lake. 8. They were greatly annoyed because they could not make war upon many neighbors. 9. Although it was necessary to undergo great dangers, they decided to go out from home."

10. The pupils understand the story and repeat it.

## CHAPTER XLIV

### INDIRECT DISCOURSE ALL INFINITIVES ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

#### 463. DĒ ORGETORĪGE I

Apud Helvĕtiōs Orgetorix est princeps longē nōbilissimus et potentissimus. Is, rēgnī cupiditāte adductus, coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis facit. Cuius coniūrātiōnis dux esse vult. Ad nōbilēs hanc ōrātiōnem habet:

“Civitas<sup>1</sup> Helvĕtia, nostra patria, loci nātūrā continētur.<sup>1</sup> Helvĕtiū<sup>2</sup> undique flūminibus montibusque continentur.<sup>2</sup> Helvĕtiū,<sup>3</sup> hominēs maximae audāciae, sunt<sup>3</sup> belli cupidi, sed propter angustōs finēs finitimīs bellum nōn facile inferre possunt.<sup>4</sup> Glōria<sup>5</sup> belli et fortitūdinis quondam fuit<sup>5</sup> maxima sed mox minima erit.<sup>6</sup> Helvĕtiū<sup>7</sup> sine difficultāte dē finibus suis exire et lātiōrēs finēs petere possunt.<sup>7</sup> Sic finēs sibi magis idōneōs obtinēbunt.<sup>8</sup>

“Rōmānī<sup>9</sup> autem magnam partem Galliae iam superāvērunt.<sup>9</sup> Principātum tōtius Galliae obtinēre volunt.<sup>10</sup> Rōmānī<sup>11</sup> fortasse ab itinere nōs prohibēre temptābunt.<sup>11</sup> Multae nātiōnēs<sup>12</sup> autem ab Helvĕtiis victae sunt.<sup>12</sup> Exercitus<sup>13</sup> Rōmānus quidem ab eis quondam victus est.<sup>13</sup> Sine dubiō cōpia<sup>14</sup> Helvĕtiōrum eum iterum vincent.”<sup>14</sup>

Alius Helvĕtius, frāter Orgetorigis, Rōmānis amicus, hanc ōrātiōnem audit et Caesari dēfert:

“Orgetorix dicit civitatem<sup>1</sup> Helvĕtiam loci nātūrā continēri.<sup>1</sup> Dēmōnstrat Helvĕtiōs<sup>2</sup> undique flūminibus et montibus continēri.<sup>2</sup> Cōnfirmat Helvĕtiōs,<sup>3</sup> hominēs maximae audāciae, belli esse<sup>3</sup> cupidōs sed propter angustōs finēs finitimīs bellum nōn facile inferre posse.<sup>4</sup> Nōbilibus nostris



nārrat eōrum glōriam<sup>5</sup> bellī et fortitūdinis fuisse<sup>5</sup> maximam sed mox futūram esse<sup>6</sup> minimam. Putat Helvētiōs<sup>7</sup> sine difficultāte dē finibus suis exire et finēs lātiōrēs petere posse<sup>7</sup>; sic sibi finēs magis idōneōs obtentūrōs<sup>8</sup> esse. Dicit Rōmānōs<sup>9</sup> ipsōs magnam partem Galliae iam superāvisse<sup>9</sup> et princīpātum tōtius Galliae obtinēre velle.<sup>10</sup> Putat Rōmānōs<sup>11</sup> fortasse eōs ab itinere prohibēre temptātūrōs esse.<sup>11</sup> Scit autem multās nātiōnēs<sup>12</sup> ab Helvētiis victās esse<sup>12</sup> et exercitum<sup>13</sup> Rōmānum quidem ab eis quondam victum esse.<sup>13</sup> Spērat cōpiās<sup>14</sup> Helvētiōrum Rōmānōs iterum victūrās esse.<sup>14</sup>

#### Nōtā bene

Cuius coniūrātiōnis, of this league. See § 431.

Coniūrātiō sometimes means *conspiracy*; but *league* is often a better translation.

#### 464. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quōmodo Helvētia continētur? 2. Quōmodo Helvētiī continentur? 3. Quālēs sunt Helvētiī? 4. Quā dē causā finitimīs bellum nōn facile īferre possunt? 5. Quālis fuit glōria bellī et fortitūdinis? 6. Quālis erit glōria bellī et fortitūdinis? 7. Quid Helvētiī sine difficultāte agere possunt? 8. Quid petere possunt? 9. Quid obtinēbunt? 10. Quid Rōmānī iam superāvērunt? 11. Quid obtinēre volunt? 12. Quid agere temptābunt? 13. Nōnne multae nātiōnēs ab Helvētiis victae sunt? 14. Nōnne exercitus Rōmānus ab eis victus est? 15. Quid cōpiae Helvētiōrum iterum vincent?

16. Quid Orgetorix dicit dē civitāte Helvētiā? 17. Quid dē Helvētiis dēmōstrat? 18. Quid cōfirmat dē Helvētiis? 19. Putatne Helvētiōs finitimīs bellum īferre posse? 20. Quid nārrat dē glōriā bellī et fortitūdinis? 21. Putatne Helvētiōs dē finibus exire posse? 22. Putatne Helvētiōs finēs lātiōrēs petere posse? 23. Quid putat Orgetorix Helvētiōs obtentūrōs esse? 24. Quid dicit Orgetorix dē Rōmānis? 25. Quid scit Orgetorix? 26. Quid spērat?



**In terrā Helvētiōrum**  
**The Saint Gotthard road in the upper Rhone Valley**

## DISCUSSION

465. The second and third paragraphs of the story *Dē Orgetorige* I contain the actual words of Orgetorix. Simple statements of fact are made, in present, past, and future time. The principal verbs in these paragraphs are numbered in the text with the small numbers 1, 2, 3, etc., the subjects, when expressed, having corresponding numbers.

466. Make three wide columns on a sheet of paper, headed respectively *Present tense*, *Perfect tense*, and *Future tense*, and enter the principal verbs of these two paragraphs, with their subjects, in the columns which correspond to their tenses. Write down the number of each entry according to its number in the text. Leave two blank lines under each verb, to be used for later entries. In which case is the subject of each verb?

467. In the last paragraph of the story, the speech of Orgetorix is being reported to Caesar. The exact words of Orgetorix are not used, but each sentence is introduced by a word meaning *say*, *think*, *perceive*, or the like. Compare the first sentence of the last paragraph with the first sentence of the second paragraph. In what words do changes occur? To what case has *cīvitās Helvētia* been changed? To what form has *continētur* been changed? Write *cīvitātem Helvētiam continēri* in the first column under *cīvitās Helvētia continētur*. In the second sentence what changes occur? Place these forms under the original forms in the first column. In the third sentence to what case is *glōria* changed? To what forms are *fuit* and *erit* changed? Place these forms under the corresponding original forms. Continue this comparison throughout the story, and place the new forms under the original forms in their respective columns.

468. In the first column to what case has the nominative case been changed? To what form has the verb in the

indicative mood been changed? The nominative case has become accusative, and the present indicative has become present infinitive. The infinitive is active or passive according to the voice of the indicative verb.

469. In the second column the subjects have again become accusatives and the verbs have again become infinitives. In what tense were the original verbs? What is the tense of the infinitives in this column? The perfect active infin-



**Equitēs Galli**

itives have what ending? Upon what stem are they made? The perfect passive infinitives are made in what way? What is the agreement of the participial part of the infinitive?

470. In the third column find four future active infinitive forms corresponding to the future indicative active forms. How are they made? How does the participial part of the infinitive agree?

471. Words or thoughts of a person quoted without change are said to be *direct discourse*; as, *Orgetorix dicit, "Helvétii sunt belli cupidi," Orgetorix says, "The Helvetians are anxious for war."* Words or thoughts of a person, if

made to depend upon a verb of saying, thinking, or the like, are said to be *indirect discourse*, or *in indirect discourse*; as, **Orgetorix dicit Helvētios belli esse cupidōs**, *Orgetorix says that the Helvetians are anxious for war*. Specifically, if a clause originally in the form of a statement is changed to indirect discourse, it is called an *indirect statement*. (Indirect questions are discussed in § 517.)

**472.** The verb in indirect statement is in the infinitive, and its subject is in the accusative. The infinitive must have the tense it would have had if used in a direct statement; as, **continētur** becomes **continērī**; **victae sunt** becomes **victās esse**; **vincent** becomes **victūrōs esse**.

**473.** Observe that the tense of the infinitive is relative to that of the main verb. That is, if the action of the infinitive occurs at the same time as the action of the main verb, the tense of the infinitive must be present; if the action of the infinitive takes place before the action of the main verb, the tense of the infinitive must be perfect; and if the action of the infinitive is to take place after the time of the main verb, the tense of the infinitive must be future. The following sentences illustrate this principle:

- I **Dicit virum venīre**, *He says (that) the man is coming.*  
**Dixit virum venīre**, *He said (that) the man was coming.*
- II **Dicit virum vēnisse**, *He says (that) the man has come.*  
**Dixit virum vēnisse**, *He said (that) the man had come.*
- III **Dicit virum ventūrum esse**, *He says (that) the man will come.*  
**Dixit virum ventūrum esse**, *He said (that) the man would come.*

**474.** In the English translation of a clause in indirect discourse, an introductory word *that* is sometimes used, sometimes not used: *He says the man is coming*. In Latin,

when the infinitive is used, there is no word corresponding to *that*.

475. The rules for forming the infinitives are as follows:

*Active*

*Passive*

**Present**

(Given as one of the principal parts of the verb)

Change final *-e* of the active infinitive to *i*, except in the third conjugation, where the final *-ere* is changed to *-i*

*portāre, to carry*

*portārī, to be carried*

*vidēre, to see*

*vidērī, to be seen*

*mittere, to send*

*mittī, to be sent*

*capere, to take*

*capī, to be taken*

*audire, to hear*

*audīrī, to be heard*

*esse, to be*

**Future**

Combine the future active participle with the infinitive *esse*

Combine the supine (which is like the accusative singular neuter of the perfect passive participle) with the form *irī*

*portātūrus esse, to be about to carry*

*portātum irī, to be about to be carried*

*visūrus esse, to be about to see*

*visum irī, to be about to be seen*

*missūrus esse, to be about to send*

*missum irī, to be about to be sent*

*captūrus esse, to be about to take*

*captum irī, to be about to be taken*

*auditūrus esse, to be about to hear*

*auditum irī, to be about to be heard*

*futūrus esse, to be about to be*

## Perfect

Add *-isse* to the perfect stem      Combine the perfect passive participle with the infinitive *esse*.

*portāvisse, to have carried*

*portātus esse, to have been carried*

*vīdisse, to have seen*

*vīsus esse, to have been seen*

*mīsisse, to have sent*

*missus esse, to have been sent*

*cēpisse, to have taken*

*captus esse, to have been taken*

*audīvisse, to have heard*

*audītus esse, to have been heard*

• *fuisse, to have been*

476. In the perfect passive infinitive and the future active infinitive, which are made up of a participle and *esse*, the participial part is inflected and must agree in gender, number, and case with its subject; as, *putat Rōmānōs temptātūrōs esse*; *spērat cōpiās victūrās esse*; *scit exercitum victum esse*. The future active infinitive is often written without *esse*; as, *putat Rōmānōs temptātūrōs*; *spērat cōpiās victūrās*. In the future passive infinitive, the supine, ending in *-um*, is not inflected: *captum iri*. This infinitive is seldom used.

## RULE

477. *Indirect statement.* The infinitive with subject accusative is used with verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving.

## READING LESSON

478.

## DĒ ORGETORĪGE II

Helvētīi hāc ōrātiōne adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōtī omnibus cum cōpiīs dē finibus suis exire cōstituērunt. Putāvērunt necesse esse cum proximīs civitātibus pācem et

amicitiam cōfirmāre. Orgetorix ipse ad proximās civitatēs iit. Is ad nōbilēs orātiōnem habuit et coniūrātiōnem fēcit. Casticus, princeps Sēquanōrum, sē rēgnum in civitate suā occupātūrum esse cōfirmāvit. Dumnorix, Haeduus, dixit sē quoque rēgnum in suā civitate obtentūrum esse. Orgetorix illis probāvit esse facile haec perficere. Dixit sē suae



civitatīs imperium obtentūrum esse; tum suis cōpiis suōque exercitū illis rēgna sē conciliātūrum esse cōfirmāvit. Hī trēs nōbilēs sē principātum tōtius Galliae obtinēre posse spērāvērunt.

Brevi tempore Helvētīi intellēxērunt Orgetorīgem coniūrātiōnem fēcisse et rēgem fieri spērāre. Crēdidērunt eum esse hostem; itaque cōstituērunt necesse esse supplicio eum afficere. Sed paulō post Orgetorix perterritus dē vitā dēcessit. Omnēs sēnsērunt eum sibi mortem cōscīvisse.



## VOCABULARY XLIV

amicitia, -ae, f., <i>friendship</i>	*nātūra, -ae, f., <i>nature, character</i>
conciliō, -āre, -āvī, ātus, <i>secure, win</i>	nōbilitās, nōbilitātis, f., <i>nobility, the nobles</i>
coniūrātiō, coniūrātiōnis, f., <i>league, conspiracy</i>	*ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, f., <i>speech</i>
cōnsciscō, -ere, cōnscivī, cōnscitus, <i>decree, determine</i>	permovēō, -ēre, permōvī, permōtus, <i>move, influence, induce</i>
*crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus, <i>believe (see § 505)</i>	*prīncipātus, -ūs, m., <i>leadership, the first place</i>
dēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, <i>go away, withdraw</i>	quondam, adv., <i>formerly, once</i>
*dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātus, <i>carry down; report</i>	*sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, <i>feel, perceive, realize, experience</i>
difficultās, difficultātis, f., <i>difficulty, trouble</i>	*spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>hope, expect</i>
dubius, -a, -um, <i>doubtful</i>	*supplicium, supplicī, n., <i>punishment, penalty, distress</i>
fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, f., <i>bravery, courage</i>	

*Idioms*

supplicio afficere, <i>to subject to penalty, punish</i>	
sibi mortem cōnsciscere, <i>to commit suicide</i>	
ōrātiōnem habere, <i>to make a speech</i>	sine dubiō, <i>doubtless</i>
dē vitā dēcēdere, <i>to die</i>	nātūra locī, <i>natural features, topography</i>

## 479. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Explain the meaning of the italicized words in the following sentences:

1. The man was naturally *credulous*, but even to him the story was *incredible*.

2. Mary's *sentiment* was pleasing, but Jane's *sentimentality* was boring.

3. It is pleasant to meet with *quondam* friends.
4. It was a rather *dubious* compliment that he received.

## DRILL

I. Give and translate all the infinitives of the following verbs (do not give passive forms for *eō*, *sum*, *possum*, and *volō*):

putō	perterreō	dicō	dō
habeō	cōgō	sentiō	ferō
eō	possum	volō ( <i>wish</i> )	sum

II. Write in Latin:

1. I realize that he is coming.
2. You feel that she will come.
3. He thinks that they will come.
4. We thought that they had been won.
5. You thought that they would come.
6. I thought that they were being won.
7. She knows that he is withdrawing.
8. I shall see that he has gone.
9. I hope that the town will be beautiful.
10. We understood that the nobility were willing to go.

## EXERCISE XLIV

Write in Latin:

1. Did you realize that the Helvetians had always been hemmed in by natural features (nature of the place)?
2. Orgetorix says that the bravery of the Helvetians is very great.
3. He hoped that they would withdraw from their country.
4. He thinks that he can win the leadership of all Gaul.
5. Does he think that he will win the friendship of the enemy without difficulty?
6. A messenger reported that the nobility had been summoned and that a league was being made.
7. The nobles, moved by his speech, felt that they ought to go out from home as quickly as possible.
8. The Helvetians believed without a doubt that the wretched man had committed suicide.

CHAPTER XLV  
DEPONENT VERBS  
ABLATIVE WITH DEPONENTS  
ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE



480. DĒ HELVĒTIŌRUM PROFECTIŌNE

Post Orgetorigis mortem nihilō minus Helvĕtĭi cōnsilia perficere cōnantur; nam sē maiōre parte Galliae facile potitūrōs esse spĕrant. Itaque cum omnibus cōpiis domō proficīscī cōstituunt. Sunt hominēs maximae audāciae; neque angustĭās itineris neque hostēs bellicōsōs verentur. Ubi sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppĭda sua

omnia, vicōs omnēs, privāta aedificia incendunt. Finitimī eōdem cōnsiliō ūti et unā cum Helvētiis proficisci cōstituunt. Sunt omninō itinera duo: ūnum angustum et difficile inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum pertinet; alterum multō facilius per prōvinciam Rōmānam pertinet.

*Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis* Helvētiū diem dīcunt. Omnēs pollicentur sē eā diē ad ripam Rhodani conventūrōs esse.

Caesar, *hīs rēbus nūntiātis*, Rōmā proficiscitur et maximis itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit. Brevi tempore ad flūmen Rhodanum pervenit. Maximō militum numerō conlātō pontem quī est in Rhodanō dēlērī iubet.

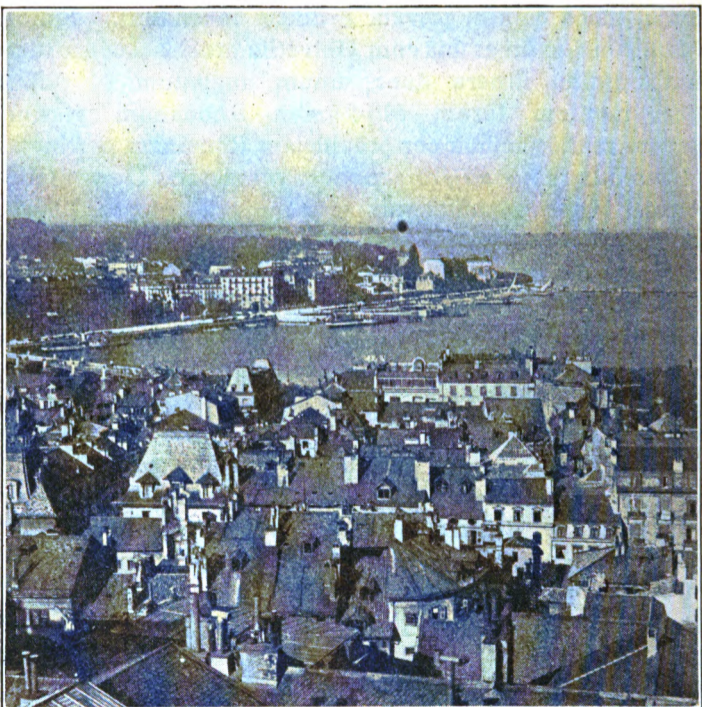
Caesaris adventū cognitō Helvētiū celeriter concilium convocant, et lēgātōs ad Caesarem nōbilissimōs civitātis mittunt. Lēgātī dīcunt Helvētiōs, *Caesare volente*, iter per prōvinciam Rōmānam facere velle. Eis audītis Caesar negat sē posse iter per prōvinciam ūllī dare. *Caesare invitō*, Helvētiū tamen flūmen trānsire cōnantur. Id facere nōn possunt.

Relinquitur ūna per Sēquanōs via. *Sēquanīs invitīs*, autem, ire nōn poterunt. Dumnorix apud Sēquanōs plūrimum potest et Helvētiis est amicus. Helvētiū spērant *Dumnorige duce* Sēquanōs sibi iter datūrōs esse. Nōn frūstrā spērant; nam Sēquanī Helvētiōs ire patiuntur.

481. Respondē Latīnē :

1. Quid Helvētiū agere cōnantur? 2. Quid Helvētiū spērant? 3. Unde proficisci cōstituunt? 4. Num hostēs bellicōsōs verentur? 5. Quid finitimī agere cōstituunt?

6. Quō factō Caesar Rōmā proficiscitur? 7. Quō factō Caesar pontem dēlērī iubet? 8. Quō factō Helvētiū celeriter concilium convocant? 9. *Caesare volente* quid Helvētiū agere volunt? 10. *Caesare invitō* quid Helvētiū facere cōnantur? 11. *Dumnorige duce* quid Helvētiū spērant? 12. Nōne Sēquanī Helvētiōs ire patiuntur?



Genava nova

The Helvetians gathered near here before setting out on their disastrous journey

**Nōtā bene**

**Quō factō**, *under what circumstances?* Literally, *what having been done? after what has been done?*

DISCUSSION

482. In the sentence *Post Orgetorigis mortem nihilominus Helvetii consilia perficere conantur*, is *conantur* active or passive in form? In what conjugation is it? Does the meaning as expressed in English correspond to the form? In the sentence *Itaque cum omnibus copiis domo*

proficisci cōstituunt, is proficisci active or passive in form? In what conjugation is it? Does the meaning as expressed in English have a corresponding form? Find other verbs in the first paragraph of *DĒ Helvētiŏrum Profectiŏne* that have passive forms with active meanings. State the conjugation of each verb.

483. Such verbs are called *deponent verbs*, or simply *deponents*. A deponent verb is one in which the personal forms are passive, but the meaning is active. The future infinitive and future active participle of deponents are active in both form and meaning. A deponent has no perfect indicative active, and therefore has only three principal parts; the conjugation, as with other verbs, is indicated by the infinitive, though the infinitive endings for the various conjugations are passive in form: -ārī, -ērī, -ī, -īrī. Deponent verbs are conjugated regularly according to the forms of the passive voice in their respective conjugations.

The principal parts of deponent verbs are given as follows:

	<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>
I.	cōnor	cōnārī	cōnātus sum
II.	vereor	verērī	veritus sum
III.	ūtor	ūtī	ūsus sum
-iŏ III.	patior	patī	passus sum
IV.	potior	potīrī	potītus sum

484. In the sentence *Helvētī sē maiŏre parte Galliae facile potītūrŏs esse spĕrant*, what phrase tells what the Helvetians hope to obtain? In what case is *parte*? In the sentence *Finitimī eŏdem cōnsiliŏ ūtī cōstituunt*, what words tell what the neighbors decide to use? In what case is *cōnsiliŏ*? The deponents *ūtor* and *potior* govern the ablative. A few other less common deponents also govern the ablative. Such an ablative, though it is translated into English as if it were the direct object of a verb, is really



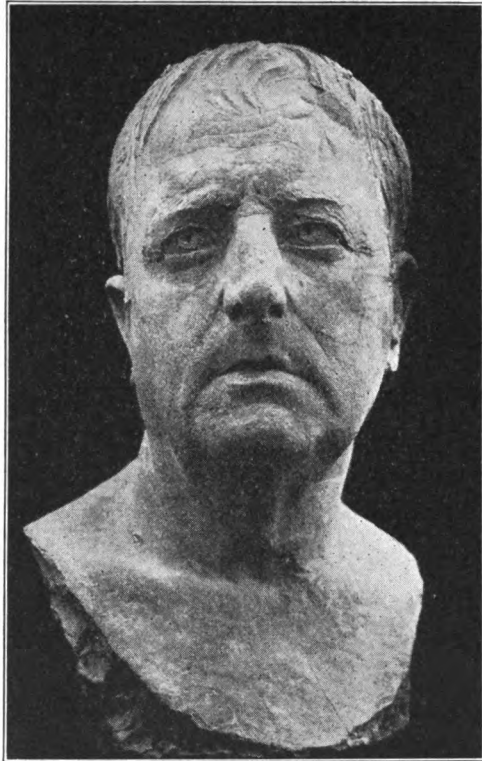
Relinquitur ūna per Sēquanōs via

an ablative of means. Thus *eōdem cōsiliō ūtuntur* means literally *they benefit themselves by the same-plan*; *maiōre parte Galliae potiuntur* means *they make themselves powerful by the greater part of Gaul*.

485. In the sentence *Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis Helvētīi diem dīcunt*, what phrase tells under what circumstances the Helvetians appoint the day? What part of speech is *rēbus*? *comparātis*? In what case are these words? In the sentence *Lēgātī dīcunt Helvētīōs, Caesare volente, iter per prōvinciam Rōmānam facere velle*, what phrase tells under what condition the Helvetians wish to march through the Roman province? What part of speech is *Caesare*? *volente*? In what case are these words? In the sentence *Caesare invitō, Helvētīi tamen flūmen trānsire cōnantur*, what phrase tells in spite of what the

Helvetians attempt to cross? What part of speech is *Caesare*? *invītō*? In what case are these words? In the sentence *Helvĕtīi spĕrant Dumnorīge duce Sĕquanōs sibi iter datūrōs esse*, what phrase falls under what circumstances the Sequanians will give the Helvetians permission to pass? What part of speech is *Dumnorīge*? *duce*? In what case are these words?

486. Each of these ablative constructions tells the time, circumstances, or conditions under which or in spite of which the action of the main verb takes place. An ablative so used is called an *ablative absolute*. The ablative absolute often consists of a noun and a participle; as, *omnibus rĕbus comparātis*, or *Caesare volente*. It may also consist of a noun and an adjective, as *Caesare invītō*, or a noun and a second noun, as *Dumnorīge duce*. The noun, or the first noun if there are two, may be con-



Museum of Fine Arts, Boston, Mass.

**Cīvis Rōmānus**

The Romans are famous for their lifelike portrait sculpture, of which this is one of the best examples.



sidered the subject of the phrase. A pronoun may be used as subject instead of a noun. The subject in an ablative absolute denotes a different person or thing from the subject or object of the main verb.

**487.** An ablative absolute can often be translated by a clause denoting time (introduced by *when, after, while*); cause (introduced by *because, since*); opposition (introduced by *although*); or condition (introduced by *if*).

1. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis, Helvētīi diem dīcunt.

*All things having been prepared for the departure,*  
*When all things have been prepared for the departure,*

} *the Helvetians name the day.*

2. Helvētīi spērant, Dumnorīge duce, Sēquanōs iter datūrōs esse.

*The Helvetians hope that,*

{ *if Dumnorix is the leader, under the leadership of Dumnorix,*

} *the Sequani will give permission to pass.*

3. Caesare invītō, Helvētīi flūmen transīre cōnantur.

*Caesar being unwilling,*  
*Although Caesar is unwilling,*

} *the Helvetians attempt to cross the river.*

#### RULES

**488. Ablative with deponents.** The ablative of means is used with *ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vēscor*, and their compounds.

**489. Ablative absolute.** A noun or pronoun in the ablative, with a participle or adjective in agreement, or with another noun in apposition, may be used to denote the time or circumstance of an action.

The word *absolute* means "grammatically independent," or "standing outside the usual grammatical relationships." The ablative absolute is so called because it is not dependent in any of the usual ways upon any other word in the sentence in which it stands.

VOCABULARY XLV

<b>adventus, -ūs, m., arrival,</b> <i>approach</i>	<b>*polliceor, pollicēri, pollicitus sum, promise, offer</b> (followed by a future infinitive with subject accusative)
<b>*angustiae, angustiarum, f.pl., narrowness; defile, a pass</b>	<b>*potior, potiri, potitus sum, obtain, get possession or control of</b>
<b>*arbitror, -āri, -ātus sum, think, suppose, consider</b>	<b>*privātus, -a, -um, private</b>
<b>*concilium, concili, n., council, assembly</b>	<b>*profectiō, profectiōnis, f., departure</b>
<b>*cōnor, -āri, -ātus sum, attempt, try</b>	<b>*proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum, set out, depart, start</b>
<b>convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, summon, assemble, call together</b>	<b>trānseō, -ire, trānsiī, trānsitūrus, go over, cross</b>
<b>*invītus, -a, -um, unwilling</b>	<b>*ūnā, adv., together</b>
<b>*negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, deny, say not</b>	<b>*ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum, use, employ</b>
<b>*omnīnō, adv., in all, only</b>	<b>*vereor, verēri, veritus sum, fear</b>
<b>*patior, pati, passus sum, allow, permit, suffer</b> (followed by an infinitive with subject accusative)	<b>*vīcus, -ī, m., village</b>

*Idioms*

**plūrimum posse, to have very great influence, to be very powerful**

**nihilō minus, none the less, nevertheless**

**ūnā cum, along with, together with**

**490. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE**

Explain the meaning of the italicized words in the following sentences:

1. A committee upon boundaries was appointed to *arbitrate* the claims of the two countries.



Alpès

2. At the weekly *convocation* the University students hear distinguished speakers.

3. By rapid *transit* the suburban population is brought quickly into the heart of the city.

4. The *advent* of spring brings joy to the people of northern lands.

5. The families were very *patient* while the work was being done.

6. They did not know how to *utilize* the old equipment.

## DRILL

I. Give a synopsis of the following verbs in the person and number indicated:

- |                             |                      |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. arbitror, 1st plural     | 4. potior, 3d plural |
| 2. polliceor, 2d plural     | 5. patior, 3d plural |
| 3. proficiscor, 3d singular | 6. ūtor, 3d singular |

II. Write all the infinitive and participial forms of these verbs, with English meanings.

III. Supply the proper case endings:

- Galli et Germānī ....dem lingu.... nōn ūtuntur.
- Barbarī castr.... hostium potientur.
- Sign.... dat..., militēs in hostēs dēcurrērunt.
- Quibus r.... cognit..., cōpiae flūmen trānsire cōnātae sunt.
- Helvētīi frūment.... mult.... ūsī erant.
- Caesar.... duc..., militēs nullōs hostēs verentur.
- Vic.... et aedifici.... incēns..., gentēs profectae sunt.
- Militēs gladi.... ūtentēs diū atque ācritēr pugnāt.

## EXERCISE XLV

*Write in Latin:*

1. When the council had been called, the chiefs promised that they would obtain a larger part of Gaul. 2. They think that they will burn all the villages and private buildings. 3. When the grain has been prepared for the departure, all will set out. 4. There are two routes in all; the leaders deny, however, that there will be any difficulty. 5. If the neighbors are unwilling, the Helvetians will not use that route because of the defile. 6. When the Helvetians' arrival had been learned, Caesar destroyed the bridge which was over the Rhone River. 6. Therefore it will be very difficult to cross the river. 7. Nevertheless the leaders do not fear the danger and they order the Helvetians to try to cross the river. 8. Caesar will not permit the warlike Helvetians to march through the Roman province.

## CHAPTER XLVI<sup>1</sup>

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, PRESENT AND IMPERFECT DATIVE WITH VERBS OF SPECIAL MEANING

#### I. Clauses of purpose with *ut, nē, quō, quī*

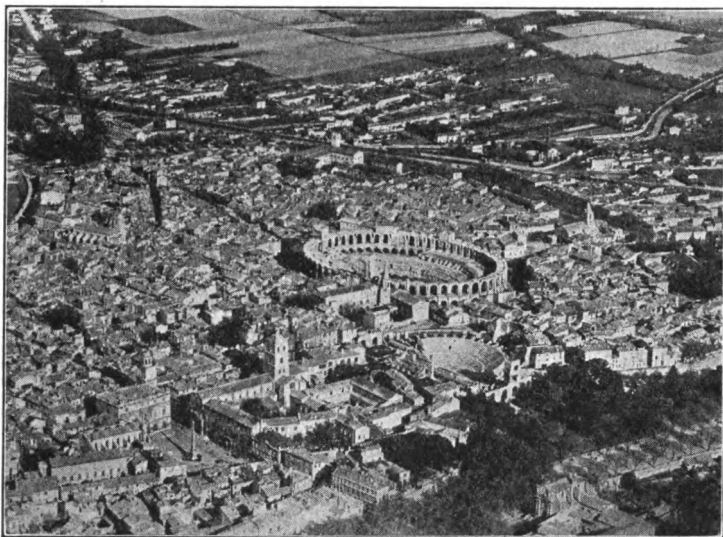
#### 491. DĒ ORGETORĪGIS CŌNSILIĪS I

Helvētīi multa dīlīgenter comparant quod ē patriā exīre cōstituērunt. Sēmentēs quam maximās faciunt nē inopia frūmentī in itinere *sit*. Iūmentōrum et carrōrum maximum numerum emunt ut omnia sēcum facile *portent*. Nūntiōs ad civitatēs proximās mittunt ut eae gentēs quoque cōsilia *audiant* et auxilium *mittant*. Fortasse civitatēs sē sociōs iungent et ē finibus ībunt. Helvētīi patriam relinquunt ut novōs agrōs *videant* et finēs multītūdīnī hominū idōneōs *capiant*. Magna est eōrum spēs.

Orgetorīx, nōbilissimū Helvētīōrum, erat civitatibus proximīs amicus. Dux igitur dēlēctus est ut finitimī cōsilia Helvētīōrum benignē *audirent* et auxilium *mitterent*. Ad civitatēs iit ut pīncipēs *vidēret* et cum eis cōsilia *caperet*. Helvētīi cum finitimīs pācem et amīcitiā cōfirmāre voluērunt ut omnia per eōrum finēs sine difficultāte *portārentur*. Erat mōs gentēs obsidēs inter sē dare nē iniūria *esset*.

Helvētīi cum civitatibus proximīs pācem et amīcitiā cōfirmāre cōstituerant *quō* facilius per eōrum finēs iter facere possent. Itaque Orgetorīgem mīserant *quī* eās rēs

<sup>1</sup>The following lessons on the *Subjunctive Mood* and the *Periphrastic Conjugations* have been written for those teachers who wish to teach these subjects as a part of the first-year work. The reading matter is based upon the first part of the Helvetian War, and therefore some of the subject matter of the preceding chapters relating to Orgetorix and his schemes has been repeated. These lessons are an excellent bridge to Caesar and should be used before Caesar is taken up.



### Aedificia antiq̄ua quae hodiē videntur

Conquered Gaul was quickly Romanized, and fine buildings were erected in the flourishing towns. Some of these buildings may still be seen in the center of modern Arles, which the Romans called Arelātē

cōnferet. Sed Orgetorix rēgnī cupiditāte adductus alia cōnsilia cēpit.

#### 492. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quid Helvētiī agunt? 2. Quō cōnsiliō sēmentēs faciunt? 3. Quō cōnsiliō iūmentōrum et carrōrum maximum numerum emunt? 4. Quō cōnsiliō nūntiōs mittunt? 5. Quō cōnsiliō patriam relinquunt?

6. Quō cōnsiliō Orgetorix dux delēctus est? 7. Quō cōnsiliō ad civitatēs ivit? 8. Quō cōnsiliō Helvētiī cum finitimis pācem cōfirmāre voluērunt?

#### Nōtā bene

Quō cōnsiliō, *with what plan in mind?* for what purpose?

## DISCUSSION

**493.** In the first and second paragraphs of the story *Dē Orgetorigis Cōnsiliis* I are several clauses answering the question *quō cōnsiliō*? What words introduce these clauses? How do these words differ in meaning? List the verbs in these clauses in two columns, one for the first paragraph, and one for the second. Are the verbs in the indicative mood?



*Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art*

#### Pōculum Gallicum

Gladiatorial combats were very popular in Romanized Gaul, as the size of the amphitheater on page 393 shows. On this cup, of molded yellow glass, scenes from the arena are depicted

junctive mood, and the tense of their verbs is dependent on the tense of the main verb. If the main verb refers to past time, the verb in the purpose clause is in the imperfect subjunctive; otherwise, it is in the present subjunctive. This dependence of the tense of a subjunctive verb upon the tense of the main, indicative verb is called *sequence of tenses* (see §§ 657-659).

**495.** A clause of purpose is usually introduced by the conjunction *ut*, *that*, *in order that*, or *nē*, *lest*, *in order that . . . not*. If, however, the purpose clause contains the

**494.** These clauses, introduced by *ut* and *nē*, are dependent clauses and state the purpose of the action of the verbs in the principal clauses. The verb in the principal clause is called the *main* verb; it states a fact and is in the indicative mood. The dependent clause shows *purpose*, and the verb is in the *subjunctive* mood. Such clauses of purpose require the sub-

comparative of an adjective or adverb, *quō* is substituted for *ut*. The relative pronoun *quī*, *quae*, *quod* may introduce a purpose clause, especially when the pronoun has an antecedent in the main clause.

496. In the first paragraph of the story, the verbs in the purpose clauses are in the present subjunctive; in the second paragraph the verbs are in the imperfect subjunctive. These two tenses may be formed from the present stem as follows:

*Present Subjunctive*

First Conjugation: change the stem vowel, which is *ā*, to *ē* (e) and add the personal endings; as, *port-e-m*, *port-e-r*.

Second and Fourth Conjugations: shorten the stem vowel, which is *ē* or *ī*, and add *ā* (a) and the personal endings; as, *vide-a-m*, *vide-a-r*;

Third Conjugation: change the stem vowel, which is *e*, to *ā* (a) and add the personal endings; as, *mitt-a-m*, *mitt-a-r*.

Third Conjugation, *-iō* verbs: the same as the fourth conjugation; as, *capi-a-m*, *capi-a-r*.

*Imperfect Subjunctive*

For all conjugations, add the personal endings to the present active infinitive:

*portāre-m*, *portāre-r*  
*vidēre-m*, *vidēre-r*  
*mittere-m*, *mittere-r*  
*capere-m*, *capere-r*  
*audire-m*, *audire-r*



*Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art*

**Pōculum Gallicum**

Another view of the cup shown on the opposite page



497. Learn the paradigms for the subjunctive mood of the model verbs *portō*, *videō*, *mittō*, *capiō*, *audiō*, *cōnor*, etc., found in §§ 630–633, 639. Learn also the present and imperfect subjunctive of *sum* and the irregular verbs (§§ 634–638).

498. In translating a purpose clause into English, the auxiliaries *may* and *might* are frequently used—*may*, if the present subjunctive is used; *might*, if the imperfect is used. However, it is often simpler to translate the purpose clause by the English infinitive. Observe the following:

**Helvētī patriam relinquunt ut finēs novōs petant.**

<p><i>The Helvetians are leaving their fatherland</i></p>	}	<p><i>in order that they may seek new territory. in order to seek new territory. to seek new territory.</i></p>
---	---	---

#### RULE

499. *Clauses of purpose.* A clause expressing purpose is introduced by *ut* (negative *nē*), and has the verb in the subjunctive. If the main verb shows past time, the imperfect subjunctive is used in the purpose clause; otherwise, the present subjunctive is used.

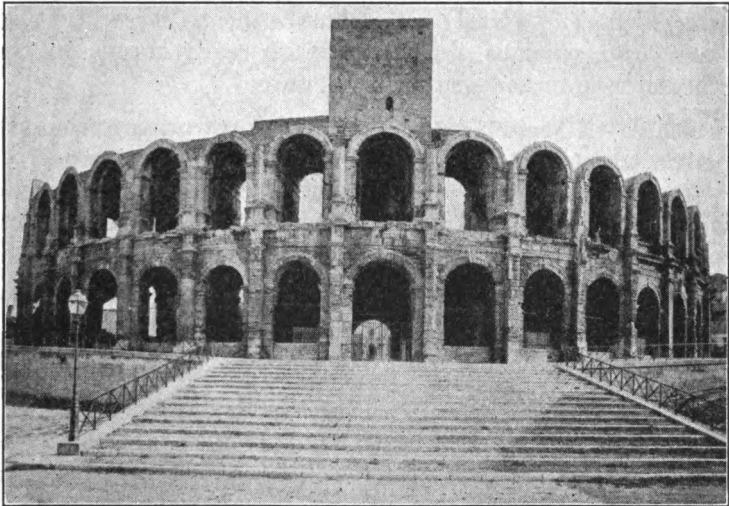
#### II. Substantive clauses after verbs of persuading, commanding, etc.

#### 500. DĒ ORGETORĪGIS CŌNSILIIS II

*Nōbilēs Helvētīcī Orgetorīgī persuādent ut lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscipiat. Eī imperant ut sine morā proficiscātur. Ducēs Orgetorīgem monent ut ad cīvitātēs proximās eat. Ab eō maximē postulant ut pācem et amicitiam cum Sēquanīs et Haeduis, finitimīs potentissimīs, cōnfirmet.*

*Sed Orgetorix in illō itinere patriae oblitus erat. Ipse rēx tōtīus Galliae fierī voluit. Iit igitur ad Sēquanōs et Haeduōs*

et ā nōbilibus quaesivit ut sēcum coniūrātiōnem facerent. In itinere filiō principis Sēquanī persuāsit ut rēgnum in civitatē suā occupāret; itemque Dumnorīgī, nōbilissimō Haeduō, ut idem cōnārētur persuāsit. Utrīque iuvenī probāvit sē suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrum esse; Helvētiōs tōtius Galliae plūrimum posse cōfirmāvit. Dixit



### Amphitheātrum

This is a closer view of one of the buildings shown in the picture on page 393. This amphitheater is still used for public spectacles, such as bull fights

autem sē iuvenibus rēgna conciliātūrum esse et eōs monuit ut suās cōpiās et suum exercitum exspectārent. Eīs imperāvit nē cuiquam cōnsilia ostenderent neu metum habērent.

### Nōtā bene

Neu metum habērent, *and that they should not be afraid, or and not to be afraid.* Neu is used to introduce a second clause, following one introduced by nē, and means *nor, and that . . . not.*

## DISCUSSION

**501.** In the first paragraph of the story are several dependent clauses. What word introduces each clause? What is the mood of each verb? List the main verbs upon which the clauses depend. Clauses depending upon verbs of persuading, commanding, advising, requesting, etc., are really objects of the main verb, and are often called *substantive clauses* or *noun clauses*. *Substantive* means *noun*; that is, the clause which is object of a verb really stands in the place of a noun and serves as a noun.

**502.** With *persuādeō*, *imperō*, and some other verbs, the person toward whom the action is directed is in the dative; with *moneō*, *ōrō*, and *rogō* the person is in the accusative; with *petō*, *postulō*, and *quaerō*, and many other verbs of requesting, the person is in the ablative with *ā*.

**503.** In the second paragraph of the story, identify the substantive clauses, explaining the tense of the verbs and the case of the person toward whom the action is directed.

## RULES

**504.** *Substantive clauses.* The verbs *persuādeō*, *imperō*, *moneō*, *postulō*, *quaerō*, may be followed by a substantive clause introduced by *ut* or *nē*, with the verb in the subjunctive.

**505.** *Dative with verbs of special meaning.* Many verbs, among them *persuādeō*, *imperō*, *crēdō*, *noceō*, take the dative case.

Observe that, though the usual English translations of these verbs are transitive verbs, and hence take a direct object, the Latin verbs are *intransitive*. Thus, *persuādeō* may be translated *to be convincing*; *imperō*, *to give orders*; *crēdō*, *to give credence*; *noceō*, *to do harm*.

## VOCABULARY XLVI

carrus, -ī, m., <i>cart, wagon</i>	*ostendō, -ere, ostendī, ostentus, <i>disclose, show, make known</i>
*cōnfiō, -ere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus, <i>accomplish, finish</i>	*persuādeō, -ēre, persuāsī, persuāsūrus, <i>be convincing, persuade</i>
*emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus, <i>buy</i>	*quaerō, -ere, quaesivī (-siī), quaesītus, <i>seek, ask, inquire</i>
*imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>command, order, bid</i>	*quisquam, quicquam, <i>anyone (see § 600)</i>
*item, adv., <i>thus, likewise, besides</i>	sēmentis, -is, -ium, f., <i>sowing, crops</i>
iūmentum, -ī, n., <i>beast of burden</i>	*spēs, -eī, f., <i>hope</i>
*iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, <i>join, unite</i>	*suscipiō, -ere, suscēpī, susceptus, <i>take up, undertake</i>
*lēgātiō, -ōnis, f., <i>embassy, legation</i>	*ut, conj. (used to introduce a clause of purpose), <i>in order that, that</i>
*metus, -ūs, m., <i>fear, anxiety</i>	*uterque, utraque, utrumque, <i>each, both (see §§ 354, 356)</i>
*nē, conj. (used to introduce a negative clause of purpose), <i>lest, that . . . not</i>	
*neu, conj., <i>and that . . . not, nor (see § 500, Note)</i>	

## 506. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Pick out the Latin words in the vocabulary with which the following English words are associated: *junction, ostentatious, redeem, requisition, susceptible.*

## DRILL

I. Give the present and imperfect subjunctive of the following verbs:

cōnfiō	iungō	persuādeō	imperō
mūniō	sum	possum	cōnor
eō	volō ( <i>wish</i> )	ūtor	emō

II. *After what tenses of the indicative is the present subjunctive used? After what tenses of the indicative is the imperfect subjunctive used?*



**Miles Gallus**

III. *Complete the verb forms and translate into English:*

1. Multōs carrōs ēmērunt quō facilius patriam relinqu.....

2. Magnās sēmentēs facient ut cōpiam frūmentī hab.....

3. Eī imperāverant ut ad civitātēs finitimās ī.....

4. Finitimīs quoque persuādent ut eōdem cōsiliō ūt.....

5. Lēgatiōnem ad civitātēs misērunt quae cōsilia ostend.....

#### EXERCISE XLVI

*Write in Latin:*

1. They will ask the neighbors to join (themselves) as allies and to go out of their territory. 2. They had made their sowings as large as possible in order that there might not be a lack of grain. 3. He is advising each noble to undertake the matter (thing). 4. He made this conspiracy in order to accomplish his plans more easily. 5. Orgetorix's hope was great; but his enemies (*inimīcī*) sent a messenger to disclose the conspiracy.

## CHAPTER XLVII

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD; CLAUSES OF RESULT

#### 507. DĒ HELVĒTIŌRUM CŌNSILIIS

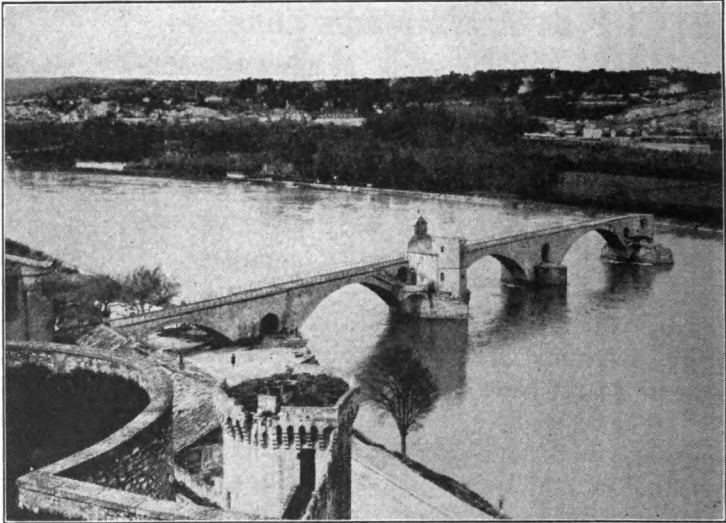
*Tam bene dicit Orgetorix ut iuvenēs nōbilēs coniūrātiōnem faciant et rēgna in cīvitātibus suis occupāre cōstituant. Inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant. Tam audācēs sunt ut perīcula nōn timeant. Etiam spērant sē tōtius Galliae imperiō potiri posse. Tanta est Orgetorigis cupiditās rēgni ut patriam trādere velit.*

Ea rēs, paulō post, Helvētiis ēnūntiāta est. Helvētīi Orgetorigem hostem esse sēnsērunt et ita incitāti sunt ut eum ex vinculis causam dicere cōgerent. Orgetorix amīcōrum magnum numerum habēbat et eius audācia erat tanta ut ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique convocāret; per eōs sē ēripere posse spērāvit. Sed cīvitās, ob eam rem incitāta, armīs iūs suum exsecūta est multitudinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs ad iūdicium coēgērunt. Orgetorix perterritus dē vitā dēcessit.

Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētīi patriam relinquere cupivērunt. Quārē accidit ut cōnsilia exsequerentur. Magnae sēmentēs factae erant; carrī et iūmenta ēmpta erant; fēminae liberique conlāti erant. Sed spem domum reditiōnis tollere necesse erat. Fiēbat ut oppida sua omnia, vicōs omnēs, reliqua privāta aedificia incenderent. Etiam frūmentum omne praeter id quod sēcum portāre necesse erat incendērunt. Hōc modō effēcērunt ut omnis spēs domum reditiōnis tollerētur. Effēcērunt praetereā ut finitimī eōdem cōnsiliō usī unā cum eīs proficiscerentur.

• **508. Respondē Latīnē:**

1. Quam bene dicit Orgetorix? 2. Quam audācēs sunt iuvenēs? 3. Quanta est Orgetorigis cupiditās?  
 4. Nōne Helvētīi incitātī sunt? 5. Quanta erat Orgetorigis audācia? 6. Quid civitās ēgit?



**Pōns Rōmānus**

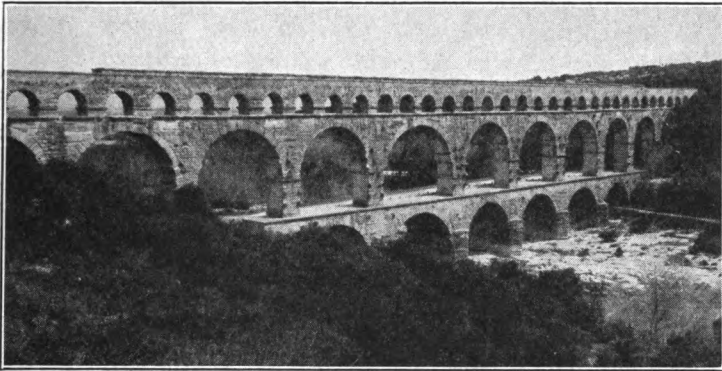
This bridge was built by the Romans across the Rhone at Avignon

7. Quid post Orgetorigis mortem accidit? 8. Quid fiēbat?  
 9. Quid Helvētīi effēcērunt?

**DISCUSSION**

**509.** List the dependent clauses introduced by *ut* in the first paragraph of the story. Give the mood and tense of each verb. Do these clauses show the purpose of the action of the main verb? These clauses show the *result* of the action

of the main verb. The words *tam*, *so*, *tantus*, *so great*, and *ita* and *sic*, *so*, are frequently used in the principal clause and suggest that a result clause may follow. A clause of result is usually introduced by *ut*, *so that*, or *ut . . . nōn*, *so that . . . not*, and requires the subjunctive mood, either present or imperfect, according to the time of the main verb.



**Aquae ductus**

A relic from the time when Gaul was a Roman province. By means of a pipe embedded in the masonry above the arches, water was led across rivers and ravines

**510.** In the second paragraph, identify the clauses of result, and pick out the words in the principal clauses which suggest that a result clause may follow.

**511.** In the third paragraph, list the dependent clauses introduced by *ut* and the main verbs upon which they depend. Clauses depending upon verbs of *happening*, *occurring*, *resulting*, and upon verbs of *effecting* and *accomplishing*, express result. A clause depending upon the verb *fit* or *accidit* is regarded as the *subject* of the verb. A clause depending upon *faciō* or its compounds is regarded



as the *object* of the verb. Such clauses are often called substantive clauses of result.

**512.** In translating a purpose clause into English, the auxiliaries *may* and *might* are often used; in translating a result clause into English, *may* and *might* are never used. A result clause is stated as a simple fact. Compare the following sentences:

*Purpose:* **Orgetorix magnum numerum hominum coëgit ut sē ēriperet.** *Orgetorix collected a large number of men that he might escape, or for the purpose of escaping.*

*Result:* **Orgetorix tantum numerum hominum coëgit ut sē ēriperet.** *Orgetorix collected so large a number of men that he escaped; that is, he accomplished his purpose.*

It can be seen from these examples that a result clause often states the accomplishment of a purpose.

#### RULE

**513. Clauses of result.** A clause expressing result is introduced by *ut* (negative *ut . . . nōn*), and its verb is in the subjunctive.

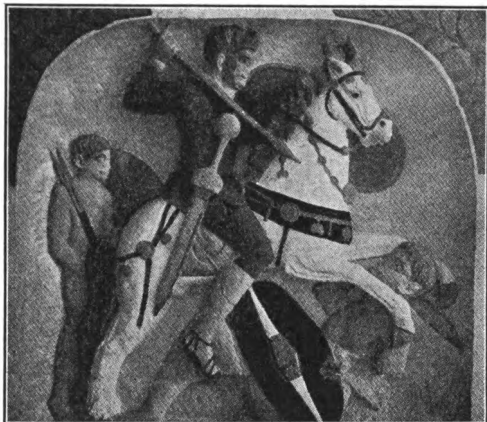
#### READING LESSON

##### 514. DĒ HELVĒTIŌRUM PROFECTIŌNE

Read the Latin of these paragraphs carefully. Determine the constructions (form and use) of the words in italics. Then translate the story into English.

Helvĕtĭi multa comparāverant ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis exĭrent. Multis finitimis quoque persuāserant ut oppidīs vicisque incēnsis ūnā cum eis proficiscerentur. Id fēcerant quō tūtius per hostium finēs iter facerent. Sed civitās Helvĕtia flūminibus montibusque ita continēbātur ut Helvĕtĭi duōbus omninō itineribus domō exire possent. Ūnum per Sēquanōrum finēs, alterum per prōvin-

ciam Rōmānam pertinēbat. Iter autem per Sēquanōrum finēs, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, erat tam angustum ut sine maximā difficultāte Helvētīi iter facere nōn *possent*. Veritī sunt autem nē paucī hostēs itinere prohibēre *possent*. Sed iter per prōvinciam Rōmānam erat *multō* facilius quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī erant socii Rōmānōrum, Rhodanus fluit. Helvētīi scivērunt sē id flūmen paucis locis *vadō* trānsire posse. Sic spērāvērunt sē iter per prōvinciam Rōmānam facere *posse*. His rēbus fiēbat ut Helvētīi facilius iter *dēli-*  
*gerent*.



Eques

Allobrogēs ā Rōmānis nūper victi erant; itaque Helvētīi crēdebant eōs nōndum *bonō animō* in populum Rōmānum esse. Ex oppidō extrēmō Allobrogum, Genavā *nōmine*, ad Helvētiōrum finēs pōns pertinēbat. Helvētīi existimābant sē Allobrogibus *persuāsūrōs esse* ut per suōs finēs eōs *ire paterentur*. Itaque nūntiōs quī eās rēs *cōnficerent* mittere cōstituērunt. Sed Caesar effēcit ut cōsilia exsequi nōn *possent*.

#### Nōtā bene

Verbs of fearing are followed by substantive clauses in the subjunctive, introduced by *nē* (affirmative), *ut* or *nē ... nōn* (negative).

The words *locō* and *locis* generally do not have the preposition in expressions of place where.

## VOCABULARY XLVII

* <b>accidō, -ere, accidī, —, fall upon; happen, occur</b>	* <b>magistrātus, -ūs, m., civil office or officer; magistrate</b>
* <b>efficiō, -ere, effēcī, effectus, bring about, cause, effect</b>	<b>nūper, adv., recently, lately, just</b>
<b>ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, assert, disclose</b>	* <b>ob, prep. (with acc.), on account of, because of</b>
<b>ēripiō, -ere, ēripiū, ēreptus, take away</b>	* <b>praeter, prep. (with acc.), besides, except</b>
* <b>existimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, reckon, think</b>	<b>reditiō, -ōnis, f., return</b>
<b>exsequor, exsequī, exsecūtus sum, follow up, execute</b>	* <b>tam, adv., so, in such a degree</b>
* <b>familia, -ae, f., household, kindred</b>	* <b>tantus, -a, -um, so great, such</b>
* <b>fidēs, -ei, f., faith, trust, belief</b>	* <b>tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, lift, take away, remove, carry off</b>
<b>iūdicium, -i, n., judgment, trial</b>	* <b>vadium, -i, n., shallow place, ford</b>
* <b>iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, n., oath</b>	<b>vinculum, -i, n., bond, fetter, chain</b>

## Idioms

**bonō animō, well disposed (toward):** used with **in** and the accusative

**causam dicere, to plead a case**      **sē ēripere, to escape**

## 515.            LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Answer the following questions:

1. What is an *accident*?
2. What does an *efficient* secretary do?
3. Why should the radio announcer be careful of his *enunciation*?
4. What is a business *executive*?
5. What are the duties of the *judiciary* department?

DRILL

I. *In the Reading Lesson find examples of the following clauses:*

(1) clause of purpose, (2) substantive clause with a verb of persuading, (3) substantive clause with a verb of fearing, (4) relative clause of purpose, (5) clause of purpose containing a word in the comparative degree, (6) clause of result, (7) substantive clause of result with a verb of happening, (8) substantive clause of result with a verb of accomplishing.

II. *Complete the verb forms, and state the type of dependent clause, in each sentence, and translate the sentence into English:*

1. Orgetorġis ōrātiō iuvenēs ita commōvit ut fidem et iūs iūrandum d.....

2. Accidit ut inimicus Helvētiīs coniūrātiōnem ēnūnti.....

3. Helvētīi effēcērunt ut Orgetorġ ex vinculis causam dic.....

4. Orgetorġ nūntiōs mittit quī familiam ad iūdicium cōg.....

5. Id facit ut sē ērip.....

6. Cīvitās magistrātibus imperat ut magnum numerum hominum convoc.....

7. Magistrātūs multitudinem hominum cōgērunt quō celerius iūs exsequ.....

8. Hīs rēbus fit ut Orgetorġ perterr.....

9. Orgetorġ timet nē suppliciō affic..... (passive).

10. Cīvitātī persuādere nōn poterat ut sē liber.....

EXERCISE XLVII

*Write in Latin:*

1. The Helvetians recently burned everything in order to take away hope of return. 2. They are so desirous of new territories that they are willing to undergo great dangers. 3. They thought that they could easily be kept from their journey on account of the defile. 4. The fords made it

possible for them to cross the river (brought it about that they could cross the river). 5. Their boldness was so great that they tried to influence Roman allies. 6. And so it happened that they marched toward the territory of the Allobroges.



**Myles Gallus**

## CHAPTER XLVIII

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT INDIRECT QUESTIONS

#### 516. DĒ FĀMĀ AMICŌRUM CAESARIS

Amīcī Caesaris cōnsilia Helvētiōrum animadvertunt atque maximē perturbantur. Intellegunt Helvētiōs ex finibus suis ēgredi statuisse. Cognōscunt eōs multīs aliīs gentibus persuādēre ut sē sociōs coniungant et ex finibus suis ēgrediantur. Sentiunt Helvētiōs per prōvinciam Rōmānam iter facere cōnātūrōs esse. Timent nē Helvētiī sociīs Rōmānis maximē noceant. Itaque magnā cum celeritāte Rōmam contendunt ut cum Caesare conloquantur.

“Cūr tam celeriter ex Galliā vēnistis?” quaesīvit Caesar. “Cūr perturbāmini?”

“Cūr *perturbāmur*? Multa apud Helvētiōs cōnspeimus, Caesar. Libenter tē certiōrem faciēmus cūr *perturbēmur*. Helvētiī ex finibus suis ēgredi statuērunt et magnum numerum carrōrum et iūmentōrum ēmērunt. Rogāsne cūr Helvētiī ēgredi *statuerint*? Rogāsne quantum numerum carrōrum et iūmentōrum ēmerint? Primō nōn intellēximus cūr ex suis finibus ēgredi *statuissent*, et cūr tantum numerum carrōrum et iūmentōrum ēmissent. Itaque ā nostris amicis Helvēticis quaesivimus quae Helvētiī facerent.”

Tum Caesar ipse perturbātus quaesīvit quae repperissent.

“Helvētiī, Caesar, existimant suōs finēs angustiōrēs esse prō multitūdine hominum; cōstituērunt igitur domō exire ut regiōnibus sibi idōneis potirentur. Ad novās regiōnēs eunt. Rogāsne num per prōvinciam Rōmānam eant? Amīcī nostrī nōs certiōrēs nōn fēcērunt quō irent. Lātiōrēs tamen



**Iūlius Caesar**

Victor Galliae, et imperātor Rōmānōrum

regiōnēs petunt atque sine dubiō per prōvinciam Rōmānam  
iter facere cōnābuntur. Itaque ad tē contendimus ut tē  
dē his rēbus certiōrem facerēmus.”

DISCUSSION

517. In the third paragraph of the story *Dē Fāmā Amīcōrum Caesaris*, compare the verbs *perturbāmur* and *perturbēmur*. What is the mood and tense of each? What kind of word introduces these two verbs? How does the clause containing *perturbēmur* differ from the clause containing *perturbāmur*? Upon what kind of verb does the clause containing *perturbēmur* depend? A clause introduced by an interrogative word and depending upon a verb of telling, asking, knowing, wondering, or the like, is called an *indirect question*, and the verb is in the *subjunctive* mood. Indirect questions are originally questions which are made to depend upon another verb, just as clauses of indirect statement are statements which depend upon another verb. The essential difference between indirect question and indirect statement is the fact that the former is introduced by an interrogative word.

518. The verb *perturbēmur* is in the present subjunctive because it depends upon *certiōrem faciēmus* and expresses an action unfinished at the time of the main verb.

519. In the same paragraph compare the verbs *statuērunt* and *statuerint*. Upon what verb does *statuerint* depend? What word introduces the clause in which *statuerint* occurs? What kind of clause is it?

The verb *statuerint* is in the perfect subjunctive because it depends upon *rogās* and shows an action finished at the time of the main verb.

520. The present subjunctive, representing an unfinished act, and the perfect, representing a finished act, are used after main verbs not referring to past time (§ 659).

521. In the sentence *Itaque ā nostris amīcīs quaesīvimus quae Helvētī facerent*, the verb *facerent* is in the imperfect subjunctive because it depends upon *quaesīvimus* and expresses an action unfinished at the time of the main verb.



**522.** In the sentence *Tum Caesar quaesivit quae repperissent*, the verb *repperissent* is in the pluperfect subjunctive because it depends upon *quaesivit* and expresses an action finished at the time of the main verb. Similarly, in the sentence *Primō nōn intellēximus cūr ex suis finibus ēgredi statuissent*, the verb *statuissent* is in the pluperfect subjunctive.

**523.** After a main verb referring to past time, the imperfect subjunctive is used to represent an act as unfinished, and the pluperfect to represent an act as finished. (See § 658.)



Miles Gallus

**524.** Find examples of other indirect questions in the story and explain the tense of the verbs. List the verbs in the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive. What stem is used in making these forms? What is the tense sign of each? What endings are added?

**525.** The perfect and pluperfect tenses of the subjunctive mood, active voice, are formed as follows:

*Perfect:* to the perfect stem add the tense sign *-erī-* and the personal endings.

*Pluperfect:* to the perfect stem add the tense sign *-issē-* and the personal endings. Long vowels in both tenses are shortened before the endings *-m*, *-t*, and *-nt*.

**526.** The perfect and pluperfect passive of the subjunctive mood are formed by combining the perfect passive participle with the present and imperfect subjunctive of *sum*. (For the active and passive forms see §§ 632–639.)

RULES

527. *Indirect question.* An indirect question is a substantive clause used after a verb of asking, telling, knowing, wondering, or the like, and is introduced by an interrogative word — adverb, pronoun, or adjective. The verb is in the subjunctive.

528. *Tenses.* When the main verb does not refer to past time, the present subjunctive is used in the dependent clause to indicate an unfinished act, the perfect subjunctive to indicate a finished act.

When the main verb refers to past time, the imperfect subjunctive is used in the dependent clause to indicate an unfinished act, the pluperfect subjunctive to indicate a finished act.

VOCABULARY XLVIII

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| *animadvertō, -ere, -verti,<br>-versus, <i>turn the mind to,</i><br><i>notice</i>                    | *num, interrog. adv., <i>whether:</i><br>used to introduce an in-<br>direct question |
| *atque (ac), conj., <i>and</i>   | *perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,<br><i>disturb, confuse</i>                             |
| *certus, -a, -um, <i>certain, sure</i>   | *quantus, -a, -um, interrog.<br>adj., <i>how great? how much?</i>                    |
| coniungō, -ere, coniūnxī,<br>coniūctus, <i>join, unite</i>   | *quis, quid, interrog. pron.,<br><i>who? what?</i> (for declen-<br>sion, see § 599)  |
| conloquor, conloquī, conlo-<br>cūtus sum, <i>talk, converse,</i><br><i>confer</i>                    | *regiō, -ōnis, f., <i>region, terri-</i><br><i>tory; direction</i>                   |
| *cōnspeciō, -ere, -spexī,<br>-spectus, <i>perceive, observe</i>                                      | *reperiō, -īre, repperī, reper-<br>tus, <i>find, find out</i>                        |
| ēgredior, -gredi, -gressus<br>sum, <i>go out, march out</i>  | *statuō, -ere, statui, statūtus,<br><i>decide, determine; set in</i><br><i>place</i> |
| *noceō, -ēre, nocui, nocitū-<br>rus (with dat.), <i>be harm-</i><br><i>ful or injurious, do harm</i> |  |

*Idiom*

certiōrem facere, *to inform*

## 529. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Explain the meaning of the italicized words in the following sentences:

1. Many mothers demand *certified* milk for their children.



2. A *conjunction* is a part of speech that connects words, clauses, or sentences.

3. The *colloquy* lasted a short time.

4. A well-bred person never makes himself *conspicuous* in public places.

5. The state has many *statutes* that need to be revised.

## DRILL

I. Give the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive of the following verbs:

sum	perturbō	noceō	statuō
reperiō	cōnor	conloquor	ēgredior
potior	persuādeō	agō	audiō

II. Give a synopsis in the indicative and subjunctive, active and passive, of the following verbs:

coniungō, 3d person singular	cōnspiciō, 1st person plural
dēleō, 3d person plural	dō, 2d person plural
ferō, 1st person singular	reperiō, 3d person singular

III. *State the form and explain the use of the italicized verbs in the following sentences:*

- A. 1. Amīcus Caesaris maximē *perturbātur*.  
 2. Caesar scit suum amicum maximē *perturbārī*.  
 3. Caesar scit suum amicum maximē *perturbātum esse*.  
 4. Caesar scīvit suum amicum maximē *perturbārī*.  
 5. Caesar scīvit suum amicum maximē *perturbātum esse*.
- B. 1. Amīcus Caesaris maximē *perturbātur*.  
 2. Caesar scit cūr amicus *perturbētur*.  
 3. Caesar scit cūr amicus *perturbātus sit*.  
 4. Caesar scīvit cūr amicus *perturbārētur*.  
 5. Caesar scīvit cūr amicus *perturbātus esset*.
- C. 1. Caesar repperit Helvētiōs ex finibus suis *ēgredī*.  
 2. Caesar repperit cūr Helvētiī ex finibus suis *ēgrederentur*.

#### EXERCISE XLVIII

*Write in Latin:*

1. The Helvetians will harm their neighbors if they march through new regions. 2. We decided to find out where the Helvetians were going. 3. Did you observe how great was the number of carts? 4. First we shall confer with our friends and inform them about the departure. 5. They noticed that the Helvetians had gone out of their territory. 6. You will find out who joined (with them) as allies. 7. They asked whether the plans which had been formed (having-been-formed plans) had been carried out. 8. We shall tell them what has been accomplished.

## CHAPTER XLIX

### TEMPORAL CLAUSES WITH *CUM* *CUM* CIRCUMSTANTIAL, CAUSAL, CONCESSIVE



#### 530. DĒ CAESARE ET HELVĒTIIS

Caesari *cum* cōsilia Helvētiōrum nūntiāta essent, Rōmā celeriter profectus est. Magnis itineribus in Galliam ulteriorem contendit et ad Genavam pervēnit. Militum quam maximum numerum cōegit atque pontem quī erat ad Genavam dēlēri iussit. *Cum* Caesar milites ex prōvinciā cōgeret, Helvētīi lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt. Lēgātī rogāvērunt ut eius voluntāte Helvētīis iter per prōvinciam facere liceret.

Caesar *cum* memoriā tenēret Helvētiōs quondam exercitum Rōmānum sub iugum mīsisse, eis iter dare dubitāvit. Sēnsit autem quālēs essent Helvētīi, neque hominēs bellicosōs sine iniūriā iter per prōvinciam factūrōs esse existi-



Mīlītēs castellum commūniunt

mābat. *Cum* satis magnum numerum mīlitum in Galliā nōn habēret, eō tempore contrā Helvētiōs bellum gerere nōluit. Itaque lēgātōs post aliquot diēs revertī iussit.

Interim Caesar et legiō decima ripam Rhodanī multa mīlia passuum mūrō fossāque mūnire coepērunt. Mīlītēs, superiōribus proeliis exercitī, brevissimō tempore rem perfēcērunt. Ubi lēgātī Helvētīi diē cōstitūtā ad Caesarem revertērunt, sē Helvētīis iter per prōvinciam dare posse negāvīt.

*Cum* Caesar eis iter nōn dedisset, tamen Helvētīi vī flūmen trānsire coepērunt. Alii nāvibus, alii vadīs flūmen trānsire ausī sunt. Magnus fuit labor Helvētiōrum at frūstrā ausī sunt. Helvētīi *cum* diē noctūque mūnitiōnem perrumpere cōnārentur, id tamen perficere nōn potuērunt. Tandem, mūnitiōne et mīlitum tēlīs repulsī, cessērunt.

## Nōtā bene

Ad Genavam pervēnit, *came into the neighborhood of Geneva.*  
 Post aliquot diēs, *after several days.*

## 531. Respondē Latinē:

1. Quibus temporibus Caesar Rōmā profectus est?
2. Ad quem locum pervēnit? 3. Quid ibi ēgit? 4. Quibus temporibus Helvētīi lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt?
5. Cūr Caesar eis iter dare dubitāvit? 6. Cūr bellum contrā Helvētīōs gerere nōluit? 7. Quid lēgātōs facere iussit?
8. Quid Caesar et legiō decima agere coepērunt?
9. Quandō Caesar Helvētīis iter dare posse negāvit?
10. Cum Caesar eis iter nōn dedisset, quid tamen Helvētīi fēcērunt?
11. Quōmodo Helvētīi flūmen trānsīre ausi sunt?
12. Cum Helvētīi mūnitiōnem perrumpere cōnārentur, quid tamen perficere nōn potuērunt?

## Nōtā bene

Quibus temporibus, *under what circumstances?*

## DISCUSSION

532. In the story *Dē Caesare et Helvētīis*, there are many dependent clauses introduced by the conjunction **cum**. What mood is used in all these clauses? The conjunction **cum** may be translated *when, since, or although*; it occasionally takes the indicative, but more often the subjunctive.

**Cum**, *when*, referring to present or future time, always takes the indicative, and is called *cum temporal*.

**Cum**, *when*, referring to past time, takes the indicative if it shows merely the time at which the action occurred, and is also called *cum temporal*. **Cum** with the indicative, however, is not very common, because even when the English translation would be *when*, the clause introduced usually refers to circumstance, cause, or the like, and hence falls under one of the following heads.

**Cum**, *when*, introducing a clause which shows the circumstances under which the action of the main verb occurred, takes the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, and is called *cum circumstantial*.

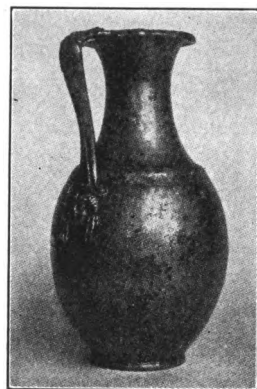
**Cum**, *since*, introducing a clause which shows the reason or cause for the action of the main verb, takes the subjunctive and is called *cum causal*.

**Cum**, *although*, introducing a clause which shows in spite of what the action of the main verb occurs, takes the subjunctive and is called *cum concessive* or *cum adversative*.

Find examples of the different *cum* clauses in the story.

**533.** The impersonal verb *licet*, *it is permitted*, *may*, takes the following constructions:

- (1) the infinitive with or without subject accusative
- (2) the dative and the infinitive
- (3) the subjunctive without *ut*



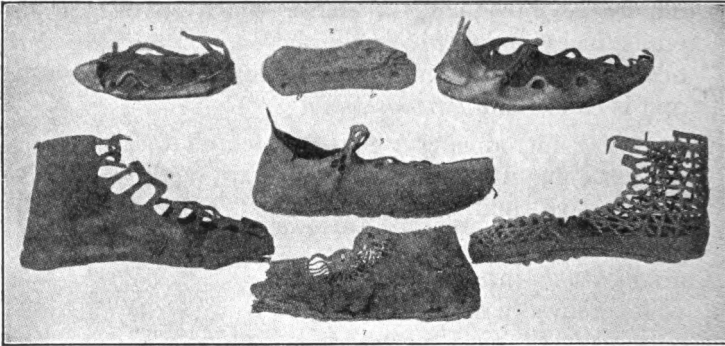
Ūrna aēnea

A bronze jar found in the ruins of a Roman frontier camp

**534.** The verb *revertor*, *return*, is a semideponent; the present, imperfect, and future tenses are deponent, but the perfect system has the regular active forms and is built from the perfect indicative form *reverti*. A synopsis in the third singular has the following forms: *pres.*, *revertitur*; *imp.*, *revertēbātur*; *fut.*, *revertētur*; *perf.*, *revertit*; *plup.*, *reverterat*; *fut. perf.*, *reverterit*.

**535.** The verb *audeō*, *audere*, *ausus sum*, *dare*, is also a semideponent, but in this verb the present system is active and the perfect system is passive, though in all tenses the translation is active.





### Calcei

Leather shoes found in the ruins of a Roman frontier camp

536. The verb *coepi*, *coepisse*, *coeptus*, *began*, is a defective verb—that is, the present system is lacking; and so only the tenses built on the perfect stem are used. The translation for the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect is *I have begun* (*began*), *I had begun*, *I shall have begun*.

### RULES

#### 537. *Cum* clauses

- I. *Cum*, *when*, referring to present or future time, takes the indicative.
- II. *Cum*, *when*, referring to past time, and showing pure time, takes the indicative.
- III. *Cum*, *when*, referring to past time, and showing circumstance, takes the subjunctive, either imperfect or pluperfect.
- IV. *Cum*, *since*, takes the subjunctive.
- V. *Cum*, *although*, takes the subjunctive.

## VOCABULARY XLIX

- \*at, conj., *but, but on the other hand*
- \*audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, *dare*
- \*cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessūrus, *go away; give way, yield*
- \*coepī, coepisse, coeptus, *began*
- \*contrā, prep. (with acc.), *against, opposite to*
- \*dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *doubt, hesitate*
- \*exerceō, -ēre, exercuī, exercitus, *train, practice*
- \*iugum, -ī, n., *yoke, ridge*
- \*labor, -ōris, m., *toil, effort*
- \*licet, licēre, licuit, impersonal verb, *it is permitted, may*
- perrumpō, -ere, perrūpī, perruptus, *break through, force a way through*
- repellō, -ēre, reppulī, repulsus, *drive back, repulse, ward off*
- \*revertor, revertī (infinitive), revertī (perfect), reversus (perf. passive part.), *turn back, return, go back* (present system is deponent; perfect system is built on the perfect active stem)
- \*satis, adv., *sufficiently, enough*
- \*sub, prep. (with acc.), *under, beneath*
- \*ulterior, -ius, comp. adj., *farther, further*
- \*vis, acc. vim, abl. vī, f., *force, violence* (see § 566)
- \*voluntās, -tātis, f., *wish, good will*

## 538.

## LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. Give the meaning of the adjectives in the following phrases: a *voluntary* offering, an *ulterior* motive, a *contrary* opinion, a *repellent* force, a *licensed* operator.

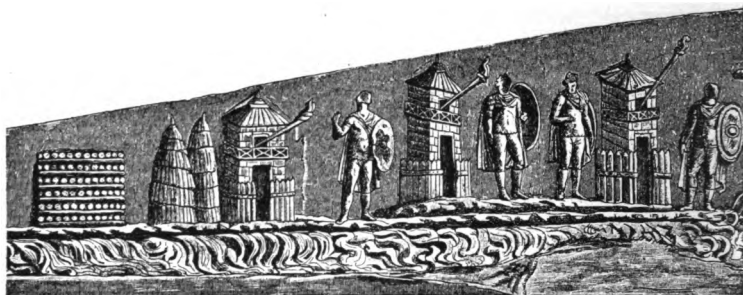
II. *Labor Day*. This day, usually the first Monday in September, is a holiday set apart for, and in recognition of, laborers as a class.

## DRILL

I. Give a synopsis of the following verbs:

audeō, third singular, indicative and subjunctive

revertor, third plural, indicative and subjunctive



### Militēs castra custōdiunt

Notice the watch towers, and the torches which illumine them

cēdō, first plural, indicative and subjunctive

coepī, third singular, indicative and subjunctive

II. Write the following sentence in three ways, using the verb licet: They were not permitted to leave the Helvetian state.

III. Complete the verb in each clause by supplying the proper word or ending, and translate the sentence into English:

1. Cum Helvētīi dē Caesaris adventū certiōrēs factī ..... , lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt.

2. Cum Helvētīi bellicōsī ..... , Caesareīs iter dare dubitat.

3. Ducēs Helvētīis imperāvērunt ut flūmen vī trāns....

4. Cum Helvētīi flūmen trānsīre ausī ..... , tamen mūnitiōnem perrumpere nōn poterant.

5. Mūnitiō effēcit ut Helvētīi iter per prōvinciam facere nōn poss....

6. Scīmus cūr Helvētīi cess....

7. Intellēximus quis quondam Rōmānōs sub iugum mīs....

### EXERCISE XLIX

Write in Latin:

1. When Caesar had been informed of the Helvetians' plans, he came into Farther Gaul. 2. The Helvetians wished

to march through the Roman province with Caesar's good will. 3. He began to fortify the banks of the Rhone in order to repulse the Helvetians more easily. 4. Although the effort was great, the trained soldiers accomplished the task very quickly. 5. Since Caesar does not have a sufficiently large number of soldiers in Gaul, he does not dare to wage war against the Helvetians. 6. But he quickly returned to Italy in order to collect several legions.



**Gallus**

**This man was a Gallo-Roman; that is, an inhabitant of Romanized Gaul**

## CHAPTER L

### GERUND AND GERUNDIVE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC DATIVE OF AGENT

#### Gerund and gerundive

#### 539. DE HELVĒTIŌRUM ITINERE I

Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invitīs ire nōn poterant. His cum suā sponte Helvētīi persuādere nōn possent, cum Dumnorīge Haeduō, amicō suō, conlocūtī sunt. Dumnorix erat cupidus *rēgnandī*. Apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat quod magnās facultātēs ad *largiendum* comparāverat. Helvētīi Dumnorīgem certīorem fēcērunt omnia esse parāta ad *ēgrediendum*. Dixērunt sē Caesarem neque *ōrandō* neque *pugnandō* addūcere potuisse. Dumnorīgem ōrāvērunt ut perficeret ut Sēquanī Helvētīis iter per finēs suōs darent. Dumnorix eōs rogāvit ut finem *dicendī* facerent; dixit sē Sēquanīs persuādere cōnātūrum esse.

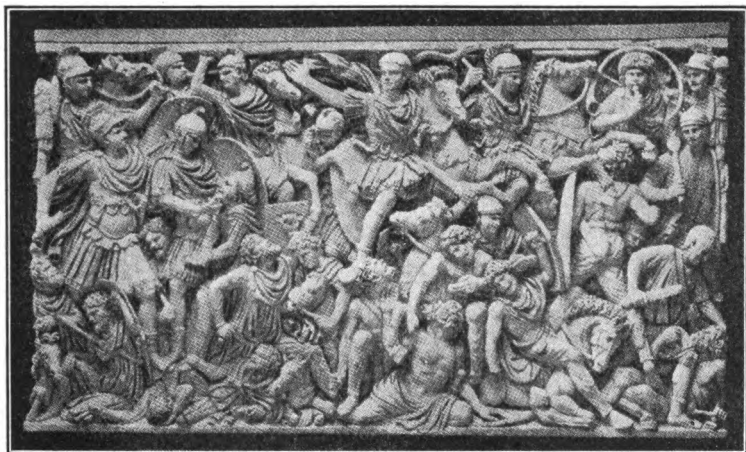
Dumnorix Sēquanīs persuāsit ut per finēs suōs Helvētīōs in Santonum finēs prōgredi paterentur. Caesari cum id nūntiātum esset, Helvētīōs itinere prohibere statuit. Iūdicāvit enim magnō cum periculō prōvinciae futūrum esse ut Helvētīi in Santonum finibus essent. Itaque ei mūnitiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit. Dēcima legiō quoque in Galliā ad mūnitiōnem *dēfendendam* mānsit. Caesar ipse in Italiam magnīs itineribus contendit ad plūrēs legiōnēs cōgendās. Brevī tempore cum quīnque legiōnibus in ulteriōrem Galliam rediit et in finibus Segusiāvōrum cōnsēdit.

Interim Helvētīi per finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant eōrumque

agrōs vāstābant. Haedui cum sē ab eis dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt ad auxilium petendum. Dixērunt sē auxilium petere *liberōrum cōservandōrum atque oppidōrum tuendōrum causā*.

Nōtā bene

Suā sponte, of *their own accord*. T., Titum, acc. of Titus.



Proelium

540. Respondē Latinē:

1. Quae via relinquēbātur? 2. Cūr Helvētīi cum Dumnorīge conlocūtī sunt? 3. Cuius rei erat Dumnorix cupidus?
4. Quid comparāverat? 5. Quō cōsiliō erant omnia parāta?
6. Quōmodo Caesarem addūcere cōnātī sunt? 7. Quid Dumnorix eōs rogāvit?
8. Quid Dumnorix Sēquanīs persuāsit? 9. Quid Caesar agere statuit?
10. Quō cōsiliō legiō decima in Galliā mānsit?
11. Quō cōsiliō Caesar in Italiam contendit?
12. Quō cōsiliō Haedui lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt?
13. Quō cōsiliō Haedui auxilium petiērunt?

## DISCUSSION

**541.** In the sentence *Dumnorix erat cupidus rēgnandī*, in what case and number is *rēgnandī*? What is its declension? From what verb is it made? What stem is used? *Rēgnandī* is called a *gerund*. A gerund expresses the action of a verb but has the form of a noun. The gerund for all conjugations is formed by shortening the stem vowel of the present stem and adding *-nd-* or *-end-* and the endings of a neuter noun of the second declension. (See § 139.) The gerund is found only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. The dative is rarely used and the nominative is lacking, this form being supplied by the present infinitive. The gerund may usually be translated by an English noun in *-ing*, and is active in meaning. (See §§ 616, 620, 624, 629.)

Identify the other gerunds in the first paragraph of the story and explain the case of each.

**542.** In the sentence *Decima legiō quoque in Galliā ad mūnitiōnem dēfendendam mānsit*, in what case, gender, and number is *dēfendendam*? Is *dēfendendam* a gerund? Is it used as a noun or an adjective? *Dēfendendam* is an adjectival form of the verb, called a *gerundive*. The gerundive for all conjugations is formed by shortening the stem vowel of the present stem and adding *-nd-* or *-end-* and the endings of an adjective of the first-and-second declension. (See § 147.) It is found in all genders, numbers, and cases, and must agree with the noun it modifies.

**543.** The gerund is sometimes, though not often, used with a direct object, as in *cupidus urbem capiendī*, *desirous of taking the city*; a gerundive construction is preferred, in which the noun that receives the action is in the case required by the context, with the gerundive in agreement with the noun, as in the expression *cupidus urbis capiendae*, which means the same thing. In this construction, the words

urbis capiendae are somewhat like a compound noun; the expression is equivalent to *desirous of city-taking*; that is, *desirous of taking the city*; *ad mūnitiōnem dēfendendam* means *for fortification-defending*; that is, *for defending the fortification*.

544. List the gerundive constructions in the second and third paragraphs of the story. What does each phrase tell



Captivī interficiuntur

about the main verb? How are these phrases made up? The gerundive construction is frequently used to show purpose; so also is the gerund. Purpose is expressed by *ad* and the accusative, or by the genitive with *causā*.

Periphrastic conjugations; dative of agent

545. DĒ HELVĒTIŌRUM ITINERE II

Lēgātis quī plūra *dictūrī erant* Caesar respondit:

“Helvētīi prōvinciae atque sociīs magnopere nocent.



Omnia sua oppida vicōsque incendērunt. Finēs eōrum vāstātī sunt; domī nihil est. Finēs finitimōrum autem nōn vāstāndī sunt. Domum Helvētiīs redeundum est. Libērī enim sociōrum Rōmānōrum in servitūtem abdūcī nōn dēbent. Libērī vestrī cōnservandī sunt. Oppida sociōrum Rōmānōrum expugnārī nōn dēbent. Oppida vestra tuenda sunt. *Mihi, vērō, bellum gerendum erit.* Cōpiāe Helvētiōrum itinere prohibendae erunt. Sociī Rōmānī ab iniuriā tuendī sunt.”

Hōc dictō Caesar lēgātōs dimisit. Simul ac discessērunt Cāesar sibi nōn morandum esse statuit. Putāvīt Helvētiōs sine morā superandōs esse. Itaque Helvētiōs secūtus est.

Flūmien erat Arar quod per finēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum inflūxit. Id Helvētiīs transeundum erat. Helvētiī iam trēs partēs cōpiārum id flūmen trādūxerant. Quārta pars trānsitūra erat. Caesar eōs Helvētiōs qui impedītī flūmen trānsitūrī erant aggressus magnam partem eōrum occidit. Reliquī sēsē fugae mandāvērunt.

#### DISCUSSION

546. In the sentence *Finēs finitimōrum nōn vāstāndī sunt*, what are the two parts of the verb *vāstāndī sunt*? What is *vāstāndī*? With what does it agree? The gerundive combined with a form of *sum* is used to denote an action which is to be done, has to be done, or must be done. The gerundive combined with the forms of *sum* makes the *passive periphrastic* conjugation. (See §§ 643–645.) This conjugation denotes obligation or necessity and is always passive in meaning; as, *Finēs nōn vāstāndī sunt*, *The territory is not to be devastated*, or *The territory must not be devastated*.

547. In the sentence *Mihi bellum gerendum erit*, in what tense is *erit*? What is its subject? Is the doer (or agent) expressed in this sentence? What is the case of *mihi*? With the passive periphrastic conjugation the agent is usually in the dative, called the *dative of agent*. The literal trans-

lation of this sentence is: *For me there will be war to be waged*; but it is usually translated: *I shall have to wage war*. Thus the dative of agent is translated as the subject.

548. When an intransitive verb is used in the passive periphrastic, the form of *sum* must be third person singular, as if the verb were impersonal; as, *Helvētūs redeundum est*, *The Helvetians must return*.

549. List the other passive periphrastic forms in the story and give the tense of each. Pick out the subject of each and state the agent when expressed.

550. In the clause *quī plūra dictūrī erant*, what are the two parts of the verb *dictūrī erant*? What is *dictūrī*? With what does it agree? What is the literal meaning of *dictūrī erant*? The future active participle combined with a form of *sum* is used to denote an action which is about to take place. The future active participle combined with the forms of *sum* makes the *active periphrastic* conjugation. (See §§ 640-642) This conjugation denotes intention or futurity and is always active; as, *dictūrī erant*, *they were about to speak*, or *they were intending to speak*.

#### RULES

551. *Purpose*. Purpose may be expressed by *ad* followed by the accusative of the gerund or of the gerundive.

Purpose may be expressed by the genitive of the gerund or of the gerundive followed by *causā*.

552. *Active periphrastic*. The active periphrastic is used to express intention or futurity.

553. *Passive periphrastic*. The passive periphrastic is used to express obligation or necessity.

554. *Dative of agent*. The dative is used with the passive periphrastic to denote agency.

## VOCABULARY L

abdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, <i>lead away, carry off</i>	*moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, <i>delay, wait</i>
*aggredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, <i>approach; attack</i>	*praefficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (with dat.), <i>put in charge of, set over</i>
cōnservō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>keep safe, preserve</i>	prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, <i>go forth, proceed, advance</i>
*cōnsidō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessūrus, <i>take a seat, encamp</i>	*quā, adv., <i>where</i>
dimittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, <i>send forth, dismiss</i>	*redeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, <i>return, go back</i>
*enim, conj. (postpositive), <i>for</i>	*sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, <i>follow</i>
*expugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>capture, take by assault</i>	*simul, adv., <i>at the same time; simul ac (simul atque before a vowel), as soon as</i>
*facultās, -tātis, f., <i>opportunity; resources; ability</i>	trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (with two accusatives), <i>lead across</i>
influō, -ere, -flūxī, -flūxus, <i>flow in</i>	*tueor, -ērī, tūtus sum, <i>watch over, guard</i>
*iūdicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>judge</i>	*vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>lay waste, devastate</i>
largior, -irī, -itus sum, <i>bribe</i>	
*mandō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>commit, hand over</i>	

## 555.

## LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Explain the meaning of the italicized words:

1. We are studying *simultaneous* equations in algebra.
2. Harold is very *aggressive*, but he is not at all *progressive*.
3. The *abduction* of the little boy was never explained.
4. In English public schools older boys act as *prefects*.

## DRILL

I. Decline the gerund of the following:

aggredior    cōnservō    tueor    dimittō    largior

II. Give the gerundive of the same verbs in the nominative singular.

III. Complete the following sentences by using either a gerund or gerundive construction for the words in parentheses:

1. Vēnimus (to pray).
2. Sumus cupidī (of delaying).
3. Multa (by progressing) vincimus.
4. Lēgātōs (to capture the camp) mīsit. (Two ways.)
5. Spēs (of saving the fields) erat magna.

IV. Translate into Latin, using the periphrastic conjugations:

1. The Helvetians must be led across.
2. The Helvetians had to be led across.
3. The Helvetians are about to lead their troops across the river.
4. We were about to hand over the hostages.
5. The Helvetians must lead us across.
6. We must return to guard our fields.
7. Dumnorix was about to speak.
8. The Romans had to fortify their camp.



**Hi Gallī servi nōn erunt**

The Gauls often preferred to die rather than become captives and slaves.

V. Write the following sentences in as many ways as possible:

1. The enemy have come to carry off our children.
2. We shall follow them in order to save our territory.

## EXERCISE L

*Write in Latin:*

1. Caesar had put Labienus in charge of the Roman forces. 2. For he judged that the enemy would try to capture the fortifications. 3. As soon as he had done (did) this he hurried into Italy. 4. Caesar was desirous of conquering the Helvetians. 5. They ought not to send their children into slavery nor to attack their towns. 6. Dumnorix's opportunity for (of) bribing was very great. 7. When Caesar had decided to attack the Helvetians he dismissed the envoys. 8. Do you know into what river this river flows? 9. Since the enemy had encamped here he cut them down. 10. Caesar thought that he must not delay.



**Arcus triumphālis**

Romans built this arch in southern France, at Orange, ancient Arausiō, probably to commemorate a victory over the Gauls

# APPENDIX

## SUMMARY OF FORMS DECLENSION OF NOUNS FIRST DECLENSION

556. puella, f., girl

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	puella	puellae
<i>Gen.</i>	puellae	puellārum
<i>Dat.</i>	puellae	puellis
<i>Acc.</i>	puellam	puellās
<i>Abl.</i>	puellā	puellis

## SECOND DECLENSION

557. servus, m., *slave*    filius, m., *son*    puer, m., *boy*    ager, m., *field*    templum, n., *temple*

### *Singular*

<i>Nom.</i>	servus	filius	puer	ager	templum
<i>Gen.</i>	servī	fili	puerī	agri	templī
<i>Dat.</i>	servō	filiō	puerō	agrō	templō
<i>Acc.</i>	servum	filium	puerum	agrum	templum
<i>Abl.</i>	servō	filiō	puerō	agrō	templō

The ending of the vocative singular of nouns in -us is -e; of filius, and proper names in -ius, it is -ī; as, serve, fili, Cornēli.

### *Plural*

<i>Nom.</i>	servī	filiī	puerī	agri	templa
<i>Gen.</i>	servōrum	filiōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	templōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	servīs	filiīs	puerīs	agris	templīs
<i>Acc.</i>	servōs	filiōs	puerōs	agrōs	templa
<i>Abl.</i>	servīs	filiīs	puerīs	agris	templīs

## THIRD DECLENSION

## Consonant Stems

558.	<b>dux</b> , m., <i>leader</i>	<b>mīles</b> , m., <i>soldier</i>	<b>lĕx</b> , f., <i>law</i>
		<i>Singular</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>dux</b>	<b>mīles</b>	<b>lĕx</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>ducis</b>	<b>mīlitis</b>	<b>lĕgis</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>duci</b>	<b>mīlitī</b>	<b>lĕgī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>ducem</b>	<b>mīlitem</b>	<b>lĕgem</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>duce</b>	<b>mīlite</b>	<b>lĕge</b>
		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>ducēs</b>	<b>mīlitēs</b>	<b>lĕgēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>ducum</b>	<b>mīlitum</b>	<b>lĕgum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>ducibus</b>	<b>mīlitibus</b>	<b>lĕgibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>ducēs</b>	<b>mīlitēs</b>	<b>lĕgēs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>ducibus</b>	<b>mīlitibus</b>	<b>lĕgibus</b>
559.	<b>cōsul</b> , m., <i>consul</i>	<b>imperātor</b> , m., <i>commander in chief</i>	<b>frāter</b> , m., <i>brother</i>
		<i>Singular</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>cōsul</b>	<b>imperātor</b>	<b>frāter</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>cōsulis</b>	<b>imperātōris</b>	<b>frātris</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>cōsulī</b>	<b>imperātōrī</b>	<b>frātrī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>cōsulem</b>	<b>imperātōrem</b>	<b>frātrem</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>cōsule</b>	<b>imperātōre</b>	<b>frātre</b>
		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>cōsulēs</b>	<b>imperātōrēs</b>	<b>frātrēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>cōsulum</b>	<b>imperātōrum</b>	<b>frātrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>cōsulibus</b>	<b>imperātōribus</b>	<b>frātribus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>cōsulēs</b>	<b>imperātōrēs</b>	<b>frātrēs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>cōsulibus</b>	<b>imperātōribus</b>	<b>frātribus</b>

<b>560.</b>	<b>legiō, f.,</b> <i>legion</i>	<b>mōs, m.,</b> <i>custom</i>	<b>homō, m. or f.,</b> <i>person</i>
-------------	------------------------------------	----------------------------------	---

*Singular*

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>legiō</b>	<b>mōs</b>	<b>homō</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>legiōnis</b>	<b>mōris</b>	<b>hominis</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>legiōnī</b>	<b>mōrī</b>	<b>hominī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>legiōnem</b>	<b>mōrem</b>	<b>hominem</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>legiōne</b>	<b>mōre</b>	<b>homine</b>

*Plural*

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>legiōnēs</b>	<b>mōrēs</b>	<b>hominēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>legiōnum</b>	<b>mōrum</b>	<b>hominum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>legiōnibus</b>	<b>mōribus</b>	<b>hominibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>legiōnēs</b>	<b>mōrēs</b>	<b>hominēs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>legiōnibus</b>	<b>mōribus</b>	<b>hominibus</b>

<b>561.</b>	<b>certāmen, n.,</b> <i>contest</i>	<b>corpus, n.,</b> <i>body</i>	<b>mūnus, n.,</b> <i>gift</i>
-------------	--	-----------------------------------	----------------------------------

*Singular*

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>certāmen</b>	<b>corpus</b>	<b>mūnus</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>certāminis</b>	<b>corporis</b>	<b>mūneris</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>certāminī</b>	<b>corporī</b>	<b>mūnerī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>certāmen</b>	<b>corpus</b>	<b>mūnus</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>certāmine</b>	<b>corpore</b>	<b>mūnere</b>

*Plural*

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>certāmina</b>	<b>corpora</b>	<b>mūnera</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>certāminum</b>	<b>corporum</b>	<b>mūnerum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>certāminibus</b>	<b>corporibus</b>	<b>mūneribus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>certāmina</b>	<b>corpora</b>	<b>mūnera</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>certāminibus</b>	<b>corporibus</b>	<b>mūneribus</b>



## I-stems

<b>562.</b>	<b>urbs, f.,</b> <i>city</i>	<b>cīvis, m. or f.,</b> <i>citizen</i>	<b>caedēs, f.,</b> <i>slaughter</i>
-------------	---------------------------------	---	--

*Singular*

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>urbs</b>	<b>cīvis</b>	<b>caedēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>urbis</b>	<b>cīvis</b>	<b>caedis</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>urbī</b>	<b>cīvī</b>	<b>caedī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>urbem</b>	<b>cīvem</b>	<b>caedem</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>urbe</b>	<b>cīve, -ī</b>	<b>caede</b>

*Plural*

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>urbēs</b>	<b>cīvēs</b>	<b>caedēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>urbium</b>	<b>cīvium</b>	<b>caedium</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>urbibus</b>	<b>cīvibus</b>	<b>caedibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>urbīs, -ēs</b>	<b>cīvis, -ēs</b>	<b>caedis, -ēs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>urbibus</b>	<b>cīvibus</b>	<b>caedibus</b>

<b>563.</b>	<b>mare, n.,</b> <i>sea</i>	<b>animal, n.,</b> <i>animal</i>
-------------	--------------------------------	-------------------------------------

*Singular*

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>mare</b>	<b>animal</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>maris</b>	<b>animālis</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>marī</b>	<b>animālī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>mare</b>	<b>animal</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>marī</b>	<b>animālī</b>

*Plural*

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>maria</b>	<b>animālia</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>marium</b>	<b>animālium</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>maribus</b>	<b>animālibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>maria</b>	<b>animālia</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>maribus</b>	<b>animālibus</b>

The plural of **mare** is given in full in order to show the typical paradigm; but the only common forms of this word in the plural are the nominative and accusative. A rare genitive plural **marum** is recorded.

## FOURTH DECLENSION

564.	exercitus, m., <i>army</i>	cornū, n., <i>horn; wing</i>
------	-------------------------------	---------------------------------

*Singular*

<i>Nom.</i>	exercitus	cornū
<i>Gen.</i>	exercitūs	cornūs
<i>Dat.</i>	exercitui	cornū
<i>Acc.</i>	exercitum	cornū
<i>Abl.</i>	exercitū	cornū

*Plural*

<i>Nom.</i>	exercitūs	cornua
<i>Gen.</i>	exercituum	cornuum
<i>Dat.</i>	exercitibus	cornibus
<i>Acc.</i>	exercitūs	cornua
<i>Abl.</i>	exercitibus	cornibus

## FIFTH DECLENSION

565.	diēs, m. or f., <i>day</i>	rēs, f., <i>thing</i>
------	-------------------------------	--------------------------

*Singular*

<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	rēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diēi	rei
<i>Dat.</i>	diēi	rei
<i>Acc.</i>	diem	rem
<i>Abl.</i>	diē	rē

*Plural*

<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	rēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diērum	rērum
<i>Dat.</i>	diēbus	rēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	diēs	rēs
<i>Abl.</i>	diēbus	rēbus

## IRREGULAR DECLENSION

<b>566.</b>	<b>deus, m.,</b> <i>god</i>	<b>Iuppiter, m.,</b> <i>Jupiter</i>	<b>vīs, f.,</b> <i>strength</i>	<b>iter, n.,</b> <i>journey</i>
-------------	--------------------------------	--	------------------------------------	------------------------------------

*Singular*

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>deus</b>	<b>Iuppiter</b>	<b>vīs</b>	<b>iter</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>deī</b>	<b>Iovis</b>	—	<b>itineris</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>deō</b>	<b>Iovī</b>	—	<b>itinerī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>deum</b>	<b>Iovem</b>	<b>vim</b>	<b>iter</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>deō</b>	<b>Iove</b>	<b>vī</b>	<b>itinere</b>

*Plural*

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>deī, dīi, dī</b>	—	<b>vīrēs</b>	<b>itinerā</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>deōrum, deum</b>	—	<b>vīrium</b>	<b>itinerum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>deīs, dīs</b>	—	<b>vīribus</b>	<b>itineribus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>deōs</b>	—	<b>vīris, -ēs</b>	<b>itinerā</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>deīs, dīs</b>	—	<b>vīribus</b>	<b>itineribus</b>

<b>567.</b>	<b>Tiberis, m.,</b> <i>Tiber</i>	<b>domus, f.,</b> <i>house</i>	<b>nēmō, m.,</b> <i>no one</i>
-------------	-------------------------------------	-----------------------------------	-----------------------------------

*Singular*

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>Tiberis</b>	<b>domus</b>	<b>nēmō</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>Tiberis</b>	<b>domūs</b>	<b>(nūllius)</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>Tiberī</b>	<b>domuī, -ō</b>	<b>nēmīnī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>Tiberim</b>	<b>domum</b>	<b>nēmīnem</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>Tiberī</b>	<b>domō, -ū</b>	<b>(nūllō)</b>

*Plural*

<i>Nom.</i>	—	<b>domūs</b>	—
<i>Gen.</i>	—	<b>domuum, -ōrum</b>	—
<i>Dat.</i>	—	<b>domibus</b>	—
<i>Acc.</i>	—	<b>domōs, -ūs</b>	—
<i>Abl.</i>	—	<b>domibus</b>	—

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES  
FIRST-AND-SECOND DECLENSION

568.                    *magnus, -a, -um, large*

	<i>Singular</i>		
	M.	F.	
		N.	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>magnus</i>	<i>magna</i>	<i>magnum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>magnī</i>	<i>magnae</i>	<i>magnī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>magnō</i>	<i>magnae</i>	<i>magnō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>magnum</i>	<i>magnam</i>	<i>magnum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>magnō</i>	<i>magnā</i>	<i>magnō</i>

The vocative singular masculine form is *magne*.

	<i>Plural</i>		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>magnī</i>	<i>magnae</i>	<i>magna</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>magnōrum</i>	<i>magnārum</i>	<i>magnōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>magnīs</i>	<i>magnīs</i>	<i>magnīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>magnōs</i>	<i>magnās</i>	<i>magna</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>magnīs</i>	<i>magnīs</i>	<i>magnīs</i>

569.                    *pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, beautiful*

	<i>Singular</i>		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>pulcher</i>	<i>pulchra</i>	<i>pulchrum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>pulchrī</i>	<i>pulchrae</i>	<i>pulchrī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>pulchrō</i>	<i>pulchrae</i>	<i>pulchrō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>pulchrum</i>	<i>pulchram</i>	<i>pulchrum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>pulchrō</i>	<i>pulchrā</i>	<i>pulchrō</i>

	<i>Plural</i>		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>pulchrī</i>	<i>pulchrae</i>	<i>pulchra</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>pulchrōrum</i>	<i>pulchrārum</i>	<i>pulchrōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>pulchrīs</i>	<i>pulchrīs</i>	<i>pulchrīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>pulchrōs</i>	<i>pulchrās</i>	<i>pulchra</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>pulchrīs</i>	<i>pulchrīs</i>	<i>pulchrīs</i>

570. miser, misera, miserum, *wretched**Singular*

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	miser	misera	miserum
<i>Gen.</i>	miserī	miserae	miserī
<i>Dat.</i>	miserō	miserae	miserō
<i>Acc.</i>	miserum	miseram	miserum
<i>Abl.</i>	miserō	miserā	miserō

*Plural*

<i>Nom.</i>	miserī	miserae	misera
<i>Gen.</i>	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
<i>Acc.</i>	miserōs	miserās	misera
<i>Abl.</i>	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

## THIRD DECLENSION

## Three Terminations

571. ācer, ācris, ācre, *spirited, keen, fierce**Singular*

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī

*Plural*

<i>Nom.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
<i>Abl.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

Note that the ablative singular in all genders ends in -ī.

572. **celer, celeris, celere, swift, quick**

	M.	F.	N.
		<i>Singular</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>celer</b>	<b>celeris</b>	<b>celere</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>celeris</b>	<b>celeris</b>	<b>celeris</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>celerī</b>	<b>celerī</b>	<b>celerī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>celerem</b>	<b>celerem</b>	<b>celere</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>celerī</b>	<b>celerī</b>	<b>celerī</b>
		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>celerēs</b>	<b>celerēs</b>	<b>celeria</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>celerium</b>	<b>celerium</b>	<b>celerium</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>celeribus</b>	<b>celeribus</b>	<b>celeribus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>celerīs, -ēs</b>	<b>celerīs, -ēs</b>	<b>celeria</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>celeribus</b>	<b>celeribus</b>	<b>celeribus</b>

The genitive plural of *celer* is given in order to show a typical paradigm; but this particular form was not used in Latin.

## Two Terminations

573. **fortis, forte, brave**

	M. and F.	N.
	<i>Singular</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>fortis</b>	<b>forte</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>fortis</b>	<b>fortis</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>fortī</b>	<b>fortī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>fortem</b>	<b>forte</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>fortī</b>	<b>fortī</b>
	<i>Plural</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>fortēs</b>	<b>fortia</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>fortium</b>	<b>fortium</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>fortibus</b>	<b>fortibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>fortīs, -ēs</b>	<b>fortia</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>fortibus</b>	<b>fortibus</b>

574. **One Termination**  
**audāx, daring, bold**

*Singular*

	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	audāx	audāx
<i>Gen.</i>	audācis	audācis
<i>Dat.</i>	audācī	audācī
<i>Acc.</i>	audācem	audāx
<i>Abl.</i>	audācī	audācī

*Plural*

<i>Nom.</i>	audācēs	audācia
<i>Gen.</i>	audācium	audācium
<i>Dat.</i>	audācibus	audācibus
<i>Acc.</i>	audācīs, -ēs	audācia
<i>Abl.</i>	audācibus	audācibus

**DECLENSION OF PRESENT PARTICIPLE**

575. **portāns, carrying**

*Singular*

	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	portāns	portāns
<i>Gen.</i>	portantis	portantis
<i>Dat.</i>	portanti	portanti
<i>Acc.</i>	portantem	portāns
<i>Abl.</i>	portante, -ī	portante, -ī

*Plural*

<i>Nom.</i>	portantēs	portantia
<i>Gen.</i>	portantium	portantium
<i>Dat.</i>	portantibus	portantibus
<i>Acc.</i>	portantēs, -īs	portantia
<i>Abl.</i>	portantibus	portantibus

## ADJECTIVES OF IRREGULAR DECLENSION

## 576. Nine Adjectives

ūnus, *one* ūllus, *any* uter, *which (of two)* alter, *the other*  
 sōlus, *alone* nūllus, *none* neuter, *neither (of two)* alius, *another*  
 tōtus, *whole*

577. alius, alia, aliud, *another**Singular*

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	alius	alia	aliud
<i>Gen.</i>	(alterius)	(alterius)	(alterius)
<i>Dat.</i>	aliī	aliī	aliī
<i>Acc.</i>	aliū	aliā	aliud
<i>Abl.</i>	aliō	aliā	aliō

Alter is declined in the plural like miser; uter and neuter, like pulcher; the others, except ūnus, like magnus.

578. ūnus, ūna, ūnum, *one*

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	ūnus	ūna	ūnum
<i>Gen.</i>	ūnius	ūnius	ūnius
<i>Dat.</i>	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī
<i>Acc.</i>	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
<i>Abl.</i>	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō

579. duo, duae, duo, *two*

<i>Nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
<i>Acc.</i>	duōs, duo	duās	duo
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

Ambō is declined like duo, except that final -ō is long.



580.

trēs, tria, *three*

	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	trēs	tria
<i>Gen.</i>	trium	trium
<i>Dat.</i>	tribus	tribus
<i>Acc.</i>	trēs, trīs	tria
<i>Abl.</i>	tribus	tribus

581.

mille, *thousand*

	Adjective ( <i>sing.</i> )	Noun ( <i>pl.</i> )
<i>Nom.</i>	mille	mīlia
<i>Gen.</i>	mille	mīlium
<i>Dat.</i>	mille	mīlibus
<i>Acc.</i>	mille	mīlia
<i>Abl.</i>	mille	mīlibus

582.

## NUMERALS

<i>Cardinals</i>			
1. ūnus, -a, -um	I	17. septendecim	XVII
2. duo, duae, duo	II	18. duodēviginti	XVIII
3. trēs, tria	III	19. ūndēviginti	XIX
4. quattuor	IV	20. vīginti	XX
5. quīnque	V		
6. sex	VI		
7. septem	VII		
8. octō	VIII		
9. novem	IX		
10. decem	X		
11. ūndecim	XI		
12. duodecim	XII		
13. tredecim	XIII		
14. quattuordecim	XIV		
15. quīndecim	XV		
16. sēdecim	XVI		

<i>Ordinals</i>	
primus, -a, -um,	<i>first</i>
secundus, -a, -um,	<i>second</i>
tertius, -a, -um,	<i>third</i>
quārtus, -a, -um,	<i>fourth</i>
quīntus, -a, -um,	<i>fifth</i>
sextus, -a, -um,	<i>sixth</i>
septimus, -a, -um,	<i>seventh</i>
octāvus, -a, -um,	<i>eight</i>
nōnus, -a, -um,	<i>ninth</i>
decimus, -a, -um,	<i>tenth</i>

## COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

583.

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Regular Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
lātē	lātius	lātissimē
miserē	miserius	miserrimē
fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
ācriter	ācrius	ācerrimē
audācter	audācius	audācissimē
diligenter	diligentius	diligentissimē

584.

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Irregular Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
bene	melius	optimē
male	peius	pessimē
magnopere	magis	maximē
multum	plūs	plūrimum
parum	minus	minimē
saepe	saepius	saepissimē
diū	diūtius	diūtissimē
facile	facilius	facillimē

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

585.

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Regular Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
clārus, -a, -um	clārior, clārius	clārissimus, -a, -um
fortis, forte	fortior, fortius	fortissimus, -a, -um
potēns	potentior, potentius	potentissimus, -a, -um
miser, misera, miserum	miserior, miserius	miserrimus, -a, -um
celer, celeris, celere	celerior, celerius	celerrimus, -a, -um
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum	pulchrior, pulchrius	pulcherrimus, -a, -um
ācer, ācris, ācre	ācrior, ācrius	ācerrimus, -a, -um
facilis, facile	facilior, facilius	facillimus, -a, -um

586.

Irregular

bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i>	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i>	peior, peius	pessimus, -a, -um
magnus, -a, -um, <i>great</i>	maior, maius	maximus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um, <i>small</i>	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um, <i>much</i> (sing.)	—, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
multi, -ae, -a, <i>many</i> (pl.)	plūrēs, plūra	plūrimī, -ae, -a
(inferus, -a, -um, <i>low</i> )	inferior, inferius	īnfirmus, -a, -um
(exter or exterus, <i>outside</i> )	exterior, exterius	īmus, -a, -um
(superus, -a, -um, <i>high</i> )	superior, superius	extrēmus, -a, -um
		extimus, -a, -um
		summus, -a, -um
		suprēmus, -a, -um

## DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

587.

fortior, fortius, *braver*

	Singular		Plural	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
<i>Gen.</i>	fortiōris	fortiōris	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	fortiōrī	fortiōrī	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
<i>Acc.</i>	fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
<i>Abl.</i>	fortiōre	fortiōre	fortiōribus	fortiōribus

588.

plūs, *more*

	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Gen.</i>	—	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
<i>Dat.</i>	—	—	plūribus	plūribus
<i>Acc.</i>	—	plūs	plūrēs -is	plūra
<i>Abl.</i>	—	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

## PRONOUNS

589.

## PERSONAL

	<i>First person</i> ego, I	<i>Second person</i> tū, you	<i>Third person</i>
		<i>Singular</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	ego	tū	is, m., ea, f., id, n.
<i>Gen.</i>	meī	tuī	(See § 592)
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi	tibi	
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	tē	
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	tē	

*Plural*

<i>Nom.</i>	nōs	vōs
<i>Gen.</i>	nostrī, nostrum	vestrī, vestrum
<i>Dat.</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs
<i>Acc.</i>	nōs	vōs
<i>Abl.</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs

590.

## REFLEXIVE

*Singular*

	<i>First person</i>	<i>Second person</i>	<i>Third person</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Gen.</i>	meī	tuī	suī
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi	tibi	sibi
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	tē	sē, sēsē
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	tē	sē, sēsē

*Plural*

<i>Nom.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Gen.</i>	nostrī	vestrī	suī
<i>Dat.</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi
<i>Acc.</i>	nōs	vōs	sē, sēsē
<i>Abl.</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē, sēsē

591. The following possessive adjectives are derived from the personal and reflexive pronouns:

<b>meus, mea, meum, <i>my</i></b>	<b>noster, nostra, nostrum, <i>our</i></b>
<b>tuus, tua, tuum, <i>your</i> (referring to one person)</b>	<b>vester, vestra, vestrum, <i>your</i> (referring to two or more persons)</b>
<b>suus, sua, suum, <i>his, hers, its, their</i></b>	

#### DEMONSTRATIVE

592. **is, ea, id, *this, that, he, she, it***

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	eī, ii	eaē	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

593. **hic, haec, hoc, *this***

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i>	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

594. **ille, illa, illud, *that***

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
<i>Gen.</i>	illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	illī	illī	illī	illis	illis	illis
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Abl.</i>	illō	illā	illō	illis	illis	illis

**595.**            *iste, ista, istud, that, those*

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
<i>Gen.</i>	istius	istius	istius	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
<i>Acc.</i>	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
<i>Abl.</i>	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

**596.**            *idem, eadem, idem, the same*

	<i>Singular</i>		
	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	idem	eadem	idem
<i>Gen.</i>	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
<i>Dat.</i>	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
<i>Acc.</i>	eundem	eandem	idem
<i>Abl.</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

	<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	eīdem	eaedem	eadem
<i>Gen.</i>	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dat.</i>	eīsdem, isdem	eīsdem, isdem	eīsdem, isdem
<i>Acc.</i>	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>Abl.</i>	eīsdem, isdem	eīsdem, isdem	eīsdem, isdem

**INTENSIVE**

**597.**            *ipse, ipsa, ipsum, self*

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Gen.</i>	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

## RELATIVE

598. *quī, quae, quod, who, which, that*

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

## INTERROGATIVE

599. *quis, quid, who? what?*

	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>		
	M. and F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

600. The interrogative adjective *quī, quae, quod, which, what*, is declined like the relative pronoun *quī, quae, quod* (see § 598). The indefinite pronoun *quisquam, quicquam, anyone*, is made by adding *-quam* to the singular forms of the interrogative *quis, quid*, the *d* of *quid* changing to *c*.

## CONJUGATION OF VERBS

## REGULAR VERBS

601. Principal parts in the four conjugations

I.	portō	portāre	portāvī	portātus
II.	videō	vidēre	vidī	vīsus
III.	mittō	mittere	mīsī	missus
iō-III.	capiō	capere	cēpī	captus
IV.	audiō	audīre	audīvī	audītus

602.

Present Indicative

*Active*

*I carry, am carrying, do carry, etc.*    *I see, am seeing, do see, etc.*    *I send, am sending, do send, etc.*

portō	videō	mittō
portās	vidēs	mittis
portat	videt	mittit
portāmus	vidēmus	mittimus
portātis	vidētis	mittitis
portant	vident	mittunt

*I take, am taking, do take, etc.*    *I hear, am hearing, do hear, etc.*

capiō	audiō
capis	audīs
capit	audit
capimus	audīmus
capitis	audītis
capiunt	audiunt

*Passive*

*I am carried, am being carried, etc.*    *I am seen, am being seen, etc.*    *I am sent, am being sent, etc.*

portor	videor	mittor
portāris	vidēris	mitteris
portātur	vidētur	mittitur
portāmur	vidēmur	mittimur
portāmini	vidēmini	mittimini
portantur	videntur	mittuntur



*I am taken, am being taken, etc.*

**capior**  
**caperis**  
**capitur**  
  
**capimur**  
**capimini**  
**capiuntur**

*I am heard, am being heard, etc.*

**audior**  
**audiris**  
**auditur**  
  
**audimur**  
**audimini**  
**audiuntur**

603.

## Imperfect Indicative

*Active*

*I was carrying, used to carry, etc.*

**portābam**  
**portābās**  
**portābat**

**portābāmus**  
**portābātis**  
**portābant**

*I was seeing, used to see, etc.*

**vidēbam**  
**vidēbās**  
**vidēbat**

**vidēbāmus**  
**vidēbātis**  
**vidēbant**

*I was sending, used to send, etc.*

**mittēbam**  
**mittēbās**  
**mittēbat**

**mittēbāmus**  
**mittēbātis**  
**mittēbant**

*I was taking, used to take, etc.*

**capīebam**  
**capīebās**  
**capīebat**

**capīebāmus**  
**capīebātis**  
**capīebant**

*I was hearing, used to hear, etc.*

**audiēbam**  
**audiēbās**  
**audiēbat**

**audiēbāmus**  
**audiēbātis**  
**audiēbant**

*Passive*

*I was carried, used to be carried, etc.*    *I was seen, used to be seen, etc.*    *I was sent, used to be sent, etc.*

portābar	vidēbar	mittēbar
portābāris	vidēbāris	mittēbāris
portābātur	vidēbātur	mittēbātur
portābāmur	vidēbāmur	mittēbāmur
portābāminī	vidēbāminī	mittēbāminī
portābantur	vidēbantur	mittēbantur

*I was taken, used to be taken, etc.*    *I was heard, used to be heard, etc.*

capiēbar	audiēbar
capiēbāris	audiēbāris
capiēbātur	audiēbātur
capiēbāmur	audiēbāmur
capiēbāminī	audiēbāminī
capiēbantur	audiēbantur

604.

## Future Indicative

*Active*

*I shall carry, etc.*    *I shall see, etc.*    *I shall send, etc.*

portābō	vidēbō	mittam
portābis	vidēbis	mittēs
portābit	vidēbit	mittet
portābimus	vidēbimus	mittēmus
portābitis	vidēbitis	mittētis
portābunt	vidēbunt	mittent

*I shall take, etc.**I shall hear, etc.*

capiam	capiēmus	audiam	audiēmus
capies	capiētis	audiēs	audiētis
capiet	capient	audiet	audient

*Passive**I shall be carried,  
etc.*portābor  
portāberis  
portābitur*I shall be seen,  
etc.*vidēbor  
vidēberis  
vidēbitur*I shall be sent,  
etc.*mittar  
mittēris  
mittēturportābimur  
portābiminī  
portābunturvidēbimur  
vidēbiminī  
vidēbunturmittēmur  
mittēminī  
mittentur*I shall be taken, etc.*    *I shall be heard, etc.*capiar  
capiēris  
capiēturaudiar  
audiēris  
audiēturcapiēmur  
capiēminī  
capienturaudiēmur  
audiēminī  
audientur

605.

## Perfect Indicative

*Active**I have carried,  
carried, did carry,  
etc.*portāvī  
portāvisti  
portāvit*I have seen, saw,  
did see, etc.*vidī  
vidisti  
vidit*I have sent, sent,  
did send, etc.*misi  
misti  
misitportāvimus  
portāvistis  
portāveruntvidimus  
vidistis  
vidēruntmīsimus  
mīstis  
mīsērunt

*I have taken, did take,  
took, etc.*

**cēpī  
cēpisti  
cēpit**

**cēpimus  
cēpistis  
cēpērunt**

*I have heard, did hear,  
heard, etc.*

**audīvī  
audivisti  
audīvit**

**audīvimus  
audivistis  
audivērunt**

*Passive*

*I have been carried,  
was carried, etc.*

**portātus sum  
portātus es  
portātus est**

**portātī sumus  
portātī estis  
portātī sunt**

*I have been seen,  
was seen, etc.*

**vīsus sum  
vīsus es  
vīsus est**

**vīsī sumus  
vīsī estis  
vīsī sunt**

*I have been sent,  
was sent, etc.*

**missus sum  
missus es  
missus est**

**missī sumus  
missī estis  
missī sunt**

*I have been taken,  
was taken, etc.*

**captus sum  
captus es  
captus est**

**captī sumus  
captī estis  
captī sunt**

*I have been heard,  
was heard, etc.*

**audītus sum  
audītus es  
audītus est**

**audītī sumus  
audītī estis  
audītī sunt**

606.

## Pluperfect Indicative

*Active**I had carried, etc.*

portāveram

portāverās

portāverat

portāverāmus

portāverātis

portāverant

*I had seen, etc.*

vīderam

vīderās

vīderat

vīderāmus

vīderātis

vīderant

*I had sent, etc.*

mīseram

mīserās

mīserat

mīserāmus

mīserātis

mīserant

*I had taken, etc.*

cēperam

cēperās

cēperat

cēperāmus

cēperātis

cēperant

*I had heard, etc.*

audīveram

audīverās

audīverat

audīverāmus

audīverātis

audīverant

*Passive**I had been carried,  
etc.*

portātus eram

portātus erās

portātus erat

portātī erāmus

portātī erātis

portātī erant

*I had been seen,  
etc.*

vīsus eram

vīsus erās

vīsus erat

vīsi erāmus

vīsi erātis

vīsi erant

*I had been sent,  
etc.*

missus eram

missus erās

missus erat

missī erāmus

missī erātis

missī erant

*I had been taken,  
etc.*

captus eram

captus erās

captus erat

*I had been heard,  
etc.*

audītus eram

audītus erās

audītus erat

capti erāmus  
 capti erātis  
 capti erant

auditi erāmus  
 auditi erātis  
 auditi erant

607. Future Perfect Indicative

*Active*

<i>I shall have carried,</i> etc.	<i>I shall have seen,</i> etc.	<i>I shall have sent,</i> etc.
portāverō	vīderō	mīserō
portāveris	vīderis	mīseris
portāverit	vīderit	mīserit
portāverimus	vīderimus	mīserimus
portāveritis	vīderitis	mīseritis
portāverint	vīderint	mīserint

*I shall have taken,*  
etc.

cēperō  
 cēperis  
 cēperit

cēperimus  
 cēperitis  
 cēperint

*I shall have heard,*  
etc.

audiverō  
 audiveris  
 audiverit

audiverimus  
 audiveritis  
 audiverint

*Passive*

<i>I shall have been</i> <i>carried, etc.</i>	<i>I shall have been</i> <i>seen, etc.</i>	<i>I shall have been</i> <i>sent, etc.</i>
portātus erō	vīsus erō	missus erō
portātus eris	vīsus eris	missus eris
portātus erit	vīsus erit	missus erit
portāti erimus	vīsī erimus	missī erimus
portāti eritis	vīsī eritis	missī eritis
portāti erunt	vīsī erunt	missī erunt

<i>I shall have been taken, etc.</i>	<i>I shall have been heard, etc.</i>
captus erō	audītus erō
captus eris	audītus eris
captus erit	audītus erit
captī erimus	audītī erimus
captī eritis	audītī eritis
captī erunt	audītī erunt

## 608. Present Imperative

*Active*

	<i>carry</i>	<i>see</i>	<i>send</i>	<i>take</i>	<i>hear</i>
<i>Sing.</i>	portā	vidē	mitte	cape	audī
<i>Plur.</i>	portāte	vidēte	mittite	capite	audīte

*Passive*

	<i>be carried</i>	<i>be seen</i>	<i>be sent</i>	<i>be taken</i>	<i>be heard</i>
<i>Sing.</i>	portāre	vidēre	mittere	capere	audīre
<i>Plur.</i>	portāminī	vidēminī	mittiminī	capiminī	audīminī

## 609. Present Infinitive

*Active*

<i>to carry</i>	<i>to see</i>	<i>to send</i>	<i>to take</i>	<i>to hear</i>
portāre	vidēre	mittere	capere	audīre

*Passive*

<i>to be carried</i>	<i>to be seen</i>	<i>to be sent</i>	<i>to be taken</i>	<i>to be heard</i>
portārī	vidērī	mittī	capī	audīrī

## 610. Perfect Infinitive

*Active*

<i>to have carried</i>	<i>to have seen</i>	<i>to have sent</i>	<i>to have taken</i>	<i>to have heard</i>
portāvisse	vidisse	mīsisse	cēpisse	audīvisse

*Passive*

<i>to have been carried</i>	<i>to have been seen</i>	<i>to have been sent</i>
<b>portātus esse</b>	<b>visus esse</b>	<b>missus esse</b>
<i>to have been taken</i>	<i>to have been heard</i>	
<b>captus esse</b>	<b>auditus esse</b>	

## 611.

## Future Infinitive

*Active*

<i>to be about to carry</i>	<i>to be about to see</i>	<i>to be about to send</i>
<b>portātūrus esse</b>	<b>visūrus esse</b>	<b>missūrus esse</b>
<i>to be about to take</i>	<i>to be about to hear</i>	
<b>captūrus esse</b>	<b>audītūrus esse</b>	

*Passive*

<i>to be about to be loved</i>	<i>to be about to be seen</i>	<i>to be about to be sent</i>
<b>portātum iri</b>	<b>visum iri</b>	<b>missum iri</b>
<i>to be about to be taken</i>	<i>to be about to be heard</i>	
<b>captum iri</b>	<b>auditum iri</b>	

## 612.

## Present Participle

*Active*

<i>carrying</i>	<i>seeing</i>	<i>sending</i>	<i>taking</i>	<i>hearing</i>
<b>portāns</b>	<b>vidēns</b>	<b>mittēns</b>	<b>capiēns</b>	<b>audiēns</b>



## 613. Future Participle

*Active*

<i>about to carry</i>	<i>about to see</i>	<i>about to send</i>	<i>about to take</i>	<i>about to hear</i>
portātūrus	visūrus	missūrus	captūrus	auditūrus

## 614. Perfect Participle

*Passive*

<i>having been carried</i>	<i>having been seen</i>	<i>having been sent</i>	<i>having been taken</i>	<i>having been heard</i>
portātus	visus	missus	captus	auditus

## 615. Gerundive

<i>to be prepared</i>	<i>to be seen</i>	<i>to be sent</i>
portandus, -a, -um	videndus, -a, -um	mittendus, -a, -um
<i>to be taken</i>	<i>to be heard</i>	
capiendus, -a, -um	audiendus, -a, -um	

## 616. Gerund

<i>preparing</i>	<i>seeing</i>	<i>sending</i>
Gen. portandī	videndī	mittendī
Dat. portandō	videndō	mittendō
Acc. portandum	videndum	mittendum
Abl. portandō	videndō	mittendō

<i>taking</i>	<i>hearing</i>
capiendī	audiendī
capiendō	audiendō
capiendum	audiendum
capiendō	audiendō

## IRREGULAR VERBS

617. *sum, I am**possum, I am able, can*

## Principal parts

*sum, esse, fui, futūrus**possum, posse, potui, —*

## Indicative

*Present**I am, etc.*

<i>sum</i>	<i>sumus</i>
<i>es</i>	<i>estis</i>
<i>est</i>	<i>sunt</i>

*I am able, can, etc.*

<i>possum</i>	<i>possumus</i>
<i>potes</i>	<i>potestis</i>
<i>potest</i>	<i>possunt</i>

*Imperfect**I was, etc.*

<i>eram</i>	<i>erāmus</i>
<i>erās</i>	<i>erātis</i>
<i>erat</i>	<i>erant</i>

*I was able, could, etc.*

<i>poteram</i>	<i>poterāmus</i>
<i>poterās</i>	<i>poterātis</i>
<i>poterat</i>	<i>poterant</i>

*Future**I shall be, etc.*

<i>erō</i>	<i>erimus</i>
<i>eris</i>	<i>eritis</i>
<i>erit</i>	<i>erunt</i>

*I shall be able, etc.*

<i>poterō</i>	<i>poterimus</i>
<i>poteris</i>	<i>poteritis</i>
<i>poterit</i>	<i>poterunt</i>

*Perfect**I have been, was, etc.*

<i>fui</i>	<i>fuimus</i>
<i>fuisti</i>	<i>fuistis</i>
<i>fuit</i>	<i>fuērunt</i>

*I have been able, was able, etc.*

<i>potui</i>	<i>potuimus</i>
<i>potuisti</i>	<i>potuistis</i>
<i>potuit</i>	<i>potuērunt</i>

*Pluperfect**I had been, etc.*

<i>fueram</i>	<i>fuerāmus</i>
<i>fuerās</i>	<i>fuerātis</i>
<i>fuerat</i>	<i>fuerant</i>

*I had been able, etc.*

<i>potueram</i>	<i>potuerāmus</i>
<i>potuerās</i>	<i>potuerātis</i>
<i>potuerat</i>	<i>potuerant</i>

*Future Perfect**I shall have been, etc.*

**fuerō**      **fuerimus**  
**fueris**      **fueritis**  
**fuerit**      **fuerint**

*I shall have been able, etc.*

**potuerō**      **potuerimus**  
**potueris**      **potueritis**  
**potuerit**      **potuerint**

**Imperative**

*Sing.*  
**es**

*Plur.*  
**este**

**Infinitive***Present***esse****posse***Perfect***fuisse****potuisse***Future***futūrus esse****Participle***Present*

—

**potēns***Future***futūrus**

—

**618.****ferō, I bear****Principal parts****ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus****Indicative***Active*

**ferō**      **ferimus**  
**fers**      **fertis**  
**fert**      **ferunt**

*Passive*

**feror**      **ferimur**  
**ferris**      **ferimini**  
**fertur**      **feruntur**

	<i>Imperfect</i>		
ferēbam, etc.		ferēbar, etc.	
	<i>Future</i>		
feram, ferēs, etc.		ferar, ferēris, etc.	
	<i>Perfect</i>		
tulī		lātus sum	
	<i>Pluperfect</i>		
tuleram		lātus eram	
	<i>Future Perfect</i>		
tulerō		lātus erō	
	<b>Imperative</b>		
<i>Sing.</i> fer		ferre	
<i>Plur.</i> ferte		ferimini	
	<b>Infinitive</b>		
	<i>Present</i>		
ferre		ferri	
	<i>Perfect</i>		
tulisse		lātus esse	
	<i>Future</i>		
lātūrus esse		lātum iri	
	<b>Participles</b>		
	<i>Present</i>	—	
ferēns			
	<i>Future</i>	—	
lātūrus			
—	<i>Perfect</i>	lātus	
619.	<b>Gerundive</b>		
	ferendus, -a, -um		
620.	<b>Gerund</b>		
<i>Gen.</i> ferendī	<i>Dat.</i> ferendō	<i>Acc.</i> ferendum	<i>Abl.</i> ferendō

621. volō, *I wish*; nōlō, *I am unwilling*; mālō, *I prefer*

**Principal parts**

volō, velle, voluī, —  
 nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —  
 mālō, mälle, māluī, —

**Indicative**

*Singular*

<i>Pres.</i>	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult

*Plural*

	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt

<i>Impf.</i>	volēbam, etc.	nōlēbam	mālēbam
<i>Fut.</i>	volam, volēs, etc.	nōlam, nōlēs, etc.	mālam, mālēs, etc.
<i>Perf.</i>	voluī	nōluī	māluī
<i>Plup.</i>	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

**Imperative**

*Present*

<i>Sing.</i>	—	nōlī	—
<i>Plur.</i>	—	nōlite	—

## Infinitive

<i>Pres.</i> velle	nōlle	mālle
<i>Perf.</i> voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

## Participle

<i>Pres.</i> volēns	nōlēns	—
---------------------	--------	---

622.

eō, *I go*

## Principal parts

eō, ire, iī (īvī), itūrus

## Indicative

<i>Present</i>		<i>Imperfect</i>		<i>Future</i>	
eō	īmus	ībam	ībāmus	ībō	ībimus
is	ītis	ībās	ībātis	ībīs	ībītis
it	eunt	ībat	ībant	ībit	ībunt
<i>Perfect</i>		<i>Pluperfect</i>		<i>Future Perfect</i>	
iī (īvī)	iimus	ieram	ierāmus	ierō	ierimus
istī	īstis	ierās	ierātis	ierīs	ierītis
iit	iērunt	ierat	ierant	ierit	ierint

## Imperative

*Sing.* ī*Plur.* ite

## Infinitive

<i>Pres.</i> ire	<i>Perf.</i> isse	<i>Fut.</i> itūrus esse
------------------	-------------------	-------------------------

## Participles

<i>Pres.</i> iēns ( <i>gen.</i> euntis)	<i>Fut.</i> itūrus
---	--------------------

623.

Gerundive  
eundum

624.

## Gerund

<i>Gen.</i> eundī	<i>Dat.</i> eundō	<i>Acc.</i> eundum	<i>Abl.</i> eundō
-------------------	-------------------	--------------------	-------------------

*fiō, I become, I am made*

625.

Principal parts

*fiō, fierī, factus sum*

As a guide to the synopsis, *factus sum* is given as the third principal part of *fiō*. But see § 458.

## Indicative

<i>Pres. fiō</i>	( <i>fīmus</i> )	<i>Imp. fiēbam,</i>	<i>Fut. fiam, fiēs,</i>
<i>fīs</i>	( <i>fītis</i> )	etc.	etc.
<i>fit</i>	<i>fiunt</i>		

<i>Perf. factus sum,</i>	<i>Plup. factus eram,</i>	<i>Fut. Perf. factus erō,</i>
etc.	etc.	etc.

## Infinitive

<i>Pres. fierī</i>	<i>Perf. factus esse</i>	<i>Fut. factum irī</i>
--------------------	--------------------------	------------------------

## Perfect Participle

*factus*

## DEPONENT VERBS

*cōnor, I attempt*  
*patior, I allow*

*vereor, I fear*  
*potior, I obtain*

*ūtor, I use*

626.

Principal parts

- I. *cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum*
- II. *vereor, verērī, veritus sum*
- III. *ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum*
- io-III. *patior, patī, passus sum*
- IV. *potior, potirī, potītus sum*

## 627.

## Indicative

<i>Pres.</i> cōnor	vereor	ūtor	patior	potior
cōnāris	verēris	ūteris	pateris	potiris
cōnātur	verētur	ūtitur	patitur	potitur
cōnāmur	verēmur	ūtimur	patimur	potimur
cōnāminī	verēminī	ūtiminī	patiminī	potiminī
cōnantur	verentur	ūtuntur	patiuntur	potiuntur
<i>Imp.</i> cōnābar	verēbar	ūtēbar	patiēbar	potiēbar
<i>Fut.</i> cōnābor	verēbor	ūtar,	patiar,	potiar,
		ūtēris	patiēris	potiēris
<i>Perf.</i> cōnātus	veritus	ūsus	passus	potitus
sum	sum	sum	sum	sum
<i>Plup.</i> cōnātus	veritus	ūsus	passus	potitus
eram	eram	eram	eram	eram
<i>Fut.</i> cōnātus	veritus	ūsus	passus	potitus
<i>Perf.</i> erō	erō	erō	erō	erō

## Imperative

<i>Sing.</i> cōnāre	verēre	ūtere	patere	potire
<i>Plur.</i> cōnāminī	verēminī	ūtiminī	patiminī	potiminī

## Infinitive

<i>Pres.</i> cōnārī	verērī	ūtī	patī	potīri
<i>Perf.</i> cōnātus	veritus	ūsus	passus	potitus
esse	esse	esse	esse	esse
<i>Fut.</i> cōnātūrus	veritūrus	ūsūrus	passūrus	potitūrus
esse	esse	esse	esse	esse

## Participles

<i>Pres.</i> cōnāns	verēns	ūtēns	patiēns	potiēns
<i>Perf.</i> cōnātus	veritus	ūsus	passus	potitus
<i>Fut.</i> cōnātūrus	veritūrus	ūsūrus	passūrus	potitūrus



628.

Gerundive

cōnandus, -a, -um	verendus, -a, -um	ūtendus, -a, -um	patiendus -a, -um	potiendus, -a, -um
----------------------	----------------------	---------------------	----------------------	-----------------------

629.

Gerund

<i>Gen.</i> cōnandī	verendī	ūtendī	patiendī	potiendī
<i>Dat.</i> cōnandō	verendō	ūtendō	patiendō	potiendō
<i>Acc.</i> cōnandum	verendum	ūtendum	patiendum	potiendum
<i>Abl.</i> cōnandō	verendō	ūtendō	patiendō	potiendō

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

## REGULAR VERBS

630.

Present Subjunctive

*Active*

portem	videam	mittam	capiam	audiam
portēs	videās	mittās	capiās	audiās
portet	videat	mittat	capiat	audiat
portēmus	videāmus	mittāmus	capiāmus	audiāmus
portētis	videātis	mittātis	capiātis	audiātis
portent	videant	mittant	capiant	audiant

*Passive*

porter	videar	mittar	capiar	audiar
portēris	videāris	mittāris	capiāris	audiāris
portētur	videātur	mittātur	capiātur	audiātur
portēmur	videāmur	mittāmur	capiāmur	audiāmur
portēmini	videāmini	mittāmini	capiāmini	audiāmini
portentur	videantur	mittantur	capiantur	audiantur

## 631. Imperfect Subjunctive

*Active*

portārem	vidērem	mitterem	caperem	audīrem
portārēs	vidērēs	mitterēs	caperēs	audīrēs
portāret	vidēret	mitteret	caperet	audīret
portārēmus	vidērēmus	mitterēmus	caperēmus	audīrēmus
portārētis	vidērētis	mitterētis	caperētis	audīrētis
portārent	vidērent	mitterent	caperent	audīrent

*Passive*

portārer	vidērer	mitterer	caperer	audīrer
portārēris	vidērēris	mitterēris	caperēris	audīrēris
portārētur	vidērētur	mitterētur	caperētur	audīrētur
portārēmur	vidērēmur	mitterēmur	caperēmur	audīrēmur
portārēmini	vidērēmini	mitterēmini	caperēmini	audīrēmini
portārentur	vidērentur	mitterentur	caperentur	audīrentur

## 632. Perfect Subjunctive

*Active*

portāverim	vīderim	mīserim	cēperim	audīverim
portāveris	vīderis	mīseris	cēperis	audīveris
portāverit	vīderit	mīserit	cēperit	audīverit
portāverimus	vīderimus	mīserimus	cēperimus	audīverimus
portāveritis	vīderitis	mīseritis	cēperitis	audīveritis
portāverint	vīderint	mīserint	cēperint	audīverint

*Passive*

portatus sim	vīsus sim	missus sim
portātus sis	vīsus sis	missus sis
portātus sit	vīsus sit	missus sit
portātī simus	vīsī simus	missī simus
portātī sītis	vīsī sītis	missī sītis
portātī sint	vīsī sint	missī sint

<b>captus sim</b>	<b>auditus sim</b>
<b>captus sis</b>	<b>auditus sis</b>
<b>captus sit</b>	<b>auditus sit</b>
<b>capti simus</b>	<b>auditi simus</b>
<b>capti sitis</b>	<b>auditi sitis</b>
<b>capti sint</b>	<b>auditi sint</b>

## 633.

## Pluperfect Subjunctive

*Active*

<b>portāvissem</b>	<b>vīdissem</b>	<b>mīsissem</b>
<b>portāvissēs</b>	<b>vīdissēs</b>	<b>mīsisssēs</b>
<b>portāvisset</b>	<b>vīdisset</b>	<b>mīsisset</b>
<b>portāvissēmus</b>	<b>vīdissēmus</b>	<b>mīsisssēmus</b>
<b>portāvissētis</b>	<b>vīdissētis</b>	<b>mīsisssētis</b>
<b>portāvissent</b>	<b>vīdissent</b>	<b>mīsissent</b>
<b>cēpisse</b>	<b>audīvissem</b>	
<b>cēpissēs</b>	<b>audīvissēs</b>	
<b>cēpisset</b>	<b>audīvisset</b>	
<b>cēpissēmus</b>	<b>audīvissēmus</b>	
<b>cēpissētis</b>	<b>audīvissētis</b>	
<b>cēpissent</b>	<b>audīvissent</b>	

*Passive*

<b>portātus essem</b>	<b>vīsus essem</b>	<b>missus essem</b>
<b>portātus essēs</b>	<b>vīsus essēs</b>	<b>missus essēs</b>
<b>portātus esset</b>	<b>vīsus esset</b>	<b>missus esset</b>
<b>portātī essēmus</b>	<b>vīsi essēmus</b>	<b>missi essēmus</b>
<b>portātī essētis</b>	<b>vīsi essētis</b>	<b>missi essētis</b>
<b>portātī essent</b>	<b>vīsi essent</b>	<b>missi essent</b>

<b>captus essem</b>	<b>auditus essem</b>
<b>captus essēs</b>	<b>auditus essēs</b>
<b>captus esset</b>	<b>auditus esset</b>
<b>capti essēmus</b>	<b>auditi essēmus</b>
<b>capti essētis</b>	<b>auditi essētis</b>
<b>capti essent</b>	<b>auditi essent</b>

## IRREGULAR VERBS

634. **sum, I am****possum, I am able, can**

## Subjunctive

*Present*

<b>sim</b>	<b>sīmus</b>	<b>possim</b>	<b>possīmus</b>
<b>sīs</b>	<b>sītis</b>	<b>possīs</b>	<b>possītis</b>
<b>sit</b>	<b>sint</b>	<b>possit</b>	<b>possint</b>

*Imperfect*

<b>essem</b>	<b>essēmus</b>	<b>possem</b>	<b>possēmus</b>
<b>essēs</b>	<b>essētis</b>	<b>possēs</b>	<b>possētis</b>
<b>esset</b>	<b>essent</b>	<b>posset</b>	<b>possent</b>

*Perfect*

<b>fuerim</b>	<b>fuerīmus</b>	<b>potuerim</b>	<b>potuerīmus</b>
<b>fuerīs</b>	<b>fuerītis</b>	<b>potuerīs</b>	<b>potuerītis</b>
<b>fuerit</b>	<b>fuerint</b>	<b>potuerit</b>	<b>potuerint</b>

*Pluperfect*

<b>fuissem</b>	<b>fuissēmus</b>	<b>potuissem</b>	<b>potuissēmus</b>
<b>fuissēs</b>	<b>fuissētis</b>	<b>potuissēs</b>	<b>potuissētis</b>
<b>fuisset</b>	<b>fuissent</b>	<b>potuisset</b>	<b>potuissent</b>

635. volō, *I wish*      nōlō, *I am unwilling*      mālō, *I prefer*

Subjunctive

*Present*

velim	velimus	nōlim	nōlimus	mālim	mālimus
velīs	velītis	nōlīs	nōlītis	mālīs	mālītis
velit	velint	nōlit	nōlint	mālit	mālint

*Imperfect*

vellem	nōllem	māllem
--------	--------	--------

*Perfect*

voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
----------	----------	----------

*Pluperfect*

voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem
-----------	-----------	-----------

636.

ferō, *I bear*

Subjunctive

*Present*

<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>
feram, ferās, etc.	ferar, ferāris, etc.

*Imperfect*

ferrem, etc.	ferrer, etc.
--------------	--------------

*Perfect*

tulerim, etc.	lātus sim, etc.
---------------	-----------------

*Pluperfect*

tulisse, etc.	lātus essem, etc.
---------------	-------------------

637.

eō, *I go*

Subjunctive

*Present*

eam	eāmus
eās	eātis
eat	eant

*Imperfect*

irem	irēmus
irēs	irētis
iret	irent

	<i>Perfect</i>		<i>Pluperfect</i>	
ierim	ierimus		issem	issēmus
ieris	ieritis		issēs	issētis
ierit	ierint		isset	issent

638.                      *fiō, I become*  
                                     *Subjunctive*

<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>
<b>fiam, etc.</b>	<b>fierem, etc.</b>

<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>
<b>factus sim, etc. (see § 458)</b>	<b>factus essem, etc. (see § 458)</b>

### DEPONENT VERBS

639.                      *Subjunctive*

		<i>Present</i>		
cōner	verear	ūtar	patiar	potiar

		<i>Imperfect</i>		
cōnārer	verērer	ūterer	paterer	potīrer

		<i>Perfect</i>		
cōnatus sim	veritus sim	ūsus sim	passus sim	potītus sim

		<i>Pluperfect</i>		
cōnātus essem	veritus essem	ūsus essem	passus essem	potītus essem

### ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC

640.                      *Indicative*

*Present*  
**portātūrus sum, I am about to carry**  
**vīsūrus sum, I am about to see**  
**missūrus sum, I am about to send**  
**captūrus sum, I am about to take**  
**audītūrus sum, I am about to hear**

*Imperfect*portātūrus eram, *I was about to carry, etc.**Future*portātūrus erō, *I shall be about to carry, etc.**Perfect*portātūrus fui, *I have been about to carry, etc.**Pluperfect*portātūrus fueram, *I had been about to carry, etc.**Future Perfect*portātūrus fuerō, *I shall have been about to carry, etc.*

641.

## Subjunctive

*Present*

portātūrus sim, etc.

*Imperfect*

portātūrus essem, etc.

*Perfect*

portātūrus fuerim, etc.

*Pluperfect*

portātūrus fuisset, etc.

642.

## Infinitive

*Present*

portātūrus esse

*Perfect*

portātūrus fuisse

## PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC

643.

## Indicative

*Present*portandus sum, *I am to be carried, I must be carried*videndus sum, *I am to be seen, I must be seen*mittendus sum, *I am to be sent, I must be sent*capiendus sum, *I am to be taken, I must be taken*audiendus sum, *I am to be heard, I must be heard**Imperfect*portandus eram, *I was to be carried, I had to be carried, etc.*

*Future*

portandus erō, *I shall have to be carried, etc.*

*Perfect*

portandus fui, *I was to be carried, I had to be carried, etc.*

*Pluperfect*

portandus fueram, *I had had to be carried, etc.*

*Future Perfect*

portandus fuerō, *I shall have had to be carried, etc.*

644.

## Subjunctive

*Present*

portandus sim, etc.

*Imperfect*

portandus essem, etc.

*Perfect*

portandus fuerim, etc.

*Pluperfect*

portandus fuisset, etc.

645.

## Infinitive

*Pres.* portandus esse, *to have to be carried*

*Perf.* portandus fuisse, *to have had to be carried*





## SUMMARY OF SYNTAX

### 646. AGREEMENT

A verb agrees with its subject in person and number. (§ 106)

An adjective agrees with the noun it modifies in gender, number, and case. (§ 151)

A possessive adjective agrees with the noun it modifies in gender, number, and case. (§ 297)

A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, but its case depends upon its use in the clause in which it occurs. (§ 309)

A participle is a verbal adjective and agrees with the noun it modifies in gender, number, and case. (§ 344)

### NOUN SYNTAX

#### 647. Nominative

The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative. (§ 14)

A predicate noun or predicate adjective is in the same case as the subject of the verb which it follows (usually the nominative). (§ 14)

When verbs of *naming*, *making*, *choosing*, *showing*, and *calling* are used in the passive voice, the sentence contains two nominatives—one a subject nominative, and the other a predicate nominative. (§ 322)

#### 648. Genitive

The genitive is usually equivalent, in English, to a prepositional phrase introduced by *of*. It often denotes possession. (§ 38)

*Genitive of the whole*

The genitive is used to express the whole of which a part is taken. (§ 298)

*Objective genitive with adjectives*

Adjectives meaning *desirous, full, mindful, skilled*, and their opposites, govern the genitive. (§ 299)

*Genitive of description*

A phrase consisting of a noun in the genitive with a modifying adjective may be used to describe another noun. (§ 333)

**649. Dative***Indirect object*

The dative is used to express the indirect object of a transitive verb. (§ 46)

*Dative with adjectives*

The dative is used with many adjectives denoting *likeness, fitness, friendliness, nearness*, and their opposites. (§ 52)

*Dative of purpose*

The dative is used with forms of *sum* and with verbs of motion to express purpose or service, and is often accompanied by another dative showing the person affected or interested. (§ 428)

*Dative of agent*

The dative is used with the passive periphrastic to express agency. (§ 554)

*Dative of indirect object with certain verbs*

A number of Latin verbs, owing to their meanings, take the dative case, just as in English they take the preposition *to* and the objective case. The most important of these are: *cēdō, yield; crēdō, trust; imperō, give orders; noceō,*

*do harm; parcō, be lenient; pareō, be obedient; placeō, be pleasing; studeō, be eager; (per)suādeō, be convincing (hence, persuade). (§ 505)*

### 650. Accusative

#### *Direct object*

The direct object of a verb is in the accusative. (§ 24)

#### *Place to which*

Place to which is usually expressed by the preposition *ad* and the accusative; place into which by the preposition *in* and the accusative. (§ 70)

#### *Place to which with names of cities*

With the names of cities, towns, and small islands, and also with the nouns *domus, home*, and *rūs, country*, place to which is expressed by the accusative without a preposition. (§ 76)

#### *Duration of time*

The accusative is used without a preposition to express duration of time. (§ 272)

#### *Extent of space*

The accusative is used without a preposition to express extent of space. (§ 443)

#### *Predicate accusative*

Verbs of *naming, making, choosing, showing, and calling* may take two accusatives, a direct object and a predicate accusative. (§ 322)

#### *Cause with propter*

The preposition *propter* followed by the accusative may be used to express cause. (§ 375)

#### *Subject accusative*

The subject of an infinitive is in the accusative. (§§ 472, 477)

**651. Ablative***Place in which*

Place in which is usually expressed by the ablative with the preposition **in**. (§ 59) (See **Locative**, § 653.)

*Place from which*

Place from which, or place away from which, is usually expressed by the ablative with the preposition **ā** (**ab**); place out of which by the ablative with the preposition **ex** (**ē**). (§ 60)

*Place from which with names of cities*

With names of cities, towns, and small islands, and also with the nouns **domus**, *home*, and **rūs**, *country*, place from which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. (§ 76)

*Accompaniment*

Accompaniment is usually expressed by the ablative with the preposition **cum**. (§ 61)

*Agent*

The ablative with the preposition **ā** (**ab**) is used with a passive verb to express personal agent. (§ 172)

*Means*

The ablative without a preposition is used to show the instrument or the means by which an act is performed. (§ 173)

*Means, with deponent verbs*

The ablative of means is used with **ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, **vēscor**, and their compounds. (§ 488)

*Time*

The ablative, usually without a preposition, is used to show time when. (§ 224)

*Manner*

The ablative with **cum** is used to express the manner in which an act is performed. **Cum** need not be used when the noun has a modifier. (§ 233)

*Cause*

The ablative, generally without a preposition, is used to express cause or reason. (§ 321)

*Comparison*

The ablative without **quam** may be used to express comparison, if the first of the two words compared is in the nominative or accusative. (§ 374)

*Degree of difference*

The ablative is used to express the degree of difference between two objects compared. (§ 386)

*Separation*

The ablative, sometimes with, sometimes without, a preposition, is used to express separation. (§ 387)

*Description or quality*

A noun in the ablative, modified by an adjective, is used to describe another noun. (§ 416)

*Specification*

The ablative without a preposition is used to show in what respect a term is to be applied or a statement is true. (§ 429)

*Ablative absolute*

A noun or pronoun in the ablative, with a participle or adjective in agreement, or a noun in apposition, may be used to denote the time or circumstance of an action. (§ 489)

**652. Vocative**

The vocative is used in direct address. It usually stands after one or more words in the sentence. (§ 85)

**653. Locative**

With singular names of cities, towns, and small islands, and also with the nouns *domus*, *home*, and *rūs*, *country*, place in which is expressed by the locative. (§§ 75, 76)

## VERB SYNTAX

**I. Indicative, imperative, infinitive****654. Indicative**

The indicative is used for direct statements and questions. (§ 163)

Direct questions are introduced by interrogative pronouns, adjectives, adverbs, or by the particles *-ne*, *nōnne*, and *num*.

When a question that suggests the answer *yes* is asked, the question word *nōnne* is used to introduce the question. (§ 31)

When a question that suggests the answer *no* is asked, the question word *num* is used to introduce the question. (§ 32)

When a question is asked that does not show whether *yes* or *no* is expected as the answer, the enclitic *-ne* is attached to the emphatic word of the question, usually the verb, and this emphatic word is placed first in the sentence. (§ 30)

**655. Imperative**

The imperative mood is used to express a command. (§ 163)

**656. Infinitive***Complementary infinitive*

The infinitive is used to complete the meaning of certain verbs. (§ 398)

*Subjective and objective infinitive*

The infinitive with or without subject accusative may be used as the subject or object of a verb. (§ 460)

*Infinitive of indirect statement*

The infinitive with subject accusative is used with verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving*. (§ 477)

## II. Subjunctive in dependent clauses

## Sequence of tenses (§ 494)

657. The word *sequence* comes from Latin *sequor* and means *following*. Certain tenses of the subjunctive in dependent clauses follow certain tenses of the indicative in main clauses. The same thing is true in English when we say, "I *think* he *may* be there," "I *thought* he *might* be there."

658. When the main verb refers to past time, the subjunctive in the subordinate clause is pluperfect if it refers to time before that of the main verb. Otherwise it is imperfect. Thus: *Scīvit ubi fuissēs*, *He knew where you had been*; *Scīvit ubi essēs*, *He knew where you were*. *Scīvit* refers to past time and must therefore be followed by the pluperfect or the imperfect subjunctive. *Fuissēs* refers to time prior to that of *scīvit*; in other words it refers to something that happened before the time of *scīvit*. *Essēs* does not refer to time prior to *scīvit*. (§ 523)

659. When the main verb does not refer to past time, the subjunctive in the subordinate clause is perfect if it refers to time prior to that of the main verb. Otherwise it is present. Thus: *Scit ubi fueris*, *He knows where you have been*; *Scit ubi sis*, *He knows where you are*. (§ 528)

## Clauses of purpose (§ 499)

660. A clause expressing purpose is introduced by *ut* (negative *nē*) and has the verb in the subjunctive. Thus: *Rōmānī pugnābant ut Gallōs vincerent*, *The Romans used to fight in order to conquer the Gauls*. (Note that *pugnābant*



refers to past time and is therefore followed by the imperfect subjunctive.) **Rōmānī pugnāt ut Gallōs vincant**, *The Romans are fighting in order to conquer the Gauls.* (Note that **pugnāt** does not refer to past time and is therefore followed by the present subjunctive.) It is obviously impossible to have the pluperfect or perfect subjunctive in a purpose clause, since those tenses refer to time prior to that of the main verb, and the very nature of the idea of purpose is that an effort is being made to bring about something which has not yet happened.

#### Clauses of result (§ 513)

**661.** A clause expressing result is introduced by **ut** (negative **ut . . . nōn**) and has its verb in the subjunctive. Thus: **Rōmānī tam ācritēr pugnābant ut Gallōs vincerent**, *The Romans used to fight so fiercely that they used to conquer the Gauls.* Note that result is simply accomplished purpose. In the preceding paragraph the sentences expressed the idea of Romans fighting for a certain purpose. Here we find that their purpose has been accomplished, according to the idea set forth in the example just given. Similarly, we might write: **Rōmānī tam ācritēr pugnāt ut Gallōs vincant**, *The Romans are fighting so fiercely that they are conquering the Gauls.* Words such as **tam**, *so*, **ita**, *in such a way*, **sic**, *thus, so*, **tantus**, *so great*, are usually found in the main clause upon which a result clause depends. Such words plainly point out that a result clause is to follow.

#### Substantive clauses

**662.** Substantive clauses (sometimes called *noun clauses*) are used in some noun constructions; *i.e.*, as subject or object of a verb. The most common types are as follows:

**663.** 1. Clauses used as the object of **persuādeō**, **imperō**, **moneō**, **petō**, **postulō**, **rogō**, **hortor**. For example: **Tibi**

*imperō ut Rōmam currās, I give you instructions to run to Rome; Caesarem hortābar nē captivum interficeret, I urged Caesar not to kill the captive.* (§ 504)

**664.** 2. Indirect questions, used with any expression upon which a question may depend. Thus: *Ab explorātōribus quaesivit ubi hostēs essent, He inquired of the scouts where the enemy were.* (§ 527. Compare the examples under *Sequence of tenses*, § 658.)

**665.** 3. As the object of a verb of fearing. Thus: *Timeō nē Caesar interficiātur, I am afraid that Caesar may be killed; Verēbātur ut milītēs pugnārent (or, verēbātur nē milītēs nōn pugnārent), He was afraid that the soldiers might not fight.* Note also the different use of the words *ut* and *nē* which introduce these clauses. (§ 514, Note)

**666.** 4. As the subject or object of *accidit, fit, faciō, efficiō, accēdit*, and some other verbs which mean *happen, bring about, accomplish*. Thus: *Effēcit ut oppidum caperētur, He brought it about that the town was captured; Accidit ut nēmō pugnet, It happens that no one is fighting.* (§ 511)

### 667. *Cum* clauses

Clauses introduced by *cum, when, since, although*, are divided into three classes according to the use of *cum*. (§ 537)

#### 668. 1. *Cum* temporal

If *cum* means *when*, it introduces a clause which refers to time, and is therefore called *cum* temporal and the clause is called a temporal clause. *Cum* temporal takes the indicative mood in the present or future tense but in the past tenses it usually describes the circumstances under which an act took place, and when so used it is followed by the subjunctive. Thus: *Cum Caesar in Galliam veniret, Gallī coniūrātiōnem fēcērunt, When Caesar came into Gaul,*

*the Gauls made a league.* The **cum** clause describes the circumstances under which the Gauls formed a league. Such a clause is usually described, therefore, as a **cum** circumstantial clause, or a **cum** clause of situation. (§ 532)

#### 669. 2. *Cum causal*

If **cum** means *since*, it takes the subjunctive. The tense is in accord with the usual sequence of tenses. Clauses introduced by **cum** meaning *since* are called **cum** causal clauses. (§ 532)

#### 670. 3. *Cum concessive or adversative*

If **cum** means *although*, it takes the subjunctive. The tense is in accord with the usual sequence of tenses. Clauses introduced by **cum** meaning *although* are called **cum** adversative clauses. (§ 532)

### III. Gerund and Gerundive.

#### 671. Gerund

A gerund expresses the action of a verb but has the form of a noun. It has only four cases, the genitive, dative, accusative, ablative. The accusative of the gerund is used with **ad** to express purpose. Purpose may also be expressed by the genitive of the gerund with **causā**. (§§ 541, 551)

#### 672. Gerundive

The gerundive is a verbal adjective and agrees with the noun it modifies in gender, number, and case.

The gerundive is used to express purpose in phrases consisting of **ad** and the accusative and in phrases consisting of the genitive with **causā**. (§§ 542, 543, 551)

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

- ab equō pugnāre**, *to fight on horseback*, 23  
**affici magnō dolōre**, *to be greatly annoyed*, 43  
**agmen claudere**, *to bring up the rear*, 42  
**aliī in aliam partem**, *some in one direction, others in another;*  
*some one way, others another*, 36  
**aliter sē habēre**, *to be arranged differently*, 42  
**augurium capere** (or **augurium agere**), *to take the augury,*  
*consult the omens*, 33  
**bellum inferre**, *to make war (upon)*, 43: generally with the dat.  
**bonō animō**, *well disposed (toward)*, 47: with in and the acc.  
**castra mūnīre**, *to build a camp*, 42  
**castra pōnere**, *to pitch camp*, 18  
**causam dīcere**, *to plead a case*, 47  
**certiōrem facere**, *to inform*, 48  
**cōsiliū capere**, *to form a plan*, 35  
**dē vitā dēcēdere**, *to die*, 44  
**diū atque ācritē pugnātum est**, *they fought long and also*  
*fiercely*, 36  
**extrēmus pōns**, *the end of the bridge*, 38 (see § 239)  
**grātiās agere**, *to thank*, 31: with the dative of person thanked  
**impetum facere**, *to make a charge or attack*, 41  
**in custōdiam trādere**, *to put under arrest*, 32  
**infimus mōns**, *the bottom of the mountain*, 38 (see § 382)  
**in mātīmōnium dūcere**, *to marry*, 30  
**in mediō colle**, *halfway up the hill*, 42 (see § 239)  
**inter sē dare**, *to exchange*, 42  
**inter sē differre**, *to differ from one another*, 43  
**isdem verbīs reddere**, *to repeat*, 43  
**iter facere**, *to march*, 26

- magnitūdō corporis**, *stature*, 25  
**magnum iter**, *a forced march*, 42  
**maior nātū**, *older, or the elder*, 32  
**mediā nocte**, *at midnight*, 33  
**memoriā tenēre**, *to remember*, 36  
**nātūra locī**, *natural features, topography*, 44  
**nāvis longa**, *warship*, 27  
**nihilō minus**, *none the less, nevertheless*, 45  
**novissimum agmen**, *rear, rear guard*, 42  
**operam dare**, *to pay attention, take pains*, 43  
**ōrātiōnem habēre**, *to make a speech*, 44  
**orbis terrārum**, *the world*, 41  
**paulō post**, *a little later*, 32  
**pedibus pugnāre**, *to fight afoot*, 23  
**plūrimum posse**, *to have great influence, be very powerful*, 45  
**primā lūce**, *at daybreak*, 33  
**primum agmen**, *van, advance guard*, 42  
**proelium committere**, *to begin (join) battle*, 22  
**prō multitūdine hominum**, *in proportion to the population*, 43  
**quā dē causā**, *for what reason? (interrogative); for which reason (relative)*, 37  
**rēs militāris**, *warfare, military science*, 42  
**sē ēripere**, *to escape*, 47  
**sē recipere**, *to retreat*, 42  
**sē vertere**, *to face about*, 42  
**sibi mortem cōnsciscere**, *to commit suicide*, 44  
**sine dubiō**, *doubtless*, 44  
**sine morā**, *without delay*, 37  
**suī oblitus**, *self-sacrificing, forgetful of self*, 31 (note)  
**summus mōns**, *the top of the mountain*, 33. (See §§ 239, 382.)  
**suppliciō afficere**, *to punish*, 44  
**terrā marique**, *on land and sea, by land and sea*, 27  
**ūnā cum**, *along with, together with*, 45  
**ūnā ex parte**, *on one side*, 43

# LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY<sup>1</sup>

Numbers refer to chapters, except in a few cases in which a page or paragraph number is specified.

## A

- \***ā** (**ab**), *prep. with abl.*, from, away from, 7; by, 18
- abacus**, -i, *m.*, reckoning board, abacus, 36
- abdūcō**, -ere, **abdūxī**, **abductus**, lead away, carry off, 50
- †**absum**, **abesse**, **āfui**, **āfutūrus**, be distant, be absent, 27
- Acca**, -ae, *f.*, **Acca**, the wife of **Faustulus**, 32
- acceptus**, -a, -um, pleasing, acceptable, 25
- \***accidō**, -ere, **accidī**, —, fall upon; happen, occur, 47
- \***accipiō**, -ere, **accēpi**, **acceptus**, receive, accept, take, 22
- accūsō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, accuse, reproach, 30
- \***ācer**, **ācris**, **ācre**, spirited, keen, fierce, 34
- Achillēs**, **Achillis**, *m.*, **Achilles**, a Greek hero, 18
- \***aciēs**, **aciēi**, *f.*, line of battle, 42
- ācriter**, *adv.*, fiercely, eagerly, bitterly, 36
- \***ad**, *prep. with acc.*, to, toward, 8
- addō**, -ere, **addidī**, **additus**, **add**, 36
- †**addūcō**, -ere, **addūxī**, **adductus**, lead to, move, influence, 33
- †**adeō**, -ire, **adii**, **aditūrus**, come near, approach, visit, 43
- adiuvō**, -āre, **adiūvī**, **adiūtus**, aid, help, assist, 29
- admoneō**, -ēre, **admonui**, **admonitus**, advise, admonish, 29
- adōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, worship, 14
- \***adsum**, **adesse**, **adfui**, **adfutūrus**, be present, 33
- \***adulēscēns**, **adulēscētis**, *m.*, youth, young man, 28
- adultus**, -a, -um, grown up, full-grown, 12
- †**adventus**, **adventūs**, *m.*, arrival, approach, 45
- adytum**, -i, *n.*, the shrine, or inmost and holiest part of a temple, § 3
- \***aedificium**, **aedifici**, *n.*, building, 21
- aedificō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, build, 17
- \***aeger**, **aegra**, **aegrum**, sick, ill, 17
- Aenēās**, **Aenēae** (*reg. except in nom.*), *m.*, **Aeneas**, a prince of Troy, 28
- aēneus**, -a, -um, made of brass, copper, or bronze, 49

<sup>1</sup> Words included in the College Entrance Examination Board's *Latin Word List* for the first and second years are marked with an asterisk [\*]. The Board's *List*, however, omits many common simple words and compounds admittedly necessary to the beginner, because their meanings are supposedly obvious or easily inferred. Such words are marked here with a dagger [†].

- \**aequus*, -a, -um, level, even, equal, 33
- \**aestās*, *aestātis*, *f.*, summer, 24
- aeternus*, -a, -um, eternal, p. 5
- afferō*, -*ferre*, *attulī*, *allātus*, bring to, convey, 43
- afficiō*, -*ere*, *affēci*, *affectus*, afflict, trouble, weaken, 43
- Āfrica*, -*ae*, *f.*, Africa, 8
- \**ager*, *agri*, *m.*, field, 13
- †*aggredi*, *aggredi*, *agressus sum*, approach, attack, 50
- \**agmen*, *agminis*, *n.*, line of march, column, 42; *novissimum agmen*, the rear; *primum agmen*, the van
- \**agō*, -*ere*, *ēgī*, *actus*, do, drive, 17; *triumphum agere*, to hold a triumph, 23
- agricola*, -*ae*, *m.*, farmer, 3
- agricultūra*, -*ae*, *f.*, agriculture, 3
- āla*, -*ae*, *f.*, wing, 39
- Alba Longa*, *Albae Longae*, *f.*, *Alba Longa*, a town of Latium, founded by Ascanius, 30
- Albāni*, -*ōrum*, *m. pl.*, the Albans, the people of Alba Longa, 32
- albus*, -a, -um, white, 4
- \**aliēnus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, foreign, strange, 30; *as a noun*, *aliēnus*, -*i*, *m.*, a stranger
- \**aliter*, *adv.*, otherwise, differently, 42
- \**alius*, *alia*, *aliud*, another, 36
- Allobrogēs*, *Allobrogum*, *m. pl.*, the Allobroges, a Gallic tribe living near Lake Geneva, 47
- Alpēs*, -*ium*, *f. pl.*, the Alps, 45
- \**alter*, *altera*, *alterum*, the other (of two); the second (of a group), 36
- \**altus*, -a, -um, high, tall, deep, 13
- ambō*, *ambae*, *ambō* (see § 579), both, 36
- ambulō*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātus*, walk, 4
- Americānus*, -a, -um, American, 1
- amethystus*, -*i*, *f.*, an amethyst, 6
- amica*, -*ae*, *f.*, friend, 11
- †*amicitia*, -*ae*, *f.*, friendship, 44
- \**amicus*, -*i*, *m.*, friend, 13
- \**amicus*, -a, -um, friendly, 6
- \**āmittō*, -*ere*, *āmisi*, *āmissus*, lose; send away, 28
- amō*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātus*, love, like, 2
- amor*, *amōris*, *m.*, love, 33
- amphitheatrum*, -*i*, *n.*, amphitheater, an oval building used for public spectacles, 21
- amphora*, -*ae*, *f.*, jar, 5
- \**amplus*, -a, -um, spacious, roomy, 8
- Amūlius*, *Amūli*, *m.*, Amulius, brother of Numitor, 32
- Anchisēs*, -*ae* (reg. except in nom.), *m.*, Anchises, father of Aeneas, 28
- ancilla*, -*ae*, *f.*, maidservant, maid, 3
- \**angustiae*, -*ārum*, *f. pl.*, narrowness; defile, a pass, 45
- \**angustus*, -a, -um, narrow, 21
- \**animadvertō*, -*ere*, -*verti*, -*versus*, turn the mind to, notice, 48
- animal*, *animālis*, *animālium*, *n.*, animal, 34
- \**animus*, -*i*, *m.*, mind, feeling, 36
- Anna*, -*ae*, *f.*, Anna, 6
- \**annus*, -*i*, *m.*, year, 29
- \**ante*, *prep. with acc.*, before, in front of, 26
- \**antiquus*, -a, -um, old, ancient, 2
- \**aperiō*, -*ire*, *aperui*, *apertus*, open, 17

- †*apertus*, -a, -um, open, 1
- \**appellō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, call by name, address, entitle, call, 27
- \**appropinquō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, approach, draw near (*with dat., or ad and acc.*), 41
- \**apud*, *prep. with acc.*, among, 18
- \**aqua*, -ae, *f.*, water, 3
- Aquitāni*, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Aquitanians, a tribe living in southern Gaul, 43
- āra*, -ae, *f.*, altar, 14
- Arar*, *Araris*, *m.*, the Arar, a river of Gaul, now the *Saône*, 50
- arātrum*, -ī, *n.*, a plow, 9
- \**arbitror*, -ārī, -ātus sum, think, suppose, consider, 45
- \**arbor*, *arboris*, *f.*, tree, 32
- arca*, -ae, *f.*, chest, box, 32
- arceō*, -ēre, *arcuī*, —, keep at a distance, keep away, 29
- arcus*, *arcūs*, *m.*, arch, 50
- arēna*, -ae, *f.*, arena; sand, 21
- argenteus*, -a, -um, made of silver, 6
- \**arma*, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, arms, armor, weapons, 14
- armātūra*, -ae, *f.*, armor, equipment, 41
- †*armātus*, -a, -um, armed, 12
- armilla*, -ae, *f.*, bracelet, armband, 36
- ars*, *artis*, *artium*, *f.*, art, skill, trick; device, 39
- Ascanius*, *Ascanī*, *m.*, Ascanius, the son of Aeneas and Creusa, and founder of Alba Longa, 28
- †*ascendō*, -ere, *ascendī*, *ascēnsus*, climb, ascend, 17
- Asia*, -ae, *f.*, Asia, 8
- asylum*, -ī, *n.*, refuge, 34
- \**at*, *conj.*, but, but on the other hand, 49
- Athēnae*, -ārum, *f. pl.*, Athens, a city of Greece, 9
- \**atque*, *ac*, *conj.*, and, 48
- \**auctōritās*, *auctōritātis*, *f.*, power, influence, authority, 23
- audācia*, -ae, *f.*, boldness, 37
- audācter*, *adv.*, boldly, 40
- \**audāx*, *gen. audācis*, daring, bold, 34
- \**audeō*, -ēre, *ausus sum*, dare, 49
- \**audiō*, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, hear, listen to, heed, 17
- \**augeō*, -ēre, *auxī*, *auctus*, increase, 27
- augurium*, *augurī*, *n.*, augury, omen, 33
- Augustus*, -ī, *m.*, Augustus, a title given to Octavius Caesar when he was emperor, and approximately equivalent to "his majesty" or the like, 24
- Aulus*, -ī, *m.*, Aulus, a Roman name, 12
- aureus*, -a, -um, golden, 35
- aurīga*, -ae, *m.*, charioteer, driver, 20
- aurum*, -ī, *n.*, gold, 14
- \**aut*, *conj.*, or; *aut . . . aut*, either . . . or, 25
- \**autem*, *conj. (postpositive)*, however, but, furthermore, 28
- \**auxilium*, *auxilī*, *n.*, aid, help; *pl.*, reinforcements, auxiliary troops, 14
- Aventinus*, -ī, *m.*, the Aventine, one of the seven hills of Rome, 33
- avis*, *avis*, *avium*, *f.*, bird, 33
- avus*, -ī, *m.*, grandfather, 32
- Axona*, -ae, *m.*, a river of Belgic Gaul, now the *Aisne*, 42



## B

- \***barbarus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, uncivilized, barbarous, 22; *as a noun*, barbarus, -ī, *m.*, a barbarian  
**Belgae**, -ārum, *m. pl.*, the Belgians, a warlike tribe of northern Gaul, 43  
**bellicōsus**, -a, -um, warlike, 43  
**\*bellum**, -ī, *n.*, war, 14; **bellum gerere**, to wage war, 17; **bellum inferre** (*with dat.*), to make war (upon), 43  
**\*bene**, *adv.*, well, fine, 20  
**\*beneficium**, **beneficī**, *n.*, kindness, favor, benefit, 40  
**benignē**, *adv.*, kindly, 29  
**benignus**, -a, -um, kind, 4  
**bīgae**, -ārum, *f. pl.*, span of two horses, chariot with team, 20  
**\*bonus**, -a, -um, good, 1  
**\*brevis**, breve, short, brief, 34  
**Britannia**, -ae, *f.*, Britain, Great Britain, 14  
**Britannus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, British; *as a noun*, Britannus, -ī, *m.*, a Briton, 14

## C

- C., abbr. for Gāius (see § 403)  
**\*cadō**, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, fall; fall down, 30  
**\*caedēs**, caedis, caedium, *f.*, slaughter, massacre, 27  
**\*caedō**, -ere, cecidī, caesus, cut down, slay, 36  
**caelum**, -ī, *n.*, sky, 33  
**Caesar**, Caesaris, *m.*, Caesar, a general and statesman, 24  
**calceus**, -ī, *m.*, shoe, 49  
**callidus**, -a, -um, shrewd, skilful, 39  
**Camilla**, -ae, *f.*, Camilla, a Roman name, 5  
**\*capiō**, -ere, cēpī, captus, take, seize, 22; **cōnsilium capere**, to form a plan, 35  
**Capitōlium**, Capitōlī, *n.*, the Capitoline hill, one of the seven hills of Rome, 35  
**\*captivus**, -a, -um, captive, 18  
**\*caput**, capitis, *n.*, head; capital, 26  
**carrus**, -ī, *m.*, cart, wagon, 46  
**cārus**, -a, -um, dear, 6  
**casa**, -ae, *f.*, cottage, hut, 3  
**\*castellum**, -ī, *n.*, fortress, 49  
**Casticus**, -ī, *m.*, Casticus, a chief of the Sequanians, 44  
**castigō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, punish, reprove, beat, 13  
**\*castra**, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, camp, 14  
**\*causa**, -ae, *f.*, cause, reason, 19  
**\*cēdō**, -ere, cessī, cessūrus, go away, depart, yield; grant, concede, 49  
**celebrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, celebrate; throng, 20  
**\*celer**, celeris, celere, quick, swift, 34  
**†celeritās**, celeritātis, *f.*, quickness, speed, 25  
**celeriter**, *adv.*, swiftly, quickly, 14  
**cēna**, -ae, *f.*, dinner, 7  
**\*centuriō**, centuriōnis, *m.*, centurion (an officer in the Roman army), 41  
**cēra**, -ae, *f.*, wax, 39  
**\*cernō**, -ere, crēvī, crētus, detect, distinguish, 25  
**certāmen**, certāminis, *n.*, contest, strife, race, 25  
**certē**, *adv.*, certainly, surely, 3  
**\*certus**, -a, -um, certain, sure, 48

- \**cēteri*, -ae, -a, *pl.*, the rest of, the other(s), 38  
*Cicero*, *Cicerōnis*, *m.*, Cicero, a famous Roman orator and writer, § 5
- \**circiter*, *adv.*, about, 42  
*circulus*, -ī, *m.*, a circle, circular figure, 36
- \**circum*, *prep. with acc.*, around, 13  
*circumdō*, -are, *circumdedī*, *circumdatum*, encircle, surround, 40  
*circumstō*, -āre, *circumstetī*, —, surround, encircle, 15  
*circumveniō*, -īre, *circumvēnī*, *circumventūrus*, surround, encircle, 42  
*circus*, -ī, *m.*, circus, 20  
*Circus Maximus*, *Circī Maximī*, the Circus Maximus at Rome, a race course, situated between the Palatine and Aventine hills, 20
- \**civis*, *cīvis*, *cīvium*, *m.* or *f.*, citizen, 27
- \**civitas*, *cīvitatī*, *f.*, state, 24
- \**clam*, *adv.*, secretly, 35
- \**clāmō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, call out, shout, exclaim, 12  
†*clāmor*, *clāmōris*, *m.*, shout, cry, 24  
*clārus*, -a, -um, bright, famous, renowned, 7
- \**classis*, *classis*, *classium*, *f.*, fleet; class, 27  
*Claudia*, -ae, *f.*, Claudia, a Roman name, 5  
*Claudius*, *Claudī*, *m.*, Claudius, a Roman name, 36
- \**claudō*, -ere, *clausī*, *clausus*, close, 42; *agmen claudere*, to bring up the rear, 42
- †*clausus*, -a, -um, closed, 1  
*coclear*, *cocleāris*, *cocleārium*, *n.*, spoon, 7
- \**coepi*, *coepisse*, *coeptus*, began, 49
- \**cōgitō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, consider, weigh, think, 35  
*cognōmen*, *cognōminis*, *n.*, surname, 40
- \**cognōscō*, -ere, *cognōvi*, *cognitus*, learn about, understand, 29
- \**cōgō*, -ere, *coēgī*, *coactus*, collect; compel, 17
- \**cohors*, *cohortis*, *cohortium*, *f.*, cohort, a tenth part of a legion, 42  
*cohortor*, -ārī, -ātus sum, encourage, exhort, 41
- \**collis*, *collis*, *collium*, *m.*, hill, 42  
*Colossēum*, -ī, *n.*, the Colosseum, a famous amphitheater, 21
- color*, *colōris*, *m.*, color, 25  
*columna*, -ae, *f.*, column, pillar, 3  
*comes*, *comitis*, *m.*, companion, comrade, 38  
*commentārii*, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, records, commentaries, 43
- \**committō*, -ere, -mīsi, -missus, join, begin, 22; *proelium committere*, begin battle, 22  
*commoveō*, -ēre, *commōvi*, *commōtus*, stir up, move deeply, alarm, 38  
*communiō*, -īre, -īvi or -īi, -ītus, fortify, 49
- \**commūnis*, *commūne*, common, general, joint; 34
- †*comparō*, -āre, *comparāvi*, *comparātus*, make ready, prepare; procure, 29
- †*compleō*, -ēre, *complēvi*, *complētus*, fill, cover, 25

- \***complūrēs, complūra** *or* **complūria**, *pl.*, several, quite a number, many, 42  
**conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, secure, win, 44  
 \***concilium, concili**, *n.*, council, assembly, 45  
**condō, -ere, condidī, conditus**, found, establish, 30  
 †**cōnferō, -ferre, contulī, conlātus**, collect, gather, 43  
 \***cōnficiō, -ere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus**, accomplish, finish, perform, 46  
 \***cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, strengthen, declare, 36  
 †**coniungō, -ere, coniūnxi, coniūnc-tus**, join, unite, 48  
**coniūnx, coniugis**, *m. or f.*, husband or wife, 30  
**coniūratiō, coniūratiōnis, f.**, league, conspiracy, 44  
 \***conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, place, 13  
 †**conloquor, conloquī, conlocūtus** sum, talk, converse, confer, 48  
 \***cōnor, -ārī, -ātus** sum, attempt, try, 45  
**cōnsciscō, -ere, cōnscivī, cōnscit-us**, decree, determine, 44;  
**sibi mortem cōnsciscere**, to commit suicide, 44  
 \***cōnscribō, -ere, cōnscripsi, cōn-scriptus**, enroll, enlist, 42  
 †**cōnservē, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, keep safe, preserve, 50  
 \***cōnsidō, -ere, cōnsēdī, cōnsessū-rus**, take a seat, encamp, 50  
 \***cōnsiliium, cōnsili**, *n.*, plan, purpose, 19  
 \***cōnsistō, -ere, cōnstiti**, —, stand, take a position, 41  
 \***cōnspiciō, -ere, cōnspexī, cōn-spectus**, perceive, observe, 48  
 \***cōnstituō, -ere, cōnstitui, cōnsti-tūtus**, establish, station, decide, 29  
 \***cōnsul, cōnsulis, m.**, consul, 24  
 \***cōnsūmō, -ere, cōnsūmpsī, cōn-sūptus**, consume, destroy, 40  
 \***contendō, -ere, contendī, con-tentus**, hasten, fight, 37  
 \***contineō, -ēre, continui, contentus**, hold fast, hem in, 32  
 \***contrā, prep. with acc.**, against, opposite to, 49  
 †**conveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ven-tūrus**, come together, assemble, gather, 34  
**convivium, convivi, n.**, feast, banquet, 40  
**convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, summon, assemble, 45  
 \***cōpia, -ae, f.**, abundance, plenty; *in pl.*, troops, forces, 14  
**corbula, -ae, f.**, little basket, 4  
**Cornēlia, -ae, f.**, Cornelia, a Roman name, 1  
**Cornēliānus, -a, -um**, of or belonging to Cornelius, Cornelian, 3  
**Cornēlius, Cornēli, m.**, Cornelius, a Roman name, 12  
 \***cornū, cornūs, n.**, horn; wing (of an army), 41  
**corōna, -ae, f.**, garland, wreath, 4  
 \***corpus, corporis, n.**, body, 25  
 \***cotidiē, adv.**, daily, 6  
**crās, adv.**, tomorrow, 20  
 \***crēber, crēbra, crēbrum**, dense, frequent, 32  
 \***crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus**, believe (*with dat.*), 44

- Crēta, -ae, *f.*, Crete, an island in the Mediterranean Sea, 6  
 Crētēnsis, Crētēnsē, Cretan, 39  
 Creūsa, -ae, *f.*, Creusa, Trojan wife of Aeneas, 28  
 crūdēlis, crūdēle, cruel, severe, 37  
 \*cum, *prep. with abl.*, with, 7; *conj.*, when, since, although, 49  
 cūnctus, -a, -um, the whole, all, 38  
 cupiditās, cupiditātis, *f.*, longing, desire, 35  
 \*cupidus, -a, -um, desirous, eager, 31  
 \*cupiō, -ere, cupivi, cupitus, desire, be eager, long for, 33  
 \*cūr, *adv.*, why? 2  
 \*cūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, care for, 5  
 \*currō, -ere, cucurri, cursurus, run, 21  
 currus, currus, *m.*, chariot, 38  
 custōdia, -ae, *f.*, custody, guard, 32; in custōdiam trādere, to put under arrest  
 custōdiō, -ire, -ivi, -itus, guard, watch, protect, 19  
 \*custōs, custōdis, *m.*, guard, defender, 39
- D**
- Daedalus, -i, *m.*, Daedalus, an Athenian architect who was exiled to Crete, 39  
 damnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, condemn, convict, 39  
 \*dē, *prep. with abl.*, about, concerning; from, down from, 11  
 dea, -ae, *f.*, goddess, 4  
 \*dēbeō, -ēre, dēbui, dēbitus, owe, ought, 39  
 dēcēdō, -ere, dēcēssi, dēcēssurus, go away, withdraw, 44  
 \*decem, *indecl. numeral*, ten, 36  
 \*decimus, -a, -um, tenth, 24, 36  
 dēcurreō, -ere, dēcucurri or dēcurre, dēcursurus, run down, run, 38  
 \*dēfendō, -ere, dēfēdi, dēfēnsus, defend, guard, 38  
 \*dēferō, -ferre, dētuli, dēlātus, carry down; report, 44  
 \*dēfessus, -a, -um, tired, exhausted, 7  
 dēiciō, -ere, dēiēcī, dēiectus, throw down, 22  
 \*deinde, *adv.*, then, afterwards, thereupon, 32  
 dēlectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, please, delight, charm, 2  
 \*dēleō, -ēre, dēlēvi, dēlētus, destroy, 28  
 \*dēligō, -ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus, choose, elect, 24  
 \*dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, point out, show, 5  
 dēmum, *adv.*, at length, at last, 39  
 dēpōnō, -ere, dēposui, dēpositus, put aside, lay down, 43  
 \*dēsīderō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, desire, long for, want, 5  
 dēsīgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, mark out, designate, 33  
 dēsiliō, dēsīlire, dēsīlui, dēsultus, leap down, 38  
 \*deus, -i, *m.* (see § 566), god, 13  
 dēvoveō, -ēre, dēvōvi, dēvōtus, devote, vow, sacrifice, 31  
 \*dexter, dextra, dextrum, right, right hand, 23  
 Diāna, -ae, *f.*, Diana, goddess of the moon, 5  
 \*dicō, -ere, dixi, dictus, say, tell, express, 21  
 Didō, Didōnis, *f.*, Dido, a queen who founded Carthage, 29

- \*diēs, diēi, *m.* or *f.*, day, 42  
 \*differō, -ferre, distulī, dilātus, carry away; differ, be different, 43  
 \*difficilis, difficile, difficult, hard, 34  
 \*difficultās, difficultātis, *f.*, difficulty, trouble, 44  
 digitus, -ī, *m.*, finger, 36  
 \*diligēns, *gen.*, diligentis, careful, diligent, 36  
 diligenter, *adv.*, diligently, carefully, 11  
 diligentia, -ae, *f.*, diligence, care, 31  
 †dimittō, -ere, dimisī, dimissus, send forth, dismiss, 50  
 †discēdō, -ere, discessī, discessūrus, withdraw, go away, depart, 40  
 discipulus, -ī, *m.*, pupil, 12; discipula, -ae, *f.*, 1  
 discordia, -ae, *f.*, discord, quarrel, 19  
 dissentiō, -ire, dissēnsī, dissēnsus, disagree, differ, 33  
 \*diū, *adv.*, for a long time, 18  
 diūtius, *adv.*, longer, 32  
 \*diversus, -a, -um, different, diverse, 29  
 \*dividō, -ere, divisī, divisus, divide, separate, 26  
 \*dō, dare, dedī, datus, give, bestow, 5  
 \*doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctus, teach, 11  
 †dolor, dolōris, *m.*, grief, sorrow, 34  
 domicilium, domicilī, *n.*, dwelling, home, 14  
 dominus, -ī, *m.*, master, 12; domina, -ae, *f.*, mistress, 3  
 \*domus, domūs, *f.* (see § 567), house, 41; domī, at home, 9; domum, home(ward), 9; domō, from home, 9  
 dōnum, -ī, *n.*, gift, offering, 17  
 \*dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, doubt, hesitate, 49  
 dubius, -a, -um, doubtful, uncertain, 44  
 \*dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, lead, guide, 17  
 ductus, ductūs, *m.*, a leading, 47; aquae ductus, aqueduct  
 Dumnorix, Dumnorigis, *m.*, Dumnorix, a Haeduan chief, 44  
 \*duo, duae, duo (see § 579), two, 36  
 duodecim, *indecl. numeral*, twelve, 33  
 duodēvigintī, *indecl. numeral*, eighteen, 36  
 duplex, duplicis, double, two-fold; deceitful, § 6  
 \*dux, ducis, *m.*, leader, 23
- E
- \*ē, see ex  
 †ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, rear, train, educate, 34  
 ēducō, -ere, ēdūxī, ēductus, lead out, 42  
 \*efficiō, -ere, effēcī, effectus, bring about, cause, effect, 47  
 effugiō, -ere, effūgī, —, escape, 39  
 \*ego, mei, *personal pron.*, I, 11; *pl.*, we, 31  
 †ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, go out, march out, 48  
 \*emō, -ere, emī, emptus, buy, 46  
 \*enim, *conj.*, for, 50

- enūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, assert,  
 disclose, 47  
 \*eō, ire, iī or ivī, itūrus, go, 43  
 \*eques, equitis, *m.*, horseman; *pl.*,  
 cavalry, 23  
 \*equitātus, equitātūs, *m.*, cavalry, 41  
 \*equus, -ī, *m.*, horse, 12  
 †eripiō, -ere, ēripui, ēreptus, take  
 away, 47  
 errō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, wander,  
 roam, 29  
 \*et, *conj.*, and, 1; \*et . . . et,  
 both . . . and, 2  
 \*etiam, *adv.*, even, also, 14  
 Etrūria, -ae, *f.*, Etruria, a country  
 in north central Italy, now  
 called Tuscany, 40  
 Etrūscus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Etruscan;  
*as a noun*, Etrūscus, -ī, *m.*, an  
 Etruscan, 37  
 \*ex (ē), *prep. with abl.*, out of, 7  
 excēdō, -ere, excessī, excessūrus,  
 go out, 40  
 †exēō, -ire, exiī, exitūrus, go out,  
 withdraw, depart, 43  
 \*exerceō, -ēre, exercui, exercitus,  
 train, practice, 49  
 \*exercitus, exercitūs, *m.*, army, 41  
 \*existimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, reckon,  
 think, 47  
 expellō, -ere, expuli, expulsus,  
 drive out, expel, 37  
 \*expugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, cap-  
 ture, take by assault, 50  
 exsequor, exsequi, exsecūtus  
 sum, follow up, execute, 47  
 \*expectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, await,  
 expect, wait for, 21  
 \*extrā, *prep. with acc.*, outside of, 13  
 \*extrēmus, -a, -um, most remote,  
 far distant, 8

## F

- fābula, -ae, *f.*, story, 5  
 \*facilis, facile, easy, 43  
 \*faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, make, do,  
 perform, 22  
 factum, -ī, *n.*, deed, act, 34  
 \*facultās, facultātis, *f.*, opportu-  
 nity, resources, ability, 50  
 \*fāma, -ae, *f.*, fame, reputation,  
 report, 14  
 \*famēs, famis, *f.*, hunger, famine,  
 40  
 \*familia, -ae, *f.*, household, kin-  
 dred, 47  
 fātum, -ī, *n.*, fate, 28  
 Faustulus, -ī, *m.*, Faustulus, a  
 shepherd, 32  
 fēmina, -ae, *f.*, woman, 1  
 fenestra, -ae, *f.*, window, 1  
 \*ferē, *adv.*, almost, nearly, 12  
 \*ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, bear, bring,  
 carry, 43  
 \*ferrum, -ī, *n.*, iron, sword, 38  
 fibula, -ae, *f.*, pin, brooch, 21  
 \*fidēs, fidei, *f.*, faith, trust, belief,  
 47  
 filia, -ae, *f.*, daughter, 3  
 \*filius, fili, *m.*, son, 12  
 \*finis, finis, *m.*, end; finēs,  
 finium, *m. pl.*, boundaries, ter-  
 ritory, 36  
 \*finitimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, neighbor-  
 ing; *as a noun*, finitimī, -ōrum,  
*m. pl.*, neighbors, 34  
 \*fiō, fieri, —, —, become,  
 happen, come to pass, 43  
 \*firmus, -a, -um, firm, sturdy,  
 8  
 fistula, -ae, *f.*, pipe, tube, water  
 pipe, 27  
 \*flūmen, flūminis, *n.*, river, 27

- \*fluō, fluere, flūxī [*perf. part.*  
flūxus used as *adj.*], flow, 27  
foculus, -ī, *m.*, brazier, 3  
forceps, forcipis, *m.* or *f.*, tongs,  
pincers, 3  
fortasse, *adv.*, perhaps, 11  
\*fortis, forte, brave, strong, 34  
fortiter, *adv.*, bravely, 40  
fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, *f.*, bravery,  
courage, 44  
\*fortūna, -ae, *f.*, fortune, 40  
forum, -ī, *n.*, a market place;  
Forum, in Rome, an open space  
between the Capitoline and  
Palatine hills, 20  
\*fossa, -ae, *f.*, ditch, trench, 18  
fragor, fragōris, *m.*, crashing,  
noise, 38  
\*frāter, frātris, *m.*, brother, 24  
frēnum, -ī, *n.*, bridle, curb, bit, 26  
\*frūmentum, -ī, *n.*, grain, 14  
\*frūstrā, *adv.*, in vain, to no pur-  
pose, 35  
\*fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight, 33  
\*fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, flee, 28

## G

- Gāius, Gāi, *m.*, Gaius, a Roman  
name, abbreviated C., 40  
Galba, -ae, *m.*, Galba, a Roman  
name, 5  
galea, -ae, *f.*, helmet, 22  
Gallia, -ae, *f.*, Gaul, 12  
Gallicus, -a, -um, Gallic, of Gaul,  
43  
Gallus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Gallic, 22;  
as a *noun*, Gallus, -ī, *m.*, a Gaul  
Garumna, -ae, *m.*, a river of  
southwestern Gaul, now the  
Garonne, 43  
gaudium, gaudī, *n.*, joy, 26

- gāza, -ae, *f.*, treasure, riches,  
wealth, § 5  
gemini, -ae, -a, *adj.* twin, 24; as  
a *noun*, geminī, *m. pl.*, twins  
Geneva, -ae, *f.*, Geneva, modern  
Geneva, a city of the Allobroges,  
on Lake Lemman, 43  
\*gēns, gentis, gentium, *f.*, race,  
tribe, 27  
\*genus, generis, *n.*, kind, class, 26  
Germānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, German;  
as a *noun*, Germānus, -ī, *m.*,  
a German, 22  
\*gerō, -ere, gessi, gestus, carry on,  
wear, 17; with *refl.*, conduct  
(oneself), 32; bellum gerere, to  
wage war  
gladiātor, -ōris, *m.*, gladiator, 25  
gladiātōrius, -a, -um, gladia-  
torial, 25  
\*gladius, gladi, *m.*, sword, 12  
\*glōria, -ae, *f.*, glory, 21  
Graecia, -ae, *f.*, Greece, 6  
Graecus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Greek; as  
a *noun*, Graecus, -ī, *m.*, a  
Greek, 17  
\*grātia, -ae, *f.*, favor, esteem, 31;  
tibi grātiās agō, I thank you  
\*grātus, -a, -um, pleasing, 6  
\*gravis, grave, heavy, 41  
graviter, *adv.*, violently, vehe-  
mently, 30

## H

- \*habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, have, hold, 2  
habitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, live,  
dwell, 7  
Haedus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Haeduan;  
as a *noun*, Haedus, -ī, *m.*, a  
Haeduan, 43  
hasta, -ae, *f.*, spear, 18

- Helena**, -ae, *f.*, Helen, a beautiful Greek woman, 18
- Helveticus**, -a, -um, of the Helvetians, Helvetian, 24
- Helvētius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Helvetian; *as a noun*, Helvētius, Helvēti, *m.*, a Helvetian, 42
- herī**, *adv.*, yesterday, 19
- Herminius**, Herminī, *m.*, Herminius, a Roman name, 38
- heu**, *interj.*, an exclamation of pain, oh! alas! § 4
- \*hiberna**, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, winter quarters, 22
- hīc**, *adv.*, here, in this place, 19
- \*hic**, haec, hoc, *demonstrative adj. and pron.*, this, 33
- \*hiems**, hiemis, *f.*, winter, 24
- hodiē**, *adv.*, today, 5
- \*homō**, hominis, *m. or f.*, person, man, 24
- \*honor**, honōris, *m.*, honor, esteem, 40
- \*hōra**, -ae, *f.*, hour, 36
- Horātius**, Horāti, *m.*, Horatius, a Roman name; Horatius Cocles, Horāti Coclitis, the Roman hero who defended the bridge, 37
- hortus**, -ī, *m.*, garden, 12
- Hostilius**, Hostilī, *m.*, Hostilius, a Roman commander, 36
- \*hostis**, hostis, hostium, *m.*, an enemy (referring to one person), 27; *in pl.*, the enemy
- \*hūc**, *adv.*, hither, 36; hūc et illūc, hither and thither, 36
- \*humilis**, humile, lowly, humble, 37
- I
- \*iaciō**, -ere, iēcī, iactus, throw, hurl, 22
- \*iam**, *adv.*, already, now, 40; iam diū, now for a long time, 40
- Iāniculum**, -ī, *n.*, the Janiculum, a hill situated across the Tiber from the Forum, 37
- iānuā**, -ae, *f.*, door, 1
- Iānus**, -ī, *m.*, the god Janus, 1
- \*ibi**, *adv.*, there, in that place, 17
- Icarus**, -ī, *m.*, Icarus, the son of Daedalus, 39
- \*idem**, eadem, idem, *demonstrative adj. and pron.*, the same, 43
- \*idōneus**, -a, -um, suitable, convenient, fit, 33
- igitur**, *adv. (postpositive)*, therefore, 8
- ignifer**, ignifera, igniferum, fire-bearing, 3
- \*ignis**, ignis, ignium, *m.*, fire, 28
- ignōtus**, -a, -um, unknown, unnoticed, 40
- \*ille**, illa, illud, *demonstrative adj. and pron.*, that, 33
- illūc**, *adv.*, thither, to that place, 36
- illūminō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, light up, illuminate, 26
- imāgō**, imāginis, *f.*, image, 26
- imber**, imbris, imbrium, *m.*, rain, 32
- īmmortālis**, immortāle, immortal, 40
- \*impedimentum**, -ī, *n.*, hindrance, interference; impedimenta, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, heavy baggage, baggage, 42
- \*impediō**, -ire, -ivi, -itus, hinder, impede, 17
- īmpeditus**, -a, -um, burdened, hindered, 38



- †imperātor, imperātoris, *m.*, commander, emperor, 24  
 \*imperium, imperi, *n.*, power, command, 24  
 \*imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, command, order, give orders (*with dat.*), 46  
 \*impetus, impetūs, *m.*, attack, assault, 41  
 impluvium, impluvī, *n.*, impluvium, rain basin, 15  
 \*in, *prep. with abl.*, in, on, 7; over, 37; *with acc.*, into, upon, 8  
 \*incendō, -ere, incendi, incēsus, burn, set fire to, 17  
 \*incipiō, -ere, incēpī, inceptus, begin, undertake, 43  
 \*incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, urge, incite, arouse, 35  
 incola, -ae, *m. or f.*, inhabitant, 8  
 \*incolō, -ere, incoluī, —, inhabit, dwell, 43  
 induō, -ere, induī, indūtus, put on, 18  
 \*ineō, -ire, -ivī or -iī, -itus, to go into, enter, 43  
 infāns, infantis, *m. or f.*, a little child, infant, 10  
 †inferō, -ferre, intulī, inlātus, bring in, 43  
 \*infimus, -a, -um, lowest, 38  
 influō, -ere, infūxī, infūxus, flow in, 50  
 ingenium, ingeni, *n.*, disposition, ability, 34  
 \*inimicus, -a, -um, unfriendly, 30  
 \*iniūria, -ae, *f.*, wrong, injury, insult, 37  
 \*inopia, -ae, *f.*, scarcity, lack, 40  
 \*inquit, he says, he said, 20  
 \*insidiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, plot, ambush, wiles, 35  
 institūtum, -ī, *n.*, practice, custom, 43  
 instrumentum, -ī, *n.*, a tool, implement, instrument, 36  
 \*instruō, -ere, instrūxī, instrūctus, draw up, arrange, 42  
 \*insula, -ae, *f.*, island, 6  
 \*intellegō, -ere, intellēxī, intellēctus, understand, 43  
 \*inter, *prep. with acc.*, between, among, 19  
 intercipiō, -ere, intercēpī, interceptus, intercept, 22  
 interdum, *adv.*, sometimes, 5  
 \*interficiō, -ere, interfēcī, interfectus, kill, 26  
 \*interim, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime, 17  
 \*intermittō, -ere, intermisi, intermissus, leave off, interrupt, stop, 35  
 \*intrā, *prep. with acc.*, within, inside, 14  
 intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, enter, go into, 5  
 invalidus, -a, -um, weak, feeble, 28  
 \*inveniō, -ire, invēni, inventus, find, discover, 28  
 inviolātus, -a, -um, inviolable, unhurt, 27  
 \*invitus, -a, -um, unwilling, 45  
 invocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, call upon, invoke, 36  
 iō, *interjection*, hurrah! oh! look! 24; iō triumphe, hurrah! for the triumphal celebration! 24  
 \*ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *intensive pron.*, self, 33  
 irātus, -a, -um, angry, 13

\*is, ea, id, *demonstrative adj.* and *pron.*, this, that; he, she, it; *pl.*, they, 32  
 \*iste, ista, istud, *demonstrative adj.* and *pron.*, that (of yours), 33  
 \*ita, *adv.*, thus, so, 40  
 Italia, -ae, *f.*, Italy, 6  
 Italicus, -a, -um, Italian, 8  
 itaque, *conj.*, and so, therefore, 5  
 \*item, *adv.*, likewise, besides, 46  
 \*iter, itineris, *n.* (see § 566), journey, march, route, 26; iter facere, to march, 26  
 iterum, *adv.*, again, 7  
 \*iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus, order, bid, 43  
 iūdex, iūdicis, *m.*, judge, 26  
 iūdicium, iūdicī, *n.*, judgment, trial, 47  
 \*iūdicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, judge, 50  
 \*iugum, -ī, *n.*, yoke, ridge, 49  
 Iūlia, -ae, *f.*, Julia, a Roman name, 1  
 Iūlius, Iūli, *m.*, Julius, a Roman name, 48  
 iūmentum, -ī, *n.*, beast of burden, 46  
 \*iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūctus, join, unite, 46  
 Iūnō, Iūnōnis, *f.*, Juno, the queen of the gods, 29  
 Iuppiter, Iovis, *m.* (see § 566), Jupiter, the chief of the gods, 36  
 Iūra, -ae, *m.*, Jura, a range of mountains in Gaul, 43  
 \*iūs, iūris, *n.*, right, law, justice, 27  
 \*iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, *n.*, oath, 47  
 iuvenis, iuvenis, iuvenum, *m.*, young man, youth, 40  
 \*iuvō, -āre, iūvi, iūtus, help; iuvat, *impersonal*, it pleases, 39

## K

Karthāginiēnsēs, Karthāginiēnsium, *m. pl.*, the Carthaginians, people of Carthage, 27  
 Karthāgō, Karthāginis, *f.*, Carthage, a city of northern Africa, 29

## L

Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*, Labienus, a Roman name, 12; Titus Labiēnus, a lieutenant of Caesar, 50  
 \*labor, labōris, *m.*, toil, effort, difficulty, 49  
 \*labōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, work, 3  
 labyrinthus, -ī, *m.*, a labyrinth, 39  
 lacrimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, weep, cry, 13  
 lacus, lacūs, *m.*, lake, 43  
 Laeca, -ae, *m.*, Laeca, a Roman name, 7  
 laetē, *adv.*, joyfully, 40  
 laetus, -a, -um, happy, cheerful, 4  
 \*lapis, lapidis, *m.*, stone, 23  
 largior, largiri, largitus sum, bribe, 50  
 Lārs, Lārtis, *m.*, a title which the Etruscans used for the eldest son; Lārs Porsena, a king of the Etruscans, 37  
 Lartius, Lartī, *m.*, Lartius, a Roman name, 38  
 latibulum, -ī, *n.*, den, 32  
 Latinus, -a, -um, Latin, 11  
 Latinus, -ī, *m.*, Latinus, king of the Laurentians, 30  
 latrō, latrōnis, *m.*, robber, 34  
 \*lātus, -a, -um, wide, broad, 3  
 \*latus, lateris, *n.*, side, 33  
 \*laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, praise, 5

- Laurentum**, -i, *n.*, Laurentum, a maritime town in Latium, 30  
**\*laus, laudis**, *f.*, praise, glory, 36  
**Lāvīnia**, -ae, *f.*, Lavinia, daughter of Latinus and Italian wife of Aeneas, 30  
**Lāvīnium**, Lāvīni, *n.*, Lavinium, a town of Latium founded by Aeneas and named in honor of his wife Lavinia, 30  
**lectica**, -ae, *f.*, litter, sedan chair, 10  
**\*lēgātīō**, lēgātīōnis, *f.*, embassy, legation, 46  
**\*lēgātus**, -i, *m.*, lieutenant; envoy, 12  
**\*legiō**, legiōnis, *f.*, legion, 24  
**legiōnārius**, -a, -um, of a legion, legionary, 41  
**legō**, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, choose, read, 21  
**Lemannus**, -i, *m.*, the Lake of Geneva, 43  
**\*levis**, leve, light, 39  
**\*lēx**, lēgis, *f.*, law, 23  
**libenter**, *adv.*, gladly, 8; (libenter nāvīgat, he likes to sail)  
**\*liber**, libera, liberum, free, 15  
**liber**, librī, *m.*, book, 12  
**\*liberī**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, children, 15  
**\*liberō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, free, 38  
**libertās**, libertātis, *f.*, liberty, freedom, 33  
**\*licet**, licēre, licuit, — (*impersonal*), it is permitted, may, 49  
**licitor**, licitoris, *m.*, licitor, 24  
**lignus**, -a, -um, wooden, 17  
**lingua**, -ae, *f.*, tongue, language, 11  
**\*littera**, -ae, *f.*, a letter of the alphabet, § 3  
**\*locus**, -i, *m.*, place, location; *in pl.*, region, 33; loci nātūrā, natural features, topography, 44  
**longē**, *adv.*, far, 27; longē lātēque, far and wide, 40  
**\*longus**, -a, -um, long, 2  
**lōrica**, -ae, *f.*, corselet, armor, 23  
**lucerna**, -ae, *f.*, lamp, 40  
**Lūcia**, -ae, *f.*, Lucia, a Roman name, 11  
**Lūcius**, Lūcī, *m.*, Lucius, a Roman name, 12  
**lūdō**, -ere, lūsī, lūsus, play, frolic, 17  
**lūdus**, -i, *m.*, school; game, 13  
**lūna**, -ae, *f.*, moon, 5  
**lupa**, -ae, *f.*, wolf, she-wolf, 32  
**\*lūx**, lūcis, *f.*, light, 33; primā lūce, at daybreak, 33

## M

- \*magis**, *adv.*, more, 38  
**magister**, magistrī, *m.*, master, schoolmaster, 13  
**magistra**, -ae, *f.*, teacher, schoolmistress, 1  
**\*magistrātus**, magistrātus, *m.*, civil office; magistrate, 47  
**†magnitūdō**, magnitūdinis, *f.*, size, 25; magnitūdō corporis, stature, physique, 25  
**magnopere**, *adv.*, greatly, exceedingly, 40  
**\*magnus**, -a, -um, large, great, 1  
**male**, *adv.*, poorly, badly, 36  
**\*mālō**, mälle, mālūi, —, wish more, prefer, 39  
**\*malus**, -a, -um, bad, wicked, 32  
**mandātum**, -i, *n.*, command, order, 29

- \***mandō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, commit, hand over, 50  
**māne**, *adv.*, in the morning, 11  
 \***maneō**, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, remain, stay, 20  
 \***manus**, manūs, *f.*, hand, band; troops, 41  
**Marcella**, -ae, *f.*, Marcella, a Roman name, 4  
**Mārcus**, -ī, *m.*, Marcus, a Roman name, 12  
 \***mare**, maris, *n.* (see § 563), sea, 27; Mare Inferum, the Lower, or Tuscan, Sea; Mare Superum, the Upper, or Adriatic, Sea, 27  
**Maria**, -ae, *f.*, Mary, a Roman name, 15  
**maritimus**, -a, -um, pertaining to the sea, of the sea, 28  
**Mārs**, Mārtis, *m.*, Mars, god of war, 24  
 \***māter**, mātris, *f.*, mother, 24  
**mātrimōnium**, mātrimōnī, *n.*, marriage, 30  
**mātrōna**, -ae, *f.*, inatron, 11  
**Matrona**, -ae, *m.*, a river of Gaul, now the *Marne*, joining the Sequana near Paris, 43  
**mātūrē**, *adv.*, early, 17  
**maximē**, *adv.*, especially, very greatly, 6  
 †**maximus**, -a, -um, greatest, very great, 19  
 \***medius**, -a, -um, middle, middle of, 26  
**memor**, *gen.* memoris, mindful, heedful, 36  
 \***memoria**, -ae, *f.*, memory, 36; memoriā tenēre, to remember, 36  
 \***mēns**, mentis, *f.*, the mind, § 5  
**mēnsa**, -ae, *f.*, table, desk, 1  
 \***mēnsis**, mēnsis, mēnsium, *m.*, month, 29  
 \***mercātor**, mercātōris, *m.*, merchant, 26  
**Mercurius**, Mercurī, *m.*, Mercury, messenger of the gods, 13  
**mēta**, -ae, *f.*, goal, 26  
 \***metus**, metūs, *m.*, fear, anxiety, 46  
 \***meus**, -a, -um, *poss. adj.*, my, mine, 11, 31  
 \***miles**, militis, *m.*, soldier, 23  
 †**militāris**, militāre, military, 42  
 \***mille**, *indecl. adj.*, a thousand, 42; *pl.*, mīlia, mīlium, *n.*, *noun*, thousands, 36 (see § 442)  
**Minerva**, -ae, *f.*, Minerva, goddess of wisdom, 9  
**Minōs**, Minōis, *m.*, Minos, the king of Crete, 39  
 \***miser**, misera, miserum, wretched, unhappy, 15  
**miser cordia**, -ae, *f.*, pity, 48  
 \***mittō**, -ere, mīsi, missus, send, 17  
 \***modus**, -ī, *m.*, measure; manner, way, 39  
**mola**, -ae, *f.*, millstone; *in pl.*, mill, 16  
 \***moneō**, -ēre, monui, monitus, advise, warn, 19  
**monile**, monīlis, *n.*, necklace, collar, 6  
 \***mōns**, montis, montium, *m.*, mountain, 33  
 \***mora**, -ae, *f.*, delay, 37  
**morior**, mori, mortuus sum, die, 42  
 \***moror**, morārī, morātus sum, delay, wait, 50  
 \***mors**, mortis, mortium, *f.*, death, 37  
**mortuus**, -a, -um, dead, 38

- \**mōs, mōris, m.*, custom, manner, 24  
 \**movēō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus*, move, disturb, 35  
*mox, adv.*, soon, 21  
*Mūcius, Mūcī, m.*, Mucius, a Roman name; C. Mūcius Scaevola, the Roman who attempted to assassinate Porsena, 40  
 †*multitūdō, multitūdinis, f.*, multitude, 24  
*multō, adv.*, much, 38  
 \**multus, -a, -um*, much, many, 3  
 \**mūniō, -ire, -ivī, -itus*, fortify, defend, 17  
 †*mūnitīō, mūnitīōnis, f.*, fortification, rampart, 35  
 \**mūnus, mūneris, n.*, reward, gift, 25  
 \**mūrus, -i, m.*, wall, 13
- N
- \**nam, conj.*, for, 19  
*nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*, tell, 5  
*Nāsica, -ae, m.*, Nasica, a Roman name, 9  
 \**nātiō, nātiōnis, f.*, race, tribe, nation, 41  
 \**nātūra, -ae, f.*, nature, character, 44; *locī nātūrā*, natural features, topography, 44  
*nauta, -ae, m.*, sailor, 3  
*nāvālis, -e*, naval, 8  
*nāvicula, -ae, f.*, little boat, skiff, 7  
 \**nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*, sail, 7  
 \**nāvis, nāvis, nāvium, f.*, ship, 27  
 \**nē, conj.*, in clauses of purpose, that . . . not, lest, 46; *nē . . . quidem*, not even, 36  
 \**ne, enclitic*, sign of a question, 3  
 \**necesse, neuter adj., nom. and acc. only*, necessary, 43
- \**necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*, kill, 18  
 \**negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*, deny, say not, 45  
 \**negōtium, negōtī, n.*, business, task, 21  
 \**nēmō (nūllūs), dat. nēminī, acc. nēminem, m. or f.*, no one, 40  
 \**neque, conj.*, nor, and not; \**neque . . . neque*, neither . . . nor, 2;  
*nesciō, -ire, -ivī, —*, not to know, be ignorant, 36  
 \**neu, conj.*, and that . . . not, nor, 46  
 \**neuter, neutra, neutrum*, neither (of two), 36  
 \**nihil, n. (indecl.)*, nothing, 35  
 \**nisi, conj.*, unless, if not, 27  
 \**nōbillis, nōbile*, renowned, noble, 35  
*nōbilitās, nōbilitātis, f.*, nobility, the nobles, 44  
 \**noceō, -ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus*, injure, harm (*with dat.*), 48  
 \**noctū, adv.*, at night, 7  
 \**nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, —*, be unwilling, 39  
 \**nōmen, nōminis, n.*, name, 26  
 \**nōn, adv.*, not, 1  
 \**nōndum, adv.*, not yet, 12  
*nōnne, interrog. adv.*, not: used when the answer "yes" is expected, 3  
*nōn solum . . . sed etiam*, not only . . . but also, 35  
 \**nōnus, -a, -um*, ninth, 36  
 †*nōs, nostrum (nostrī), personal pron.*, we, 11, 31  
 \**noster, nostra, nostrum, poss. adj.*, our, ours, 11, 31  
*nōtus, -a, -um*, renowned, well-known, 34

- \**novem, indecl. adj.*, nine, 36  
 \**novus, -a, -um*, new, fresh, recent, 2  
 \**nox, noctis, noctium, f.*, night, 33  
 \**nūllus, -a, -um*, none, 36  
 \**num, interrog. adv.*, used when the answer "no" is expected, 3; whether: used to introduce indirect question, 48  
 \**numerus, -i, m.*, number, 13  
 Numitor, Numitōris, *m.*, Numitor, grandfather of Romulus and Remus, 32  
 nummus, *-i, m.*, a coin, 27  
 \**numquam, adv.*, never, 19  
 \**nunc, adv.*, now, 7  
 \**nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus*, announce, report, 12  
 \**nūntius, nūnti, m.*, messenger, message, 12  
 nūper, *adv.*, recently, just, 47
- O
- \**ob, prep. with acc.*, on account of, because of, 47  
 oblitus, *-a, -um*, unmindful, forgetful, 31  
 \**obses, obsidis, m. or f.*, hostage, 23  
 \**obsideō, -ēre, obsēdi, obsessus*, besiege, 40  
 \**obtimeō, obtinēre, obtinui, obtentus*, occupy, possess, 39  
 \**occāsus, occāsūs, m.*, a fall, destruction, 17  
 \**occidō, -ere, occidī, occisus*, kill, slay, cut down, 30  
 \**occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus*, seize, take possession, 36  
 \**octāvus, -a, -um*, eighth, 36  
 \**octō, indecl. adj.*, eight, 36
- \**oculus, -i, m.*, eye, 37  
 oliva, *-ae, f.*, olive, 8  
 Olympia, *-ae, f.*, Olympia, an ancient place in southern Greece, the scene of the Olympic games and the site of a celebrated temple and statue of Zeus, 19  
 Olympus, *-i, m.*, Olympus, a celebrated mountain of northern Greece, formerly regarded as the home of the gods, 19  
 \**omninō, adv.*, in all, only, 45  
 \**omnis, omne*, all, every, 34  
 \**onerāria, -ae, f.*, merchant ship, transport, 8  
 \**oppidum, -i, n.*, town, 14  
 \**opprimō, -ere, oppressi, oppressus*, weigh down, overwhelm, oppress, 35  
 oppugnātiō, oppugnātiōnis, *f.*, siege, attack, 23  
 \**oppugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus*, assault, besiege, storm, 17  
 optimus, *-a, -um*, best, *superl. of bonus*, 19  
 \**opus, operis, n.*, work, labor; composition, 36  
 ōra, *-ae, f.*, coast, shore, 7  
 \**ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, f.*, speech, 44; ōrātiōnem habēre, to make a speech, 44  
 Orbilius, Orbilī, *m.*, Orbilius, a Roman name, 13  
 orbis, orbis, orbium, *m.*, circle, 41; orbis terrārum, world, universe, 41  
 \**ōrdō, ōrdinis, m.*, order, rank, row, 42  
 Orgetorix, Orgetorigis, *m.*, Orgetorix, a Helvetian nobleman, 43

- ōrnāmentum, -ī, *n.*, decoration; equipment, trappings, 35  
 ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, adorn, decorate, 4  
 \*ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, pray, plead, beg, 35  
 ōs, ōris, *n.*, mouth, face, 27  
 \*ostendō, -ere, ostendī, ostentus, show, declare, disclose, 46  
 ōtium, ōtī, *n.*, leisure, rest, 21

## P

- paedagōgus, -ī, *m.*, attendant, tutor, 13  
 \*paene, *adv.*, almost, nearly, hardly, 6  
 Palātium, Palātī, *n.*, the Palatine hill, one of the hills of Rome, 32  
 palla, -ae, *f.*, cloak, mantle, 8  
 palma, -ae, *f.*, palm leaf, sign of victory, 25  
 pānis, pānis, pānium, *m.*, bread, loaf, 16  
 Pānsa, -ae, *m.*, Pansa, a Roman name, 15  
 \*pār, *gen. paris*, equal, 41  
 †parātus, -a, -um, ready, 39  
 Parcae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, the Fates, 29  
 \*parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, prepare, 7  
 \*pars, partis, partium, *f.*, part, direction, 30  
 Parthenōn, -ōnis, *m.*, the Parthenon, a temple in Athens, 14  
 \*parvus, -a, -um, small, little, 1  
 \*passus, passūs, *m.*, pace, step, 42  
 pāstor, pāstōris, *m.*, shepherd, 32  
 \*pater, patris, *m.*, father, 24  
 patera, -ae, *f.*, dish, saucer, 4  
 \*patior, patī, passus sum, allow, permit, suffer: followed by an infinitive with subject acc., 45  
 patria, -ae, *f.*, native land, country, 6  
 Patrōclus, -ī, *m.*, Patroclus, a famous Greek warrior, friend of Achilles, 18  
 \*pauci, -ae, -a, *pl.*, few, 6  
 †paulō, *adv.*, a little, 32; paulō post, a little later, 32  
 \*pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace, 23  
 \*pecūnia, -ae, *f.*, money, wealth, 5  
 \*pedes, peditis, *m.*, foot soldier; *pl.*, infantry, 23  
 Pēleus, -ei, *m.*, Peleus, father of Achilles, 18  
 \*pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, drive, drive out, 18  
 pendeō, -ēre, pependī, —, be suspended, hang down, 41  
 penna, -ae, *f.*, feather, 39  
 \*per, *prep. with acc.*, through, 21  
 \*perficiō, -ere, perfēcī, perfectus, accomplish, perform, 40  
 \*periculum, -ī, *n.*, danger, 14  
 peristylum, -ī, *n.*, peristyle, 15  
 \*perītus, -a, -um, experienced, skilled, 39  
 permōveō, -ēre, permōvī, permōtus, move, influence, 44  
 perrumpō, -ere, perrūpī, perruptus, break through, force a way through, 49  
 \*persuādeō, -ēre, persuāsi, persuāsūrus, persuade (*with dat.*), 46  
 †perrereō, -ēre, perrerruī, perrertitus, terrify, thoroughly alarm, 36  
 \*pertineō, -ēre, pertinui, —, extend, pertain, 40  
 \*perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, disturb, confuse, 48

- †pervenīō, -īre, pervēnī, perven-  
tūrus, arrive, come up, 28
- \*pēs, pedis, *m.*, foot, 23
- \*petō, -ere, petīvī or -ī, petitus,  
seek, ask, 34
- phalanx, phalangis, *f.*, a compact  
body of heavy-armed men in  
battle array, § 5
- Philippus, -ī, *m.*, a king of Mace-  
don, § 5
- pictūra, -ae, *f.*, picture, 7
- piger, pigra, pigrum, lazy, 13
- \*pilum, -ī, *n.*, javelin, 22
- Piraeus, -ī, *m.*, the port of Athens,  
39
- pistor, pistoris, *m.*, miller, bread  
maker, baker, 16
- pistrīna, -ae, *f.*, bakehouse, 16
- pius, -a, -um, devoted, faithful,  
conscientious, 28
- plēnus, -a, -um, full, 4
- pōculum, -ī, *n.*, drinking cup,  
goblet, 39
- poēta, -ae, *m.*, poet, 7
- \*polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum,  
promise, offer: followed by a  
future infinitive with subject  
acc., 45
- pompa, -ae, *f.*, procession, parade,  
21
- Pompeianus, -a, -um, belonging  
to Pompeii, 21
- \*pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, put,  
place, 18; castra pōnere, to  
pitch camp, 18
- \*pōns, pontis, pontium, *m.*, bridge,  
37
- \*populus, -ī, *m.*, people, nation, 23
- Porsena, -ae, *m.*, Lars Porsena,  
an Etruscan king, 37
- \*porta, -ae, *f.*, gate, 17
- \*portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, carry,  
bring, 4
- \*portus, portūs, *m.*, harbor, port,  
39
- \*possum, posse, potuī, —, be  
able, can, 39
- \*post, *prep. with acc.*, after, behind,  
26
- \*posteā, *adv.*, afterwards, later  
on, 8
- \*postquam, *conj. with perf. ind.*,  
after, 30
- postrēmus, -a, -um, last, 37
- \*postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, demand,  
request, 35
- \*potēns, *gen. potentis*, powerful, 34
- \*potestās, potestātis, *f.*, power, 27
- \*potior, potirī, potitus sum, obtain,  
get possession of (*with abl.*), 45
- \*praeficiō, -ere, praefēcī, praefec-  
tus, put in charge of, set over  
(*with dat.*), 50
- \*praemium, praemī, *n.*, reward, 31
- \*praesidium, praesidī, *n.*, garrison,  
protection, 41
- \*praeter, *prep. with acc.*, besides,  
except, 47
- \*praetereā, *adv.*, besides, further-  
more, moreover, 33
- Priamus, -ī, *m.*, Priam, the last  
king of Troy, 18
- prīmō, *adv.*, at first, 27
- \*primus, -a, -um, first, 24, 36
- \*princeps, principis, *m.*, chief, 23
- \*principātus, principātūs, *m.*, lead-  
ership, the first place, 44
- principium, principī, *n.*, beginning,  
24
- \*privātus, -a, -um, private, 45
- \*prō, *prep. with abl.*, in behalf of,  
for, 18



\***probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, approve, 40  
**Proca, -ae, m.**, Proca, a king of the Albans, 32  
**prōcēdō, -ere, prōcessī, prōcessūrus**, go before, advance, proceed, 40  
**\*proelium, proeli, n.**, battle, 14  
**\*profectiō, profectiōnis, f.**, departure, 45  
**\*proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum**, set out, depart, 45  
**†prōgredior, prōgredi, prōgressus sum**, go forth, proceed, 50  
**\*prohibeō, -ēre, prohibui, prohibitus**, keep off, prohibit, prevent, 33  
**\*prope, prep. with acc.**, near, 21; *adv.*, near by, 40  
**properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, hasten, hurry, 7  
**propior, propius**, nearer, 39  
**proprius, -a, -um**, one's own, special, particular, § 6  
**\*propter, prep. with acc.**, on account of, 37  
**\*prōvincia, -ae, f.**, province, 6  
**proximē, adv.**, next, nearest, last, 42  
**†proximus, -a, -um**, next, very near, near by, 6  
**Pūblius, Pūbli, m.**, Publius, a Roman name, 12  
**puella, -ae, f.**, girl, 1  
**\*puer, puerī, m.**, boy, 12  
**pugil, pugilis, m.**, boxer, pugilist, 20  
**\*pugna, -ae, f.**, battle, fight, 12  
**†pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, fight, contend, 12  
**pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum**, beautiful, handsome, fair, 3, 13  
**pupa, -ae, f.**, doll, 4

\***putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, think, consider, 29

## Q

\***quā, adv.**, where, 50  
**quadrigae, -ārum, f. pl.**, team of four horses, chariot with team, 21  
**\*quaerō, -ere, quaesivī or -sī, quaesitus**, seek, ask, inquire, 46  
**quālis, quāle**, what kind of, what, 1  
**\*quam, conj.**, than, 37; *interrog. adv.*, how? how much? 37  
**quamquam, conj.**, although, 40  
**quandō, interrog. adv.**, when? 24  
**\*quantus, -a, -um, interrog. adj.**, how great? how much? 48  
**quārē, interrog. adv.**, wherefore? why? 39  
**\*quārtus, -a, -um**, fourth, 36  
**\*quattuor, indecl. adj.**, four, 36  
**quattuordecim, indecl. adj.**, fourteen, 36  
**\*-que, conj.**, and: always attached to the second of two connected words, 12  
**\*qui, quae, quod, rel. pron.**, who, which, that, 32 -  
**\*quidem, adv.**, indeed, certainly, at least; **nē . . . quidem**, not even, 36  
**quindecim, indecl. adj.**, fifteen, 36  
**\*quinque, indecl. adj.**, five, 36  
**\*quintus, -a, -um**, fifth, 36  
**\*quis, quid, interrog. pron.**, who? what? 1, 48 (see § 599)  
**\*quisquam, quicquam, indef. pron.**, any, anyone, 46  
**\*quō, adv.**, whither? 8  
**\*quod, conj.**, because, 2

quōmodo, *adv.*, how? 18  
 quondam, *adv.*, formerly, once, 44  
 \*quoque, *conj.*, also, too: used  
 after emphatic word, 1  
 quot, *indecl. interrog. adj.*, how  
 many? 36  
 quotannis, *adv.*, every year,  
 yearly, 22

## R

rāmus, -i, *m.*, branch, 32  
 \*rapiō, -ere, rapui, raptus, snatch,  
 seize, carry off, steal, 28  
 rārō, *adv.*, seldom, 6  
 rebellō, -āre, āvi, -ātus, rebel, 27  
 recipiō, -ere, recepī, receptus,  
 take back; *with sē*, retreat, 42  
 \*reddō, -ere, reddidī, redditus,  
 give back, return, 43; *isdem*  
*verbis reddere*, to repeat, 43  
 \*redeō, redire, rediī, reditūrus, re-  
 turn, go back, 50  
 reditiō, reditiōnis, *f.*, return, 47  
 redundō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, over-  
 flow, 32  
 rēgia, -ae, *f.*, palace, 32  
 rēgina, -ae, *f.*, queen, 29  
 \*regiō, regiōnis, *f.*, region, terri-  
 tory, direction, 48  
 rēgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, reign,  
 rule, 30  
 \*rēgnus, -i, *n.*, kingdom, royal  
 power, 32  
 \*regō, -ere, rēxi, rēctus, guide,  
 direct, control, rule, 19  
 rēiciō, -ere, rēiēcī, rēiectus, throw  
 back, hurl back, 22  
 \*relinquō, -ere, reliquī, relictus,  
 leave, abandon, 17  
 \*reliquus, -a, -um, remaining, rest  
 of, 17

rēmex, rēmigis, *m.*, rower, oars-  
 man, 8  
 Remus, -i, *m.*, Remus, the brother  
 of Romulus, 24  
 repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsus,  
 drive back, repulse, 49  
 \*repentinus, -a, -um, sudden, un-  
 expected, 42  
 \*reperiō, -ire, reperī, repertus,  
 find, find out, 48  
 reprehendō, -ere, reprehendī, re-  
 prehēnsus, seize; blame, cen-  
 sure, 36  
 \*rēs, rei, *f.*, thing, affair, event,  
 matter, 42  
 \*respondeō, -ēre, respondi, respōn-  
 sus, reply, answer, 12  
 reveniō, -ire, revēni, reventūrus,  
 return, come back, 28  
 \*revertor, revertī (*inf.*), revertī  
 (*perf.*), reversus (*perf. part.*,  
*deponent*), turn back, return,  
 go back, 49  
 \*rēx, rēgis, *m.*, king, 23  
 Rhēa Silvia, Rhēae Silviae, *f.*,  
 Rhea Silvia, the mother of  
 Romulus and Remus, 24  
 Rhēnus, -i, *m.*, the river *Rhine*,  
 43  
 Rhodanus, -i, *m.*, the river *Rhone*,  
 43  
 \*ripa, -ae, *f.*, bank (of river), 32  
 \*rogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, ask, ques-  
 tion, 12  
 Rōma, -ae, *f.*, Rome, 9  
 Rōmānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Roman,  
 12; *as a noun*, Rōmānus, -i,  
*m.*, Rōmāna, -ae, *f.*, a Roman  
 Rōmulus, -i, *m.*, Romulus, the  
 founder and first king of Rome,  
 24

rosa, -ae, *f.*, rose, 4  
 Rosa, -ae, *f.*, Rose, a name, 6  
 ruber, rubra, rubrum, red, 5  
 ruīna, -ae, *f.*, ruin, 27  
 rūpēs, rūpis, rūpium, *f.*, cliff,  
 rock, 38  
 rūs, rūris, *n.*, the country, 9  
 rūsticus, -a, -um, rustic, rural, 15  
 Rutulī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, Rutulians,  
 an ancient people of Latium, 30

## S

- Sabinus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Sabine; *as a noun*, Sabinus, -ī, *m.*, a Sabine, 34  
 sacerdōs, sacerdotis, *m. or f.*, priest, priestess, 32  
 sacrārium, sacrārī, *n.*, shrine, 16  
 sacrificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, make a sacrifice, 19  
 \*saepe, *adv.*, often, 4  
 \*sagitta, -ae, *f.*, arrow, 18  
 sagittārius, sagittārī, *m.*, archer, 41  
 \*salūs, salūtis, *f.*, safety, health, 35  
 salutō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, greet, 8  
 (salveō), -ēre, —, —, be well, be in good health, 11  
 Santonēs, Santonum, *m. pl.*, Santones, a people living north of Aquitania, 43  
 sapientia, -ae, *f.*, wisdom, intelligence, 9  
 \*satis, *adv.*, sufficiently, enough, 49  
 schola, -ae, *f.*, school, 1  
 \*sciō, -ire, scivī, scītus, know, 36  
 scrība, -ae, *m.*, secretary, scribe, 40  
 \*scrībō, -ere, scripsī, scrīptus, write, 31  
 \*scūtum, -ī, *n.*, shield, 21  
 Secunda, -ae, *f.*, Secunda, a Roman name, 3  
 \*secundus, -a, -um, second, 36  
 \*sed, *conj.*, but, 1  
 sēdecim, *indecl. adj.*, sixteen, 36  
 sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessūrus, sit, 10  
 Segusiāvī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Segusiavi, a people of eastern Gaul, 50  
 sella, -ae, *f.*, chair, seat, 1  
 sēmentis, sēmentis, sēmentium, *f.*, sowing, crops, 46  
 \*semper, *adv.*, always, 4  
 senātor, senātōris, *m.*, senator, 40  
 \*sententia, -ae, *f.*, thought, opinion, 21  
 \*sentīō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, feel, perceive, realize, 44  
 \*septem, *indecl. adj.*, seven, 36  
 septendecim, *indecl. adj.*, seventeen, 36  
 \*septimus, -a, -um, seventh, 36  
 Sēquana, -ae, *f.*, the principal river of northern Gaul, now the *Seine*, 43  
 Sēquanus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Sequanian; *as a noun*, Sēquanus, -ī, *m.*, a Sequanian, 43  
 \*sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow, 50  
 serva, -ae, *f.*, slave girl, 6  
 \*servitūs, servitūtis, *f.*, slavery, servitude, 38  
 Servius, Servī, *m.*, Servius, a Roman name, 12  
 \*servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, save, protect, 20  
 \*servus, -ī, *m.*, manservant, slave, 12  
 sevērus, -a, -um, severe, stern, 11  
 \*sex, *indecl. adj.*, six, 33  
 \*sextus, -a, -um, sixth, 36

- Sextus, -i, *m.*, Sextus, a Roman name, 15
- \*sī, *conj.*, if, 13
- Sibylla, -ae, *f.*, prophetess, sibyl, 33
- \*sic, *adv.*, thus, in this manner, 14
- signatus, -a, -um, stamped, 32
- \*significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, express, indicate, 35
- \*signum, -i, *n.*, signal, 26
- \*silentium, silenti, *n.*, silence, stillness, 43
- \*silva, -ae, *f.*, forest, woods, 3
- \*similis, simile, like, similar, 37
- \*simul, *adv.*, at the same time, 50; simul ac (simul atque before a vowel), as soon as, 50
- \*sine, *prep. with abl.*, without, 37
- \*singulī, -ae, -a, one at a time, individual, 41
- \*sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, left, left hand, 23
- \*socius, soci, *m.*, companion, comrade, ally, 17
- \*sōl, sōlis, *m.*, sun, 26
- solea, -ae, *f.*, sandal, 6
- solium, solī, *n.*, throne, 19
- \*sōlus, -a, -um, alone, only, 36
- solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, unbind, dissolve, 39
- \*spatium, spatī, *n.*, space, 26
- spectāculum, -i, *n.*, spectacle, exhibition, 21
- spectātor, spectātōris, *m.*, spectator, 25
- \*spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, look at, watch, 5
- speculum, -i, *n.*, mirror, 6
- \*spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, hope, 44
- \*spēs, speī, *f.*, hope, 46
- spīna, -ae, *f.*, spina, the "spine," 26
- spolium, spolī, *n.*, booty, spoil, 23
- \*statim, *adv.*, at once, immediately, 32
- statua, -ae, *f.*, statue, 4
- \*statuō, -ere, statui, statūtus, decide, determine, set in place, 48
- stēlla, -ae, *f.*, star, 7
- stilus, -i, *m.*, stylus, a pointed instrument for writing on waxed tablets, 13
- \*stō, stāre, steti, stāturus, stand, 1
- \*studeō, -ēre, studui, —, be eager, study, 11
- †studium, studi, *n.*, zeal, eagerness, 25
- \*sub, *prep. with abl.*, under, at the foot of, 32; with *acc.*, under (with verbs of motion), 49
- subeō, -īre, subii, subiturus, go under, undergo, suffer, 43
- \*subitō, *adv.*, suddenly, unexpectedly, 17
- sublicius, -a, -um, built upon piles, 37
- subsellium, subselli, *n.*, bench, seat, 21
- \*sui (*gen.*), reflexive pron., (of) himself, etc., 31
- \*sum, esse, fui, futurus, be, 1, 11
- \*summus, -a, -um, highest, top of, 26
- super, *prep. with acc.*, over, above, 26
- superbē, *adv.*, haughtily, 40
- superbus, -a, -um, haughty, proud, 27
- \*superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, overcome, surpass, defeat, conquer, 41
- \*supplicium, supplicī, *n.*, punishment, distress, suffering, 44
- surgō, -ere, surrēxi, surrēcturus, rise, stand up, 35

- \**suscipiō*, -ere, *suscēpi*, *susceptus*,  
take up, undertake, 46  
\**sustineō*, -ēre, *sustinui*, *sustentus*,  
check, withstand, sustain, 42  
\**suus*, -a, -um, *reflexive poss. adj.*,  
his, her, its, their, 31

## T

- tabella*, -ae, *f.*, writing tablet, 12  
*taberna*, -ae, *f.*, shop, 5  
*tabernaculum*, -i, *n.*, tent, 18  
*tabula*, -ae, *f.*, picture, painting,  
28  
*tālis*, *tāle*, such, 40  
*tālus*, -i, *m.*, ankle bone, knuckle-  
bone, 11  
\**tam*, *adv.*, so, in such a degree, 47  
\**tamen*, *adv.*, nevertheless, still, 18  
*tandem*, *adv.*, finally, at length, 7  
\**tangō*, -ere, *tetigi*, *tactus*, touch,  
32  
\**tantus*, -a, -um, so great, such, 47  
\**tardus*, -a, -um, slow, tardy, 21  
*Tarpeia*, -ae, *f.*, *Tarpeia*, daughter  
of *Tarpeius*, 34  
*Tarpeius*, *Tarpei*, *m.*, *Tarpeius*,  
the commander of the Roman  
soldiers who guarded the Cap-  
itol from the Sabines, 35  
*Tarquinius*, *Tarquini*, *m.*, *Tar-*  
*quinius Superbus*, the last king  
of Rome, 37  
*Tatius*, *Tati*, *m.*, *Tatius*, king of  
the Sabines, 35  
†*tectus*, -a, -um, covered, in-  
closed, 2  
\**tegō*, -ere, *tēxi*, *tectus*, cover,  
protect, 25  
\**tēlum*, -i, *n.*, weapon, 18  
\**tempestās*, *tempestātis*, *f.*, storm,  
weather, 29  
*templum*, -i, *n.*, temple, 14  
\**temptō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, try,  
attempt, 39  
\**tempus*, *temporis*, *n.*, time, 26  
\**teneō*, -ēre, *tenui*, —, hold,  
grasp, 12  
*Terentia*, -ae, *f.*, *Terentia*, a  
Roman name, 4  
*terminus*, -i, *m.*, end, 26  
\**terra*, -ae, *f.*, land, earth, 3  
\**terreō*, -ēre, *terruī*, *territus*, fright-  
en, terrify, 39  
*terror*, *terrōris*, *m.*, terror, great  
fear, 37  
*Tertia*, -ae, *f.*, *Tertia*, a Roman  
name, 11  
\**tertius*, -a, -um, third, 36  
*Tiberis*, *Tiberis*, *m.* (see § 567),  
the Tiber, 27  
\**timeō*, -ēre, *timui*, —, fear, 14  
†*timor*, *timōris*, *m.*, fear, 35  
*Titus*, -i, *m.*, *Titus*, a Roman  
name, 31  
*tolerō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, endure,  
40  
\**tollō*, -ere, *sustuli*, *sublātus*, lift,  
carry away, remove, 47  
\**tot*, *indecl. adj.*, so many, 23  
\**tōtus*, -a, -um, whole, 36  
\**trādō*, -ere, *trādidī*, *trādītus*, hand  
over, surrender, betray, 32; in  
*custōdiam trādere*, to put under  
arrest, 32  
†*trādūcō*, -ere, *trādūxi*, *trāductus*,  
lead across (*with two accu-*  
*satives*), 50  
\**trahō*, -ere, *trāxi*, *trāctus*, drag,  
draw, 17  
\**trāns*, *prep. with acc.*, across, 27  
†*trānseō*, -ire, *trānsiī*, *trānsitūrus*,  
go over, cross, 45

trānsilō, -īre, trānsilūi, —, leap across, jump over, 33  
 trecenti, -ae, -a, three hundred, 30  
 tredecim, *indecl. adj.*, thirteen, 36  
 \*trēs, tria, three, 36  
 \*tribuō, -ere, tribui, tribūtus, assign, attribute, 35  
 triplex, *gen. triplicis*, threefold, triple, 42  
 triumphālis, triumphāle, triumphal, 50  
 triumphus, -i, *m.*, triumph, 23;  
 triumphum agere, to hold a triumph, 23  
 Troia, -ae, *f.*, Troy, 17  
 Troiānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Trojan; as a noun, Troiānus, -i, *m.*, a Trojan, 17  
 \*tū, tui, *personal pron.*, you (*sing.*), 11, 31  
 \*tueor, -ēri, tātus sum, watch over, guard, 50  
 Tullia, -ae, *f.*, Tullia, a Roman name, 3  
 \*tum, *adv.*, then, thereupon, 5  
 tunica, -ae, *f.*, tunic, 4  
 Turnus, -i, *m.*, Turnus, a king of the Rutulians, killed by Aeneas, 30

\*turris, turris, turrium, *f.*, tower, 35  
 \*tūtus, -a, -um, safe, secure, 38  
 \*tuus, -a, -um, *poss. adj.*, your (referring to one person), 11, 31

## U

\*ubi, *adv.*, where? 7; *conj.*, used with *perf. indic.*, when, 28  
 \*ūllus, -a, -um, any, 36  
 \*ulterior, -ius (*comparative adj.*), farther, further, 49  
 \*ultrō, *adv.*, voluntarily, 29

umerus, -i, *m.*, shoulder, 28  
 \*umquam, *adv.*, ever, 37  
 \*ūnā, *adv.*, together, 45; ūnā cum, along with, 45  
 \*unde, *adv.*, whence, 7  
 ūndecim, *indecl. adj.*, eleven, 36  
 ūndēviginti, *indecl. adj.*, nineteen, 36  
 \*undique, *adv.*, on all sides, from all parts, 35  
 \*ūnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, one, 36  
 urbānus, -a, -um, pertaining to the city, urban, 15  
 \*urbs, urbis, urbium, *f.*, city, 27  
 ūrna, -ae, *f.*, water jar, urn, 8  
 \*ūsus, ūsus, *m.*, use, service, experience, 41  
 \*ut, *conj.*, as, 33; ut, *conj.* (with *subjunctive*), in order that, 46  
 \*uter, utra, utrum, which (of two), 36  
 \*uterque, utraque, utrumque, each, both, 46  
 \*ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum, use, employ, 45  
 utrimque, *adv.*, on both sides, from each side, 30  
 ūva, -ae, *f.*, grape, 8  
 \*uxor, uxōris, *f.*, wife, 28

## V

\*vadum, -i, *n.*, shallow place, ford, 47  
 \*vāllum, -i, *n.*, rampart, fortification, 14  
 varius, -a, -um, various, manifold, 29  
 \*vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, lay waste, devastate, 50  
 \*vel, *conj.*, or, 41  
 \*veniō, -īre, vēni, ventūrus, come, 17

- \*ventus, -i, *m.*, wind, 39  
 verbum, -i, *n.*, word, 19; *isdem*  
*verbis reddere*, to repeat, 43
- \*vereor, -ēri, veritus sum, fear, 45  
 Vergilius, Vergiliī, *m.*, Vergil, a  
 Roman poet, 30
- †vērō, *adv.* (*postpositive*), truly,  
 indeed, 19
- \*vertō, -ere, verti, versus, turn,  
 change, 42
- \*vērus, -a, -um, true, 19
- †vespere, in the evening: *used as*  
*adv.*, 13
- Vesta, -ae, *f.*, Vesta, the goddess  
 of household fire, 32. A fire  
 was kept constantly burning in  
 her temple in the Forum by the  
 Vestal Virgins
- \*vester, vestra, vestrum, *poss. adj.*,  
 your (referring to two or more  
 persons), 11, 31
- vestigium, vestigi, *n.*, trace, foot-  
 print, 24
- veterānus, -a, -um, old, veteran,  
 42
- vetō, -āre, vetui, vetitus, forbid, 40
- vēxillārius, -i, *m.*, a standard  
 bearer, 43
- \*via, -ae, *f.*, road, street, way, 5  
 Via Appia, Viae Appiae, *f.*, the  
 Appian Way, a well-known  
 highway from Rome to the  
 south of Italy, 10
- viātor, viātōris, *m.*, traveler, way-  
 farer, 27
- victor, victōris, *m.*, victor, 24
- †victōria, -ae, *f.*, victory, 17
- \*vicus, -i, *m.*, village, hamlet, 45
- \*videō, -ēre, vidi, visus, see, 5; *in*  
*the passive*, \*videor, -ēri, visus  
 sum, be seen, seem, seem best,  
 37
- \*viginti, *indecl. adj.*, twenty, 36
- vīlla, -ae, *f.*, villa, country house,  
 3
- \*vincō, -ere, vici, victus, conquer,  
 subdue, 17
- vinculum, -i, *n.*, bond, fetter,  
 chain, 47
- \*vir, viri, *m.*, man, 12
- \*virēs, virium, *f. pl.*, strength, 34
- virgō, virginis, *f.*, maiden, 34
- \*virtūs, virtūtis, *f.*, courage, valor,  
 23
- \*vis, —, vim, vi, *f.* (see § 566), force,  
 violence, 49
- vīsiō, vīsiōnis, *f.*, vision, 37
- \*vita, -ae, *f.*, life, 4
- \*vivō, -ere, -vixi, victus, live, § 5
- \*vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, call, sum-  
 mon, 5
- volō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, fly, 21
- \*volō, velle, volui, —, wish, be  
 willing, 39
- \*voluntās, voluntātis, *f.*, wish,  
 good-will, 49
- †vōs, vestrum (vestri), *personal*  
*pron.*, you (*pl.*), 11, 31
- vulnerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, wound,  
 injure, 18
- \*vulnus, vulneris, *n.*, wound, 26
- vultur, vulturis, *m.*, vulture, 33

# ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

Numbers refer to chapters

## A

**ability**, ingenium, ingenī, *n.*, 34  
**able**, be able, possum, posse, potui,  
—, 39  
**about**, dē, *prep. with abl.*, 11; *circiter*, *adv.*, 42  
**above**, super, *prep. with acc.*, 26  
**abundance**, cōpia, -ae, *f.*, 14  
**Acca**, Acca, -ae, *f.*, 32  
**accomplish**, perficiō, -ere, perfēci, perfectus, 40; cōficiō, -ere, cōnfēci, cōnfectus, 46  
**(account)**, on account of, propter, *prep. with acc.*, 37; ob, *prep. with acc.*, 47  
**across**, trāns, *prep. with acc.*, 27  
**add**, addō, -ere, addidī, additus, 36  
**advise**, moneō, -ēre, monui, monitus, 19; admonēō, -ēre, admonui, admonitus, 29  
**Aeneas**, Aenēās, Aenēae, *m. (reg. except in nom. sing.)*, 28  
**afflict**, afficiō, -ere, affēci, affectus, 43  
**after**, post, *prep. with acc.*, 26; postquam, *conj. with perfect indicative*, 30  
**afterwards**, postea, *adv.*, 8; deinde, *adv.*, 32  
**again**, iterum, *adv.*, 7  
**against**, contrā, *prep. with acc.*, 49  
**aid**, auxilium, auxili, *n.*, 14  
**Alba Longa**, Alba Longa, Albae Longae, *f.*, 30

**all**, omnis, -e, 34; (whole), tōtus, -a, -um, 36; cūctus, -a, -um, 38  
**ally**, socius, soci, *m.*, 17  
**almost**, paene, *adv.*, 6; ferē, *adv.*, 12  
**already**, iam, *adv.*, 40  
**also**, quoque, *conj. (placed after emphatic word)*, 1; etiam, *adv.*, 14  
**altar**, āra, -ae, *f.*, 14  
**although**, quamquam, *conj.*, 40; cum, *conj. with subjunctive*, 49  
**always**, semper, *adv.*, 4  
**American**, Americānus, -a, -um, 1  
**among**, apud, *prep. with acc.*, 18  
**Amulius**, Amūlius, Amūli, *m.*, 32  
**ancient**, antiquus, -a, -um, 2  
**and**, et, *conj.*, 1; -que, *conj. (enclitic)*, 12; atque (ac), *conj.*, 48; and not, neque, *conj.*, 2; and that . . . not, neu, *conj.*, 46; and so, itaque, *conj.*, 5  
**angry**, irātus, -a, -um, 13  
**animal**, animal, animālis, animālium, *n.*, 34  
**Anna**, Anna, -ae, *f.*, 6  
**announce**, nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 12  
**(annoyed)**, to be greatly annoyed, affici magnō dolōre, 43  
**answer**, respondeō, -ēre, respondi, respōsus, 12  
**any**, ūllus, -a, -um, 36  
**anyone**, quisquam, quicquam, 46  
**approach**, appropinquō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 41



approve, probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 40  
 arena, arēna, -ae, *f.*, 21  
 armed, armātus, -a, -um, 12  
 armor, arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, 14; armātūra, -ae, *f.*, 41  
 arms, arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, *defensive armor, as lorica, galea, scutum, gladius*, 14  
 army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*, 41  
 around, circum, *prep. with acc.*, 13  
 arouse, incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 35  
 (arranged), to be arranged differently, aliter sē habēre, 42  
 (arrest), put under arrest, in custōdiam trādere, 32  
 arrival, adventus, -ūs, *m.*, 45  
 arrive, perveniō, -ire, pervēnī, perventūrus, 28  
 arrow, sagitta, -ae, *f.*, 18  
 art, ars, artis, artium, *f.*, 39  
 as, ut, *conj.*, 33  
 as soon as, simul atque, *conj.*, 50  
 ask, rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 12; quērō, -ere, quāsvī, quāsvītus, 46  
 assault, oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 17; take by assault, expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 50  
 assemble, conveniō, -ire, convēnī, conventūrus, 34  
 assign, tribuō, -ere, tribuī, tribūtus, 35  
 at first, primō, *adv.*, 27; at length, tandem, *adv.*, 7; dēmum, *adv.*, 39; at the same time, simul, *adv.*, 50  
 Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, 9  
 attack, impetus, -ūs, *m.*, 41; make an attack or charge, impetum facere, 41; aggredior, -gredi, aggressus sum, 50

attendant, paedagōgus, -i, *m.*, 13  
 (attention), pay attention, operam dare, 43  
 augury, augurium, augurī, *n.*, 33; take the augury, augurium capere (*or agere*), 33  
 Aulus, Aulus, -i, *m.*, 12  
 authority, auctōritās, auctōritātis, *f.*, 23  
 auxiliary troops, auxilia, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, 14  
 Aventine (hill), Aventīnus, -i, *m.*, 33  
 await, expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 21

## B

bad, malus, -a, -um, 32  
 badly, male, *adv.*, 36  
 (baggage), heavy baggage, impedimenta, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, 42  
 band (*of soldiers*), manus, manūs, *f.*, 41  
 bank (*of river*), rīpa, -ae, *f.*, 32  
 barbarian, *adj.*, barbarus, -a, -um; *noun*, a barbarian, barbarus, -i, *m.*, 22  
 basket, little, corbula, -ae, *f.*, 4  
 battle, pugna, -ae, *f.*, 12; proelium, proelī, *n.*, 14  
 be, sum, esse, fui, futūrus, 1; be able, possum, posse, potui, —, 39; be far from, absum, abesse, āfui, āfutūrus, 27; be present, adsum, adesse, adfui, adfutūrus, 33  
 bear, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, 43  
 beast of burden, iumentum, -i, *n.*, 46  
 beat, castigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 13  
 beautiful, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, 3, 13

because, quod, *conj.*, 2  
 before, ante, *prep. with acc.*, 26  
 begin, incipiō, -ere, incēpi, incep-  
 tus, 43; committō, -ere, com-  
 mīsi, commissus, 22; begin battle,  
 proelium committere, 22; began,  
 coepi, coepisse, coeptus, 49  
 beginning, princīpium, princīpi, *n.*,  
 24  
 behind, post, *prep. with acc.*, 26  
 believe, crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēdi-  
 tus, 44  
 bench, subsellium, subselli, *n.*, 21  
 benefit, beneficium, benefici, *n.*, 40  
 besiege, obsideō, -ere, obsēdi,  
 obsessus, 40  
 bestow, dō, dare, dedi, datus, 5  
 betray, trādō, -ere, trādidi, trā-  
 ditus, 32  
 between, inter, *prep. with acc.*, 19  
 big, magnus, -a, -um, 1  
 bird, avis, avium, *f.*, 33  
 bitterly, ācritēr, *adv.*, 36  
 blame, reprehendō, -ere, reprehendi,  
 reprehēnsus, 36  
 boat, little boat, nāvicula, -ae, *f.*, 7  
 body, corpus, corporis, *n.*, 25  
 bold, audāx, *gen.*, audācis, 34  
 boldly, audācter, *adv.*, 40  
 boldness, audācia, -ae, *f.*, 37  
 book, liber, libri, *m.*, 12  
 both, ambō, ambae, ambō, 36;  
 both . . . and, et . . . et, *conjs.*,  
 22  
 (bottom), the bottom of the moun-  
 tain, infimus mōns, 38  
 boy, puer, pueri, *m.*, 12  
 branch, rāmus, -i, *m.*, 32  
 brave, fortis, -e, 34  
 bravery, fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, *f.*,  
 44

break through, perrumpō, -ere, per-  
 rūpi, perruptus, 49  
 bribe, largior, -iri, -itus sum, 50  
 bridge, pōns, pontis, pontium, *m.*,  
 37  
 bright, clārus, -a, -um, 7  
 bring, portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 4;  
 ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, 43; bring  
 in, inferō, -ferre, intuli, inlātus,  
 43; bring to, afferō, -ferre, attuli,  
 allātus, 43; bring up the rear,  
 agmen claudere, 42  
 Britain, Britannia, -ae, *f.*, 14  
 British, Britannus, -a, -um, 14  
 Briton, Britannus, -i, *m.*, 14  
 brooch, fibula, -ae, *f.*, 21  
 brother, frāter, frātris, *m.*, 24  
 build, aedificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 17  
 building, aedificium, aedifici, *n.*, 21  
 built upon piles, sublicius, -a, -um,  
 37  
 burdened, impeditus, -a, -um, 38  
 burn, incendō, -ere, incendi, incēn-  
 sus, 17  
 business, negōtium, negōti, *n.*, 21  
 but, sed, *conj.*, 1; autem, *conj.*  
 (*postpositive*), 28; at, *conj.*, 49  
 buy, emō, -ere, ēmi, ēmptus, 46  
 by, & (ab), *prep. with abl.*, 18

## C

Caesar, Caesar, Caesaris, *m.*, 24  
 call, vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 5;  
 call out, clamō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,  
 12; call by name, appellō, -āre,  
 -āvi, -ātus, 27; call together,  
 convocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 45;  
 call upon, invocō, -āre, -āvi,  
 -ātus, 36  
 Camilla, Camilla, -ae, *f.*, 5  
 camp, castra, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, 14

- can, possum, posse, potui, —, 39  
 Capitoline (hill), Capitōlium, Capi-  
 tōli, *n.*, 35  
 captive, captivus, -a, -um, 18  
 capture (a town), expugnō, -āre,  
 -āvī, -ātus, 50  
 care for, cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 5  
 carefully, diligenter, *adv.*, 11  
 carry, portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 4;  
 carry off, abducō, -ere, abduxī,  
 abductus, 50; carry on (*war*),  
 gerō, -ere, gessi, gestus (with  
 bellum), 17  
 Carthage, Karthāgō, Karthāginis,  
*f.*, 29  
 cart, carrus, -i, *m.*, 46  
 cause, *noun*, causa, -ae, *f.*, 19; *verb*,  
 efficiō, -ere, effeci, effectus, 47  
 cavalry, equitēs, equitum, *m. pl.*,  
 23; equitātus, -ūs, *m.*, 41  
 celebrate, celebrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,  
 20  
 centurion, centuriō, centuriōnis,  
*m.*, 41  
 certainly, certē, *adv.*, 3  
 chain, vinculum, -i, *n.*, 47  
 chair, sella, -ae, *f.*, 1  
 charioteer, aurīga, -ae, *m.*, 20  
 chest, arca, -ae, *f.*, 32  
 chief, princeps, principis, *m.*, 23  
 children, liberī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, 15  
 choose, legō, -ere, legī, lēctus, 21;  
 delīgō, -ere, delēgī, delēctus, 24  
 circle, orbis, orbis, orbium, *m.*, 41  
 circus, circus, -i, *m.*, 20; Circus  
 Maximus, Circus Maximus, Circi  
 Maximī, *m.*, 20  
 citizen, civis, civis, civium, *m. or f.*,  
 27  
 city, *noun*, urbs, urbis, urbium, *f.*,  
 27; *adj.*, urbānus, -a, -um, 15  
 cliff, rūpēs, rūpis, rūpium, *f.*, 38  
 climb, ascendō, -ere, ascendi, ascēn-  
 sus, 17  
 cloak, palla, -ae, *f.*, 8  
 close, claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus,  
 42  
 closed, clausus, -a, -um, 1  
 cohort, cohors, cohortis, cohortium,  
*f.*, 42  
 collect, cōgō, -ere, cōegī, cōactus,  
 17; cōnferō, -ferre, contuli, con-  
 lātus, 43  
 color, color, colōris, *m.*, 25  
 column, columna, -ae, *f.*, 3  
 come, veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventūrus, 17  
 command, mandātum, -i, *n.*, 29  
 commander, imperātor, imperā-  
 tōris, *m.*, 24  
 commentaries, commentārii, -ōrum,  
*m. pl.*, 43  
 common, commūnis, commūne, 34  
 companion, socius, soci, *m.*, 17;  
 comes, comitis, *m.*, 38  
 compel, cōgō, -ere, cōegī, cōactus,  
 17  
 composition, opus, operis, *n.*, 36  
 condemn, damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,  
 39  
 confer, conloquor, conloqui, con-  
 locūtus sum, 48  
 conquer, vincō, -ere, vici, victus,  
 17; superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 41  
 consider, cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 35  
 conspiracy, coniūratiō, coniūrā-  
 tiōnis, *f.*, 44  
 consul, cōsul, cōsulis, *m.*, 24  
 contest, certāmen, certāminis, *n.*,  
 25  
 control, rule, regō, -ere, rēxi, rēctus,  
 19  
 Cornelia, Cornēlia, -ae, *f.*, 1

Cornelian, Cornēliānus, -a, -um, 3  
Cornelius, Cornēlius, Cornēli, *m.*,  
12

corselet, lōrica, -ae, *f.*, 23

cottage, casa, -ae, *f.*, 3

council, concilium, concili, *n.*, 45  
(country), native country, patria,  
-ae, *f.*, 6; (*opposite of city*), rūis,  
rūris, *n.*, 9; in the country, rūri,  
9

courage, virtūs, virtūtis, *f.*, 23

cover, tegō, -ere, tēxi, tēctus, 25

crashing, fragor, fragōris, *m.*, 38

Crete, Crēta, -ae, *f.*, 6

Creusa, Creūsa, -ae, *f.*, 28

cross, go across, trānseō, trānsire,  
trānsiī, trānsitūrus, 45

cruel, crūdēlis, -e, 37

cry, lacrimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 13

custody, custōdia, -ae, *f.*, 32

custom, mōs, mōris, *m.*, 24; Insti-  
tūtum, -i, *n.*, 43

cut down, occidō, -ere, occidi,  
occisus, 30

## D

Daedalus, Daedalus, -i, *m.*, 39

daily, cotidiē, *adv.*, 6

danger, periculum, -i, *n.*, 14

dare, audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, 49

daring, audāx, *gen.* audācis, 34

daughter, filia, -ae, *f.*, 3

day, diēs, diēi, *m.* or *f.* (see §439), 42  
(daybreak), at daybreak, primā  
lūce, 33

dear, cārus, -a, -um, 6

death, mors, mortis, mortium, *f.*, 37

decide, cōstituō, -ere, cōstitui,  
cōstitutus, 29; statuō, -ere,  
statui, statutus, 48

decorate, ōrnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 4

decree, cōnsciscō, -ere, cōnscivi,  
cōnscitus, 44

deed, factum, -i, *n.*, 34

defend, dēfendō, -ere, dēfendi,  
dēfēnsus, 38

defile, angustiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, 45

delay, *noun*, mora, -ae, *f.*, 37; *verb*,  
moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, 50

delight, dēlectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 2  
demand, postulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,  
35

den, latibulum, -i, *n.*, 32

deny, negō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 45

depart, exeō, -ire, exiī, exitūrus, 43  
departure, profectiō, profectiōnis,  
*f.*, 45

desire, dēsiderō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 5

destroy, dēlēō, -ēre, dēlēvi, dēlētus,  
28; cōsumō, -ere, cōsumpsi,  
cōsumptus, 40

devastate, vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,  
50

devote, dēvoveō, -ēre, dēvōvi,  
dēvōtus, 31

devoted to the gods, pius, -a, -um,  
28

Diana, Diāna, -ae, *f.*, *goddess of the  
moon*, 5

Dido, Dīdō, Dīdōnis, *f.*, *queen of  
Carthage*, 29

die, dē vitā dēcēdere, 44

differ, differō, -ferre, distuli, dilā-  
tus, 43; differ from one another,  
inter sē differre, 43

differently, aliter, *adv.*, 42; be  
arranged differently, aliter sē  
habēre, 42

difficult, difficilis, -e, 34

difficulty, difficultās, difficultātis,  
*f.*, 44

diligence, diligentia, -ae, *f.*, 31

- diligent, *diligēns*, *gen. diligentis*, 36  
 diligently, *diligenter*, *adv.*, 11  
 dinner, *cēna*, -ae, *f.*, 7  
 direct, *regō*, -ere, *rēxi*, *rēctus*, 19  
 direction, *pars*, *partis*, *partium*, *f.*, 30  
 disagree, *dissentiō*, -ire, *dissēnsi*,  
*dissēnsus*, 38  
 disclose, *ostendō*, -ere, *ostendi*,  
*ostentus*, 46; *ēnūntiō*, -āre, -āvī,  
 -ātus, 47  
 discord, *discordia*, -ae, *f.*, 19  
 dismiss, *dimitto*, -ere, *dimisi*, *dimis-*  
*sus*, 50  
 dissolve, *solvō*, -ere, *solvi*, *solūtus*,  
 39  
 distinguish, *cernō*, -ere, *crēvi*,  
*(crētus)*, 25  
 disturb, *perturbō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,  
 48  
 ditch, *fossa*, -ae, *f.*, 18  
 diverse, *dīversus*, -a, -um, 29  
 divide, *dividō*, -ere, *divisi*, *divisus*, 26  
 do, *agō*, *agere*, *ēgi*, *actus*, 17; *faciō*,  
 -ere, *fēci*, *factus*, 22  
 door, *iānuā*, -ae, *f.*, 1  
 doubt, *dubitō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 49  
 doubtful, *dubius*, -a, -um, 44  
 doubtless, *sine dubiō*, 44  
 drag, *trahō*, -ere, *trāxi*, *tractus*, 17  
 draw up, *instruō*, -ere, *instruxi*,  
*instrūctus*, 42  
 drive, *agō*, -ere, *ēgi*, *actus*, 17;  
 drive out, *pellō*, -ere, *pepulī*,  
*pulsus*, 18; *expello*, -ere, *expulsi*,  
*expulsus*, 37  
 driver, *auriga*, -ae, *m.*, 20  
 Dumnorix, *Dumnorix*, *Dumnorigis*,  
*m.*, 44  
 dwelling, *domicilium*, *domicilī*, *n.*,  
 14
- E
- each, *uterque*, *utraque*, *utrumque*  
 (§§ 576, 577), 46; from each side,  
*utrimque*, 30  
 eager, *cupidus*, -a, -um (*with gen.*),  
 81; be eager, *studeō*, -ēre, *studi-*  
*ui*, —, 11  
 early, *mātūrē*, *adv.*, 17  
 easily, *facile*, *adv.*, 40  
 effort, labor, *labōris*, *m.*, 49  
 either . . . or, aut . . . aut, *conje.*, 25  
 elder, *maior natū*, 32  
 elect, *dēligō*, -ere, *dēlēgi*, *dēlectus*, 24  
 embassy, *lēgatiō*, -ōnis, *f.*, 46  
 emperor, *imperātor*, *imperātōris*,  
*m.*, 24  
 encamp, *cōnsidō*, -ere, *cōnsēdi*,  
*cōnsessurus*, 50  
 end, limit, *finis*, *finis*, *finium*, 36;  
*terminus*, -i, *m.*, 26  
 endure, *tolerō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 40  
 enemy, an enemy, *hostis*, *hostis*,  
*m.*; the enemy, *hostēs*, *hostium*,  
*m. pl.*, 27  
 enroll, *cōscribō*, -ere, *cōscripsi*,  
*cōscriptus*, 42  
 enter, *intrō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 5  
 envoy, *lēgātus*, -i, *m.*, 12  
 equal, *pār*, *gen. paris*, 41  
 escape, *effugiō*, -ere, *effūgi*, —,  
 39; *sē ēripere*, 47  
 especially, *maximē*, *adv.*, 6  
 establish, *cōstituō*, -ere, *cōstitui*,  
*cōstitutus*, 29; *condō*, -ere,  
*condidi*, *conditus*, 30  
 Etruscan, *adj.*, *Etrūscus*, -a, -um;  
*noun*, an Etruscan, *Etrūscus*, -i,  
*m.*, 37  
 even, *etiam*, *adv.*, 14  
 evening, in the evening, *vespere*,  
*adv.*, 13

ever, *umquam, adv.*, 37  
 every day, *cotidiē, adv.*, 6; every  
 year, *quotannis, adv.*, 22  
 exchange, *inter sē dare*, 42  
 exhibition, *spectāculum, -i, n.*, 21  
 experience, *ūsus, -ūs, m.*, 41  
 express (*an opinion*), *dīco, -ere,*  
*dixī, dictus*, 21  
 extend, *pertinēō, -ēre, pertinui,*  
 —, 40  
 eye, *oculus, -i, m.*, 37

## F

face, *ōs, ōris, n.*, 27; to face about,  
*sē vertere*, 42  
 faith, *fidēs, -eī, f.*, 47  
 fall (*in battle*), *cadō, -ere, cecidi,*  
*cāsūrus*, 30  
 fame, *fāma, -ae, f.*, 14  
 famine, *famēs, famis, f.*, 40  
 famous, *clārus, -a, -um*, 7  
 far, *longē, adv.*, 27; far distant,  
*extrēmus, -a, -um*, 8  
 farmer, *agricola, -ae, m.*, 3  
 farther, *ulterior, ulterius*, 49  
 fast, *celeriter, adv.*, 14  
 fate, *fātum, -i, n.*, 28  
 father, *pater, patris, m.*, 24  
 favor, *grātia, -ae, f.*, 31  
 fear, *noun, timor, timōris, m.*, 35;  
*metus, -ūs, m.*, 46; *verb, timeō,*  
*-ēre, timui, —, 14; vereor,*  
*verēri, veritus sum*, 45  
 feather, *penna, -ae, f.*, 39  
 feel, *sentiō, -ire, sēnsī, sēnsus*, 44  
 few, *pauci, -ae, -a, pl.*, 6  
 field, *ager, agrī, m.*, 13  
 fierce, *ācer, ācris, ācre*, 34  
 fight, *pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*, 12;  
*contendō, -ere, contendī, con-*  
*tentus*, 37

fill, *compleō, -ēre, complēvī, com-*  
*plētus*, 25  
 finally, *tandem, adv.*, 7  
 find, *inveniō, -ire, invēnī, inventus*,  
 28; find out, *reperiō, -ire, rep-*  
*peri, repertus*, 48  
 finger, *digitus, -i, m.*, 86  
 fire, *Ignis, Ignis, Ignium, m.*, 28  
 first, *primus, -a, -um*, 24  
 flee, *fugiō, -ere, fugī, fugitūrus*, 28  
 fleet, *classis, classis, classium, f.*, 27  
 flight, *fuga, -ae, f.*, 33  
 flow, *fluō, -ere, fluxī, fluxus*, 27;  
 flow in, *influō, -ere, influxī,*  
*influxus*, 50  
 fly, *volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*, 21  
 follow, *sequor, sequī, secūtus sum*,  
 50; follow up, *exsequor, exse-*  
*qui, exsecūtus sum*, 47  
 foot, *pēs, pedis, m.*; to fight afoot,  
*pedibus pugnāre*, 23; foot sol-  
 dier, *pedes, peditis, m.*, 23; at the  
 foot of, *sub, prep. with abl.*, 32  
 for, *prō, prep. with abl.*, 18; *nam,*  
*conj.*, 19; *enim, conj. (postposi-*  
*tive)*, 50  
 forbid, *vetō, -āre, vetui, vetitus*, 40  
 forces, *cōpiae, -ārum, f. pl.*;  
 auxiliary forces, *auxilia, -ōrum,*  
*n. pl.*, 14  
 ford, *vadum, -i, n.*, 47  
 forest, *silva, -ae, f.*, 3  
 forgetful, *oblitus, -a, -um, with*  
*gen.*, 31  
 former, the former, *ille, illa, illud*,  
 33; the former . . . the latter, *ille,*  
*illa, illud . . . hic, haec, hoc*, 33  
 formerly, *quondam, adv.*, 44  
 fortification, *mūnitio, mūnitiois,*  
*f.*, 35  
 fortify, *mūniō, -ire, -ivī, -itus*, 17

- fortune, fortūna, -ae, f., 40**  
**forum, forum, -i, n., 20**  
**found, condō, -ere, condidī, con-**  
**ditus, 30**  
**four-horse team, quadrigae, -ārum,**  
*f. pl., 21*  
**free, liber, libera, liberum, 15; set**  
**free, liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,**  
**38**  
**frequent, crēber, crēbra, crēbrum,**  
**32**  
**friend, amīca, -ae, f., 11; amīcus,**  
**-i, m., 13**  
**friendly, amīcus, -a, -um, 6**  
**friendship, amīcītia, -ae, f., 44**  
**frighten, terreō, -ēre, terruī, terri-**  
**tus, 39**  
**from, away from, ā (ab), prep. with**  
*abl., 7; down from, dē, prep.*  
*with abl., 11; out from, ex (ē),*  
*prep. with abl., 7*  
**full, plēnus, -a, -um, 4**  
**further, ulterior, -ius, 49**  
**furthermore, praetereā, adv., 33**
- G**
- Galba, Galba, -ae, m., 5**  
**Gallic, Gallus, -a, -um, 22; Galli-**  
**cus, -a, -um, 43**  
**game, lūdus, -i, m., 13**  
**garden, hortus, -i, m., 12**  
**garland, corōna, -ae, f., 4**  
**garrison, praesidium, praesidī, n.,**  
**41**  
**gate, porta, -ae, f., 17**  
**Gaul (the country), Gallia, -ae, f., 12**  
**Gaul, a Gaul, Gallus, -i, m., 22**  
**German, adj., Germānus, -a, -um;**  
*noun, a German, Germānus, -i,*  
*m., 22*  
**gift, dōnum, -i, n., 17**
- girl, puella, -ae, f., 1**  
**give, dō, dare, dedī, datus, 5; give**  
**back, reddo, -ere, reddidī, reddi-**  
**tus, 43**  
**gladiatorial, gladiātōrius, -a, -um,**  
**25**  
**gladly, adv., libenter, 8**  
**glory, glōria, -ae, f., 21**  
**go, eō, Ire, ī or Ivī, itūrus, 43; go**  
**into, intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 5;**  
**go out, excēdō, -ere, excessī,**  
**excessūrus, 40; exeō, -Ire, exī,**  
**exitūrus, 43; ēgredior, -gredi,**  
**ēgressus sum, 48**  
**goal, mēta, -ae, f., 26**  
**god, deus, -i, m., 13**  
**goddess, dea, -ae, f., 4**  
**gold, aurum, -i, n., 14**  
**golden, aureus, -a, -um, 35**  
**good, bonus, -a, -um, 1**  
**good will, voluntās, voluntātis, f.,**  
**49**  
**grain, frūmentum, -i, n., 14**  
**grandfather, avus, -i, m., 32**  
**grape, ūva, -ae, f., 8**  
**grasp, teneō, -ēre, tenuī, —, 12**  
**grave, gravis, -e, 41**  
**great, magnus, -a, -um, 1**  
**greatest, maximus, -a, -um, 19**  
**greatly, maximē, 6**  
**Greece, Graecia, -ae, f., 6**  
**Greek, adj., Graecus, -a, -um;**  
*noun, a Greek, Graecus, -i, m.,*  
*17*  
**greet, salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 8**  
**grief, dolor, dolōris, m., 34**  
**grown up, adultus, -a, -um, 12**  
**guard, verb, custōdiō, -Ire, -Ivī,**  
**-Itus, 19; tueor, -ēri, tūtus sum,**  
**50; noun, custōs, custōdis, m.,**  
**39**

## H

**hail**, salūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 8; *meaning* how do you do? salvē (*sing.*), salvēte (*pl.*), 11  
**hand**, manus, -ūs, *f.*, 41; **hand over**, mandō, -āre -āvi, -ātus, 50  
**hang**, hang down, pendeō, -ēre, pependī, —, 41  
**happen**, fiō, fierī, —, —, 43; accidō, -ere, accidī, —, 47  
**happy**, laetō, -a, -um, 4  
**harm**, noceō, -ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus (*with dat.*), 48  
**hasten**, properō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 7; contendō, -ere, contendī, contentus, 37  
**haughty**, superbus, -a, -um, 27  
**have**, habeō, -ēre, habuī, habitus, 2  
**he**, is, 32: *often not expressed*  
**head**, caput, capitis, *n.*, 26  
**hear**, heed, audiō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, 17  
**Helen**, Helena, -ae, *f.*, 18  
**helmet**, galea, -ae, *f.*, 22  
**help**, *noun*, auxiliium, auxili, *n.*, 14; *verb*, adiuvō, -āre, adiūvi, adiūtus, 29; iuvō, -āre, iūvi, iūtus, 39  
**Helvetian**, *adj.*, Helvēticus, -a, -um, 24; *noun*, a Helvetian, Helvētius, Helvēti, *m.*, 42  
**hem in**, contineō, -ēre, continuī, contentus, 32  
**her**, *reflexive*, suus, -a, -um, 31; *not reflexive*, eius, 32  
**here**, in this place, hic, *adv.*, 19  
**herself**, *reflexive*, suī, 31; *intensive*, ipse, 33  
**high**, altus, -a, -um, 13  
**hill**, collis, collis, collium, *m.*, 42  
**himself**, *reflexive*, suī, 31; *intensive*, ipse, 33  
**hinder**, impediō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, 17

**hindrance**, impedimentum, -i, *n.*, 42  
**his**, *reflexive*, suus, -a, -um, 31; *not reflexive*, eius, 32  
**hither and thither**, hūc et illūc, 36  
**hold**, teneō, -ēre, tenuī, —, 12; **hold fast**, contineō, -ēre, continuī, contentus, 32  
**home**, domicilium, domicilī, *n.*, 14; domus, -ūs, *f.*, 9; **at home**, domī; **from home**, domō; **home** (*homeward*), domum, 9  
**honor**, honor, honoris, *m.*, 40  
**hope**, *verb*, spēō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 44; *noun*, spēs, -ei, *f.*, 46  
**Horatius**, Horātius, Horāti, *m.*, 37  
**horn**, cornū, cornūs, *n.*, 41  
**horse**, equus, -i, *m.*, 12; **horseman**, eques, equitis, *m.*, 23; **fight on horseback**, ab equō pugnāre, 23  
**hostage**, obses, obsidis, *m. or f.*, 23  
**hour**, hōra, -ae, *f.*, 36  
**house**, domus, domūs, *f.*, 41  
**how do you do**, salvē (*sing.*), salvēte (*pl.*), 11  
**how great?** quantus, -a, -um, 48  
**how many?** quot (*indeclinable*), 36  
**however**, autem, *conj.*, 28  
**hurry**, properō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 7  
**husband**, coniūnx, coniugis, *m.*, 30

## I

**I**, ego, mei, 11, 31: *often not expressed*  
**Īcarus**, Īcarus, -i, *m.*, 39  
**if**, si, *conj.*, 13  
**image**, imāgō, imāginis, *f.*, 26  
**immediately**, statim, *adv.*, 32  
**immortal**, immortalis, -e, 40  
**in**, *in*, *prep. with abl.*, 7; **in all**, omninō, *adv.*, 45; **in front of**, ante, *prep. with acc.*, 26



inclosed, t̄ectus, -a, -um, 2

increase, augeō, -ēre, auxi, auctus, 27

indeed, v̄erō, *adv.*, 19; quidem, 86

indicate, significō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 35

infantry, peditēs, peditum, *m. pl.*, 23

influence, addūcō, -ere, addūxi, adductus, 38

inform, certiorē facere, 48

inhabit, incolō, -ere, incolui, —, 43

inhabitant, incola, -ae, *m. or f.*, 8

inside, intrā, *prep. with acc.*, 14

insult, iniūria, -ae, *f.*, 37

intelligence, sapientia, -ae, *f.*, 9

intercept, intercipiō, -ere, intercēpi, interceptus, 22

into, in, *prep. with acc.*, 8

invulnerable, inviolātus, -a, -um, 27

iron, ferrum, -i, *n.*, 38

island, insula, -ae, *f.*, 6

it, id, 32: *often not expressed*

Italian, Italicus, -a, -um, 8

Italy, Italia, -ae, *f.*, 6

## J

jar, amphora, -ae, *f.*, 5; ūrna, -ae, *f.*, 8

javelin, pilum, -i, *n.*, 22

join, iungō, -ere, iūnxi, iūctus, 46; coniungo, -ere, coniūnxi, coniūctus, 48

joint, common, commūnis, -e, 34

joy, gaudium, gaudī, *n.*, 26

joyfully, laetē, *adv.*, 40

judge, *noun*, iūdex, iūdicis, *m.*, 26; *verb*, iūdicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 50

Julia, Iulia, -ae, *f.*, 1

jump over, trānsiliō, -ire, trānsilui, —, 33

## K

keep away, arceō, arcēre, arcui, —, 29

keep off, prohibeō, -ēre, prohibui, prohibitus, 33

kill, necō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 18;

interficiō, -ere, interfeci, interfectus, 26; occidō, -ere, occidi, occisus, 30

kind, *noun*, genus, generis, *n.*, 26; *adj.*, amicus, -a, -um, 6; benignus, -a, -um, 4

kindly, benignē, *adv.*, 29

kindred, familia, -ae, *f.*, 47

king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*, 23

kingdom, rēgnum, -i, *n.*, 32

know, sciō, -ire, -ivi, -itus; *not to know*, nesciō, -ire, -ivi, —, 36

## L

Labiēnus, Labiēnus, -i, *m.*, 12, 50

lack, inopia, -ae, *f.*, 40

Laeca, Laeca, -ae, *m.*, 7

lake, lacus, -ūs, *m.*, 43

land, terra, -ae, *f.*, 3; on land and sea, terrā marique, 27

language, lingua, -ae, *f.*, 11

large, magnus, -a, -um, 1

Lars Porsena, Lārs Porsena, Lārtis Porsenae, *m.*, 37

last, *adj.*, postrēmus, -a, -um, 37; *adv.*, proximē, 42

later on, postēa, *adv.*, 8; a little

later, paulō post, 32

Latin, Latinus, -a, -um, 11

Latinus, Latinus, -i, *m.*, 30

latter, the latter, hic, haec, hoc; the former . . . the latter, ille,

illa, illud . . . hic, haec, hoc, 33

Laurentum, Laurentum, -i, *n.*, 30

Lavinia, Lāvīnia, -ae, *f.*, daughter of Latinus, wife of Aeneas, 30  
 Lavinium, Lāvīnium, Lāvīnī, *n.*, a city of Latium founded by Aeneas, 30  
 law, lēx, lēgis, *f.*, 23  
 lazy, piger, pigra, pigrum, 13  
 lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, 17;  
 lead out, ēdūcō, -ere, ēdūxī, ēductus, 42; lead across, trādūcō, -ere, trādūxī, trāductus, 50  
 leader, dux, ducis, *m.*, 23; princeps, principis, *m.*, 23  
 leadership, principātus, -ūs, *m.*, 44  
 league, coniūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, 44  
 leap down, dēsiliō, -īre, dēsilui, dēsultus, 38  
 learn about, cognōscō, -ere, cognōvī, cognitūs, 29  
 leave, relinquō, -ere, reliqui, relictus, 17  
 left, sinister, sinistra, sinistrum; left hand, sinistra, -ae, *f.*, 23  
 legion, legiō, legiōnis, *f.*, 24  
 legionary, legiōnārius, -a, -um, 41  
 leisure, ōtium, ōtī, *n.*, 21  
 lest, nē, *conj.*, 46  
 level, aequus, -a, -um, 33  
 liberty, libertās, libertātis, *f.*, 33  
 lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*, 12  
 life, vita, -ae, *f.*, 4  
 light, *noun*, lūx, lūcis, *f.*, 33; *adj.*, levis, -e, 39  
 light up, illūminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 26  
 like, *verb*, amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 2; *adj.*, similis, -e, 37; like to, with a verb, use libenter, gladly, 8  
 line of battle, aciēs, aciēi, *f.*, 42  
 line of march, agmen, agminis, *n.*, 42

listen to, audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, 17  
 litter, lectīca, -ae, *f.*, 10  
 little, *adj.*, parvus, -a, -um, 1; *adv.*, paulō, 32  
 live, habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 7; incolō, -ere, incolui, —, 43  
 location, locus, -ī, *m.*; (loci, -ōrum, *n. pl.*), 33  
 look at, spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 5  
 long, longus, -a, -um, 2  
 long for, dēsiderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 5; cupiō, -ere, cupivī, cupītus, 33  
 longing, cupiditās, cupiditātis, *f.*, 35  
 lose, amittō, -ere, amisi, amissus, 28  
 love, *verb*, amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 2; *noun*, amor, amoris, *m.*, 33  
 lowest, infimus, -a, -um, 38  
 Lucius, Lūcius, Lūci, *m.*, 12

M

magistrate, magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*, 47  
 maid, maidservant, ancilla, -ae, *f.*, 3  
 maiden, virgō, virginis, *f.*, 34  
 make, faciō, -ere, feci, factus, 22; make war, bellum inferre (with *dat.*), 43  
 man, vir, viri, *m.*, 12; homō, hominis, *m.*, 24  
 manservant, servus, -ī, *m.*, 12  
 many, multi, -ae, -a, 3  
 Marcella, Marcella, -ae, *f.*, 4  
 march, *noun*, iter, itineris, *n.*, 26; *verb*, iter facere, 26  
 Marcus, Mārcus, -ī, *m.*, 12  
 mark out, dēsignō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 33  
 marriage, mātrimonium, -ī, *n.*, 30  
 marry, in mātrimonium dūcere, 30  
 Mars, Mārs, Mārtis, *m.*, 24

- master (of a house), dominus, -i, m., 12; (of a school), magister, magistrī, m., 13**  
**matron, mātrōna, -ae, f., 11**  
**matter, thing, rēs, rei, f., 42**  
**meanwhile, in the meantime, interim, adv., 17**  
**memory, memoria, -ae, f., 36**  
**merchant, mercātor, mercātōris, m., 26**  
**merchant ship, onerāria, -ae, f., 8**  
**Mercury, Mercurius, Mercurī, m., 13**  
**messenger, nūntius, nūntī, m., 12**  
**middle, middle of, medius, -a, -um, 26**  
**(midnight), at midnight, mediā nocte, 33**  
**mile, a mile, mille passūs; miles, milia passuum, 42**  
**military, militāris, -e, 42; military science, rēs militāris, 42**  
**mind, animus, -i, m., 36**  
**mindful, memor, gen., memoris, 36**  
**mistress, domina, -ae, f., 3**  
**modern, novus, -a, -um, 2**  
**money, pecūnia, -ae, f., 5**  
**month, mēnsis, mēnsis, mēnsium, m., 29**  
**moon, lūna, -ae, f., 5**  
**more, magis, adv., 38**  
**(morning), in the morning, māne, adv., 11**  
**mother, māter, mātris, f., 24**  
**mountain, mōns, montis, montium, m., 33**  
**mouth, ōs, ōris, n., 27**  
**move, addūcō, -ere, addūxī, adductus, 33; moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, 35; permoveō, -ēre, permōvī, permōtus, 44**  
**much, adj., multus, -a, -um, 3; adv., multō, 40**  
**Mucius, Mūcius, Mūci, m., 40**  
**multitude, multitūdō, multitūdinis, f., 24**  
**my, meus, -a, -um, 11, 31**  
**myself, reflexive, mei, 31; intensive, ipse, -a, -um, 33**
- N**
- name, nōmen, nōminis, n., 26**  
**narrow, angustus, -a, -um, 21**  
**nation, nātiō, nātiōnis, f., 41**  
**native land, patria, -ae, f., 6**  
**nature, nātūra, -ae, f., 44; natural features, nātūra loci, 44**  
**near, prope, prep. with acc., 21; adv., 40; near by, very near, proximus, -a, -um, 6**  
**nearer, propior, propius, 39**  
**necessary, necesse (neuter adj., in nom. and acc. only), 43**  
**neighboring, finitimus, -a, -um, 34; neighbors, finitimi, -ōrum, m. pl., 34**  
**neither, neque, 2**  
**never, numquam, adv., 19**  
**nevertheless, tamen, adv., 18; nihilō minus, 45**  
**new, novus, -a, -um, 2**  
**next, proximus, -a, -um, 6**  
**night, nox, noctis, noctium, f., 33; at night, noctū, adv., 7**  
**no one, nēmō (nullius), dat. nēminī, acc. nēminem, m. or f., 40**  
**noble, nōbilis, -e, 35**  
**nobility, nōbilitās, nōbilitātis, f., 44**  
**nor, and not, neque, conj.; neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque, 2; neu, conj., 46**

not, nōn, *conj.*, 1; not even, nē . . .  
quidem, *adv.*, 36; not only . . .  
but also, nōn solum . . . sed  
etiam, 35; not yet, nōndum,  
*adv.*, 12

nothing, nihil, *n. (indecl.)*, 35

notice, animadvertō, -ere, animad-  
vertī, animadversus, 48

now, nunc, *adv.*, 7; iam, *adv.*, 40

number, numerus, -i, *m.*, 13

Numitor, Numitor, Numitōris, *m.*,  
32

## O

oath, iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī,  
*n.*, 47

observe, spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 5;  
cōspiciō, -ere, cōspexī, cōn-  
spectus, 48

obtain, potior, potiri, potitus sum  
(*with abl.*), 45

often, saepe, *adv.*, 4

olive, oliva, -ae, *f.*, 8

Olympia, Olympia, -ae, *f.*, 19

Olympus, Mount, Olympus, -i, *m.*,  
19

omen, augurium, augurī, *n.*, 33

on, in, *prep. with abl.*, 7; on account  
of, propter, *prep. with acc.*, 37;  
ob, *prep. with acc.*, 47

one at a time, singuli, -ae, -a, *pl.*, 41

open, *adj.*, apertus, -a, -um, 1;  
*verb*, aperiō, -ire, aperuī, apertus,  
17

opinion, sententia, -ae, *f.*, 21

opportunity, facultās, facultātis, *f.*,  
50

oppress, opprimō, -ere, oppressī,  
oppressus, 35

or, aut, *conj.*, 25; vel, *conj.*, 41

Orbilus, Orbilius, Orbilī, *m.*, 13

order, iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus, 43;  
imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (*with  
dative*; followed by ut (nē) and  
subjunctive), 46

Orgetorix, Orgetorix, Orgetorigis,  
*m.*, 43

ornament, ōrnāmentum, -i, *n.*, 35

other(s), ceterī, -ae, -a, *pl.*, 38

ought, dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus,  
39

our, noster, nostra, nostrum, 11, 31

out of, ex (ē), *prep. with abl.*, 7

outside of, extrā, *prep. with acc.*, 13  
over, across, trāns, *prep. with acc.*,  
27

overcome, vincō, -ere, vicī, victus,  
17

overflow, redundō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,  
32

## P

pace, passus, passūs, *m.*, 42

Palatine (hill), Palātium, Palātī,  
*n.*, 32

palm leaf, palma, -ae, *f.*, 25

parade, pompa, -ae, *f.*, 21

part, pars, partis, partium, *f.*, 30

peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*, 23

people, populus, -i, *m.*, 23; hominēs,  
hominum, *m. or f.*, 24

perform, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, 22;  
perficiō, -ere, perfēcī, perfectus,  
40; cōficiō, -ere, cōnfēcī, cōn-  
fectus, 46

perhaps, fortasse, *adv.*, 11

peristyle, peristylum, -i, *n.*, 15

permit, patior, patī, passus sum,  
45; it is permitted, licet, -ēre,  
licuit, — (*impersonal*), 49

person, homo, hominis, *m. or f.*, 24

persuade, persuādeō, -ēre, per-  
suāsī, persuāsūrus, 46

- picture, pictūra, -ae, *f.*, 7; tabula, -ae, *f.*, 28  
 pitch camp, castra pōnere, 18  
 place, *noun*, locus, -i, *m.*, 33; *verb*, pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, 18; conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 13  
 plan, cōnsilium, cōnsili, *n.*, 19  
 play, lūdō, lūdere, lūsi, lūsus, 17  
 plead, ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 35  
 please, dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 2; *impersonal*, iuvō, -āre, -iūvī, iūtus, 39  
 pleasing, grātus, -a, -um, 6; acceptus, -a, -um, 25  
 plenty, cōpia, -ae, *f.*, 14  
 plot, insidiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, 35  
 poet, poēta, -ae, *m.*, 7  
 point out, dēmōstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 5  
 Porsena, Porsena, -ae, *m.*, 37  
 possess, obtineō, -ēre, obtinui, obtentus, 39  
 power, imperium, imperi, *n.*, 24; auctōritās, auctōritātis, *f.*, 23; potestās, potestātis, *f.*, 27  
 powerful, potēns, *gen. potentis*, 34; to be very powerful, plūrimum posse, 45  
 praise, *noun*, laus, laudis, *f.*, 36; *verb*, laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 5  
 prefer, mālō, mālī, mālūī, —, 39  
 prepare, parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 7; comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 29  
 preserve, cōservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 50  
 prevent, prohibeō, -ēre, prohibui, prohibitus, 33  
 priest, priestess, sacerdos, sacerdotis, *m. or f.*, 32  
 private, privātus, -a, -um, 45  
 Proca, Proca, -ae, *m.*, 32  
 proceed, prōcēdō, -ere, prōcessi, prōcessurus, 40; prōgredior, -gredi, prōgressus sum, 50  
 procession, pompa, -ae, *f.*, 21  
 promise, polliceor, pollicēri, pollicitus sum, 45  
 protect, servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 20  
 protection, praesidium, praesidi, *n.*, 41  
 proud, superbus, -a, -um, 27  
 province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*, 6  
 Publius, Pūblius, Pūbli, *m.*, 12  
 punish, castigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 13; supplicio afficere, 44  
 punishment, supplicium, supplicii, *n.*, 44  
 pupil, discipula, -ae, *f.*, 1; discipulus, -i, *m.*, 12  
 put an end (to), finem facere, 36  
 put aside, dēpōnō, -ere, dēposuī, dēpositus, 43  
 put in charge, praeficiō, -ere, praefēcī, praefectus, 50  
 put on, induō, -ere, induī, indūtus, 18
- Q
- queen, rēgina, -ae, *f.*, 29  
 quick, celer, celeris, celere, 34  
 quickly, celeriter, *adv.*, 14  
 quickness, celeritās, celeritātis, *f.*, 25
- R
- race, tribe, gēns, gentis, gentium, *f.*, 27  
 race, contest, certāmen, certāminis, *n.*; chariot race, certāmen quadrigārum, 25  
 rain, imber, imbris, imbrium, *m.*, 32  
 rampart, vāllum, -i, *n.*, 14  
 rank, ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*, 42  
 read, legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, 21

ready, parātus, -a, -um, 39  
 realize, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, 44  
 (rear), bring up the rear, agmen claudere, 42; rear guard, novissimum agmen, 42  
 receive, accipiō, -ere, accēpi, acceptus, 22; recipiō, -ere, recēpi, receptus, 42  
 recently, nūper, *adv.*, 47  
 red, ruber, rubra, rubrum, 5  
 refuge, asyllum, -ī, *n.*, 34  
 region, regiō, -ōnis, *f.*, 48  
 reign, rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 30  
 remain, manēō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, 20  
 remember, memoriā tenēre, 36  
 Remus, Remus, -ī, *m.*, 24  
 renowned, nōtus, -a, -um, 34  
 repeat, Isdem verbis reddere, 43  
 reply, respondiō, -ēre, respondi, respōnsus, 12  
 report, dēferō, -ferre, dētulī, dētūsus, 44  
 reproach, accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 30  
 repulse, repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsus, 49  
 reputation, fāma, -ae, *f.*, 14  
 rest of, remaining, reliquus, -a, -um, 17; cēteri, -ae, -a, 38  
 retreat, sē recipere, 42  
 return, *noun*, reditiō, reditiōnis, *f.*, 47; *verb*, reveniō, -īre, revēnī, reventūrus, 28; revertor, reverti, reversus sum, 49; redeō, -īre, -ī, -itūrus, 50  
 reward, mūnus, mūneris, *n.*, 25; praemium, -ī, *n.*, 31  
 Rhone, Rhodanus, -ī, *m.*, 43  
 ridge, iugum, -ī, *n.*, 49

right, *noun*, iūs, iūris, *n.*, 27; *adj.*, dexter, dextra, dextrum 23; right hand, dextra, -ae, *f.*, 23  
 river, flūmen, flūminis, *n.*, 27  
 road, via, -ae, *f.*, 5  
 robber, latrō, latrōnis, *m.*, 34  
 Roman, *adj.*, Rōmānus, -a, -um, 2, 12; *noun*, a Roman, Rōmānus, -ī, *m.*, 12; Rōmāna, -ae, *f.*, 2  
 Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f.*, 9  
 Romulus, Rōmulus, -ī, *m.*, 24  
 roomy, amplius, -a, -um, 8  
 rose, rosa, -ae, *f.*, 4  
 route, iter, itineris, *n.*, 26  
 ruin, rūna, -ae, *f.*, 27  
 rule (*reign*), rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 30; (*guide*), regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus, 19  
 run, currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursūrus, 21; run down, dēcurrō, -ere, dēcurrī or dēcucurrī, dēcurtūrus, 38  
 rustic, rūsticus, -a, -um, 15

## S

Sabine, *adj.*, Sabīnus, -a, -um; *noun*, a Sabine, Sabīnus, -ī, *m.*, 43  
 safe, tūtus, -a, -um, 38  
 safety, salūs, salūtis, *f.*, 35  
 sail, nāvīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 7  
 sailor, nauta, -ae, *m.*, 3  
 same, Idem, eadem, idem, 43  
 sandal, solea, -ae, *f.*, 6  
 save, servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 20  
 say, dicō, -ere, dixī, dictus, 21; says or said, *with direct quotation*, inquit, 20  
 Scaevola, Scaevola, -ae, *m.*, 40  
 school, schola, -ae, *f.*, 1; lūdus, -ī, *m.*, 13  
 schoolmaster, magister, magistrī, *m.*, 13

- sea**, *noun*, mare, maris, *n.*, 27;  
 pertaining to the sea, maritimus,  
 -a, -um, 28  
**seat**, subsellium, subselli, *n.*, 21  
**second**, secundus, -a, -um, 36  
**secretary**, scriba, -ae, *m.*, 40  
**secretly**, clam, *adv.*, 35  
**Secunda**, Secunda, -ae, *f.*, 3  
**see**, videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, 5  
**seek**, petō, -ere, petivī or -ī,  
 petītus, 34  
**seem**, seem best, videor, vidēri,  
 vīsus sum, 39  
**seize**, rapiō, -ere, rapui, raptus, 28;  
 reprehendō, -ere, reprehendī,  
 reprehēsus, 36; **seize (a town)**,  
 occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 36  
**seedom**, rārō, *adv.*, 6  
**self**, ipse, -a, -um, 33  
**senator**, senātor, senātōris, *m.*, 40  
**send**, mittō, -ere, misi, missus, 17  
**servant**, serva, -ae, *f.*, 6; servus,  
 -i, *m.*, 12  
**Servius**, Servius, Servi, *m.*, 12  
**set out**, proficiscor, proficisci, pro-  
 fectus sum, 45  
**seven**, septem, 24  
**several**, complūrēs, complūra or  
 complūria, *pl.*, 42  
**severe**, sevērus, -a, -um, 11  
**she**, ea, 32: *often not expressed*  
**shepherd**, pāstor, pāstōris, *m.*, 32  
**shield**, scūtum, -i, *n.*, 21  
**ship**, nāvis, nāvium, *f.*, 27  
**shop**, taberna, -ae, *f.*, 5  
**shore**, ōra, -ae, *f.*, 7  
**short**, brevis, -e, 34  
**shoulder**, umerus, -i, *m.*, 28  
**shout**, *noun*, clāmōr, clāmōris, *m.*,  
 24; *verb*, clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,  
 12  
**show**, dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 5  
**shrewd**, callidus, -a, -um, 39  
**sick**, aeger, aegra, aegrum, 17  
**side**, latus, lateris, *n.*, 33; from each  
 side, utrimque, *adv.*, 30; on all  
 sides, undique, *adv.*, 35; on one  
 side, unā ex parte, 43  
**signal**, signum, -i, *n.*, 26  
**silence**, silentium, silentī, *n.*, 43  
**since**, cum, *conj. with subjunctive*, 49  
**sit**, sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessūrus, 10  
**six**, sex, 33  
**size**, magnitūdō, magnitūdinis, *f.*,  
 25  
**skilled**, perītus, -a, -um, 39  
**sky**, caelum, -i, *n.*, 33  
**slaughter**, caedēs, caedis, caedium,  
*f.*, 27  
**slave**, servus, -i, *m.*, 12; serva, -ae,  
*f.*, 6  
**slavery**, servitūs, servitūtis, *f.*, 38  
**slay**, caedō, -ere, cecidī, caesus, 36  
**small**, parvus, -a, -um, 1  
**so**, tam, *adv.*, 47; so great, tantus,  
 -a, -um, 47; so many, tot (*inde-  
 clinable*), 23  
**soldier**, miles, militis, *m.*, 23  
**some . . . others**, alii . . . alii, 36  
**sometimes**, interdum, *adv.*, 5  
**son**, filius, fili, *m.*, 12  
**soon**, mox, *adv.*, 21  
**sowing**, sēmentis, sēmentis, sēmen-  
 tium, *f.*, 46  
**space**, spatium, spatī, *n.*, 26  
**spear**, hasta, -ae, *f.*, 18  
**spectacle**, spectāculum, -i, *n.*, 21  
**spectator**, spectātor, spectātōris,  
*m.*, 25  
**speech**, ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, *f.*, 44;  
 make a speech, ōrātiōnem ha-  
 bēre, 44

- speed**, *celeritās, celeritātis, f.*, 25  
**spina**, *spīna, -ae, f.*, 26  
**spirited**, *ācer, ācris, ācre, 34*  
**spoil**, *spolium, spoli, n.*, 23  
**stand**, *stō, stāre, steti, statūrus, 1;*  
*cōnsistō, -ere, cōnstiti, —, 41;*  
*stand up, surgō, -ere, surrēxi,*  
*surrēctūrus, 35*  
**star**, *stēlla, -ae, f.*, 7  
**state**, *civitās, civitātis, f.*, 24  
**statue**, *statua, -ae, f.*, 4  
**stature**, *magnitūdō corporis, 25*  
**stay**, *maneō, -ēre, mānsi, mānsūrus,*  
*20*  
**steal**, *rapiō, -ere, rapui, raptus, 28*  
**steep**, *altus, -a, -um, 13*  
**still**, *tamen, adv.*, 18  
**stir**, *move deeply, commoveō, -ēre,*  
*commōvi, commōtus, 38*  
**stone**, *lapis, lapidis, m.*, 23  
**stop**, *intermittō, -ere, intermisi,*  
*intermissus, 35*  
**storm**, *noun, tempestās, tempestā-*  
*tis, f.*, 29; *verb, oppugnō, -āre,*  
*-āvi, -ātus, 17*  
**story**, *fābula, -ae, f.*, 5  
**strange**, *aliēnus, -a, -um, 30*  
**street**, *via, -ae, f.*, 5  
**strength**, *vīrēs, vīrium, f. pl.*, 34  
**strengthen**, *cōfirmō, -āre, -āvi,*  
*-ātus, 36*  
**study**, *studeō, -ēre, studui, —, 11*  
**sturdy**, *firmus, -a, -um, 8*  
**stylus**, *stilus, -i, m.*, 13  
**such**, *tālis, -e, 40*  
**sudden**, *repentīnus, -a, -um, 42*  
**suddenly**, *subitō, adv.*, 17  
**sufficiently**, *satis, adv.*, 49  
**(suicide)**, *commit suicide, sibi*  
*mortem cōnsciscere, 44*  
**suitable**, *idōneus, -a, -um, 33*  
**summer**, *aestās, aestātis, f.*, 24  
**summon**, *vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 5*  
**sun**, *sōl, sōlis, m.*, 26  
**sure**, *certus, -a, -um, 48*  
**surely**, *certē, adv.*, 3  
**surname**, *cognōmen, cognōminis,*  
*n.*, 40  
**surpass**, *superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 41*  
**surrender**, *trādō, -ere, trādidī,*  
*trādītus, 32*  
**surround**, *circumstō, -āre, circum-*  
*steti, —, 15; circumdō, -are,*  
*circumdedi, circumdatus, 40; cir-*  
*cumveniō, -ire, circumvēni, cir-*  
*cumventūrus, 42*  
**swift**, *celer, celeris, celere, 34*  
**sword**, *gladius, gladi, m.*, 12
- T
- table**, *mēnsa, -ae, f.*, 1  
**(tablet)**, *writing tablet, tabella,*  
*-ae, f.*, 12  
**take**, *capiō, -ere, cēpi, captus, 22;*  
**take an augury**, *augurium agere,*  
*33; take away, ēripiō, -ere,*  
*eripui, ēreptūs, 47; tollō, tollere*  
*sustulī, sublātus, 47; take a*  
**position**, *stand, cōnsistō, -ere,*  
*cōnstiti, —, 41; take a walk,*  
*walk, ambulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 4*  
**talk**, *dīcō, -ere, dixi, dictus, 21*  
**tardy**, *ardus, -a, -um, 21*  
**Tarpeia**, *Tarpeia, -ae, f.*, 34  
**Tarquinius**, *Tarquinius, Tarquini,*  
*m.*, 37  
**task**, *negōtium, negōti, n.*, 21  
**teach**, *doceō, -ēre, docui, doctus, 11*  
**teacher**, *magistra, -ae, f.*, 1;  
*magister, magistri, m.*, 13  
**team of four horses**, *quadrigae,*  
*-ārum, f. pl.*, 21



- tell, *narrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*, 5  
 temple, *templum, -ī, n.*, 14  
 tent, *tabernāculum, -ī, n.*, 18  
 tenth, *decimus, -a, -um*, 24  
 Terentia, *Terentia, -ae, f.*, 4  
 terrify, *perterreō, -ēre, perterrui, perterritus*, 36  
 territory, *finēs, finium, m. pl.*, 36  
 terror, *terror, terrōris, m.*, 37  
 than, *quam, conj.*, 37  
 thank, give thanks, *grātiās agere (with dat.)*, 31  
 that, those, *ille, illa, illud*, 33; *is, ea, id*, 32; that of yours, *iste, ista, istud*, 33; that, so that, in order that, *ut, conj.*, 46  
 their, *reflexive, suus, -a, -um*, 31; *not reflexive, eōrum, eārum*, 32  
 then, *tum, adv.*, 5; *deinde, adv.*, 32  
 there, *ibi, adv.*, 17  
 therefore, *igitur, adv. (postpositive)*, 8  
 they, *ei, eae, ea*, 32: *often not expressed*  
 thing, *rēs, rei, f.*, 42  
 think, *putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*, 29; *existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*, 47; *cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*, 35; *arbitror, -ārī, arbitrātus sum*, 45  
 third, *tertius, -a, -um*, 36  
 this, these, *hic, haec, hoc*, 33; *is, ea, id*, 32  
 thousands, *milia, milium, n. pl. (with gen.)*, 36  
 three, *trēs, tria*, 36  
 three hundred, *trecentī, -ae, -a, pl.*, 30  
 throne, *solium, soli, n.*, 19  
 through, *per, prep. with acc.*, 21  
 throw, *iaciō, -ere, -iēcī, iactus*, 22;  
 throw back, *rēiciō, -ere, rēiēcī, rēiectus*, 22; throw down, *dēicio, -ere, dēiēcī, dēiectus*, 22  
 thus, *sic, adv.*, 14; *item, adv.*, 46  
 Tiber, *Tiberis, Tiberis (dat. -ī, acc. -im, abl. -ī), m.*, 27  
 time, *tempus, temporis, n.*, 26; a long time, *diū, adv.*, 18  
 tired, *dēfessus, -a, -um*, 7  
 Titus, *Titus, -ī, m.*, 31  
 to, toward, *ad, prep. with acc.*, 8  
 today, *hodiē, adv.*, 5  
 together, *unā, adv.*, 45; together with, *unā cum*, 45  
 tomorrow, *crās, adv.*, 20  
 too, *quoque, adv.*, 1  
 top of, *summus, -a, -um*, 26  
 touch, *tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus*, 32  
 tower, *turris, turris, turrium, f.*, 35  
 town, *oppidum, -ī, n.*, 14  
 trace, *vestigium, vestigī, n.*, 24  
 train, *ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*, 34; *exerceō, -ēre, exercui, exercitus*, 49  
 transport, *onerāria, -ae, f.*, 8  
 traveler, *viātor, viātōris, m.*, 27  
 tree, *arbor, arboris, f.*, 32  
 trial, *iūdicium, iūdicī, n.*, 47  
 tribe, *gēns, gentis, gentium, f.*, 27  
 triple, *triplex, gen. triplicis*, 42  
 triumph, *triumphus, -ī, m.*, 23; to hold a triumph, *triumphum agere*, 23  
 Trojan, *adj., Troiānus, -a, -um; noun, a Trojan, Troiānus, -ī, m.*, 17  
 troops, *cōpiae, -arum, f. pl.*, 14; auxiliary troops, *auxilia, -ōrum, n. pl.*, 14  
 Troy, *Troia, -ae, f.*, 17

true, vĕrus, -a, -um, 19  
 truly, vĕrō, *adv.*, 19  
 try, temptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 39;  
 cōnor, -ārī, cōnātus sum, 45  
 Tullia, Tullia, -ae, *f.*, 3  
 tunic, tunica, -ae, *f.*, 4  
 turn, vertō, -ere, verti, versus, 42  
 Turnus, Turnus, -ī, *m.*, 30  
 twelve, duodecim, 33  
 twin, gemini, -ae, -a, *pl.*, 24  
 two, duo, duae, duo, 24, 86

## U

under, sub, *prep. with abl. and acc.*,  
 32

undergo, subeō, -īre, subii, subitūrus, 43

understand, intellegō, -ere, intelligēxi, intelligētus, 43

undertake, suscipiō, -ere, suscepī, susceptus, 46

unfriendly, inimicus, -a, -um, 80

unhappy, miser, misera, miserum, 15

unknown, ignōtus, -a, -um, 40

unless, nisi, *conj.*, 27

unmindful, oblitus, -a, -um (*with the gen.*), 31

unwilling, invītus, -a, -um, 45; be unwilling, nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, —, 39

upon, in, *prep. with acc.*, 8

urban, urbānus, -a, -um, 15

urn, ūrna, -ae, *f.*, 8

use, ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum (*with abl.*), 45

## V

vain, in vain, frūstrā, *adv.*, 35

van, primum agmen, 42

various, varius, -a, -um, 29

vehemently, graviter, *adv.*, 30

very great, maximus, -a, -um, 19;

very greatly, maximē, *adv.*, 6

very near, proximus, -a, -um, 6

veteran, veterānus, -a, -um, 42

victor, victor, victoris, *m.*, 24

victory, victōria, -ae, *f.*, 17

villa, villa, -ae, *f.*, 3

village, vicus, -ī, *m.*, 45

violence, vis (*acc. vim, abl. vi*), *f.*, 94

vision, visio, visiōnis, *f.*, 37

visit, adeō, -īre, adii, aditūrus, 43

voluntarily, ultrō, *adv.*, 29

vulture, vultur, vulturis, *m.*, 33

## W

wage war, bellum gerere, 17

wait, exspectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 21

walk, ambulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 4

wall, mŭrus, -ī, *m.*, 13

wander, errō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 29

want, dēsiderō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 5

war, bellum, -ī, *n.*, 14

warlike, bellicōsus, -a, -um, 43

warn, moneō, -ēre, monui, monitus, 19

warship, nāvis longa, nāvis longae, nāvium longārum, *f.*, 27

watch, look at, spectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 5

water, aqua, -ae, *f.*, 3

wax, cĕra, -ae, *f.*, 39

way, via, -ae, *f.*, 5; modus, -ī, *m.*, 39; in this way, sic, 14; hōc modō, 39

we, nōs, nostrum (nostrī), 11, 31: often not expressed

weak, invalidus, -a, -um, 28

weapon, tĕlum, -ī, *n.*, 18

wear, gerō, -ere, gessi, gestus, 17

weigh down, opprimō, -ere, oppressi, oppressus, 35

- well, fine, bene, *adv.*, 20; be well, salveō, ēre, —, —, 11
- when, ubi, *conj. with perfect indicative*, 28; cum, *conj. with subjunctive*, 49
- whence, unde, *adv.*, 7
- where, ubi, *adv.*, 7; quā, *adv.*, 50
- whether, introducing indirect question, num, *conj.*, 48
- which, qui, quae, quod, *rel. pron.*, 32; which (of two), *interrogative*, uter, utra, utrum, 36
- white, albus, -a, -um, 4
- whither, quō, *adv.*, 8
- who, qui, quae, quod, *rel. pron.*, 32; quis, quid, *interrog. pron.*, 48
- whole, cūctus, -a, -um, 38
- why, cūr, *adv.*, 2; quārē, *adv.*, 39
- wicked, malus, -a, -um, 32
- wide, lātus, -a, -um, 3
- wife, uxor, uxōris, *f.*, 28; coniūnx, coniugis, *f.*, 30  
(willing), be willing, volō, velle, voluī, —, 39
- win, conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 44
- wind, ventus, -i, *m.*, 39
- window, fenestra, -ae, *f.*, 1
- wing, āla, -ae, *f.*, 39; wing of an army, cornū, -ūs, *n.*, 41
- winter, hiems, hiemis, *f.*, 24; winter quarters, hiberna, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, 22
- wisdom, sapientia, -ae, *f.*, 9
- wish, volō, velle, voluī, —, 39
- with, cum, *prep. with abl.*, 7
- withdraw, discēdō, -ere, discessī, discessūrus, 40; dēcēdō, -ere, dēcessī, dēcessūrus, 44
- within, intrā, *prep. with acc.*, 14
- without, sine, *prep. with abl.*, 37
- withstand, sustineō, -ēre, sustinui, sustentus, 42
- wolf, she-wolf, lupa, -ae, *f.*, 32
- woman, fēmina, -ae, *f.*, 1
- wooden, ligneus, -a, -um, 17
- woods, silva, -ae, *f.*, 3
- word, verbum, -i, *n.*, 19
- work, labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 3
- world, orbis terrārum, 41
- worship, adōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 14
- wound, *noun*, vulnus, vulneris, *n.*, 26; verb, vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 18
- wreath, corōna, -ae, *f.*, 4
- wretched, miser, misera, miserum, 15
- write, scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptus, 31

## Y

- year, annus, -i, *m.*, 29
- yesterday, herī, *adv.*, 19
- yield, cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessūrus, 49
- you, tū, tuī (*sing.*); vōs, vestrum (vestrī), (*pl.*), 11, 31: often not expressed
- young man, adulēscēns, adulēscētis, *m.*, 28; iuvenis, iuvenis, iuvenum, *m.*, 40
- your, tuus, -a, -um (*referring to one person*); vester, vestra, vestrum (*referring to more than one person*), 11, 31
- youth, adulēscēns, adulēscētis, *m.*, 28; iuvenis, iuvenis (*gen. pl. iuvenum*), *m.*, 40

## Z

- zeal, studium, studi, *n.*, 25

# INDEXES

## INDEX TO TEXT

The numbers refer to paragraphs

- ā, ab, 57, 60, 169, 171, 172  
ablative, absolute, 486, 487, 489  
  of accompaniment, 57, 61, 417  
    (note)  
  of agent, 169, 171, 172  
  of cause, 319, 321  
  of comparison, 371, 374  
  of degree of difference, 384, 386  
  of manner, 232, 233  
  of means, 170, 171, 173  
  of place from which, 57, 60, 75-78  
  of place in which, 57, 59, 75-77,  
    514 (note)  
  of quality (description), 415, 416  
  of separation, 385, 387  
  of specification, 427, 429  
  of time, 223, 224  
  with deponents, 484, 488  
  with verbs of requesting, 346, 502  
ablative, summary of uses, 651  
accent, 7, 118, 130  
accompaniment, 57, 61, 417 (note)  
accusative, after ad and in, 66-70  
  direct object, 19, 23, 24  
  of cause, with propter, 372, 375  
  of duration of time, 267, 272  
  of extent of space, 441, 443  
  of place to which and into which,  
    66-70, 75, 76  
  predicate, 320, 322  
  subject of infinitive, 454, 460,  
    472, 477  
  with moneō, ōrō, and rogō, 502  
  accusative, summary of uses, 650  
ad, prep. with acc., 66-68, 70  
  with the gerund, 551  
  with the gerundive, 551  
adjectives, agreement, 10, 120, 145,  
  146, 150, 151  
  comparison, regular, 361, 362,  
    363, 585  
  irregular, 379-381, 586  
  of adjectives in -er and -lis,  
    367-369, 585  
  comparative, declension of, 364,  
    365  
  dative with, 51, 52  
  declension of, 568-574  
    in first-and-second declension,  
      147-149  
    in third declension, 328-331  
  genitive with, 290, 299  
  possessive, 288, 294, 296, 297,  
    305, 591  
  predicate, 10, 14  
  special and irregular, 354-356,  
    576-581  
adverbs, comparison of, 411-414,  
  583, 584  
  formation of, 405-410  
adversative clause with cum, 532,  
  537  
agent, ablative of, 169, 171, 172  
  dative of, 547, 554  
agreement, of adjectives, 10, 120,  
  145, 146, 150, 151

- of participles, 281, 337, 344  
 of possessive adjectives, 294, 297  
 of the relative pronoun, 307, 309  
 of verbs, 106  
*alius*, 354, 356, 577  
 alphabet, Latin, 2-5  
*alter*, 354, 356, 577  
*ambulance*, 40  
 antecedent of relative pronoun,  
     307, 309  
 antepenult, 6, 7  
*Arbor Day*, 310  
*arena*, 199  
 article, not expressed in Latin, 10  
*audeo*, 535  
  
*barbarous*, 204  
 base, of nouns, 81, 82, 131, 207,  
     209  
     of adjectives, 132, 148  
  
 C. meaning *Gālus*, 408  
*capio*, 202, 203  
 cardinal numerals, 350, 355, 582  
 case, 81, 86  
*causā*, with genitive of gerund and  
     gerundive, 544, 551  
 causal clause, with *cum*, 532, 537  
 cause, ablative of, 319, 321  
 cause, with *propter*, 372, 375  
*coepi*, 536  
 comparative, 364, 365, 587, 588  
 comparison, ablative of, 371, 374  
     of adjectives  
         regular, 361, 362, 363, 585  
         irregular, 379-381, 586  
         in -er and -is, 367-369, 585  
     of adverbs, 411-414, 583, 584  
     with *quam*, 370, 373  
 complementary infinitive, 393, 397,  
     398  
  
 concessive clause, with *cum*, 532,  
     537  
 conjugations, 94, 101  
     how distinguished, 100, 102, 103,  
     160, 161  
     (See *first*, *second*, *third*, *iō-third*,  
     *fourth*; see also irregular  
     verbs: *sum*, *possum*, *volō*,  
     *mālō*, *nōlō*, *eō*, *ferō*, *fiō*)  
 consonants, pronunciation of, 5  
*cum*, conjunction, with indicative,  
     532, 537  
     with subjunctive, 532, 537  
*cum*, enclitic, 293, 308  
*cum*, preposition, 57, 61  
  
 dative, of agent, 547, 554  
     of indirect object, 43, 44, 46  
     of purpose, 424-426, 428  
     of reference, 425, 426, 428  
     with adjectives, 51, 52  
     with verbs of persuading, etc.,  
     502, 505  
*dea*, dative and ablative plural, 45,  
     58  
 declension, defined, 81, 83  
     of adjectives, see *adjectives*  
     of nouns, see *first declension*, etc.  
     of pronouns, see *pronouns*  
 deponent verbs, 483, 484, 626-629,  
     639  
*deus*, 566  
*dido*, use in English, 285  
 difference, ablative of degree of,  
     384, 386  
 diphthongs, pronunciation of, 4  
 direct address, 85  
 direct object, 19, 23, 24  
*domus*, 76, 78, 421, 567  
*duo*, 355, 579  
 duration of time, 267, 272

- ē (ex) with ablative, 57, 60, 62  
     (note)  
 ego, 295, 589  
 egotism, 109  
 enclitic, -ne, 27, 28, 80  
     -que, 117  
     cum, 293, 308  
 eō, 457, 622-624, 637  
 extent of space, 441, 443  
 extra, 134  
 extrēmus, 380-382  
  
 fearing, clauses used with verbs of,  
     514 (note), 665  
 ferō, 457, 458, 618-620, 636  
 fifth declension, 438-440, 565  
 filia, dative and ablative plural, 45,  
     58  
 filius, 118, 130  
 fiō, 451, 457, 625, 638  
 first conjugation, gerund, 616  
     gerundive, 615  
     imperative, 108, 163, 608  
     indicative, 602-607  
         present active, 98, 100-102  
         present passive, 176  
         imperfect active, 181, 183  
         imperfect passive, 181, 183  
         future active, 187, 189, 192  
         future passive, 191, 192  
         perfect active, 254, 261  
         perfect passive, 281-283  
         pluperfect active, 268, 270,  
             273, 275  
         pluperfect passive, 281-283  
         future perfect active, 269-271,  
             274, 275  
         future perfect passive, 281-283  
     infinitive, 102, 394, 395, 609-611  
     participles, 281, 337-341, 348,  
         612-614  
         subjunctive, 496, 525, 526, 630-  
             633  
     first declension, 10, 81, 556  
     Forum, 193  
     fourth conjugation, indicative, 602-  
         607  
         present active, 161, 162  
         present passive, 176  
         imperfect active, 181, 183  
         imperfect passive, 181, 183  
         future active, 196, 197  
         future passive, 196, 197  
         perfect active, 254, 261  
         perfect passive, 281-283  
         pluperfect active, 268, 270,  
             273, 275  
         pluperfect passive, 281-283  
         future perfect active, 269-271,  
             274, 275  
         future perfect passive, 281-283  
     imperative, 163, 608  
     infinitive, 394, 395, 609-611  
     participle, 281, 337-344, 612-614  
     subjunctive, 496, 525, 526, 630-  
         633  
     fourth declension, 421-423, 564  
     future infinitive, 473, 475  
     future participle, 338, 343  
     future perfect tense, 270, 274, 281  
     future tense, 189, 195, 196  
  
 gender, how determined, 87, 122  
     of adjectives, 146  
     of first declension, 88  
     of second declension, 121, 122,  
         137  
     of third declension, 238  
     of fourth declension, 421, 422  
     of fifth declension, 439  
     of infinitive, 453  
     of participle, 337, 344

- of relative pronoun, 307, 309  
 genitive, objective, with adjectives, 290, 299  
 of description, 332, 333, 648  
 of nouns in *-ius*, 130  
 of possession, 37, 38  
 of the whole, 289, 298, 417 (note)  
     with *mīlia*, 442  
 gerund, 541, 543, 544, 551, 616, 671  
 gerundive, 542, 543, 544, 551, 615, 672  
  
*hic*, 314, 316, 318, 593  
  
*iam diū*, with present tense, 403  
*idem*, 459, 596  
*idōneus*, comparison of, 383  
*igitur*, 71 (note)  
*ille*, 313, 316, 318, 594  
 imperative mood, 108, 163  
*in*, with the ablative, 57, 59, 67, 514 (note)  
*in*, with the acc., 67-70  
 indicative mood, 163  
 indirect discourse, 472, 477  
 indirect object, 43, 44, 46  
 indirect question, 517, 527  
*infimus*, 380-382  
 infinitive, formation of, 102, 394, 395, 475, 476  
     complementary, 393, 397, 398  
     in indirect discourse, 472, 477  
     objective, 456, 460  
     subjective, 455, 460  
 intensive pronoun, 317, 597  
 interest (reference), dative of, 425, 426, 428  
 interrogative pronoun, 527, 599;  
     adjective, 600  
*iō*-verbs of the third conjugation, 201-203, 601-616, 630-633  
  
*ipse*, 317, 597  
 irregular comparison of adjectives, 379-381, 586; adverbs, 411-414  
 irregular nouns, 566, 567  
 irregular verbs, see *sum*, *possum*, *volō*, *mālō*, *nōlō*, *eō*, *ferō*, *fiō*  
*is*, 302-305, 592  
*i*-stem nouns, 243-247, 562, 563  
*iste*, 315, 318, 595  
*iter*, 566  
*iubeō*, with objective infinitive, 456  
*Iuppiter*, 357 (note), 566  
  
*January*, derivation, 15  
  
 Latin, how to read, 17, 28 (note)  
     pronunciation of, 1-5  
     value of study of, pages xv, xvi  
*libenter*, 71 (note)  
*liberi*, 143  
*licet*, constructions with, 533  
 locative, 75-78, 81, 653  
*locō*, *locis*, in expressions of place in which, 514 (note)  
  
*mālō*, 396, 397, 399, 621, 635  
 manner, ablative of, 232, 233  
 means, ablative of, 170, 171, 173  
*medius*, 239  
*mīlia*, 442  
 months, names of, 358  
 mood, see *indicative*, etc.  
  
 names of months, 358  
 names, proper, in Caesar, 447  
 names, Roman, 34  
*nē*, conjunction, 495, 499  
*-ne*, enclitic, 27, 28, 30  
*neu*, 500 (note)

- neuter**, declension of, 354, 356, 577  
**nōlō**, conjugation of, 396, 397, 399, 621, 635  
**nominative**  
     predicate noun or adjective, 10, 14  
     subject, 10, 14  
     with passive verb, 320, 322  
**nōnne**, 27, 28, 31  
**nōs**, 287–290, 295, 589, 590  
**nouns**, see *first declension*, etc.  
**nūllus**, declension of, 354, 356  
**num**, 27, 28, 32  
**number**  
     in adjectives, 145, 146, 151  
     in nouns, 10, 13  
     in verbs, 106  
**numerals**, 350, 351, 355, 578–582  
  
**object**, see *direct* or *indirect*  
**objective infinitive**, 456, 460  
**order of words**, 44, 85  
**ordinal numerals**, 351, 355, 582  
**ōrō**, 346  
  
*palace*, 310  
**paradigm**, 81  
**parisyllables**, 244, 246  
**participial stem**, 259  
**participles**, 344, 612–614  
     present active, 340–343, 575  
     perfect passive, 337, 342–343  
     in perfect tenses, 281–283  
     future active, 338, 343  
     of deponent verbs, 483  
     in ablative absolute, 486, 489  
**partitive genitive**, see *genitive of the whole*  
**passive voice**, 168  
     present, 175, 176  
     imperfect, 181, 183  
  
     future, 191, 192, 195–197  
     perfect, 281–283  
     pluperfect, 281–283  
     future perfect, 281–283  
*pastor*, 310  
*pecuniary*, 48  
*peninsula*, 54  
**penult**, 6, 7, 54  
*penult*, 54  
**perfect infinitive**  
     formation of, 475, 476  
     use of, 473  
**perfect passive participle**, 337, 342, 343  
**perfect stem**, 257, 259  
**periphrastic conjugation**  
     active, 550, 552, 640–642  
     passive, 546–548, 553, 554, 643–645  
*persona grata*, 54  
**personal endings**, 98, 175, 254  
**personal pronouns**, 287–290, 292–295, 589  
**petō**, 346  
**place**  
     from which, 57, 60  
         with names of cities, 75–78  
     to which, 66–68, 70  
         with names of cities, 75–78  
     where (in which), 57, 59  
         with names of cities, 75–78  
**plūs**, 417 (note)  
**possession**, genitive of, 37, 38  
**possessive adjective**, 288, 294, 296, 297, 305, 591  
**possum**, 391–394, 617, 634  
**postūlō**, 346  
**potior**, with ablative, 484, 488  
**predicate accusative**, 320, 322  
**predicate nominative**, 10, 14, 320, 322



- present active participle, 339-343  
 present infinitive  
   formation of, 102, 394, 395, 475  
   use of, 393, 397, 398, 472, 473, 477  
 present stem, 100, 102, 160, 161,  
   257, 259  
 present stem, 100, 102, 160, 161,  
   257, 259  
 principal parts, 258-260  
*procrastinate*, 193  
 pronouns, declension of, 30, 304,  
   308, 318, 459, 597  
   demonstrative, *hic*, *ille*, *iste*,  
     312-316, 318, 593-595  
   *idem*, 459, 596  
   *is*, 302-305, 592  
   intensive, 317, 597  
   interrogative, 599  
   personal, 287-290, 292-295, 589  
   reflexive, 291-295, 590  
   relative, 307-309, 598  
 pronunciation, 1-5, 445  
 propter, with accusative, 372, 375  
 purpose, dative of, 425, 426, 428  
   expressed by the gerund and the  
   gerundive, 544, 551  
   subjunctive of, 494-496, 498, 499  
  
*quā de causā*, 375  
*quam*, with comparative, 370, 373  
   with superlative, 417  
   as interrogative, 360 (note)  
 quantity of vowels, 3  
 -que, 117  
*quī*, 308, 598  
   at beginning of sentence, 431,  
     432  
   with clauses of purpose, 495  
*quis*, *quid*, 599  
*quisquam*, 600  
*quō*, in purpose clauses, 495  
  
 read, how to, 17, 28 (note)  
 relative at beginning of sentence,  
   431, 432  
 relative clause of purpose, 495  
 result clauses, 509-513, 661  
 revertor, tenses of, 534  
*rogō*, 346  
*rūs*, 76, 78  
  
*salvē*, *salvete*, 108  
 second conjugation  
   indicative, 602-607  
     present active, 103, 105  
     present passive, 176  
     imperfect active, 181, 183  
     imperfect passive, 181, 183  
     future active, 188, 189, 192  
     future passive, 191, 192  
     perfect active, 254, 261  
     perfect passive, 281-283  
     pluperfect active, 268, 270,  
       273, 275  
     pluperfect passive, 281-283  
     future perfect active, 269-271,  
       274, 275  
     future perfect passive, 281-283  
   imperative, 108, 163, 608  
   infinitives, 394, 395, 609-611  
   participle, 281, 337-341, 343,  
     612-614  
   subjunctive, 496, 525, 526, 630-  
     633  
   second declension, 557  
     masculine nouns, 112-115, 118,  
       119, 121, 126-131  
     neuter nouns, 137-139  
   separation, ablative of, 385, 387  
   sequence of tenses, of infinitives,  
     472, 473  
   in subordinate clauses, 494, 499,  
     523, 657-659

- sine die*, 445  
*sōlus*, 354, 356  
sounds of letters, 3-5  
space, accusative of extent of, 441, 443  
statement, indirect, see *indirect discourse*  
stems of verbs  
  present, 100, 102, 103, 160, 161, 257, 259  
  perfect, 257, 259  
  participial, 259  
subject, of finite verbs, 10, 14  
  of infinitives, 454, 460, 472, 477  
subjective infinitive, 455, 460  
subjunctive mood, 494  
  formation, of present, 496  
  of imperfect, 496  
  of perfect, 525, 526  
  of pluperfect, 525, 526  
  use of, 657-670  
  conjugation of, 630-639  
  constructions  
    indirect question, 517, 527, 664  
    purpose, 494-495, 498, 499, 660  
    result, 509-513, 661  
    with verbs of fearing, 514 (note), 665  
    with verbs of happening, etc., 511, 666  
  with *cum* causal, circumstantial, concessive, 532, 537, 667-670  
  of deponents, 639  
  of irregular verbs, 634-638  
substantive clauses, 501, 504, 662-666  
*sui*, declension of, 291, 295  
*sum*, 95, 182, 183, 192, 261, 275, 617, 634  
*summus*, 239, 381, 382  
superlative, of regular adjectives, 361, 363, 366  
  of adjectives in *-er* and *-lis*, 367-369  
  of irregular adjectives, 379-383  
  of adverbs, 412-414  
*suus* and *eius*, use of, 305  
syllabification, 6  
synopsis, 276  
syntax, summary of, 646-672  
*tandem*, 63  
tense, present, 104  
  imperfect, 180-182  
  future, 189, 195, 196  
  perfect, 253, 254, 257, 281  
  pluperfect, 270, 273, 281  
  future perfect, 270, 274, 281  
tenses, sequence of, 494, 499, 523, 657-659  
tense sign, imperfect, 180, 181  
  future, 189, 195  
  pluperfect, 270  
  future perfect, 270  
third conjugation  
  indicative, 602-607  
    present active, 160, 162  
    present passive, 176  
    imperfect active, 181, 183  
    imperfect passive, 181, 183  
    future active, 195, 197  
    future passive, 195, 197  
    perfect active, 254, 255, 261  
    perfect passive, 281-283  
    pluperfect active, 268, 270, 273, 275  
    pluperfect passive, 281-283  
    future perfect active, 269-271, 274, 275  
    future perfect passive, 281-283  
  imperative, 163, 608

- infinitive, 394, 395, 609–611  
 participle, 281, 337–341, 343, 612–614  
 subjunctive, 496, 525, 526, 630–633  
 third conjugation in *-iō*, 201–203, 602–616, 630–633  
 third declension, 558–563  
     consonant stems, paradigms of, 210, 216, 222, 231  
     summary of, 237  
     *i*-stems, 243–247  
     adjectives, 328–331  
 time, ablative of, 223, 224  
     duration of, 267, 272  
*tōtus*, declension of, 354, 356  
*tradition*, 310  
*trēs*, declension of, 355  
*tū*, declension of, 295  
*ūllus*, declension of, 354, 356  
*ultima*, name of syllable, 6  
*ūnus*, declension of, 354, 356  
*ut*, in clauses of purpose, 494, 495, 499, 660  
     in clauses of result, 509, 513, 661  
     with verbs of fearing, 514 (note), 665  
*uter*, 354, 356, 577  
*ūtor*, 484, 488  
 vocative, of nouns of second declension, 112, 115, 118, 119, 130, 137–139  
     position of, 85  
 voice, 168  
*volō*, 396–397, 399, 621, 635  
*vōs*, 287–290, 295, 589, 590  
 vowels, pronunciation of, 3

## INDEX TO ILLUSTRATIONS

## Numbers refer to pages

- abacus, 286  
 Acca, 251  
 Achilles, 143  
 Acropolis, 105  
 Aeneas, 220, 222, 223, 224  
 agriculture, Roman, 26  
 alphabet, Roman, 2, 3  
 Alps, 390  
 amethyst necklace, 44  
 amphitheater: at Arles, 393, 397; at Pompeii, 167  
 animals: in house decoration, 121; farm, 65  
 Appian Way, 69, 76, 84, 91  
 aqueduct, 403  
 arch, at Orange, 432  
 archers, 344  
 arena, 193, 196  
 Arles, modern, 393  
 army, Roman, 348  
 Athens, modern, 319  
 augury: by observing animals, 259; by observing birds, 263  
 Augustus, emperor, 184  
 baby, Roman, 72  
 baggage, military, 351  
 baker's shop, 129  
 bakery, 125, 126  
 banquet, Etruscan, 335  
 barbarians, 414, 427; see also *Britons*, *Gauls*, *Helvetians*  
 battle, 171, 425; line, threefold, 350; naval, 60, 61; plan, 353; storming a town, 177; with Britons, 109; with Helvetians, 354  
 beating schoolboy, 103  
 bit, horse's, 204  
 boat, 47, 55, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61  
 books, Roman, 16, 17, 162, 217  
 booty, 181  
 boxer, 160  
 boy, Roman, 91, 92, 93, 133, 161, 169, 217  
 bracelets, 290  
 brazier, 28, 29  
 bread, 127  
 bridge, at Avignon, 402  
 Britain, wall, 110  
 Britons, 109  
 butcher shop, 39

- Caesar, Julius, 410  
 camp, Roman, 109;  
   guarded by soldiers,  
   422  
 captives executed, 427  
 Carthaginian soldiers,  
   210  
 cavalry, 95  
 centurion, 345  
 chariot, 157, 168, 203,  
   279, 284, 313  
 chariot race, 198, 202  
 charioteer, 168, 203,  
   279, 284  
 Circus Maximus, 191,  
   198  
 coins: an *as*, showing  
   Janus, 13; cattle  
   money, 41; of rebel-  
   lious allies, 214; of  
   Syracuse, showing  
   chariots, 168; sixty-  
   sesterce piece, 42;  
   showing: Aeneas, 223;  
   Horatius, 312;  
   labyrinth, 316;  
   Romulus and Re-  
   mus, 255  
 Colosseum, 166  
 compass, 238  
 Cretan merchants, 317  
 cup: Gallic, 394, 395;  
   Greek, 325
- Daedalus, 314, 323  
 Diana, 40  
 Dido, 224, 231  
 dish, Roman, 35  
 doll, 34
- Etruria, mountains,  
   329  
 Etruscan: banquet,  
   335; chariot, 313;  
   lamp, 337; soldiers,  
   307; woman, 297
- family, Roman, 96, 155  
 farm, Roman, 23, 25, 26  
 farmer, 62, 63  
 Fates, the Three, 226
- Faustulus, 25; on  
   coin, 255  
 fire tongs, 30  
 fish plate, 35  
 fortress, built by sol-  
   diers, 417  
 Forum, 159, 164  
 freight boats, 58, 59
- galley slaves, 57  
 Gallo-Roman, 423  
 games: entertainment  
   for Sabines, 274, 278,  
   279, 284; "hockey,"  
   240; knucklebones,  
   87; sham battle, 169  
 garden, 88, 96  
 Gaul: ancient, 363;  
   cup of, 394, 395; en-  
   tered by Romans,  
   360  
 Gauls: ancient, 363;  
   chieftain, 174; dy-  
   ing, 356, 431; Gallo-  
   Roman, 423; sol-  
   diers, 368, 369, 370,  
   375, 400, 408, 412  
 general, 358; address-  
   ing soldiers, 180,  
   341; petitioned by  
   barbarians, 414  
 Geneva, 384  
 girl, Roman, 10, 11,  
   31, 33, 77, 82, fron-  
   tispiece  
 gladiators, 193, 195,  
   196  
 Greek: cup, 325; sol-  
   diers, 135, 144, 145
- Hadrian's villa, 49  
 Helen, 139, 141  
 Helvetians: country,  
   373; crossing river,  
   416; in battle, 354;  
   on the march, 382;  
   plan of battle with,  
   353; trying Orge-  
   torix, 379  
 Hercules, 38  
 "hockey," 240
- Horatius: at bridge,  
   305; on coin, 312  
 horse, Trojan, 135  
 horsemen: Gallic, 375;  
   Roman, 91, 95, 339,  
   405  
 house: Roman, 88;  
   interior, 49, 75, 77,  
   82, 112, 118, 120,  
   130; of Pansa, 114,  
   115; plan, 115; see  
   also *hui*, *villa*  
 hut: ancient, 266; of  
   Romulus, 268
- Icarus, 314, 323  
 impluvium, 120  
 Italian soldiers, 294,  
   298  
 Italy, coast of, 246
- Janus, 13  
 jar, 38, 419  
 Julius Caesar, 410  
 Juno, 230; temple of,  
   206  
 Jupiter, 149  
 Jura mountains, 366
- knucklebones, 87
- labyrinth, 316  
 lamp, Etruscan, 337  
 Lavinium, founding  
   of, 236, 237  
 lictors, 182, 183  
 line: of battle, 350; of  
   march, 348  
 litter, 69
- magistrate, Roman,  
   182, 183, 199  
 man, Roman, 79, 91,  
   387  
 Mars, 42, 154  
 master, Roman, 79  
 merchants, 36, 39, 43,  
   129, 317  
 Mercury, 98  
 mill, of bakery, 126  
 Minerva, 64, 107  
 mirror, 46

- mistress, Roman, 79;  
   with daughters, 77,  
   82; with servants, 51,  
   75; see also *woman*  
 money, Roman, 13,  
   41, 42, 214, 223,  
   255, 312, 316  
 mosaics, ancient, 25,  
   26, 121  
 mountains: Alps, 390;  
   in Etruria, 329;  
   Jura, 366  
 Mucius, C., 327, 334  
 necklace, 44  
 Olympia, 148  
 Orgetorix, 379  
 palace, of Diocletian,  
   254  
 Pansa, house of, 114,  
   115  
 Parthenon, 104, 105,  
   107  
 peristyle, 118, 130  
 pipe, lead, 213  
 Piraeus, 321  
 platter, 35  
 plow, 63  
 Pompeii: amphitheater,  
   167; paintings,  
   10, 11, 52, 60, 61;  
   street, 212  
 Priam, 141  
 procession: festival,  
   150; of boys, 244,  
   245; religious, 159;  
   triumphal, 186, 189  
 pupils, 7, 15, 19, 20,  
   21, 80, 101, 103, 238  
 race, chariot, 198, 202  
 reading: a book, 162;  
   a story, 217  
 Remus, see *Romulus*  
   and *Remus*  
 road: Roman, 302;  
   St. Gotthard, 373;  
   through Sequanian  
   territory, 386; see  
   also *street*  
 Romans: boys, 91, 92,  
   93, 133, 161, 169,  
   217; girls, 10, 11, 81,  
   33, 77, 82, frontis-  
   piece; women, 70,  
   79, 82, 161; men, 79,  
   91, 387, and see  
   also *family*, *soldiers*,  
   *Mucius*, etc.  
 Rome, ancient, 5, 66,  
   159, 164, 206, 271,  
   296  
 Romulus: hut of, 268;  
   seeing vultures, 263  
 Romulus and Remus:  
   choosing site of  
   Rome, 257; on coin,  
   255; with Faustulus  
   and Acca, 251; with  
   wolf, 247, 249, 255  
 rowers, 57  
 Sabine women: seized,  
   275; stopping bat-  
   tle, 292  
 sacrifice, 152, 159, 206  
 sailors, 59  
 school: American, 7;  
   Greek, 20, 21;  
   Roman, 15, 19, 80,  
   103, 238  
 schoolmaster, 14, 15,  
   19, 20, 21, 103, 238  
 Sequanians, road, 386  
 servants, 51, 75, 126  
 shepherd, 251, 256  
 shoes, 420  
 shop: for tunics and  
   sandals, 43; of baker,  
   129; of butcher, 39;  
   of Galba, 36  
 shopkeeper's sign, 67,  
   68  
 shopping district in  
   Rome, 66  
 shrine, 123  
 sibyl, 265  
 siege of a town, 177  
 slaves, 51, 57, 75, 126  
 soldiers: Carthaginian,  
   210; Etruscan, 299,  
   307; Gallic, 368,  
   369, 370, 375, 400,  
   408, 412; Greek,  
   135, 144, 145, 215;  
   Italian, 294, 298;  
   Roman, 171, 175,  
   180, 185, 309, 339,  
   341, 345, 351, 360,  
   417, 422  
 spoils of war, 181  
 spoons, 54  
 St. Gotthard road, 373  
 standard-bearer, Gal-  
   lic, 368, 369, 375  
 street: in Pompeii,  
   212; in Rome, 69,  
   76, 84, 91  
 stylus, 14, 21  
 tablets, wax, 17  
 Tarpeia, 281  
 temple: Juno, 206;  
   Olympia, 148; Par-  
   thenon, 104, 105,  
   107  
 tongs, fire, 30  
 triumph, 186, 189  
 triumphal arch, at  
   Orange, 432  
 Trojans, 143, 236, 237  
 Troy, 136, 137, 141,  
   215, 220  
 tutor, 20, 80, 101  
 Venus, 223  
 Vergil, 234  
 Victory, goddess of,  
   190  
 villa, Roman, 23, 25,  
   27, 47, 49, 52  
 wall, Roman, 110  
 warship, 60, 61  
 wolf: gored by bull,  
   214; with Romulus  
   and Remus, 247,  
   249, 255  
 woman: Etruscan, 297;  
   Roman, 70, 71, 79,  
   82, 161; see also  
   *mistress*

68.  
00.  
ek  
15:  
98:  
75.  
39.  
60.

3  
4  
1  
3.

6:  
7-  
5.

2  
.  
.

To avoid fine, this book should be returned on  
or before the date last stamped below

10M-6.40

MAY  1952

475.2  
C525

# DATE DUE

APR 03 2007

LIBRARY, SCHOOL OF EDUCATION, STANFORD

597427



